14.7 continued

Finalize The time interval for the element of water to fall to the ground is unchanged if the projection speed is changed because the projection is horizontal. Increasing the projection speed results in the water hitting the ground farther from the end of the hose, but requires the same time interval to strike the ground.

Daniel Bernoulli
Swiss physicist (1700–1782)
Bernoulli made important discoveries in fluid dynamics. Bernoulli's most famous work, *Hydrodynamica*, was published in 1738; it is both a theoretical and a practical study of equilibrium, pressure, and speed in fluids. He showed that as the speed of a fluid increases, its pressure decreases. Referred to as "Bernoulli's principle," Bernoulli's work is used to produce a partial vacuum in chemical laboratories by connecting a vessel to a tube through which water is running rapidly.

14.6 Bernoulli's Equation

You have probably experienced driving on a highway and having a large truck pass you at high speed. In this situation, you may have had the frightening feeling that your car was being pulled in toward the truck as it passed. We will investigate the origin of this effect in this section.

As a fluid moves through a region where its speed or elevation above the Earth's surface changes, the pressure in the fluid varies with these changes. The relationship between fluid speed, pressure, and elevation was first derived in 1738 by Swiss physicist Daniel Bernoulli. Consider the flow of a segment of an ideal fluid through a nonuniform pipe in a time interval Δt as illustrated in Figure 14.18. This figure is very similar to Figure 14.16, which we used to develop the continuity equation. We have added two features: the forces on the outer ends of the blue portions of fluid and the heights of these portions above the reference position $y = 0$.

The force exerted on the segment by the fluid to the left of the blue portion in Figure 14.18a has a magnitude P_1A_1. The work done by this force on the segment in a time interval Δt is $W_1 = F_1\,\Delta x_1 = P_1A_1\,\Delta x_1 = P_1V$, where V is the volume of the blue portion of fluid passing point 1 in Figure 14.18a. In a similar manner, the work done on the segment by the fluid to the right of the segment in the same time interval Δt is $W_2 = -P_2A_2\,\Delta x_2 = -P_2V$, where V is the volume of the blue portion of fluid passing point 2 in Figure 14.18b. (The volumes of the blue portions of fluid in Figures 14.18a and 14.18b are equal because the fluid is incompressible.) This work is negative because the force on the segment of fluid is to the left and the displacement of the point of application of the force is to the right. Therefore, the net work done on the segment by these forces in the time interval Δt is

$$W = (P_1 - P_2)V$$

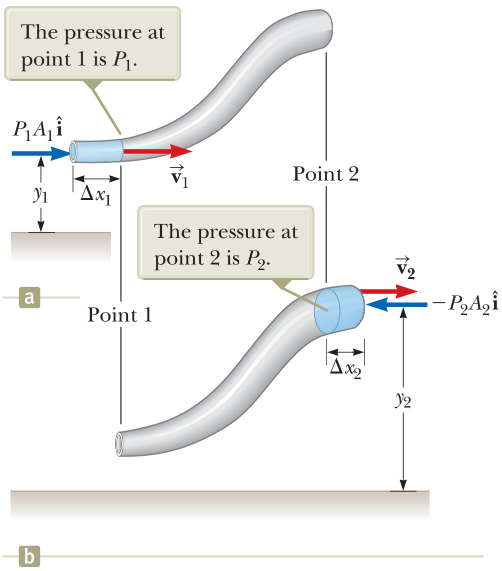


Figure 14.18 A fluid in laminar flow through a pipe. (a) A segment of the fluid at time $t = 0$. A small portion of the blue-colored fluid is at height y_1 above a reference position. (b) After a time interval Δt, the entire segment has moved to the right. The blue-colored portion of the fluid is that which has passed point 2 and is at height y_2.

Part of this work goes into changing the kinetic energy of the segment of fluid, and part goes into changing the gravitational potential energy of the segment–Earth system. Because we are assuming streamline flow, the kinetic energy K_{gray} of the gray portion of the segment is the same in both parts of Figure 14.18. Therefore, the change in the kinetic energy of the segment of fluid is

$$\Delta K = (\tfrac{1}{2}mv_2^2 + K_{\text{gray}}) - (\tfrac{1}{2}mv_1^2 + K_{\text{gray}}) = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_2^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}mv_1^2$$

where m is the mass of the blue portions of fluid in both parts of Figure 14.18. (Because the volumes of both portions are the same, they also have the same mass.)

Considering the gravitational potential energy of the segment–Earth system, once again there is no change during the time interval for the gravitational potential energy U_{gray} associated with the gray portion of the fluid. Consequently, the change in gravitational potential energy of the system is

$$\Delta U = (mgy_2 + U_{\text{gray}}) - (mgy_1 + U_{\text{gray}}) = mgy_2 - mgy_1$$

From Equation 8.2, the total work done on the system by the fluid outside the segment is equal to the change in mechanical energy of the system: $W = \Delta K + \Delta U$. Substituting for each of these terms gives

$$(P_1 - P_2)V = \tfrac{1}{2}mv_2^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}mv_1^2 + mgy_2 - mgy_1$$

If we divide each term by the portion volume V and recall that $\rho = m/V$, this expression reduces to

$$P_1 - P_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2 - \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 + \rho g y_2 - \rho g y_1$$

Rearranging terms gives

$$P_1 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 + \rho g y_1 = P_2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2 + \rho g y_2 \qquad \textbf{(14.8)}$$

which is **Bernoulli's equation** as applied to an ideal fluid. This equation is often expressed as

$$P + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v^2 + \rho g y = \text{constant} \qquad \textbf{(14.9)}$$

◀ **Bernoulli's equation**

Bernoulli's equation shows that the pressure of a fluid decreases as the speed of the fluid increases. In addition, the pressure decreases as the elevation increases. This latter point explains why water pressure from faucets on the upper floors of a tall building is weak unless measures are taken to provide higher pressure for these upper floors.

When the fluid is at rest, $v_1 = v_2 = 0$ and Equation 14.8 becomes

$$P_1 - P_2 = \rho g(y_2 - y_1) = \rho g h$$

This result is in agreement with Equation 14.4.

Although Equation 14.9 was derived for an incompressible fluid, the general behavior of pressure with speed is true even for gases: as the speed increases, the pressure decreases. This *Bernoulli effect* explains the experience with the truck on the highway at the opening of this section. As air passes between you and the truck, it must pass through a relatively narrow channel. According to the continuity equation, the speed of the air is higher. According to the Bernoulli effect, this higher-speed air exerts less pressure on your car than the slower-moving air on the other side of your car. Therefore, there is a net force pushing you toward the truck!

Quick Quiz 14.5 You observe two helium balloons floating next to each other at the ends of strings secured to a table. The facing surfaces of the balloons are separated by 1–2 cm. You blow through the small space between the balloons. What happens to the balloons? **(a)** They move toward each other. **(b)** They move away from each other. **(c)** They are unaffected.

Example 14.8 The Venturi Tube

The horizontal constricted pipe illustrated in Figure 14.19, known as a *Venturi tube,* can be used to measure the flow speed of an incompressible fluid. Determine the flow speed at point 2 of Figure 14.19a if the pressure difference $P_1 - P_2$ is known.

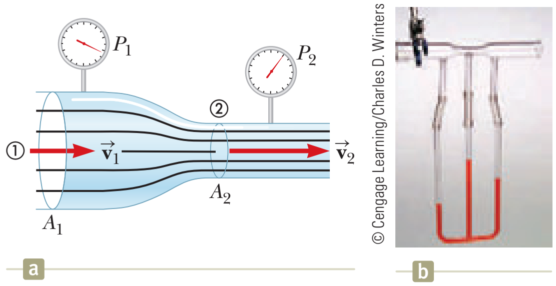


Figure 14.19 (Example 14.8) (a) Pressure P_1 is greater than pressure P_2 because $v_1 < v_2$. This device can be used to measure the speed of fluid flow. (b) A Venturi tube, located at the top of the photograph. The higher level of fluid in the middle column shows that the pressure at the top of the column, which is in the constricted region of the Venturi tube, is lower.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Bernoulli's equation shows how the pressure of an ideal fluid decreases as its speed increases. Therefore, we should be able to calibrate a device to give us the fluid speed if we can measure pressure.

Categorize Because the problem states that the fluid is incompressible, we can categorize it as one in which we can use the equation of continuity for fluids and Bernoulli's equation.

Analyze Apply Equation 14.8 to points 1 and 2, noting that $y_1 = y_2$ because the pipe is horizontal:

$$(1) \quad P_1 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 = P_2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2$$

Solve the equation of continuity for v_1:

$$v_1 = \frac{A_2}{A_1} v_2$$

Substitute this expression into Equation (1):

$$P_1 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho\left(\frac{A_2}{A_1}\right)^2 v_2^2 = P_2 + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v_2^2$$

Solve for v_2:

$$v_2 = A_1\sqrt{\frac{2(P_1 - P_2)}{\rho(A_1^2 - A_2^2)}}$$

Finalize From the design of the tube (areas A_1 and A_2) and measurements of the pressure difference $P_1 - P_2$, we can calculate the speed of the fluid with this equation. To see the relationship between fluid speed and pressure difference, place two empty soda cans on their sides about 2 cm apart on a table. Gently blow a stream of air horizontally between the cans and watch them roll together slowly due to a modest pressure difference between the stagnant air on their outside edges and the moving air between them. Now blow more strongly and watch the increased pressure difference move the cans together more rapidly.

Example 14.9 Torricelli's Law AM

An enclosed tank containing a liquid of density ρ has a hole in its side at a distance y_1 from the tank's bottom (Fig. 14.20). The hole is open to the atmosphere, and its diameter is much smaller than the diameter of the tank. The air above the liquid is maintained at a pressure P. Determine the speed of the liquid as it leaves the hole when the liquid's level is a distance h above the hole.

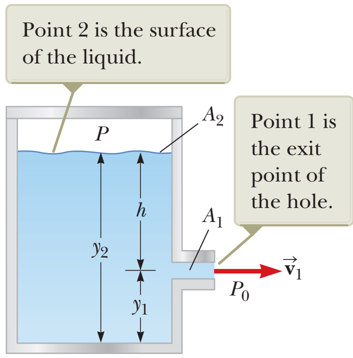


Figure 14.20 (Example 14.9) A liquid leaves a hole in a tank at speed v_1.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine that the tank is a fire extinguisher. When the hole is opened, liquid leaves the hole with a certain speed. If the pressure P at the top of the liquid is increased, the liquid leaves with a higher speed. If the pressure P falls too low, the liquid leaves with a low speed and the extinguisher must be replaced.

14.9 continued

Categorize Looking at Figure 14.20, we know the pressure at two points and the velocity at one of those points. We wish to find the velocity at the second point. Therefore, we can categorize this example as one in which we can apply Bernoulli's equation.

Analyze Because $A_2 >> A_1$, the liquid is approximately at rest at the top of the tank, where the pressure is P. At the hole, P_1 is equal to atmospheric pressure P_0.

Apply Bernoulli's equation between points 1 and 2:

$$P_0 + \frac{1}{2}\rho v_1^2 + \rho g y_1 = P + \rho g y_2$$

Solve for v_1, noting that $y_2 - y_1 = h$:

$$v_1 = \sqrt{\frac{2(P - P_0)}{\rho} + 2gh}$$

Finalize When P is much greater than P_0 (so that the term $2gh$ can be neglected), the exit speed of the water is mainly a function of P. If the tank is open to the atmosphere, then $P = P_0$ and $v_1 = \sqrt{2gh}$. In other words, for an open tank, the speed of the liquid leaving a hole a distance h below the surface is equal to that acquired by an object falling freely through a vertical distance h. This phenomenon is known as *Torricelli's law.*

WHAT IF? What if the position of the hole in Figure 14.20 could be adjusted vertically? If the tank is open to the atmosphere and sitting on a table, what position of the hole would cause the water to land on the table at the farthest distance from the tank?

Answer Model a parcel of water exiting the hole as a projectile. From the *particle under constant acceleration* model, find the time at which the parcel strikes the table from a hole at an arbitrary position y_1:

$$y_f = y_i + v_{yi}t - \frac{1}{2}gt^2$$

$$0 = y_1 + 0 - \frac{1}{2}gt^2$$

$$t = \sqrt{\frac{2y_1}{g}}$$

From the *particle under constant velocity* model, find the horizontal position of the parcel at the time it strikes the table:

$$x_f = x_i + v_{xi}t = 0 + \sqrt{2g(y_2 - y_1)}\sqrt{\frac{2y_1}{g}}$$

$$= 2\sqrt{(y_2 y_1 - y_1^2)}$$

Maximize the horizontal position by taking the derivative of x_f with respect to y_1 (because y_1, the height of the hole, is the variable that can be adjusted) and setting it equal to zero:

$$\frac{dx_f}{dy_1} = \frac{1}{2}(2)(y_2 y_1 - y_1^2)^{-1/2}(y_2 - 2y_1) = 0$$

Solve for y_1:

$$y_1 = \frac{1}{2}y_2$$

Therefore, to maximize the horizontal distance, the hole should be halfway between the bottom of the tank and the upper surface of the water. Below this location, the water is projected at a higher speed but falls for a short time interval, reducing the horizontal range. Above this point, the water is in the air for a longer time interval but is projected with a smaller horizontal speed.

14.7 Other Applications of Fluid Dynamics

Consider the streamlines that flow around an airplane wing as shown in Figure 14.21 on page 434. Let's assume the airstream approaches the wing horizontally from the right with a velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}_1$. The tilt of the wing causes the airstream to be deflected downward with a velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}_2$. Because the airstream is deflected by the wing, the wing must exert a force on the airstream. According to Newton's third law, the airstream exerts a force $\vec{\mathbf{F}}$ on the wing that is equal in magnitude and

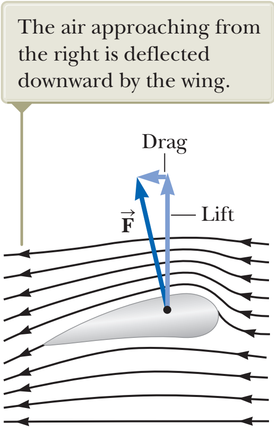


Figure 14.21 Streamline flow around a moving airplane wing. By Newton's third law, the air deflected by the wing results in an upward force on the wing from the air: *lift*. Because of air resistance, there is also a force opposite the velocity of the wing: *drag*.

opposite in direction. This force has a vertical component called **lift** (or aerodynamic lift) and a horizontal component called **drag.** The lift depends on several factors, such as the speed of the airplane, the area of the wing, the wing's curvature, and the angle between the wing and the horizontal. The curvature of the wing surfaces causes the pressure above the wing to be lower than that below the wing due to the Bernoulli effect. This pressure difference assists with the lift on the wing. As the angle between the wing and the horizontal increases, turbulent flow can set in above the wing to reduce the lift.

In general, an object moving through a fluid experiences lift as the result of any effect that causes the fluid to change its direction as it flows past the object. Some factors that influence lift are the shape of the object, its orientation with respect to the fluid flow, any spinning motion it might have, and the texture of its surface. For example, a golf ball struck with a club is given a rapid backspin due to the slant of the club. The dimples on the ball increase the friction force between the ball and the air so that air adheres to the ball's surface. Figure 14.22 shows air adhering to the ball and being deflected downward as a result. Because the ball pushes the air down, the air must push up on the ball. Without the dimples, the friction force is lower and the golf ball does not travel as far. It may seem counterintuitive to increase the range by increasing the friction force, but the lift gained by spinning the ball more than compensates for the loss of range due to the effect of friction on the translational motion of the ball. For the same reason, a baseball's cover helps the spinning ball "grab" the air rushing by and helps deflect it when a "curve ball" is thrown.

A number of devices operate by means of the pressure differentials that result from differences in a fluid's speed. For example, a stream of air passing over one end of an open tube, the other end of which is immersed in a liquid, reduces the pressure above the tube as illustrated in Figure 14.23. This reduction in pressure causes the liquid to rise into the airstream. The liquid is then dispersed into a fine spray of droplets. You might recognize that this *atomizer* is used in perfume bottles and paint sprayers.

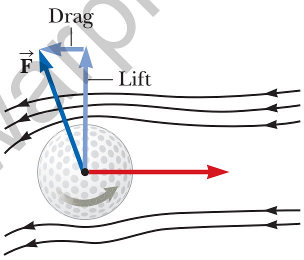


Figure 14.22 Because of the deflection of air, a spinning golf ball experiences a lifting force that allows it to travel much farther than it would if it were not spinning.

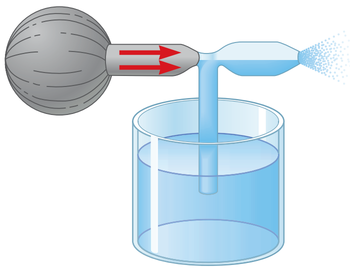


Figure 14.23 A stream of air passing over a tube dipped into a liquid causes the liquid to rise in the tube.

Summary

Definitions

The **pressure** P in a fluid is the force per unit area exerted by the fluid on a surface:

$$P \equiv \frac{F}{A} \tag{14.1}$$

In the SI system, pressure has units of newtons per square meter (N/m^2), and 1 N/m^2 = 1 **pascal** (Pa).

Concepts and Principles

The pressure in a fluid at rest varies with depth h in the fluid according to the expression

$$P = P_0 + \rho g h \quad \textbf{(14.4)}$$

where P_0 is the pressure at $h = 0$ and ρ is the density of the fluid, assumed uniform.

Pascal's law states that when pressure is applied to an enclosed fluid, the pressure is transmitted undiminished to every point in the fluid and to every point on the walls of the container.

When an object is partially or fully submerged in a fluid, the fluid exerts on the object an upward force called the **buoyant force.** According to **Archimedes's principle,** the magnitude of the buoyant force is equal to the weight of the fluid displaced by the object:

$$B = \rho_{\text{fluid}} g V_{\text{disp}} \quad \textbf{(14.5)}$$

The flow rate (volume flux) through a pipe that varies in cross-sectional area is constant; that is equivalent to stating that the product of the cross-sectional area A and the speed v at any point is a constant. This result is expressed in the **equation of continuity for fluids:**

$$A_1 v_1 = A_2 v_2 = \text{constant} \quad \textbf{(14.7)}$$

The sum of the pressure, kinetic energy per unit volume, and gravitational potential energy per unit volume has the same value at all points along a streamline for an ideal fluid. This result is summarized in **Bernoulli's equation:**

$$P + \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v^2 + \rho g y = \text{constant} \quad \textbf{(14.9)}$$

Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. Figure OQ14.1 shows aerial views from directly above two dams. Both dams are equally wide (the vertical dimension in the diagram) and equally high (into the page in the diagram). The dam on the left holds back a very large lake, and the dam on the right holds back a narrow river. Which dam has to be built more strongly? (a) the dam on the left (b) the dam on the right (c) both the same (d) cannot be predicted

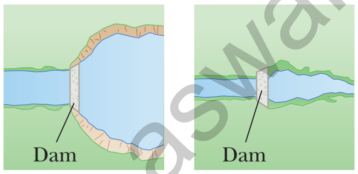


Figure OQ14.1

2. A beach ball filled with air is pushed about 1 m below the surface of a swimming pool and released from rest. Which of the following statements are valid, assuming the size of the ball remains the same? (Choose all correct statements.) (a) As the ball rises in the pool, the buoyant force on it increases. (b) When the ball is released, the buoyant force exceeds the gravitational force, and the ball accelerates upward. (c) The buoyant force on the ball decreases as the ball approaches the surface of the pool. (d) The buoyant force on the ball equals its weight and remains constant as the ball rises. (e) The buoyant force on the ball while it is submerged is approximately equal to the weight of a volume of water that could fill the ball.

3. A wooden block floats in water, and a steel object is attached to the bottom of the block by a string as in Figure OQ14.3. If the block remains floating, which of the following statements are valid? (Choose all correct statements.) (a) The buoyant force on the steel object is equal to its weight. (b) The buoyant force on the block is equal to its weight. (c) The tension in the string is equal to the weight of the steel object. (d) The tension in the string is less than the weight of the steel object. (e) The buoyant force on the block is equal to the volume of water it displaces.

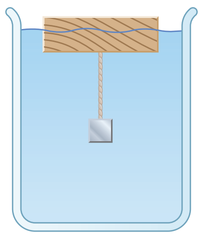


Figure OQ14.3

4. An apple is held completely submerged just below the surface of water in a container. The apple is then moved to a deeper point in the water. Compared with the force needed to hold the apple just below the surface, what is the force needed to hold it at the deeper point? (a) larger (b) the same (c) smaller (d) impossible to determine

5. A beach ball is made of thin plastic. It has been inflated with air, but the plastic is not stretched. By swimming with fins on, you manage to take the ball from the surface of a pool to the bottom. Once the ball is completely submerged, what happens to the buoyant force exerted on the beach ball as you take it deeper? (a) It increases. (b) It remains constant. (c) It decreases. (d) It is impossible to determine.

6. A solid iron sphere and a solid lead sphere of the same size are each suspended by strings and are submerged in a tank of water. (Note that the density of lead is greater than that of iron.) Which of the following statements are valid? (Choose all correct statements.) (a) The buoyant force on each is the same. (b) The buoyant force on the lead sphere is greater than the buoyant force on the iron sphere because lead has the greater density. (c) The tension in the string supporting the lead sphere is greater than the tension in the string supporting the iron sphere. (d) The buoyant force on the iron sphere is greater than the buoyant force on the lead sphere because lead displaces more water. (e) None of those statements is true.

7. Three vessels of different shapes are filled to the same level with water as in Figure OQ14.7. The area of the base is the same for all three vessels. Which of the following statements are valid? (Choose all correct statements.) (a) The pressure at the top surface of vessel A is greatest because it has the largest surface area. (b) The pressure at the bottom of vessel A is greatest because it contains the most water. (c) The pressure at the bottom of each vessel is the same. (d) The force on the bottom of each vessel is not the same. (e) At a given depth below the surface of each vessel, the pressure on the side of vessel A is greatest because of its slope.

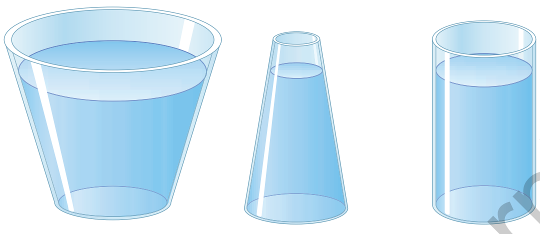


Figure OQ14.7

8. One of the predicted problems due to global warming is that ice in the polar ice caps will melt and raise sea levels everywhere in the world. Is that more of a worry for ice (a) at the north pole, where most of the ice floats on water; (b) at the south pole, where most of the ice sits on land; (c) both at the north and south pole equally; or (d) at neither pole?

9. A boat develops a leak and, after its passengers are rescued, eventually sinks to the bottom of a lake. When the boat is at the bottom, what is the force of the lake bottom on the boat? (a) greater than the weight of the boat (b) equal to the weight of the boat (c) less than the weight of the boat (d) equal to the weight of the displaced water (e) equal to the buoyant force on the boat

10. A small piece of steel is tied to a block of wood. When the wood is placed in a tub of water with the steel on top, half of the block is submerged. Now the block is inverted so that the steel is under water. **(i)** Does the amount of the block submerged (a) increase, (b) decrease, or (c) remain the same? **(ii)** What happens to the water level in the tub when the block is inverted? (a) It rises. (b) It falls. (c) It remains the same.

11. A piece of unpainted porous wood barely floats in an open container partly filled with water. The container is then sealed and pressurized above atmospheric pressure. What happens to the wood? (a) It rises in the water. (b) It sinks lower in the water. (c) It remains at the same level.

12. A person in a boat floating in a small pond throws an anchor overboard. What happens to the level of the pond? (a) It rises. (b) It falls. (c) It remains the same.

13. Rank the buoyant forces exerted on the following five objects of equal volume from the largest to the smallest. Assume the objects have been dropped into a swimming pool and allowed to come to mechanical equilibrium. If any buoyant forces are equal, state that in your ranking. (a) a block of solid oak (b) an aluminum block (c) a beach ball made of thin plastic and inflated with air (d) an iron block (e) a thin-walled, sealed bottle of water

14. A water supply maintains a constant rate of flow for water in a hose. You want to change the opening of the nozzle so that water leaving the nozzle will reach a height that is four times the current maximum height the water reaches with the nozzle vertical. To do so, should you (a) decrease the area of the opening by a factor of 16, (b) decrease the area by a factor of 8, (c) decrease the area by a factor of 4, (d) decrease the area by a factor of 2, or (e) give up because it cannot be done?

15. A glass of water contains floating ice cubes. When the ice melts, does the water level in the glass (a) go up, (b) go down, or (c) remain the same?

16. An ideal fluid flows through a horizontal pipe whose diameter varies along its length. Measurements would indicate that the sum of the kinetic energy per unit volume and pressure at different sections of the pipe would (a) decrease as the pipe diameter increases, (b) increase as the pipe diameter increases, (c) increase as the pipe diameter decreases, (d) decrease as the pipe diameter decreases, or (e) remain the same as the pipe diameter changes.

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. When an object is immersed in a liquid at rest, why is the net force on the object in the horizontal direction equal to zero?

2. Two thin-walled drinking glasses having equal base areas but different shapes, with very different cross-sectional areas above the base, are filled to the same level with water. According to the expression $P = P_0 + \rho g h$, the pressure is the same at the bottom of both glasses. In view of this equality, why does one weigh more than the other?

3. Because atmospheric pressure is about 10^5 N/m^2 and the area of a person's chest is about 0.13 m^2, the force of the atmosphere on one's chest is around 13 000 N. In view of this enormous force, why don't our bodies collapse?

4. A fish rests on the bottom of a bucket of water while the bucket is being weighed on a scale. When the fish begins to swim around, does the scale reading change? Explain your answer.

5. You are a passenger on a spacecraft. For your survival and comfort, the interior contains air just like that at the surface of the Earth. The craft is coasting through a very empty region of space. That is, a nearly perfect vacuum exists just outside the wall. Suddenly, a meteoroid pokes a hole, about the size of a large coin, right through the wall next to your seat. (a) What happens? (b) Is there anything you can or should do about it?

6. If the airstream from a hair dryer is directed over a table-tennis ball, the ball can be levitated. Explain.

7. A water tower is a common sight in many communities. Figure CQ14.7 shows a collection of colorful water towers in Kuwait City, Kuwait. Notice that the large weight of the water results in the center of mass of the system being high above the ground. Why is it desirable for a water tower to have this highly unstable shape rather than being shaped as a tall cylinder?

© iStockPhoto/Klaas Lingbeek-van Kranen

Figure CQ14.7

8. If you release a ball while inside a freely falling elevator, the ball remains in front of you rather than falling to the floor because the ball, the elevator, and you all experience the same downward gravitational acceleration. What happens if you repeat this experiment with a helium-filled balloon?

9. (a) Is the buoyant force a conservative force? (b) Is a potential energy associated with the buoyant force? (c) Explain your answers to parts (a) and (b).

10. An empty metal soap dish barely floats in water. A bar of Ivory soap floats in water. When the soap is stuck in the soap dish, the combination sinks. Explain why.

11. How would you determine the density of an irregularly shaped rock?

12. Place two cans of soft drinks, one regular and one diet, in a container of water. You will find that the diet drink floats while the regular one sinks. Use Archimedes's principle to devise an explanation.

13. The water supply for a city is often provided from reservoirs built on high ground. Water flows from the reservoir, through pipes, and into your home when you turn the tap on your faucet. Why does water flow more rapidly out of a faucet on the first floor of a building than in an apartment on a higher floor?

14. Does a ship float higher in the water of an inland lake or in the ocean? Why?

15. When ski jumpers are airborne (Fig. CQ14.15), they bend their bodies forward and keep their hands at their sides. Why?

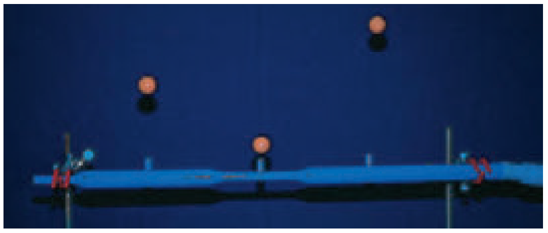
© iStockPhoto/technotr

Figure CQ14.15

16. Why do airplane pilots prefer to take off with the airplane facing into the wind?

17. Prairie dogs ventilate their burrows by building a mound around one entrance, which is open to a stream of air when wind blows from any direction. A second entrance at ground level is open to almost stagnant air. How does this construction create an airflow through the burrow?

18. In Figure CQ14.18, an airstream moves from right to left through a tube that is constricted at the middle. Three table-tennis balls are levitated in equilibrium above the vertical columns through which the air escapes. (a) Why is the ball at the right higher than the one in the middle? (b) Why is the ball at the left lower than the ball at the right even though the horizontal tube has the same dimensions at these two points?



Henry Leap and Jim Lehman

Figure CQ14.18

19. A typical silo on a farm has many metal bands wrapped around its perimeter for support as shown in Figure CQ14.19. Why is the spacing between successive bands smaller for the lower portions of the silo on the left, and why are double bands used at lower portions of the silo on the right?

Henry Leap and Jim Lehman

Figure CQ14.19

Problems

ENHANCED WebAssign The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Note: In all problems, assume the density of air is the 20°C value from Table 14.1, 1.20 kg/m³, unless noted otherwise.

Section 14.1 Pressure

1. A large man sits on a four-legged chair with his feet off the floor. The combined mass of the man and chair is 95.0 kg. If the chair legs are circular and have a radius of 0.500 cm at the bottom, what pressure does each leg exert on the floor?

2. The nucleus of an atom can be modeled as several protons and neutrons closely packed together. Each particle has a mass of 1.67×10^{-27} kg and radius on the order of 10^{-15} m. (a) Use this model and the data provided to estimate the density of the nucleus of an atom. (b) Compare your result with the density of a material such as iron. What do your result and comparison suggest concerning the structure of matter?

3. W A 50.0-kg woman wearing high-heeled shoes is invited into a home in which the kitchen has vinyl floor covering. The heel on each shoe is circular and has a radius of 0.500 cm. (a) If the woman balances on one heel, what pressure does she exert on the floor? (b) Should the homeowner be concerned? Explain your answer.

4. Estimate the total mass of the Earth's atmosphere. (The radius of the Earth is 6.37×10^{6} m, and atmospheric pressure at the surface is 1.013×10^{5} Pa.)

5. M Calculate the mass of a solid gold rectangular bar that has dimensions of 4.50 cm × 11.0 cm × 26.0 cm.

Section 14.2 Variation of Pressure with Depth

6. (a) A very powerful vacuum cleaner has a hose 2.86 cm in diameter. With the end of the hose placed perpendicularly on the flat face of a brick, what is the weight of the heaviest brick that the cleaner can lift? (b) **What If?** An octopus uses one sucker of diameter 2.86 cm on each of the two shells of a clam in an attempt to pull the shells apart. Find the greatest force the octopus can exert on a clamshell in salt water 32.3 m deep.

7. M The spring of the pressure gauge shown in Figure P14.7 has a force constant of 1 250 N/m, and the piston has a diameter of 1.20 cm. As the gauge is lowered into water in a lake, what change in depth causes the piston to move in by 0.750 cm?

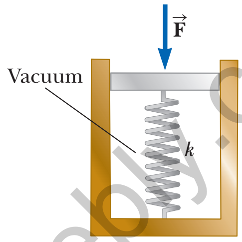


Figure P14.7

8. W The small piston of a hydraulic lift (Fig. P14.8) has a cross-sectional area of 3.00 cm², and its large piston has a cross-sectional area of 200 cm². What downward force of magnitude F_1 must be applied to the small piston for the lift to raise a load whose weight is F_g = 15.0 kN?

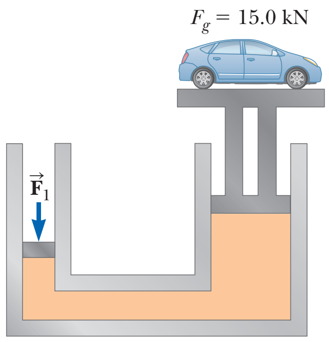


Figure P14.8

9. AMT M What must be the contact area between a suction cup (completely evacuated) and a ceiling if the cup is to support the weight of an 80.0-kg student?

10. A swimming pool has dimensions 30.0 m × 10.0 m and a flat bottom. When the pool is filled to a depth of 2.00 m with fresh water, what is the force exerted by the water on (a) the bottom? (b) On each end? (c) On each side?

11. (a) Calculate the absolute pressure at the bottom of a freshwater lake at a point whose depth is 27.5 m. Assume the density of the water is 1.00×10^{3} kg/m³ and that the air above is at a pressure of 101.3 kPa. (b) What force is exerted by the water on the window of an underwater vehicle at this depth if the window is circular and has a diameter of 35.0 cm?

12. *Why is the following situation impossible?* Figure P14.12 shows Superman attempting to drink cold water through a straw of length $\ell = 12.0$ m. The walls of the tubular straw are very strong and do not collapse. With his great strength, he achieves maximum possible suction and enjoys drinking the cold water.

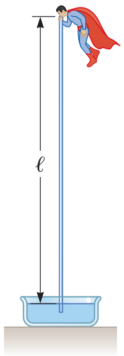


Figure P14.12

13. For the cellar of a new house, a hole is dug in the ground, with vertical sides going down 2.40 m. A concrete foundation wall is built all the way across the 9.60-m width of the excavation. This foundation wall is 0.183 m away from the front of the cellar hole. During a rainstorm, drainage from the street fills up the space in front of the concrete wall, but not the cellar behind the wall. The water does not soak into the clay soil. Find the force the water causes on the foundation wall. For comparison, the weight of the water is given by 2.40 m × 9.60 m × 0.183 m × 1 000 kg/m^3 × 9.80 m/s^2 = 41.3 kN.

14. A container is filled to a depth of 20.0 cm with water. On top of the water floats a 30.0-cm-thick layer of oil with specific gravity 0.700. What is the absolute pressure at the bottom of the container?

15. **Review.** The tank in Figure P14.15 is filled with water of depth $d = 2.00$ m. At the bottom of one sidewall is a rectangular hatch of height $h = 1.00$ m and width $w = 2.00$ m that is hinged at the top of the hatch. (a) Determine the magnitude of the force the water exerts on the hatch. (b) Find the magnitude of the torque exerted by the water about the hinges.

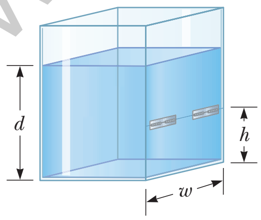


Figure P14.15
Problems 15 and 16.

16. **Review.** The tank in Figure P14.15 is filled with water of depth d. At the bottom of one sidewall is a rectangular hatch of height h and width w that is hinged at the top of the hatch. (a) Determine the magnitude of the force the water exerts on the hatch. (b) Find the magnitude of the torque exerted by the water about the hinges.

17. **Review.** Piston ① in Figure P14.17 has a diameter of 0.250 in. Piston ② has a diameter of 1.50 in. Determine the magnitude F of the force necessary to support the 500-lb load in the absence of friction.

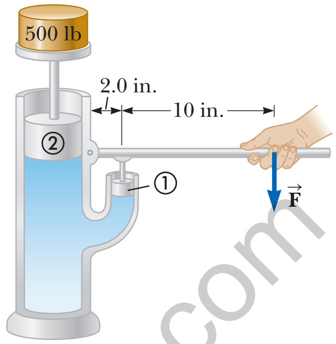


Figure P14.17

18. **Review.** A solid sphere of brass (bulk modulus of 14.0×10^{10} N/m^2) with a diameter of 3.00 m is thrown into the ocean. By how much does the diameter of the sphere decrease as it sinks to a depth of 1.00 km?

Section 14.3 Pressure Measurements

19. Normal atmospheric pressure is 1.013×10^5 Pa. The approach of a storm causes the height of a mercury barometer to drop by 20.0 mm from the normal height. What is the atmospheric pressure?

20. The human brain and spinal cord are immersed in the cerebrospinal fluid. The fluid is normally continuous between the cranial and spinal cavities and exerts a pressure of 100 to 200 mm of H_2O above the prevailing atmospheric pressure. In medical work, pressures are often measured in units of millimeters of H_2O because body fluids, including the cerebrospinal fluid, typically have the same density as water. The pressure of the cerebrospinal fluid can be measured by means of a *spinal tap* as illustrated in Figure P14.20. A hollow tube is inserted into the spinal column, and the height to which the fluid rises is observed. If the fluid rises to a height of 160 mm, we write its gauge pressure as 160 mm H_2O. (a) Express this pressure in pascals, in atmospheres, and in millimeters of mercury. (b) Some conditions that block or inhibit the flow of cerebrospinal fluid can be investigated by means of *Queckenstedt's test*. In this procedure, the veins in the patient's neck are compressed to make the blood pressure rise in the brain, which in turn should be transmitted to the cerebrospinal fluid. Explain how the level of fluid in the spinal tap can be used as a diagnostic tool for the condition of the patient's spine.

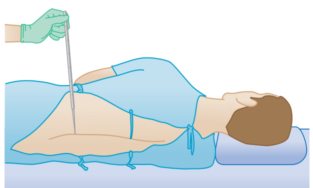


Figure P14.20

21. Blaise Pascal duplicated Torricelli's barometer using a red Bordeaux wine, of density 984 kg/m^3, as the working liquid (Fig. P14.21). (a) What was the height h of the wine column for normal atmospheric pressure? (b) Would you expect the vacuum above the column to be as good as for mercury?

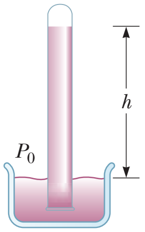


Figure P14.21

22. W Mercury is poured into a U-tube as shown in Figure P14.22a. The left arm of the tube has cross-sectional area A_1 of 10.0 cm^2, and the right arm has a cross-sectional area A_2 of 5.00 cm^2. One hundred grams of water are then poured into the right arm as shown in Figure P14.22b. (a) Determine the length of the water column in the right arm of the U-tube. (b) Given that the density of mercury is 13.6 g/cm^3, what distance h does the mercury rise in the left arm?

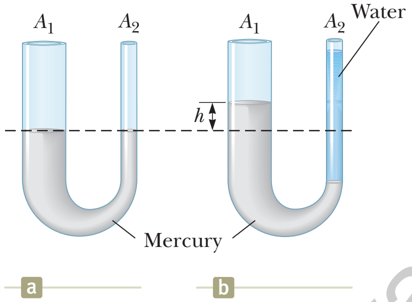


Figure P14.22

23. A backyard swimming pool with a circular base of diameter 6.00 m is filled to depth 1.50 m. (a) Find the absolute pressure at the bottom of the pool. (b) Two persons with combined mass 150 kg enter the pool and float quietly there. No water overflows. Find the pressure increase at the bottom of the pool after they enter the pool and float.

24. A tank with a flat bottom of area A and vertical sides is filled to a depth h with water. The pressure is P_0 at the top surface. (a) What is the absolute pressure at the bottom of the tank? (b) Suppose an object of mass M and density less than the density of water is placed into the tank and floats. No water overflows. What is the resulting increase in pressure at the bottom of the tank?

Section 14.4 Buoyant Forces and Archimedes's Principle

25. A table-tennis ball has a diameter of 3.80 cm and average density of 0.084 0 g/cm^3. What force is required to hold it completely submerged under water?

26. The gravitational force exerted on a solid object is 5.00 N. When the object is suspended from a spring scale and submerged in water, the scale reads 3.50 N (Fig. P14.26). Find the density of the object.

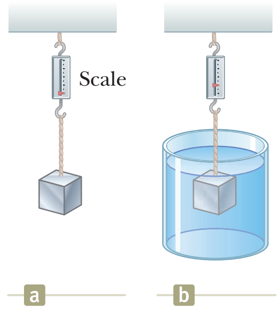


Figure P14.26 Problems 26 and 27.

27. A 10.0-kg block of metal measuring 12.0 cm by 10.0 cm by 10.0 cm is suspended from a scale and immersed in water as shown in Figure P14.26b. The 12.0-cm dimension is vertical, and the top of the block is 5.00 cm below the surface of the water. (a) What are the magnitudes of the forces acting on the top and on the bottom of the block due to the surrounding water? (b) What is the reading of the spring scale? (c) Show that the buoyant force equals the difference between the forces at the top and bottom of the block.

28. W A light balloon is filled with 400 m^3 of helium at atmospheric pressure. (a) At 0°C, the balloon can lift a payload of what mass? (b) **What If?** In Table 14.1, observe that the density of hydrogen is nearly half the density of helium. What load can the balloon lift if filled with hydrogen?

29. AMT M A cube of wood having an edge dimension of 20.0 cm and a density of 650 kg/m^3 floats on water. (a) What is the distance from the horizontal top surface of the cube to the water level? (b) What mass of lead should be placed on the cube so that the top of the cube will be just level with the water surface?

30. The United States possesses the ten largest warships in the world, aircraft carriers of the *Nimitz* class. Suppose one of the ships bobs up to float 11.0 cm higher in the ocean water when 50 fighters take off from it in a time interval of 25 min, at a location where the free-fall acceleration is 9.78 m/s^2. The planes have an average laden mass of 29 000 kg. Find the horizontal area enclosed by the waterline of the ship.

31. M A plastic sphere floats in water with 50.0% of its volume submerged. This same sphere floats in glycerin with 40.0% of its volume submerged. Determine the densities of (a) the glycerin and (b) the sphere.

32. A spherical vessel used for deep-sea exploration has a radius of 1.50 m and a mass of 1.20 × 10^4 kg. To dive, the vessel takes on mass in the form of seawater. Determine the mass the vessel must take on if it is to descend at a constant speed of 1.20 m/s, when the resistive force on it is 1 100 N in the upward direction. The density of seawater is equal to 1.03 × 10^3 kg/m^3.

33. A wooden block of volume 5.24 × 10^{-4} m^3 floats in water, and a small steel object of mass m is placed on top of the block. When m = 0.310 kg, the system is in equilibrium and the top of the wooden block is at the level of the water. (a) What is the density of the wood? (b) What happens to the block when the steel object is replaced by an object whose mass is less than 0.310 kg? (c) What happens to the block when the steel object is replaced by an object whose mass is greater than 0.310 kg?

34. The weight of a rectangular block of low-density material is 15.0 N. With a thin string, the center of the horizontal bottom face of the block is tied to the bottom of a beaker partly filled with water. When 25.0% of the block's volume is submerged, the tension in the string is 10.0 N. (a) Find the buoyant force on the block. (b) Oil of density 800 kg/m^3 is now steadily added to the beaker, forming a layer above the water and surrounding the block. The oil exerts forces on each of the four sidewalls of the block that the oil touches. What are the directions of these forces? (c) What happens to the string tension as the oil is added? Explain how the oil has this effect on the string tension. (d) The string breaks when its tension reaches 60.0 N. At this moment, 25.0% of the block's volume is still below the water line. What additional fraction of the block's volume is below the top surface of the oil?

35. A large weather balloon whose mass is 226 kg is filled with helium gas until its volume is 325 m^3. Assume the density of air is 1.20 kg/m^3 and the density of helium is 0.179 kg/m^3. (a) Calculate the buoyant force acting on the balloon. (b) Find the net force on the balloon and determine whether the balloon will rise or fall after it is released. (c) What additional mass can the balloon support in equilibrium?

36. A *hydrometer* is an instrument used to determine liquid density. A simple one is sketched in Figure P14.36. The bulb of a syringe is squeezed and released to let the atmosphere lift a sample of the liquid of interest into a tube containing a calibrated rod of known density. The rod, of length L and average density ρ_0, floats partially immersed in the liquid of density ρ. A length h of the rod protrudes above the surface of the liquid. Show that the density of the liquid is given by

$$\rho = \frac{\rho_0 L}{L - h}$$

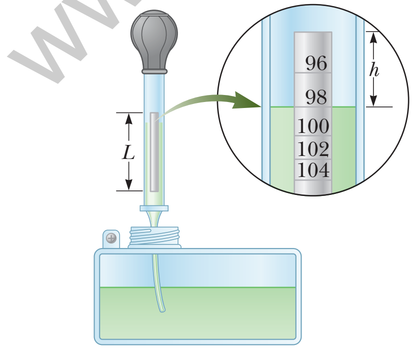


Figure P14.36 Problems 36 and 37.

37. Refer to Problem 36 and Figure P14.36. A hydrometer is to be constructed with a cylindrical floating rod. Nine fiduciary marks are to be placed along the rod to indicate densities of 0.98 g/cm^3, 1.00 g/cm^3, 1.02 g/cm^3, 1.04 g/cm^3, . . . , 1.14 g/cm^3. The row of marks is to start 0.200 cm from the top end of the rod and end 1.80 cm from the top end. (a) What is the required length of the rod? (b) What must be its average density? (c) Should the marks be equally spaced? Explain your answer.

38. On October 21, 2001, Ian Ashpole of the United Kingdom achieved a record altitude of 3.35 km (11 000 ft) powered by 600 toy balloons filled with helium. Each filled balloon had a radius of about 0.50 m and an estimated mass of 0.30 kg. (a) Estimate the total buoyant force on the 600 balloons. (b) Estimate the net upward force on all 600 balloons. (c) Ashpole parachuted to the Earth after the balloons began to burst at the high altitude and the buoyant force decreased. Why did the balloons burst?

39. M How many cubic meters of helium are required to lift a light balloon with a 400-kg payload to a height of 8 000 m? Take $\rho_{He} = 0.179\ kg/m^3$. Assume the balloon maintains a constant volume and the density of air decreases with the altitude z according to the expression $\rho_{air} = \rho_0 e^{-z/8\,000}$, where z is in meters and $\rho_0 = 1.20\ kg/m^3$ is the density of air at sea level.

Section 14.5 Fluid Dynamics

Section 14.6 Bernoulli's Equation

40. Water flowing through a garden hose of diameter 2.74 cm fills a 25-L bucket in 1.50 min. (a) What is the speed of the water leaving the end of the hose? (b) A nozzle is now attached to the end of the hose. If the nozzle diameter is one-third the diameter of the hose, what is the speed of the water leaving the nozzle?

41. M A large storage tank, open at the top and filled with water, develops a small hole in its side at a point 16.0 m below the water level. The rate of flow from the leak is found to be $2.50 \times 10^{-3}\ m^3/min$. Determine (a) the speed at which the water leaves the hole and (b) the diameter of the hole.

42. Water moves through a constricted pipe in steady, ideal flow. At the lower point shown in Figure P14.42, the pressure is $P_1 = 1.75 \times 10^4$ Pa and the pipe diameter is 6.00 cm. At another point $y = 0.250$ m higher, the pressure is $P_2 = 1.20 \times 10^4$ Pa and the pipe diameter is 3.00 cm. Find the speed of flow (a) in the lower section and (b) in the upper section. (c) Find the volume flow rate through the pipe.

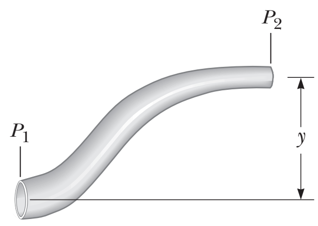


Figure P14.42

43. Figure P14.43 on page 442 shows a stream of water in steady flow from a kitchen faucet. At the faucet, the diameter of the stream is 0.960 cm. The stream fills a 125-cm^3 container in 16.3 s. Find the diameter of the stream 13.0 cm below the opening of the faucet.

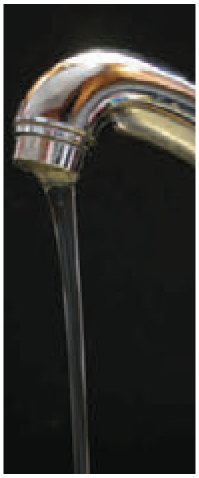


Figure P14.43

44. A village maintains a large tank with an open top, containing water for emergencies. The water can drain from the tank through a hose of diameter 6.60 cm. The hose ends with a nozzle of diameter 2.20 cm. A rubber stopper is inserted into the nozzle. The water level in the tank is kept 7.50 m above the nozzle. (a) Calculate the friction force exerted on the stopper by the nozzle. (b) The stopper is removed. What mass of water flows from the nozzle in 2.00 h? (c) Calculate the gauge pressure of the flowing water in the hose just behind the nozzle.

45. A legendary Dutch boy saved Holland by plugging a hole of diameter 1.20 cm in a dike with his finger. If the hole was 2.00 m below the surface of the North Sea (density 1 030 kg/m^3), (a) what was the force on his finger? (b) If he pulled his finger out of the hole, during what time interval would the released water fill 1 acre of land to a depth of 1 ft? Assume the hole remained constant in size.

46. Water falls over a dam of height h with a mass flow rate of R, in units of kilograms per second. (a) Show that the power available from the water is

$$P = Rgh$$

where g is the free-fall acceleration. (b) Each hydroelectric unit at the Grand Coulee Dam takes in water at a rate of 8.50×10^5 kg/s from a height of 87.0 m. The power developed by the falling water is converted to electric power with an efficiency of 85.0%. How much electric power does each hydroelectric unit produce?

47. Water is pumped up from the Colorado River to supply Grand Canyon Village, located on the rim of the canyon. The river is at an elevation of 564 m, and the village is at an elevation of 2 096 m. Imagine that the water is pumped through a single long pipe 15.0 cm in diameter, driven by a single pump at the bottom end. (a) What is the minimum pressure at which the water must be pumped if it is to arrive at the village? (b) If 4 500 m^3 of water is pumped per day, what is the speed of the water in the pipe? *Note:* Assume the free-fall acceleration and the density of air are constant over this range of elevations. The pressures you calculate are too high for an ordinary pipe. The water is actually lifted in stages by several pumps through shorter pipes.

48. In ideal flow, a liquid of density 850 kg/m^3 moves from a horizontal tube of radius 1.00 cm into a second horizontal tube of radius 0.500 cm at the same elevation as the first tube. The pressure differs by ΔP between the liquid in one tube and the liquid in the second tube. (a) Find the volume flow rate as a function of ΔP. Evaluate the volume flow rate for (b) $\Delta P = 6.00$ kPa and (c) $\Delta P = 12.0$ kPa.

49. The Venturi tube discussed in Example 14.8 and shown in Figure P14.49 may be used as a fluid flowmeter. Suppose the device is used at a service station to measure the flow rate of gasoline ($\rho = 7.00 \times 10^2$ kg/m^3) through a hose having an outlet radius of 1.20 cm. If the difference in pressure is measured to be $P_1 - P_2 = 1.20$ kPa and the radius of the inlet tube to the meter is 2.40 cm, find (a) the speed of the gasoline as it leaves the hose and (b) the fluid flow rate in cubic meters per second.

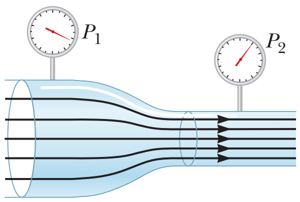


Figure P14.49

50. **Review.** Old Faithful Geyser in Yellowstone National Park erupts at approximately one-hour intervals, and the height of the water column reaches 40.0 m (Fig. P14.50). (a) Model the rising stream as a series of separate droplets. Analyze the free-fall motion of

Figure P14.50

one of the droplets to determine the speed at which the water leaves the ground. (b) **What If?** Model the rising stream as an ideal fluid in streamline flow. Use Bernoulli's equation to determine the speed of the water as it leaves ground level. (c) How does the answer from part (a) compare with the answer from part (b)? (d) What is the pressure (above atmospheric) in the heated underground chamber if its depth is 175 m? Assume the chamber is large compared with the geyser's vent.

Section 14.7 Other Applications of Fluid Dynamics

51. An airplane is cruising at altitude 10 km. The pressure outside the craft is 0.287 atm; within the passenger compartment, the pressure is 1.00 atm and the temperature is 20°C. A small leak occurs in one of the window seals in the passenger compartment. Model the air as an ideal fluid to estimate the speed of the airstream flowing through the leak.

52. An airplane has a mass of 1.60×10^4 kg, and each wing has an area of 40.0 m^2. During level flight, the pressure on the lower wing surface is 7.00×10^4 Pa. (a) Suppose the lift on the airplane were due to a pressure difference alone. Determine the pressure on the upper wing surface. (b) More realistically, a significant part of the lift is due to deflection of air downward by the wing. Does the inclusion of this force mean that the pressure in part (a) is higher or lower? Explain.

53. A siphon is used to drain water from a tank as illustrated in Figure P14.53. Assume steady flow without friction. (a) If $h = 1.00$ m, find the speed of outflow at the end of the siphon. (b) **What If?** What is the limitation on the height of the top of the siphon above the end of the siphon? *Note:* For the flow of the liquid to be continuous, its pressure must not drop below its vapor pressure. Assume the water is at 20.0°C, at which the vapor pressure is 2.3 kPa.

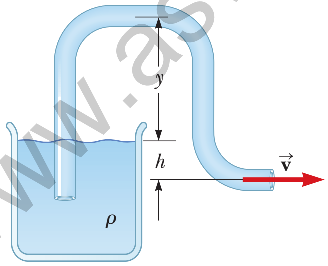


Figure P14.53

54. The Bernoulli effect can have important consequences for the design of buildings. For example, wind can blow around a skyscraper at remarkably high speed, creating low pressure. The higher atmospheric pressure in the still air inside the buildings can cause windows to pop out. As originally constructed, the John Hancock Building in Boston popped windowpanes that fell many stories to the sidewalk below. (a) Suppose a horizontal wind blows with a speed of 11.2 m/s outside a large pane of plate glass with dimensions 4.00 m × 1.50 m. Assume the density of the air to be constant at 1.20 kg/m^3. The air inside the building is at atmospheric pressure. What is the total force exerted by air on the windowpane? (b) **What If?** If a second skyscraper is built nearby, the airspeed can be especially high where wind passes through the narrow separation between the buildings. Solve part (a) again with a wind speed of 22.4 m/s, twice as high.

55. M A hypodermic syringe contains a medicine with the density of water (Fig. P14.55). The barrel of the syringe has a cross-sectional area $A = 2.50 \times 10^{-5}$ m^2, and the needle has a cross-sectional area $a = 1.00 \times 10^{-8}$ m^2. In the absence of a force on the plunger, the pressure everywhere is 1.00 atm. A force $\vec{F}$ of magnitude 2.00 N acts on the plunger, making medicine squirt horizontally from the needle. Determine the speed of the medicine as it leaves the needle's tip.

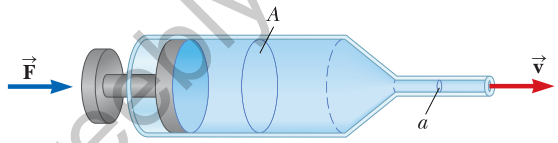


Figure P14.55

Additional Problems

56. Decades ago, it was thought that huge herbivorous dinosaurs such as *Apatosaurus* and *Brachiosaurus* habitually walked on the bottom of lakes, extending their long necks up to the surface to breathe. *Brachiosaurus* had its nostrils on the top of its head. In 1977, Knut Schmidt-Nielsen pointed out that breathing would be too much work for such a creature. For a simple model, consider a sample consisting of 10.0 L of air at absolute pressure 2.00 atm, with density 2.40 kg/m^3, located at the surface of a freshwater lake. Find the work required to transport it to a depth of 10.3 m, with its temperature, volume, and pressure remaining constant. This energy investment is greater than the energy that can be obtained by metabolism of food with the oxygen in that quantity of air.

57. W (a) Calculate the absolute pressure at an ocean depth of 1 000 m. Assume the density of seawater is 1 030 kg/m^3 and the air above exerts a pressure of 101.3 kPa. (b) At this depth, what is the buoyant force on a spherical submarine having a diameter of 5.00 m?

58. In about 1657, Otto von Guericke, inventor of the air pump, evacuated a sphere made of two brass hemispheres (Fig. P14.58). Two teams of eight horses each could pull the hemispheres apart only on some trials and then "with greatest difficulty," with the resulting

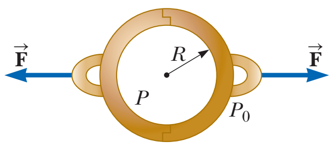


Figure P14.58

sound likened to a cannon firing. Find the force F required to pull the thin-walled evacuated hemispheres apart in terms of R, the radius of the hemispheres; P, the pressure inside the hemispheres; and atmospheric pressure P_0.

59. A spherical aluminum ball of mass 1.26 kg contains an empty spherical cavity that is concentric with the ball. The ball barely floats in water. Calculate (a) the outer radius of the ball and (b) the radius of the cavity.

60. GP A helium-filled balloon (whose envelope has a mass of $m_b = 0.250$ kg) is tied to a uniform string of length $\ell = 2.00$ m and mass $m = 0.050\,0$ kg. The balloon is spherical with a radius of $r = 0.400$ m. When released in air of temperature 20°C and density $\rho_{air} = 1.20$ kg/m^3, it lifts a length h of string and then remains stationary as shown in Figure P14.60. We wish to find the length of string lifted by the balloon. (a) When the balloon remains stationary, what is the appropriate analysis model to describe it? (b) Write a force equation for the balloon from this model in terms of the buoyant force B, the weight F_b of the balloon, the weight F_{He} of the helium, and the weight F_s of the segment of string of length h. (c) Make an appropriate substitution for each of these forces and solve symbolically for the mass m_s of the segment of string of length h in terms of m_b, r, ρ_{air}, and the density of helium ρ_{He}. (d) Find the numerical value of the mass m_s. (e) Find the length h numerically.

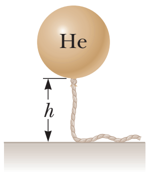


Figure P14.60

61. AMT **Review.** Figure P14.61 shows a valve separating a reservoir from a water tank. If this valve is opened, what is the maximum height above point B attained by the water stream coming out of the right side of the tank? Assume $h = 10.0$ m, $L = 2.00$ m, and $\theta = 30.0°$, and assume the cross-sectional area at A is very large compared with that at B.

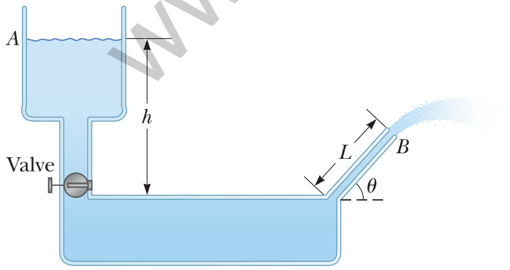


Figure P14.61

62. The true weight of an object can be measured in a vacuum, where buoyant forces are absent. A measurement in air, however, is disturbed by buoyant forces. An object of volume V is weighed in air on an equal-arm balance with the use of counterweights of density ρ. Representing the density of air as ρ_{air} and the balance reading as F'_g, show that the true weight F_g is

$$F_g = F'_g + \left(V - \frac{F'_g}{\rho g}\right)\rho_{air} g$$

63. Water is forced out of a fire extinguisher by air pressure as shown in Figure P14.63. How much gauge air pressure in the tank is required for the water jet to have a speed of 30.0 m/s when the water level is 0.500 m below the nozzle?

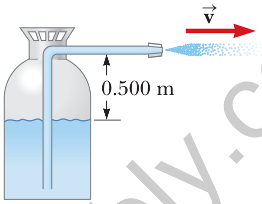


Figure P14.63

64. **Review.** Assume a certain liquid, with density 1 230 kg/m^3, exerts no friction force on spherical objects. A ball of mass 2.10 kg and radius 9.00 cm is dropped from rest into a deep tank of this liquid from a height of 3.30 m above the surface. (a) Find the speed at which the ball enters the liquid. (b) Evaluate the magnitudes of the two forces that are exerted on the ball as it moves through the liquid. (c) Explain why the ball moves down only a limited distance into the liquid and calculate this distance. (d) With what speed will the ball pop up out of the liquid? (e) How does the time interval Δt_{down}, during which the ball moves from the surface down to its lowest point, compare with the time interval Δt_{up} for the return trip between the same two points? (f) **What If?** Now modify the model to suppose the liquid exerts a small friction force on the ball, opposite in direction to its motion. In this case, how do the time intervals Δt_{down} and Δt_{up} compare? Explain your answer with a conceptual argument rather than a numerical calculation.

65. AMT **Review.** A light spring of constant $k = 90.0$ N/m is attached vertically to a table (Fig. P14.65a). A 2.00-g balloon is filled with helium (density = 0.179 kg/m^3)

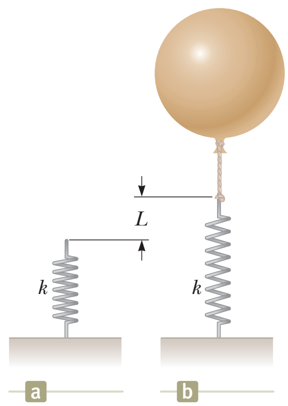


Figure P14.65

to a volume of 5.00 m^3 and is then connected with a light cord to the spring, causing the spring to stretch as shown in Figure P14.65b. Determine the extension distance L when the balloon is in equilibrium.

66. To an order of magnitude, how many helium-filled toy balloons would be required to lift you? Because helium is an irreplaceable resource, develop a theoretical answer rather than an experimental answer. In your solution, state what physical quantities you take as data and the values you measure or estimate for them.

67. A 42.0-kg boy uses a solid block of Styrofoam as a raft while fishing on a pond. The Styrofoam has an area of 1.00 m^2 and is 0.050 0 m thick. While sitting on the surface of the raft, the boy finds that the raft just supports him so that the top of the raft is at the level of the pond. Determine the density of the Styrofoam.

68. A common parameter that can be used to predict turbulence in fluid flow is called the *Reynolds number.* The Reynolds number for fluid flow in a pipe is a dimensionless quantity defined as

$$\mathrm{Re} = \frac{\rho v d}{\mu}$$

where ρ is the density of the fluid, v is its speed, d is the inner diameter of the pipe, and μ is the viscosity of the fluid. Viscosity is a measure of the internal resistance of a liquid to flow and has units of Pa · s. The criteria for the type of flow are as follows:

- If Re $<$ 2 300, the flow is laminar.
- If 2 300 $<$ Re $<$ 4 000, the flow is in a transition region between laminar and turbulent.
- If Re $>$ 4 000, the flow is turbulent.

(a) Let's model blood of density 1.06×10^3 kg/m^3 and viscosity 3.00×10^{-3} Pa · s as a pure liquid, that is, ignore the fact that it contains red blood cells. Suppose it is flowing in a large artery of radius 1.50 cm with a speed of 0.067 0 m/s. Show that the flow is laminar. (b) Imagine that the artery ends in a *single* capillary so that the radius of the artery reduces to a much smaller value. What is the radius of the capillary that would cause the flow to become turbulent? (c) Actual capillaries have radii of about 5–10 micrometers, much smaller than the value in part (b). Why doesn't the flow in actual capillaries become turbulent?

69. Evangelista Torricelli was the first person to realize that we live at the bottom of an ocean of air. He correctly surmised that the pressure of our atmosphere is attributable to the weight of the air. The density of air at 0°C at the Earth's surface is 1.29 kg/m^3. The density decreases with increasing altitude (as the atmosphere thins). On the other hand, if we assume the density is constant at 1.29 kg/m^3 up to some altitude h and is zero above that altitude, then h would represent the depth of the ocean of air. (a) Use this model to determine the value of h that gives a pressure of 1.00 atm at the surface of the Earth. (b) Would the peak of Mount Everest rise above the surface of such an atmosphere?

70. **Review.** With reference to the dam studied in Example 14.4 and shown in Figure 14.5, (a) show that the total torque exerted by the water behind the dam about a horizontal axis through O is $\frac{1}{6}\rho g w H^3$. (b) Show that the effective line of action of the total force exerted by the water is at a distance $\frac{1}{3}H$ above O.

71. A 1.00-kg beaker containing 2.00 kg of oil (density = 916.0 kg/m^3) rests on a scale. A 2.00-kg block of iron suspended from a spring scale is completely submerged in the oil as shown in Figure P14.71. Determine the equilibrium readings of both scales.

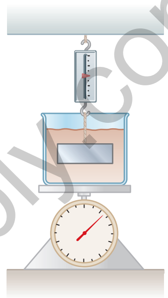


Figure P14.71 Problems 71 and 72.

72. A beaker of mass m_b containing oil of mass m_o and density ρ_o rests on a scale. A block of iron of mass m_{Fe} suspended from a spring scale is completely submerged in the oil as shown in Figure P14.71. Determine the equilibrium readings of both scales.

73. In 1983, the United States began coining the one-cent piece out of copper-clad zinc rather than pure copper. The mass of the old copper penny is 3.083 g and that of the new cent is 2.517 g. The density of copper is 8.920 g/cm^3 and that of zinc is 7.133 g/cm^3. The new and old coins have the same volume. Calculate the percent of zinc (by volume) in the new cent.

74. **Review.** A long, cylindrical rod of radius r is weighted on one end so that it floats upright in a fluid having a density ρ. It is pushed down a distance x from its equilibrium position and released. Show that the rod will execute simple harmonic motion if the resistive effects of the fluid are negligible, and determine the period of the oscillations.

75. **Review.** Figure P14.75 shows the essential parts of a hydraulic brake system. The area of the piston in the master cylinder is 1.8 cm^2 and that of the piston

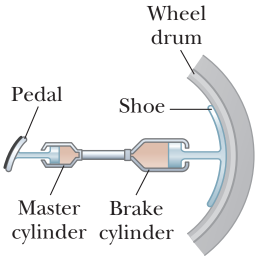


Figure P14.75

in the brake cylinder is 6.4 cm^2. The coefficient of friction between shoe and wheel drum is 0.50. If the wheel has a radius of 34 cm, determine the frictional torque about the axle when a force of 44 N is exerted on the brake pedal.

76. The *spirit-in-glass thermometer,* invented in Florence, Italy, around 1654, consists of a tube of liquid (the spirit) containing a number of submerged glass spheres with slightly different masses (Fig. P14.76). At sufficiently low temperatures, all the spheres float, but as the temperature rises, the spheres sink one after another. The device is a crude but interesting tool for measuring temperature. Suppose the tube is filled with ethyl alcohol, whose density is 0.789 45 g/cm^3 at 20.0°C and decreases to 0.780 97 g/cm^3 at 30.0°C. (a) Assuming that one of the spheres has a radius of 1.000 cm and is in equilibrium halfway up the tube at 20.0°C, determine its mass. (b) When the temperature increases to 30.0°C, what mass must a second sphere of the same radius have to be in equilibrium at the halfway point? (c) At 30.0°C, the first sphere has fallen to the bottom of the tube. What upward force does the bottom of the tube exert on this sphere?

© iStockphoto.com/Alberto Pomares Photography

Figure P14.76

77. **Review.** A uniform disk of mass 10.0 kg and radius 0.250 m spins at 300 rev/min on a low-friction axle. It must be brought to a stop in 1.00 min by a brake pad that makes contact with the disk at an average distance 0.220 m from the axis. The coefficient of friction between pad and disk is 0.500. A piston in a cylinder of diameter 5.00 cm presses the brake pad against the disk. Find the pressure required for the brake fluid in the cylinder.

78. **Review.** In a water pistol, a piston drives water through a large tube of area A_1 into a smaller tube of area A_2 as shown in Figure P14.78. The radius of the large tube is 1.00 cm and that of the small tube is 1.00 mm. The smaller tube is 3.00 cm above the larger tube. (a) If the pistol is fired horizontally at a height of 1.50 m, determine the time interval required for the water to travel from the nozzle to the ground. Neglect air resistance and assume atmospheric pressure is 1.00 atm. (b) If the desired range of the stream is 8.00 m, with what speed v_2 must the stream leave the nozzle? (c) At what speed v_1 must the plunger be moved to achieve the desired range? (d) What is the pressure at the nozzle? (e) Find the pressure needed in the larger tube. (f) Calculate the force that must be exerted on the trigger to achieve the desired range. (The force that must be exerted is due to pressure over and above atmospheric pressure.)

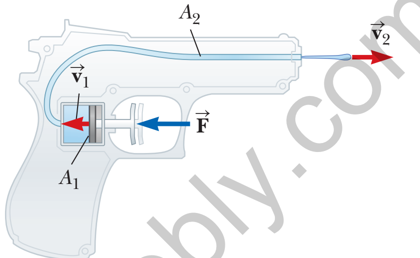


Figure P14.78

79. An incompressible, nonviscous fluid is initially at rest in the vertical portion of the pipe shown in Figure P14.79a, where L = 2.00 m. When the valve is opened, the fluid flows into the horizontal section of the pipe. What is the fluid's speed when all the fluid is in the horizontal section as shown in Figure P14.79b? Assume the cross-sectional area of the entire pipe is constant.

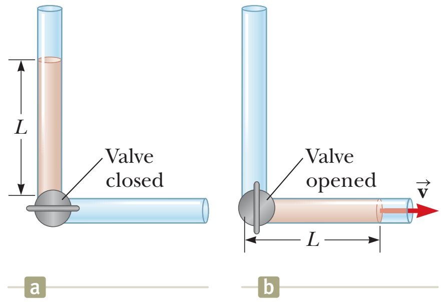


Figure P14.79

80. The water supply of a building is fed through a main pipe 6.00 cm in diameter. A 2.00-cm-diameter faucet tap, located 2.00 m above the main pipe, is observed to fill a 25.0-L container in 30.0 s. (a) What is the speed at which the water leaves the faucet? (b) What is the gauge pressure in the 6-cm main pipe? Assume the faucet is the only "leak" in the building.

81. A U-tube open at both ends is partially filled with water (Fig. P14.81a). Oil having a density 750 kg/m^3 is then poured into the right arm and forms a column L = 5.00 cm high (Fig. P14.81b). (a) Determine the difference h in the heights of the two liquid surfaces. (b) The right arm is then shielded from any air motion while air is blown across the top of the left arm until the surfaces of the two liquids are at the same height (Fig. P14.81c). Determine the speed of the air being blown across the left arm. Take the density of air as constant at 1.20 kg/m^3.

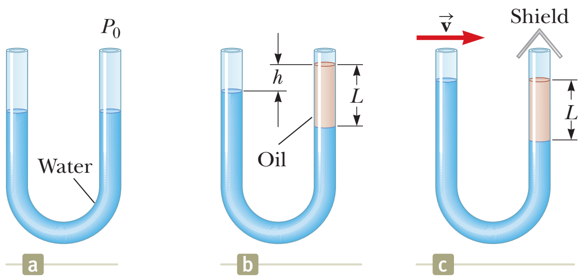


Figure P14.81

82. A woman is draining her fish tank by siphoning the water into an outdoor drain as shown in Figure P14.82. The rectangular tank has footprint area A and depth h. The drain is located a distance d below the surface of the water in the tank, where $d >> h$. The cross-sectional area of the siphon tube is A'. Model the water as flowing without friction. Show that the time interval required to empty the tank is given by

$$\Delta t = \frac{Ah}{A'\sqrt{2gd}}$$

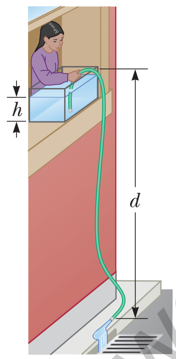


Figure P14.82

83. The hull of an experimental boat is to be lifted above the water by a hydrofoil mounted below its keel as shown in Figure P14.83. The hydrofoil has a shape like that of an airplane wing. Its area projected onto a horizontal surface is A. When the boat is towed at sufficiently high speed, water of density ρ moves in streamline flow so that its average speed at the top of the hydrofoil is n times larger than its speed v_b below the hydrofoil. (a) Ignoring the buoyant force, show that the upward lift force exerted by the water on the hydrofoil has a magnitude

$$F \approx \tfrac{1}{2}(n^2 - 1)\rho v_b^{\,2} A$$

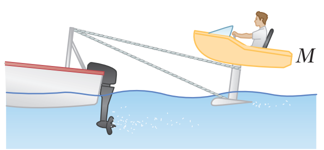


Figure P14.83

(b) The boat has mass M. Show that the liftoff speed is given by

$$v \approx \sqrt{\frac{2Mg}{(n^2 - 1)A\rho}}$$

84. M A jet of water squirts out horizontally from a hole near the bottom of the tank shown in Figure P14.84. If the hole has a diameter of 3.50 mm, what is the height h of the water level in the tank?

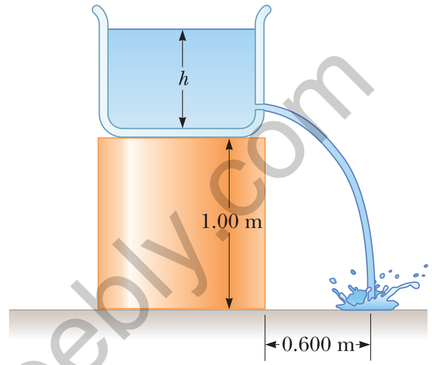


Figure P14.84

Challenge Problems

85. An ice cube whose edges measure 20.0 mm is floating in a glass of ice-cold water, and one of the ice cube's faces is parallel to the water's surface. (a) How far below the water surface is the bottom face of the block? (b) Ice-cold ethyl alcohol is gently poured onto the water surface to form a layer 5.00 mm thick above the water. The alcohol does not mix with the water. When the ice cube again attains hydrostatic equilibrium, what is the distance from the top of the water to the bottom face of the block? (c) Additional cold ethyl alcohol is poured onto the water's surface until the top surface of the alcohol coincides with the top surface of the ice cube (in hydrostatic equilibrium). How thick is the required layer of ethyl alcohol?

86. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A barge is carrying a load of small pieces of iron along a river. The iron pile is in the shape of a cone for which the radius r of the base of the cone is equal to the central height h of the cone. The barge is square in shape, with vertical sides of length $2r$, so that the pile of iron comes just up to the edges of the barge. The barge approaches a low bridge, and the captain realizes that the top of the pile of iron is not going to make it under the bridge. The captain orders the crew to shovel iron pieces from the pile into the water to reduce the height of the pile. As iron is shoveled from the pile, the pile always has the shape of a cone whose diameter is equal to the side length of the barge. After a certain volume of iron is removed from the barge, it makes it under the bridge without the top of the pile striking the bridge.

87. Show that the variation of atmospheric pressure with altitude is given by $P = P_0 e^{-\alpha y}$, where $\alpha = \rho_0 g / P_0$, P_0

is atmospheric pressure at some reference level $y = 0$, and ρ_0 is the atmospheric density at this level. Assume the decrease in atmospheric pressure over an infinitesimal change in altitude (so that the density is approximately uniform over the infinitesimal change) can be expressed from Equation 14.4 as $dP = -\rho g\ dy$. Also assume the density of air is proportional to the pressure, which, as we will see in Chapter 20, is equivalent to assuming the temperature of the air is the same at all altitudes.

PART 2

Oscillations and Mechanical Waves

Falling drops of water cause a water surface to oscillate. These oscillations are associated with circular waves moving away from the point at which the drops fall. In Part 2 of the text, we will explore the principles related to oscillations and waves. *(Marga Buschbell Steeger/Photographer's Choice/Getty Images)*

We begin this new part of the text by studying a special type of motion called *periodic* motion, the repeating motion of an object in which it continues to return to a given position after a fixed time interval. The repetitive movements of such an object are called *oscillations.* We will focus our attention on a special case of periodic motion called *simple harmonic motion.* All periodic motions can be modeled as combinations of simple harmonic motions.

Simple harmonic motion also forms the basis for our understanding of *mechanical waves.* Sound waves, seismic waves, waves on stretched strings, and water waves are all produced by some source of oscillation. As a sound wave travels through the air, elements of the air oscillate back and forth; as a water wave travels across a pond, elements of the water oscillate up and down and backward and forward. The motion of the elements of the medium bears a strong resemblance to the periodic motion of an oscillating pendulum or an object attached to a spring.

To explain many other phenomena in nature, we must understand the concepts of oscillations and waves. For instance, although skyscrapers and bridges appear to be rigid, they actually oscillate, something the architects and engineers who design and build them must take into account. To understand how radio and television work, we must understand the origin and nature of electromagnetic waves and how they propagate through space. Finally, much of what scientists have learned about atomic structure has come from information carried by waves. Therefore, we must first study oscillations and waves if we are to understand the concepts and theories of atomic physics. ■

CHAPTER

15

Oscillatory Motion

The London Millennium Bridge over the River Thames in London. On opening day of the bridge, pedestrians noticed a swinging motion of the bridge, leading to its being named the "Wobbly Bridge." The bridge was closed after two days and remained closed for two years. Over 50 *tuned mass dampers* were added to the bridge: the pairs of spring-loaded structures on top of the cross members (arrow). We will study both oscillations and damping of oscillations in this chapter. *(Monkey Business Images/Shutterstock.com)*

Periodic motion is motion of an object that regularly returns to a given position after a fixed time interval. With a little thought, we can identify several types of periodic motion in everyday life. Your car returns to the driveway each afternoon. You return to the dinner table each night to eat. A bumped chandelier swings back and forth, returning to the same position at a regular rate. The Earth returns to the same position in its orbit around the Sun each year, resulting in the variation among the four seasons.

A special kind of periodic motion occurs in mechanical systems when the force acting on an object is proportional to the position of the object relative to some equilibrium position. If this force is always directed toward the equilibrium position, the motion is called *simple harmonic motion*, which is the primary focus of this chapter.

15.1 Motion of an Object Attached to a Spring

As a model for simple harmonic motion, consider a block of mass m attached to the end of a spring, with the block free to move on a frictionless, horizontal surface

(Fig. 15.1). When the spring is neither stretched nor compressed, the block is at rest at the position called the **equilibrium position** of the system, which we identify as $x = 0$ (Fig. 15.1b). We know from experience that such a system oscillates back and forth if disturbed from its equilibrium position.

We can understand the oscillating motion of the block in Figure 15.1 qualitatively by first recalling that when the block is displaced to a position x, the spring exerts on the block a force that is proportional to the position and given by **Hooke's law** (see Section 7.4):

$$F_s = -kx \quad (15.1)$$

◀ Hooke's law

We call F_s a **restoring force** because it is always directed toward the equilibrium position and therefore *opposite* the displacement of the block from equilibrium. That is, when the block is displaced to the right of $x = 0$ in Figure 15.1a, the position is positive and the restoring force is directed to the left. When the block is displaced to the left of $x = 0$ as in Figure 15.1c, the position is negative and the restoring force is directed to the right.

When the block is displaced from the equilibrium point and released, it is a particle under a net force and consequently undergoes an acceleration. Applying the particle under a net force model to the motion of the block, with Equation 15.1 providing the net force in the x direction, we obtain

$$\sum F_x = ma_x \rightarrow -kx = ma_x$$

$$a_x = -\frac{k}{m}x \quad (15.2)$$

That is, the acceleration of the block is proportional to its position, and the direction of the acceleration is opposite the direction of the displacement of the block from equilibrium. Systems that behave in this way are said to exhibit **simple harmonic motion.** An object moves with simple harmonic motion whenever its acceleration is proportional to its position and is oppositely directed to the displacement from equilibrium.

If the block in Figure 15.1 is displaced to a position $x = A$ and released from rest, its *initial* acceleration is $-kA/m$. When the block passes through the equilibrium position $x = 0$, its acceleration is zero. At this instant, its speed is a maximum because the acceleration changes sign. The block then continues to travel to the left of equilibrium with a positive acceleration and finally reaches $x = -A$, at which time its acceleration is $+kA/m$ and its speed is again zero as discussed in Sections 7.4 and 7.9. The block completes a full cycle of its motion by returning to the original position, again passing through $x = 0$ with maximum speed. Therefore, the block oscillates between the turning points $x = \pm A$. In the absence of

Pitfall Prevention 15.1

The Orientation of the Spring Figure 15.1 shows a *horizontal* spring, with an attached block sliding on a frictionless surface. Another possibility is a block hanging from a *vertical* spring. All the results we discuss for the horizontal spring are the same for the vertical spring with one exception: when the block is placed on the vertical spring, its weight causes the spring to extend. If the resting position of the block is defined as $x = 0$, the results of this chapter also apply to this vertical system.

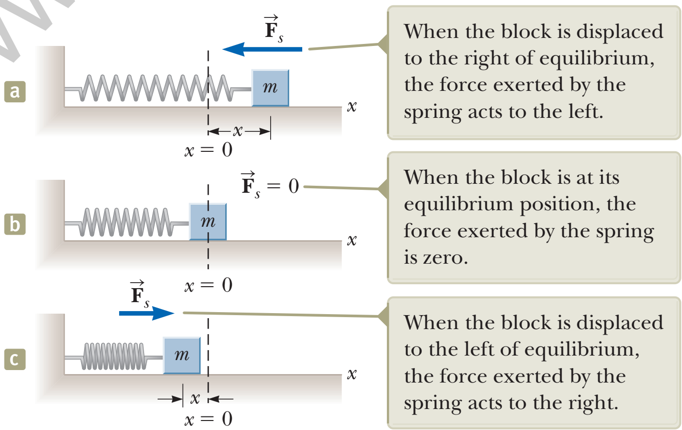


Figure 15.1 A block attached to a spring moving on a frictionless surface.

friction, this idealized motion will continue forever because the force exerted by the spring is conservative. Real systems are generally subject to friction, so they do not oscillate forever. We shall explore the details of the situation with friction in Section 15.6.

Quick Quiz 15.1 A block on the end of a spring is pulled to position $x = A$ and released from rest. In one full cycle of its motion, through what total distance does it travel? **(a)** $A/2$ **(b)** A **(c)** $2A$ **(d)** $4A$

15.2 Analysis Model: Particle in Simple Harmonic Motion

The motion described in the preceding section occurs so often that we identify the **particle in simple harmonic motion** model to represent such situations. To develop a mathematical representation for this model, we will generally choose x as the axis along which the oscillation occurs; hence, we will drop the subscript-x notation in this discussion. Recall that, by definition, $a = dv/dt = d^2x/dt^2$, so we can express Equation 15.2 as

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -\frac{k}{m}x \tag{15.3}$$

Pitfall Prevention 15.2

A Nonconstant Acceleration The acceleration of a particle in simple harmonic motion is not constant. Equation 15.3 shows that its acceleration varies with position x. Therefore, we *cannot* apply the kinematic equations of Chapter 2 in this situation.

If we denote the ratio k/m with the symbol ω^2 (we choose ω^2 rather than ω so as to make the solution we develop below simpler in form), then

$$\omega^2 = \frac{k}{m} \tag{15.4}$$

and Equation 15.3 can be written in the form

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -\omega^2 x \tag{15.5}$$

Let's now find a mathematical solution to Equation 15.5, that is, a function $x(t)$ that satisfies this second-order differential equation and is a mathematical representation of the position of the particle as a function of time. We seek a function whose second derivative is the same as the original function with a negative sign and multiplied by ω^2. The trigonometric functions sine and cosine exhibit this behavior, so we can build a solution around one or both of them. The following cosine function is a solution to the differential equation:

Position versus time for a particle in simple harmonic motion

$$x(t) = A\cos(\omega t + \phi) \tag{15.6}$$

where A, ω, and ϕ are constants. To show explicitly that this solution satisfies Equation 15.5, notice that

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = A\frac{d}{dt}\cos(\omega t + \phi) = -\omega A \sin(\omega t + \phi) \tag{15.7}$$

$$\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -\omega A\frac{d}{dt}\sin(\omega t + \phi) = -\omega^2 A \cos(\omega t + \phi) \tag{15.8}$$

Pitfall Prevention 15.3

Where's the Triangle? Equation 15.6 includes a trigonometric function, a *mathematical function* that can be used whether it refers to a triangle or not. In this case, the cosine function happens to have the correct behavior for representing the position of a particle in simple harmonic motion.

Comparing Equations 15.6 and 15.8, we see that $d^2x/dt^2 = -\omega^2 x$ and Equation 15.5 is satisfied.

The parameters A, ω, and ϕ are constants of the motion. To give physical significance to these constants, it is convenient to form a graphical representation of the motion by plotting x as a function of t as in Figure 15.2a. First, A, called the **amplitude** of the motion, is simply the maximum value of the position of the particle in either the positive or negative x direction. The constant ω is called the **angular frequency,** and it has units[1] of radians per second. It is a measure of how rapidly the oscillations are occurring; the more oscillations per unit time, the higher the value of ω. From Equation 15.4, the angular frequency is

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} \tag{15.9}$$

The constant angle ϕ is called the **phase constant** (or initial phase angle) and, along with the amplitude A, is determined uniquely by the position and velocity of the particle at $t = 0$. If the particle is at its maximum position $x = A$ at $t = 0$, the phase constant is $\phi = 0$ and the graphical representation of the motion is as shown in Figure 15.2b. The quantity $(\omega t + \phi)$ is called the **phase** of the motion. Notice that the function $x(t)$ is periodic and its value is the same each time ωt increases by 2π radians.

Equations 15.1, 15.5, and 15.6 form the basis of the mathematical representation of the particle in simple harmonic motion model. If you are analyzing a situation and find that the force on an object modeled as a particle is of the mathematical form of Equation 15.1, you know the motion is that of a simple harmonic oscillator and the position of the particle is described by Equation 15.6. If you analyze a system and find that it is described by a differential equation of the form of Equation 15.5, the motion is that of a simple harmonic oscillator. If you analyze a situation and find that the position of a particle is described by Equation 15.6, you know the particle undergoes simple harmonic motion.

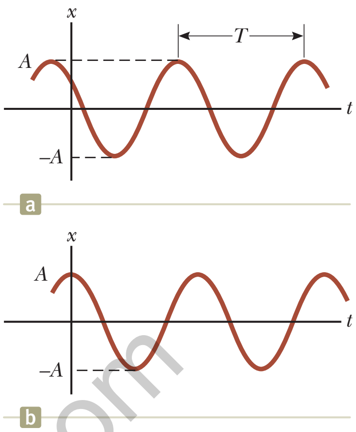


Figure 15.2 (a) An x–t graph for a particle undergoing simple harmonic motion. The amplitude of the motion is A, and the period (defined in Eq. 15.10) is T. (b) The x–t graph for the special case in which $x = A$ at $t = 0$ and hence $\phi = 0$.

Quick Quiz 15.2 Consider a graphical representation (Fig. 15.3) of simple harmonic motion as described mathematically in Equation 15.6. When the particle is at point Ⓐ on the graph, what can you say about its position and velocity? **(a)** The position and velocity are both positive. **(b)** The position and velocity are both negative. **(c)** The position is positive, and the velocity is zero. **(d)** The position is negative, and the velocity is zero. **(e)** The position is positive, and the velocity is negative. **(f)** The position is negative, and the velocity is positive.

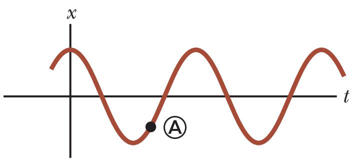


Figure 15.3 (Quick Quiz 15.2) An x–t graph for a particle undergoing simple harmonic motion. At a particular time, the particle's position is indicated by Ⓐ in the graph.

Quick Quiz 15.3 Figure 15.4 shows two curves representing particles undergoing simple harmonic motion. The correct description of these two motions is that the simple harmonic motion of particle B is **(a)** of larger angular frequency and larger amplitude than that of particle A, **(b)** of larger angular frequency and smaller amplitude than that of particle A, **(c)** of smaller angular frequency and larger amplitude than that of particle A, or **(d)** of smaller angular frequency and smaller amplitude than that of particle A.

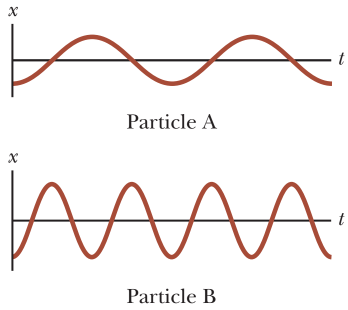


Figure 15.4 (Quick Quiz 15.3) Two x–t graphs for particles undergoing simple harmonic motion. The amplitudes and frequencies are different for the two particles.

Let us investigate further the mathematical description of simple harmonic motion. The **period** T of the motion is the time interval required for the particle to go through one full cycle of its motion (Fig. 15.2a). That is, the values of x and v for the particle at time t equal the values of x and v at time $t + T$. Because the phase increases by 2π radians in a time interval of T,

$$[\omega(t + T) + \phi] - (\omega t + \phi) = 2\pi$$

[1]We have seen many examples in earlier chapters in which we evaluate a trigonometric function of an angle. The argument of a trigonometric function, such as sine or cosine, *must* be a pure number. The radian is a pure number because it is a ratio of lengths. Angles in degrees are pure numbers because the degree is an artificial "unit"; it is not related to measurements of lengths. The argument of the trigonometric function in Equation 15.6 must be a pure number. Therefore, ω *must* be expressed in radians per second (and not, for example, in revolutions per second) if t is expressed in seconds. Furthermore, other types of functions such as logarithms and exponential functions require arguments that are pure numbers.

Pitfall Prevention 15.4

Two Kinds of Frequency We identify two kinds of frequency for a simple harmonic oscillator: f, called simply the *frequency*, is measured in hertz, and ω, the *angular frequency*, is measured in radians per second. Be sure you are clear about which frequency is being discussed or requested in a given problem. Equations 15.11 and 15.12 show the relationship between the two frequencies.

Simplifying this expression gives $\omega T = 2\pi$, or

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} \tag{15.10}$$

The inverse of the period is called the **frequency** f of the motion. Whereas the period is the time interval per oscillation, the frequency represents the number of oscillations the particle undergoes per unit time interval:

$$f = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} \tag{15.11}$$

The units of f are cycles per second, or **hertz** (Hz). Rearranging Equation 15.11 gives

$$\omega = 2\pi f = \frac{2\pi}{T} \tag{15.12}$$

Equations 15.9 through 15.11 can be used to express the period and frequency of the motion for the particle in simple harmonic motion in terms of the characteristics m and k of the system as

Period ▶

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} \tag{15.13}$$

Frequency ▶

$$f = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} \tag{15.14}$$

That is, the period and frequency depend *only* on the mass of the particle and the force constant of the spring and *not* on the parameters of the motion, such as A or ϕ. As we might expect, the frequency is larger for a stiffer spring (larger value of k) and decreases with increasing mass of the particle.

We can obtain the velocity and acceleration[2] of a particle undergoing simple harmonic motion from Equations 15.7 and 15.8:

Velocity of a particle in simple harmonic motion ▶

$$v = \frac{dx}{dt} = -\omega A \sin(\omega t + \phi) \tag{15.15}$$

Acceleration of a particle in simple harmonic motion ▶

$$a = \frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = -\omega^2 A \cos(\omega t + \phi) \tag{15.16}$$

From Equation 15.15, we see that because the sine and cosine functions oscillate between ± 1, the extreme values of the velocity v are $\pm\omega A$. Likewise, Equation 15.16 shows that the extreme values of the acceleration a are $\pm\omega^2 A$. Therefore, the *maximum* values of the magnitudes of the velocity and acceleration are

Maximum magnitudes of velocity and acceleration in simple harmonic motion ▶

$$v_{max} = \omega A = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}A \tag{15.17}$$

$$a_{max} = \omega^2 A = \frac{k}{m}A \tag{15.18}$$

Figure 15.5a plots position versus time for an arbitrary value of the phase constant. The associated velocity–time and acceleration–time curves are illustrated in Figures 15.5b and 15.5c, respectively. They show that the phase of the velocity differs from the phase of the position by $\pi/2$ rad, or 90°. That is, when x is a maximum or a minimum, the velocity is zero. Likewise, when x is zero, the speed is a maximum. Furthermore, notice that the phase of the acceleration differs from the phase of the position by π radians, or 180°. For example, when x is a maximum, a has a maximum magnitude in the opposite direction.

[2]Because the motion of a simple harmonic oscillator takes place in one dimension, we denote velocity as v and acceleration as a, with the direction indicated by a positive or negative sign as in Chapter 2.

Quick Quiz 15.4 An object of mass m is hung from a spring and set into oscillation. The period of the oscillation is measured and recorded as T. The object of mass m is removed and replaced with an object of mass $2m$. When this object is set into oscillation, what is the period of the motion? **(a)** $2T$ **(b)** $\sqrt{2}\,T$ **(c)** T **(d)** $T/\sqrt{2}$ **(e)** $T/2$

Equation 15.6 describes simple harmonic motion of a particle in general. Let's now see how to evaluate the constants of the motion. The angular frequency ω is evaluated using Equation 15.9. The constants A and ϕ are evaluated from the initial conditions, that is, the state of the oscillator at $t = 0$.

Suppose a block is set into motion by pulling it from equilibrium by a distance A and releasing it from rest at $t = 0$ as in Figure 15.6. We must then require our solutions for $x(t)$ and $v(t)$ (Eqs. 15.6 and 15.15) to obey the initial conditions that $x(0) = A$ and $v(0) = 0$:

$$x(0) = A\cos\phi = A$$

$$v(0) = -\omega A\sin\phi = 0$$

These conditions are met if $\phi = 0$, giving $x = A\cos\omega t$ as our solution. To check this solution, notice that it satisfies the condition that $x(0) = A$ because $\cos 0 = 1$.

The position, velocity, and acceleration of the block versus time are plotted in Figure 15.7a for this special case. The acceleration reaches extreme values of $\mp\omega^2 A$ when the position has extreme values of $\pm A$. Furthermore, the velocity has extreme values of $\pm\omega A$, which both occur at $x = 0$. Hence, the quantitative solution agrees with our qualitative description of this system.

Let's consider another possibility. Suppose the system is oscillating and we define $t = 0$ as the instant the block passes through the unstretched position of the spring while moving to the right (Fig. 15.8). In this case, our solutions for $x(t)$ and $v(t)$ must obey the initial conditions that $x(0) = 0$ and $v(0) = v_i$:

$$x(0) = A\cos\phi = 0$$

$$v(0) = -\omega A\sin\phi = v_i$$

The first of these conditions tells us that $\phi = \pm\pi/2$. With these choices for ϕ, the second condition tells us that $A = \mp v_i/\omega$. Because the initial velocity is positive and the amplitude must be positive, we must have $\phi = -\pi/2$. Hence, the solution is

$$x = \frac{v_i}{\omega}\cos\left(\omega t - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$$

The graphs of position, velocity, and acceleration versus time for this choice of $t = 0$ are shown in Figure 15.7b. Notice that these curves are the same as those in Figure

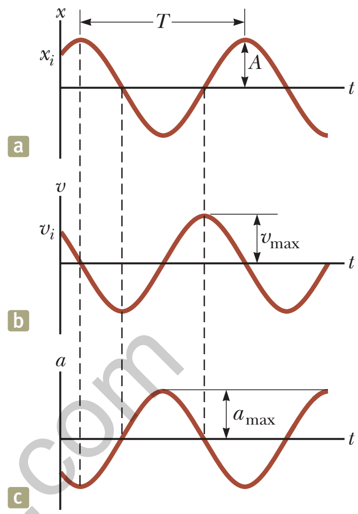


Figure 15.5 Graphical representation of simple harmonic motion. (a) Position versus time. (b) Velocity versus time. (c) Acceleration versus time. Notice that at any specified time the velocity is 90° out of phase with the position and the acceleration is 180° out of phase with the position.

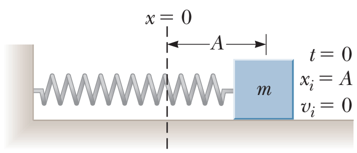


Figure 15.6 A block–spring system that begins its motion from rest with the block at $x = A$ at $t = 0$.

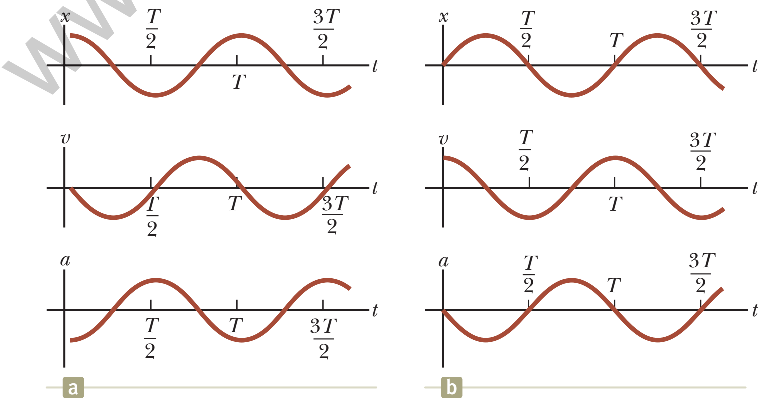


Figure 15.7 (a) Position, velocity, and acceleration versus time for the block in Figure 15.6 under the initial conditions that at $t = 0$, $x(0) = A$, and $v(0) = 0$. (b) Position, velocity, and acceleration versus time for the block in Figure 15.8 under the initial conditions that at $t = 0$, $x(0) = 0$, and $v(0) = v_i$.

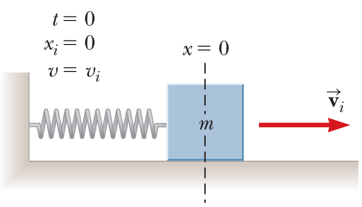
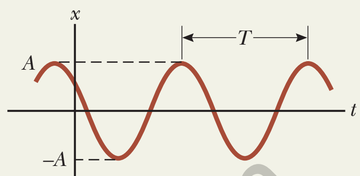


Figure 15.8 The block–spring system is undergoing oscillation, and $t = 0$ is defined at an instant when the block passes through the equilibrium position $x = 0$ and is moving to the right with speed v_i.

15.7a, but shifted to the right by one-fourth of a cycle. This shift is described mathematically by the phase constant $\phi = -\pi/2$, which is one-fourth of a full cycle of 2π.

Analysis Model Particle in Simple Harmonic Motion



Imagine an object that is subject to a force that is proportional to the negative of the object's position, $F = -kx$. Such a force equation is known as Hooke's law, and it describes the force applied to an object attached to an ideal spring. The parameter k in Hooke's law is called the *spring constant* or the *force constant*. The position of an object acted on by a force described by Hooke's law is given by

$$x(t) = A\cos(\omega t + \phi) \quad (15.6)$$

where A is the **amplitude** of the motion, ω is the **angular frequency,** and ϕ is the **phase constant.** The values of A and ϕ depend on the initial position and initial velocity of the particle.

The **period** of the oscillation of the particle is

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} \quad (15.13)$$

and the inverse of the period is the **frequency.**

Examples:

- a bungee jumper hangs from a bungee cord and oscillates up and down
- a guitar string vibrates back and forth in a standing wave, with each element of the string moving in simple harmonic motion (Chapter 18)
- a piston in a gasoline engine oscillates up and down within the cylinder of the engine (Chapter 22)
- an atom in a diatomic molecule vibrates back and forth as if it is connected by a spring to the other atom in the molecule (Chapter 43)

Example 15.1 A Block–Spring System AM

A 200-g block connected to a light spring for which the force constant is 5.00 N/m is free to oscillate on a frictionless, horizontal surface. The block is displaced 5.00 cm from equilibrium and released from rest as in Figure 15.6.

(A) Find the period of its motion.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Figure 15.6 and imagine the block moving back and forth in simple harmonic motion once it is released. Set up an experimental model in the vertical direction by hanging a heavy object such as a stapler from a strong rubber band.

Categorize The block is modeled as a *particle in simple harmonic motion.*

Analyze

Use Equation 15.9 to find the angular frequency of the block–spring system:

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{5.00\ \text{N/m}}{200 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{kg}}} = 5.00\ \text{rad/s}$$

Use Equation 15.13 to find the period of the system:

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = \frac{2\pi}{5.00\ \text{rad/s}} = \boxed{1.26\ \text{s}}$$

(B) Determine the maximum speed of the block.

SOLUTION

Use Equation 15.17 to find v_{max}:

$$v_{max} = \omega A = (5.00\ \text{rad/s})(5.00 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m}) = \boxed{0.250\ \text{m/s}}$$

(C) What is the maximum acceleration of the block?

15.1 continued

SOLUTION

Use Equation 15.18 to find a_{max}: $a_{max} = \omega^2 A = (5.00 \text{ rad/s})^2(5.00 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m}) = 1.25 \text{ m/s}^2$

(D) Express the position, velocity, and acceleration as functions of time in SI units.

SOLUTION

Find the phase constant from the initial condition that $x = A$ at $t = 0$: $x(0) = A \cos \phi = A \rightarrow \phi = 0$

Use Equation 15.6 to write an expression for $x(t)$: $x = A \cos (\omega t + \phi) = 0.050\,0 \cos 5.00t$

Use Equation 15.15 to write an expression for $v(t)$: $v = -\omega A \sin (\omega t + \phi) = -0.250 \sin 5.00t$

Use Equation 15.16 to write an expression for $a(t)$: $a = -\omega^2 A \cos (\omega t + \phi) = -1.25 \cos 5.00t$

Finalize Consider part (a) of Figure 15.7, which shows the graphical representations of the motion of the block in this problem. Make sure that the mathematical representations found above in part (D) are consistent with these graphical representations.

WHAT IF? What if the block were released from the same initial position, $x_i = 5.00$ cm, but with an initial velocity of $v_i = -0.100$ m/s? Which parts of the solution change, and what are the new answers for those that do change?

Answers Part (A) does not change because the period is independent of how the oscillator is set into motion. Parts (B), (C), and (D) will change.

Write position and velocity expressions for the initial conditions:

$$(1) \quad x(0) = A \cos \phi = x_i$$

$$(2) \quad v(0) = -\omega A \sin \phi = v_i$$

Divide Equation (2) by Equation (1) to find the phase constant:

$$\frac{-\omega A \sin \phi}{A \cos \phi} = \frac{v_i}{x_i}$$

$$\tan \phi = -\frac{v_i}{\omega x_i} = -\frac{-0.100 \text{ m/s}}{(5.00 \text{ rad/s})(0.050\,0 \text{ m})} = 0.400$$

$$\phi = \tan^{-1}(0.400) = 0.121\pi$$

Use Equation (1) to find A:

$$A = \frac{x_i}{\cos \phi} = \frac{0.050\,0 \text{ m}}{\cos (0.121\pi)} = 0.053\,9 \text{ m}$$

Find the new maximum speed: $v_{max} = \omega A = (5.00 \text{ rad/s})(5.39 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m}) = 0.269 \text{ m/s}$

Find the new magnitude of the maximum acceleration: $a_{max} = \omega^2 A = (5.00 \text{ rad/s})^2(5.39 \times 10^{-2} \text{ m}) = 1.35 \text{ m/s}^2$

Find new expressions for position, velocity, and acceleration in SI units:

$$x = 0.053\,9 \cos (5.00t + 0.121\pi)$$

$$v = -0.269 \sin (5.00t + 0.121\pi)$$

$$a = -1.35 \cos (5.00t + 0.121\pi)$$

As we saw in Chapters 7 and 8, many problems are easier to solve using an energy approach rather than one based on variables of motion. This particular What If? is easier to solve from an energy approach. Therefore, we shall investigate the energy of the simple harmonic oscillator in the next section.

Example 15.2 Watch Out for Potholes! AM

A car with a mass of 1 300 kg is constructed so that its frame is supported by four springs. Each spring has a force constant of 20 000 N/m. Two people riding in the car have a combined mass of 160 kg. Find the frequency of vibration of the car after it is driven over a pothole in the road.

continued

15.2 continued

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Think about your experiences with automobiles. When you sit in a car, it moves downward a small distance because your weight is compressing the springs further. If you push down on the front bumper and release it, the front of the car oscillates a few times.

Categorize We imagine the car as being supported by a single spring and model the car as a *particle in simple harmonic motion*.

Analyze First, let's determine the effective spring constant of the four springs combined. For a given extension x of the springs, the combined force on the car is the sum of the forces from the individual springs.

Find an expression for the total force on the car:

$$F_{\text{total}} = \sum (-kx) = -\left(\sum k\right)x$$

In this expression, x has been factored from the sum because it is the same for all four springs. The effective spring constant for the combined springs is the sum of the individual spring constants.

Evaluate the effective spring constant:

$$k_{\text{eff}} = \sum k = 4 \times 20\,000 \text{ N/m} = 80\,000 \text{ N/m}$$

Use Equation 15.14 to find the frequency of vibration:

$$f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k_{\text{eff}}}{m}} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{80\,000 \text{ N/m}}{1\,460 \text{ kg}}} = \boxed{1.18 \text{ Hz}}$$

Finalize The mass we used here is that of the car plus the people because that is the total mass that is oscillating. Also notice that we have explored only up-and-down motion of the car. If an oscillation is established in which the car rocks back and forth such that the front end goes up when the back end goes down, the frequency will be different.

WHAT IF? Suppose the car stops on the side of the road and the two people exit the car. One of them pushes downward on the car and releases it so that it oscillates vertically. Is the frequency of the oscillation the same as the value we just calculated?

Answer The suspension system of the car is the same, but the mass that is oscillating is smaller: it no longer includes the mass of the two people. Therefore, the frequency should be higher. Let's calculate the new frequency, taking the mass to be 1 300 kg:

$$f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k_{\text{eff}}}{m}} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{80\,000 \text{ N/m}}{1\,300 \text{ kg}}} = 1.25 \text{ Hz}$$

As predicted, the new frequency is a bit higher.

15.3 Energy of the Simple Harmonic Oscillator

As we have done before, after studying the the motion of an object modeled as a particle in a new situation and investigating the forces involved in influencing that motion, we turn our attention to *energy*. Let us examine the mechanical energy of a system in which a particle undergoes simple harmonic motion, such as the block–spring system illustrated in Figure 15.1. Because the surface is frictionless, the system is isolated and we expect the total mechanical energy of the system to be constant. We assume a massless spring, so the kinetic energy of the system corresponds only to that of the block. We can use Equation 15.15 to express the kinetic energy of the block as

Kinetic energy of a simple harmonic oscillator

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}m\omega^2A^2\sin^2(\omega t + \phi) \qquad \textbf{(15.19)}$$

The elastic potential energy stored in the spring for any elongation x is given by $\frac{1}{2}kx^2$ (see Eq. 7.22). Using Equation 15.6 gives

Potential energy of a simple harmonic oscillator

$$U = \tfrac{1}{2}kx^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2\cos^2(\omega t + \phi) \qquad \textbf{(15.20)}$$

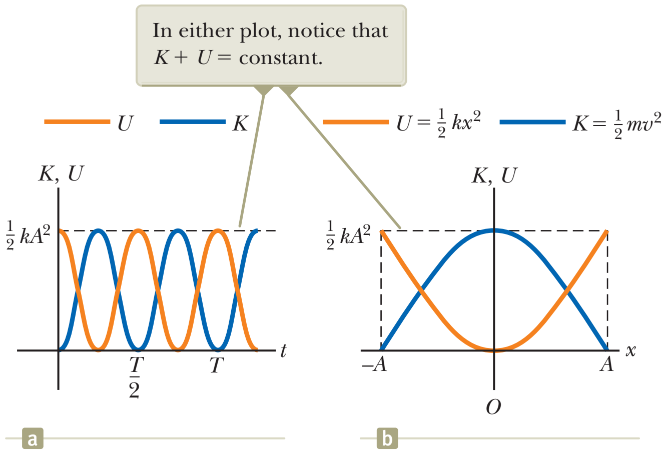


Figure 15.9 (a) Kinetic energy and potential energy versus time for a simple harmonic oscillator with $\phi = 0$. (b) Kinetic energy and potential energy versus position for a simple harmonic oscillator.

We see that K and U are *always* positive quantities or zero. Because $\omega^2 = k/m$, we can express the total mechanical energy of the simple harmonic oscillator as

$$E = K + U = \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2[\sin^2(\omega t + \phi) + \cos^2(\omega t + \phi)]$$

From the identity $\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1$, we see that the quantity in square brackets is unity. Therefore, this equation reduces to

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2 \quad (15.21)$$

Total energy of a simple harmonic oscillator

That is, the total mechanical energy of a simple harmonic oscillator is a constant of the motion and is proportional to the square of the amplitude. The total mechanical energy is equal to the maximum potential energy stored in the spring when $x = \pm A$ because $v = 0$ at these points and there is no kinetic energy. At the equilibrium position, where $U = 0$ because $x = 0$, the total energy, all in the form of kinetic energy, is again $\frac{1}{2}kA^2$.

Plots of the kinetic and potential energies versus time appear in Figure 15.9a, where we have taken $\phi = 0$. At all times, the sum of the kinetic and potential energies is a constant equal to $\frac{1}{2}kA^2$, the total energy of the system.

The variations of K and U with the position x of the block are plotted in Figure 15.9b. Energy is continuously being transformed between potential energy stored in the spring and kinetic energy of the block.

Figure 15.10 on page 460 illustrates the position, velocity, acceleration, kinetic energy, and potential energy of the block–spring system for one full period of the motion. Most of the ideas discussed so far are incorporated in this important figure. Study it carefully.

Finally, we can obtain the velocity of the block at an arbitrary position by expressing the total energy of the system at some arbitrary position x as

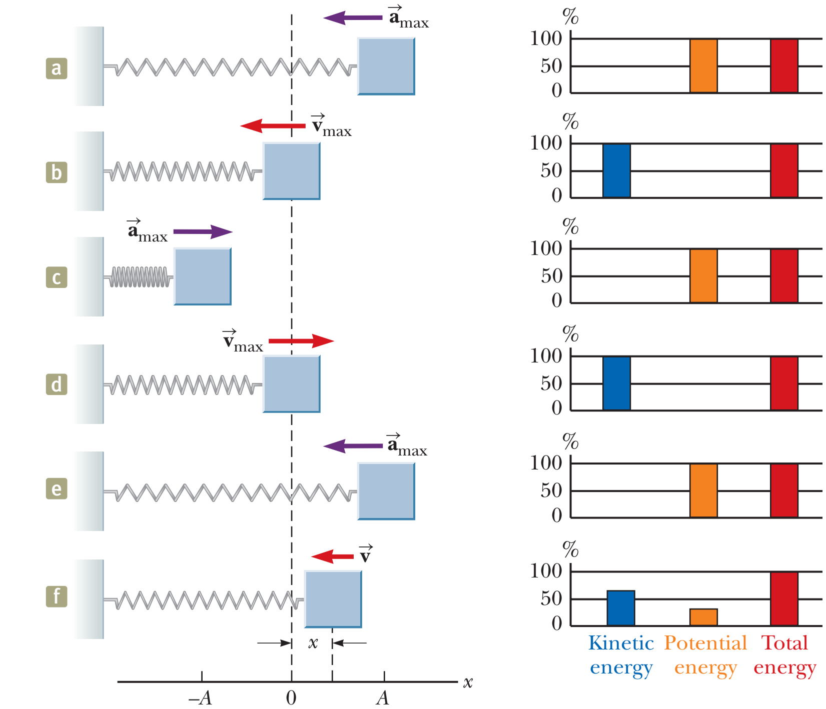
$$E = K + U = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}kx^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2$$

$$v = \pm\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}(A^2 - x^2)} = \pm\omega\sqrt{A^2 - x^2} \quad (15.22)$$

Velocity as a function of position for a simple harmonic oscillator

When you check Equation 15.22 to see whether it agrees with known cases, you find that it verifies that the speed is a maximum at $x = 0$ and is zero at the turning points $x = \pm A$.

You may wonder why we are spending so much time studying simple harmonic oscillators. We do so because they are good models of a wide variety of physical phenomena. For example, recall the Lennard–Jones potential discussed in Example 7.9. This complicated function describes the forces holding atoms together. Figure 15.11a on page 460 shows that for small displacements from the equilibrium



t	x	v	a	K	U
0	A	0	$-\omega^2 A$	0	$\frac{1}{2}kA^2$
$\frac{T}{4}$	0	$-\omega A$	0	$\frac{1}{2}kA^2$	0
$\frac{T}{2}$	$-A$	0	$\omega^2 A$	0	$\frac{1}{2}kA^2$
$\frac{3T}{4}$	0	ωA	0	$\frac{1}{2}kA^2$	0
T	A	0	$-\omega^2 A$	0	$\frac{1}{2}kA^2$
t	x	v	$-\omega^2 x$	$\frac{1}{2}mv^2$	$\frac{1}{2}kx^2$

Figure 15.10 (a) through (e) Several instants in the simple harmonic motion for a block–spring system. Energy bar graphs show the distribution of the energy of the system at each instant. The parameters in the table at the right refer to the block–spring system, assuming at $t = 0$, $x = A$; hence, $x = A\cos\omega t$. For these five special instants, one of the types of energy is zero. (f) An arbitrary point in the motion of the oscillator. The system possesses both kinetic energy and potential energy at this instant as shown in the bar graph.

position, the potential energy curve for this function approximates a parabola, which represents the potential energy function for a simple harmonic oscillator. Therefore, we can model the complex atomic binding forces as being due to tiny springs as depicted in Figure 15.11b.

The ideas presented in this chapter apply not only to block–spring systems and atoms, but also to a wide range of situations that include bungee jumping, playing a musical instrument, and viewing the light emitted by a laser. You will see more examples of simple harmonic oscillators as you work through this book.

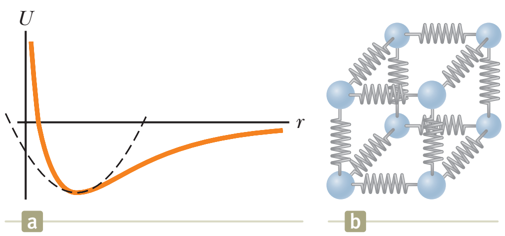


Figure 15.11 (a) If the atoms in a molecule do not move too far from their equilibrium positions, a graph of potential energy versus separation distance between atoms is similar to the graph of potential energy versus position for a simple harmonic oscillator (dashed black curve). (b) The forces between atoms in a solid can be modeled by imagining springs between neighboring atoms.

Example 15.3 Oscillations on a Horizontal Surface AM

A 0.500-kg cart connected to a light spring for which the force constant is 20.0 N/m oscillates on a frictionless, horizontal air track.

(A) Calculate the maximum speed of the cart if the amplitude of the motion is 3.00 cm.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The system oscillates in exactly the same way as the block in Figure 15.10, so use that figure in your mental image of the motion.

15.3 continued

Categorize The cart is modeled as a *particle in simple harmonic motion.*

Analyze Use Equation 15.21 to express the total energy of the oscillator system and equate it to the kinetic energy of the system when the cart is at $x = 0$:

$$E = \frac{1}{2}kA^2 = \frac{1}{2}mv_{max}^2$$

Solve for the maximum speed and substitute numerical values:

$$v_{max} = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}A = \sqrt{\frac{20.0 \text{ N/m}}{0.500 \text{ kg}}}(0.030\,0 \text{ m}) = \boxed{0.190 \text{ m/s}}$$

(B) What is the velocity of the cart when the position is 2.00 cm?

SOLUTION

Use Equation 15.22 to evaluate the velocity:

$$v = \pm\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}(A^2 - x^2)}$$

$$= \pm\sqrt{\frac{20.0 \text{ N/m}}{0.500 \text{ kg}}[(0.030\,0 \text{ m})^2 - (0.020\,0 \text{ m})^2]}$$

$$= \boxed{\pm 0.141 \text{ m/s}}$$

The positive and negative signs indicate that the cart could be moving to either the right or the left at this instant.

(C) Compute the kinetic and potential energies of the system when the position of the cart is 2.00 cm.

SOLUTION

Use the result of part (B) to evaluate the kinetic energy at $x = 0.020\,0$ m:

$$K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 = \frac{1}{2}(0.500 \text{ kg})(0.141 \text{ m/s})^2 = \boxed{5.00 \times 10^{-3} \text{ J}}$$

Evaluate the elastic potential energy at $x = 0.020\,0$ m:

$$U = \frac{1}{2}kx^2 = \frac{1}{2}(20.0 \text{ N/m})(0.0200 \text{ m})^2 = \boxed{4.00 \times 10^{-3} \text{ J}}$$

Finalize The sum of the kinetic and potential energies in part (C) is equal to the total energy, which can be found from Equation 15.21. That must be true for *any* position of the cart.

WHAT IF? The cart in this example could have been set into motion by releasing the cart from rest at $x = 3.00$ cm. What if the cart were released from the same position, but with an initial velocity of $v = -0.100$ m/s? What are the new amplitude and maximum speed of the cart?

Answer This question is of the same type we asked at the end of Example 15.1, but here we apply an energy approach.

First calculate the total energy of the system at $t = 0$:

$$E = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 + \frac{1}{2}kx^2$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}(0.500 \text{ kg})(-0.100 \text{ m/s})^2 + \frac{1}{2}(20.0 \text{ N/m})(0.030\,0 \text{ m})^2$$

$$= 1.15 \times 10^{-2} \text{ J}$$

Equate this total energy to the potential energy of the system when the cart is at the endpoint of the motion:

$$E = \frac{1}{2}kA^2$$

Solve for the amplitude A:

$$A = \sqrt{\frac{2E}{k}} = \sqrt{\frac{2(1.15 \times 10^{-2} \text{ J})}{20.0 \text{ N/m}}} = 0.033\,9 \text{ m}$$

Equate the total energy to the kinetic energy of the system when the cart is at the equilibrium position:

$$E = \frac{1}{2}mv_{max}^2$$

Solve for the maximum speed:

$$v_{max} = \sqrt{\frac{2E}{m}} = \sqrt{\frac{2(1.15 \times 10^{-2} \text{ J})}{0.500 \text{ kg}}} = 0.214 \text{ m/s}$$

The amplitude and maximum velocity are larger than the previous values because the cart was given an initial velocity at $t = 0$.

Figure 15.12 The bottom of a treadle-style sewing machine from the early twentieth century. The treadle is the wide, flat foot pedal with the metal grillwork.

15.4 Comparing Simple Harmonic Motion with Uniform Circular Motion

Some common devices in everyday life exhibit a relationship between oscillatory motion and circular motion. For example, consider the drive mechanism for a non-electric sewing machine in Figure 15.12. The operator of the machine places her feet on the treadle and rocks them back and forth. This oscillatory motion causes the large wheel at the right to undergo circular motion. The red drive belt seen in the photograph transfers this circular motion to the sewing machine mechanism (above the photo) and eventually results in the oscillatory motion of the sewing needle. In this section, we explore this interesting relationship between these two types of motion.

Figure 15.13 is a view of an experimental arrangement that shows this relationship. A ball is attached to the rim of a turntable of radius A, which is illuminated from above by a lamp. The ball casts a shadow on a screen. As the turntable rotates with constant angular speed, the shadow of the ball moves back and forth in simple harmonic motion.

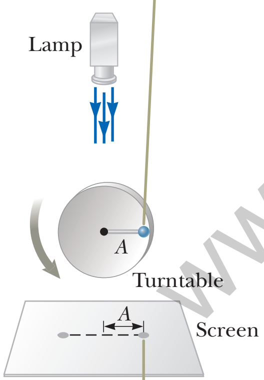


Figure 15.13 An experimental setup for demonstrating the connection between a particle in simple harmonic motion and a corresponding particle in uniform circular motion.

Consider a particle located at point P on the circumference of a circle of radius A as in Figure 15.14a, with the line OP making an angle ϕ with the x axis at $t = 0$. We call this circle a *reference circle* for comparing simple harmonic motion with uniform circular motion, and we choose the position of P at $t = 0$ as our reference position. If the particle moves along the circle with constant angular speed ω until OP makes an angle θ with the x axis as in Figure 15.14b, at some time $t > 0$ the angle between OP and the x axis is $\theta = \omega t + \phi$. As the particle moves along the circle, the projection of P on the x axis, labeled point Q, moves back and forth along the x axis between the limits $x = \pm A$.

Notice that points P and Q always have the same x coordinate. From the right triangle OPQ, we see that this x coordinate is

$$x(t) = A\cos(\omega t + \phi) \quad \textbf{(15.23)}$$

This expression is the same as Equation 15.6 and shows that the point Q moves with simple harmonic motion along the x axis. Therefore, the motion of an object described by the analysis model of a particle in simple harmonic motion along a straight line can be represented by the projection of an object that can be modeled as a particle in uniform circular motion along a diameter of a reference circle.

This geometric interpretation shows that the time interval for one complete revolution of the point P on the reference circle is equal to the period of motion T for simple harmonic motion between $x = \pm A$. Therefore, the angular speed ω of P is the same as the angular frequency ω of simple harmonic motion along the x axis

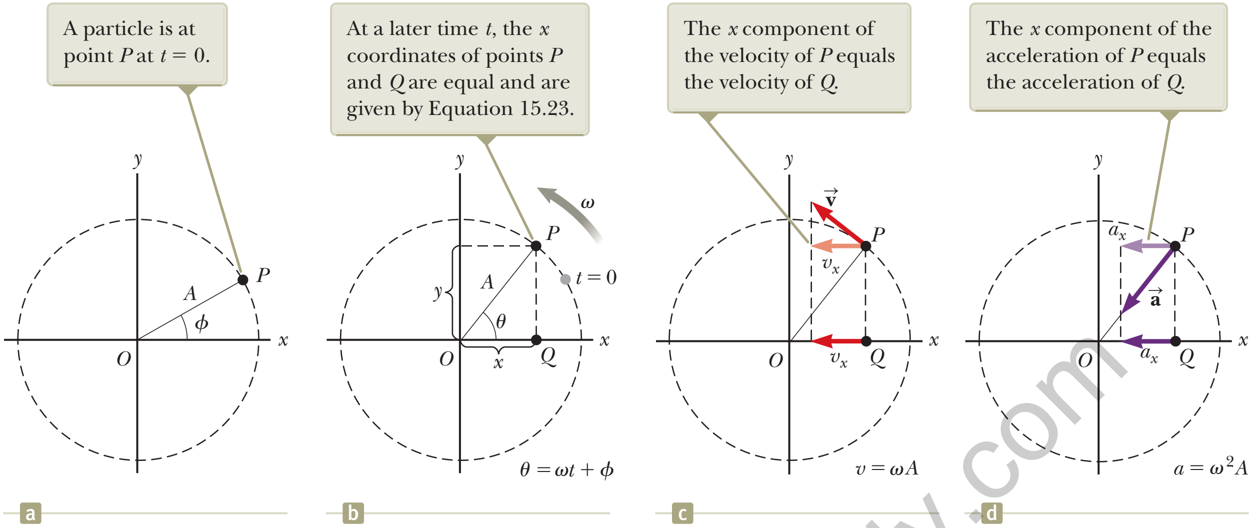


Figure 15.14 Relationship between the uniform circular motion of a point P and the simple harmonic motion of a point Q. A particle at P moves in a circle of radius A with constant angular speed ω.

(which is why we use the same symbol). The phase constant ϕ for simple harmonic motion corresponds to the initial angle OP makes with the x axis. The radius A of the reference circle equals the amplitude of the simple harmonic motion.

Because the relationship between linear and angular speed for circular motion is $v = r\omega$ (see Eq. 10.10), the particle moving on the reference circle of radius A has a velocity of magnitude ωA. From the geometry in Figure 15.14c, we see that the x component of this velocity is $-\omega A \sin(\omega t + \phi)$. By definition, point Q has a velocity given by dx/dt. Differentiating Equation 15.23 with respect to time, we find that the velocity of Q is the same as the x component of the velocity of P.

The acceleration of P on the reference circle is directed radially inward toward O and has a magnitude $v^2/A = \omega^2 A$. From the geometry in Figure 15.14d, we see that the x component of this acceleration is $-\omega^2 A \cos(\omega t + \phi)$. This value is also the acceleration of the projected point Q along the x axis, as you can verify by taking the second derivative of Equation 15.23.

Quick Quiz 15.5 Figure 15.15 shows the position of an object in uniform circular motion at $t = 0$. A light shines from above and projects a shadow of the object on a screen below the circular motion. What are the correct values for the *amplitude* and *phase constant* (relative to an x axis to the right) of the simple harmonic motion of the shadow? **(a)** 0.50 m and 0 **(b)** 1.00 m and 0 **(c)** 0.50 m and π **(d)** 1.00 m and π

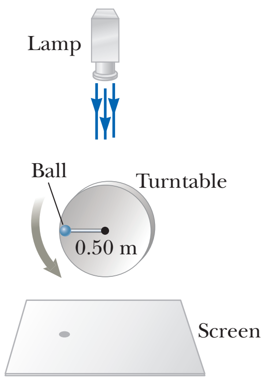


Figure 15.15 (Quick Quiz 15.5) An object moves in circular motion, casting a shadow on the screen below. Its position at an instant of time is shown.

Example 15.4 Circular Motion with Constant Angular Speed AM

The ball in Figure 15.13 rotates counterclockwise in a circle of radius 3.00 m with a constant angular speed of 8.00 rad/s. At $t = 0$, its shadow has an x coordinate of 2.00 m and is moving to the right.

(A) Determine the x coordinate of the shadow as a function of time in SI units.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Be sure you understand the relationship between circular motion of the ball and simple harmonic motion of its shadow as described in Figure 15.13. Notice that the shadow is *not* at is maximum position at $t = 0$.

Categorize The ball on the turntable is a *particle in uniform circular motion*. The shadow is modeled as a *particle in simple harmonic motion*.

continued

15.4 continued

Analyze Use Equation 15.23 to write an expression for the x coordinate of the rotating ball:

$$x = A\cos(\omega t + \phi)$$

Solve for the phase constant:

$$\phi = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{A}\right) - \omega t$$

Substitute numerical values for the initial conditions:

$$\phi = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{2.00\text{ m}}{3.00\text{ m}}\right) - 0 = \pm 48.2° = \pm 0.841\text{ rad}$$

If we were to take $\phi = +0.841$ rad as our answer, the shadow would be moving to the left at $t = 0$. Because the shadow is moving to the right at $t = 0$, we must choose $\phi = -0.841$ rad.

Write the x coordinate as a function of time:

$$x = 3.00\cos(8.00t - 0.841)$$

(B) Find the x components of the shadow's velocity and acceleration at any time t.

SOLUTION

Differentiate the x coordinate with respect to time to find the velocity at any time in m/s:

$$v_x = \frac{dx}{dt} = (-3.00\text{ m})(8.00\text{ rad/s})\sin(8.00t - 0.841)$$

$$= -24.0\sin(8.00t - 0.841)$$

Differentiate the velocity with respect to time to find the acceleration at any time in m/s^2:

$$a_x = \frac{dv_x}{dt} = (-24.0\text{ m/s})(8.00\text{ rad/s})\cos(8.00t - 0.841)$$

$$= -192\cos(8.00t - 0.841)$$

Finalize These results are equally valid for the ball moving in uniform circular motion and the shadow moving in simple harmonic motion. Notice that the value of the phase constant puts the ball in the fourth quadrant of the xy coordinate system of Figure 15.14, which is consistent with the shadow having a positive value for x and moving toward the right.

15.5 The Pendulum

The **simple pendulum** is another mechanical system that exhibits periodic motion. It consists of a particle-like bob of mass m suspended by a light string of length L that is fixed at the upper end as shown in Figure 15.16. The motion occurs in the vertical plane and is driven by the gravitational force. We shall show that, provided the angle θ is small (less than about 10°), the motion is very close to that of a simple harmonic oscillator.

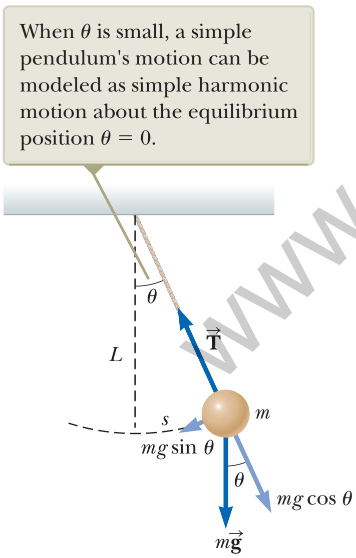


Figure 15.16 A simple pendulum.

The forces acting on the bob are the force $\vec{T}$ exerted by the string and the gravitational force $m\vec{g}$. The tangential component $mg\sin\theta$ of the gravitational force always acts toward $\theta = 0$, opposite the displacement of the bob from the lowest position. Therefore, the tangential component is a restoring force, and we can apply Newton's second law for motion in the tangential direction:

$$F_t = ma_t \rightarrow -mg\sin\theta = m\frac{d^2s}{dt^2}$$

where the negative sign indicates that the tangential force acts toward the equilibrium (vertical) position and s is the bob's position measured along the arc. We have expressed the tangential acceleration as the second derivative of the position s. Because $s = L\theta$ (Eq. 10.1a with $r = L$) and L is constant, this equation reduces to

$$\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} = -\frac{g}{L}\sin\theta$$

Considering θ as the position, let us compare this equation with Equation 15.3. Does it have the same mathematical form? No! The right side is proportional to $\sin\theta$ rather than to θ; hence, we would not expect simple harmonic motion because this expression is not of the same mathematical form as Equation 15.3. If we assume θ is *small* (less than about 10° or 0.2 rad), however, we can use the **small angle approximation,** in which $\sin\theta \approx \theta$, where θ is measured in radians. Table 15.1 shows angles in degrees and radians and the sines of these angles. As long as θ is less than approximately 10°, the angle in radians and its sine are the same to within an accuracy of less than 1.0%.

Therefore, for small angles, the equation of motion becomes

$$\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} = -\frac{g}{L}\theta \quad \text{(for small values of } \theta) \tag{15.24}$$

Equation 15.24 has the same mathematical form as Equation 15.3, so we conclude that the motion for small amplitudes of oscillation can be modeled as simple harmonic motion. Therefore, the solution of Equation 15.24 is modeled after Equation 15.6 and is given by $\theta = \theta_{max}\cos(\omega t + \phi)$, where θ_{max} is the *maximum angular position* and the angular frequency ω is

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{g}{L}} \tag{15.25}$$

◀ **Angular frequency for a simple pendulum**

The period of the motion is

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}} \tag{15.26}$$

◀ **Period of a simple pendulum**

In other words, the period and frequency of a simple pendulum depend only on the length of the string and the acceleration due to gravity. Because the period is independent of the mass, we conclude that all simple pendula that are of equal length and are at the same location (so that g is constant) oscillate with the same period.

The simple pendulum can be used as a timekeeper because its period depends only on its length and the local value of g. It is also a convenient device for making precise measurements of the free-fall acceleration. Such measurements are important because variations in local values of g can provide information on the location of oil and other valuable underground resources.

Pitfall Prevention 15.5

Not True Simple Harmonic Motion The pendulum *does not* exhibit true simple harmonic motion for *any* angle. If the angle is less than about 10°, the motion is close to and can be *modeled* as simple harmonic.

Quick Quiz 15.6 A grandfather clock depends on the period of a pendulum to keep correct time. **(i)** Suppose a grandfather clock is calibrated correctly and then a mischievous child slides the bob of the pendulum downward on the oscillating rod. Does the grandfather clock run (a) slow, (b) fast, or (c) correctly? **(ii)** Suppose a grandfather clock is calibrated correctly at sea level and is then taken to the top of a very tall mountain. Does the grandfather clock now run (a) slow, (b) fast, or (c) correctly?

Table 15.1 Angles and Sines of Angles

Angle in Degrees	Angle in Radians	Sine of Angle	Percent Difference
0°	0.000 0	0.000 0	0.0%
1°	0.017 5	0.017 5	0.0%
2°	0.034 9	0.034 9	0.0%
3°	0.052 4	0.052 3	0.0%
5°	0.087 3	0.087 2	0.1%
10°	0.174 5	0.173 6	0.5%
15°	0.261 8	0.258 8	1.2%
20°	0.349 1	0.342 0	2.1%
30°	0.523 6	0.500 0	4.7%

Example 15.5 A Connection Between Length and Time

Christian Huygens (1629–1695), the greatest clockmaker in history, suggested that an international unit of length could be defined as the length of a simple pendulum having a period of exactly 1 s. How much shorter would our length unit be if his suggestion had been followed?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine a pendulum that swings back and forth in exactly 1 second. Based on your experience in observing swinging objects, can you make an estimate of the required length? Hang a small object from a string and simulate the 1-s pendulum.

Categorize This example involves a simple pendulum, so we categorize it as a substitution problem that applies the concepts introduced in this section.

Solve Equation 15.26 for the length and substitute the known values:

$$L = \frac{T^2 g}{4\pi^2} = \frac{(1.00\text{ s})^2(9.80\text{ m/s}^2)}{4\pi^2} = 0.248\text{ m}$$

The meter's length would be slightly less than one-fourth of its current length. Also, the number of significant digits depends only on how precisely we know g because the time has been defined to be exactly 1 s.

WHAT IF? What if Huygens had been born on another planet? What would the value for g have to be on that planet such that the meter based on Huygens's pendulum would have the same value as our meter?

Answer Solve Equation 15.26 for g:

$$g = \frac{4\pi^2 L}{T^2} = \frac{4\pi^2(1.00\text{ m})}{(1.00\text{ s})^2} = 4\pi^2\text{ m/s}^2 = 39.5\text{ m/s}^2$$

No planet in our solar system has an acceleration due to gravity that large.

Physical Pendulum

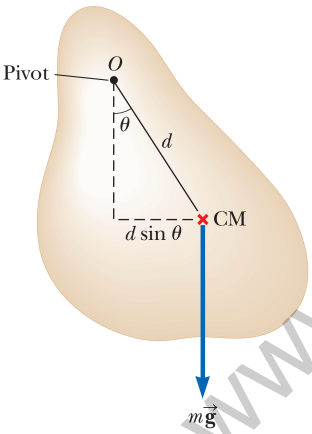


Figure 15.17 A physical pendulum pivoted at O.

Suppose you balance a wire coat hanger so that the hook is supported by your extended index finger. When you give the hanger a small angular displacement with your other hand and then release it, it oscillates. If a hanging object oscillates about a fixed axis that does not pass through its center of mass and the object cannot be approximated as a point mass, we cannot treat the system as a simple pendulum. In this case, the system is called a **physical pendulum.**

Consider a rigid object pivoted at a point O that is a distance d from the center of mass (Fig. 15.17). The gravitational force provides a torque about an axis through O, and the magnitude of that torque is $mgd \sin\theta$, where θ is as shown in Figure 15.17. We apply the rigid object under a net torque analysis model to the object and use the rotational form of Newton's second law, $\sum \tau_{\text{ext}} = I\alpha$, where I is the moment of inertia of the object about the axis through O. The result is

$$-mgd \sin\theta = I\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2}$$

The negative sign indicates that the torque about O tends to decrease θ. That is, the gravitational force produces a restoring torque. If we again assume θ is small, the approximation $\sin\theta \approx \theta$ is valid and the equation of motion reduces to

$$\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} = -\left(\frac{mgd}{I}\right)\theta = -\omega^2\theta \quad (15.27)$$

Because this equation is of the same mathematical form as Equation 15.3, its solution is modeled after that of the simple harmonic oscillator. That is, the solution of Equation 15.27 is given by $\theta = \theta_{max}\cos(\omega t + \phi)$, where θ_{max} is the maximum angular position and

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{mgd}{I}}$$

The period is

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{I}{mgd}} \quad \textbf{(15.28)}$$

◀ **Period of a physical pendulum**

This result can be used to measure the moment of inertia of a flat, rigid object. If the location of the center of mass—and hence the value of d—is known, the moment of inertia can be obtained by measuring the period. Finally, notice that Equation 15.28 reduces to the period of a simple pendulum (Eq. 15.26) when $I = md^2$, that is, when all the mass is concentrated at the center of mass.

Example 15.6 A Swinging Rod

A uniform rod of mass M and length L is pivoted about one end and oscillates in a vertical plane (Fig. 15.18). Find the period of oscillation if the amplitude of the motion is small.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine a rod swinging back and forth when pivoted at one end. Try it with a meterstick or a scrap piece of wood.

Categorize Because the rod is not a point particle, we categorize it as a physical pendulum.

Analyze In Chapter 10, we found that the moment of inertia of a uniform rod about an axis through one end is $\frac{1}{3}ML^2$. The distance d from the pivot to the center of mass of the rod is $L/2$.

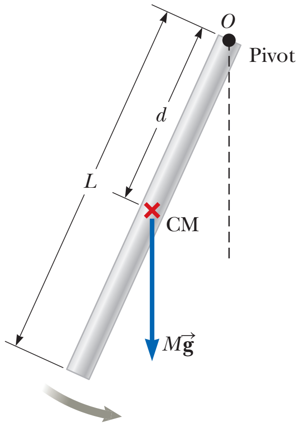


Figure 15.18 (Example 15.6) A rigid rod oscillating about a pivot through one end is a physical pendulum with $d = L/2$.

Substitute these quantities into Equation 15.28:

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{\frac{1}{3}ML^2}{Mg(L/2)}} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{2L}{3g}}$$

Finalize In one of the Moon landings, an astronaut walking on the Moon's surface had a belt hanging from his space suit, and the belt oscillated as a physical pendulum. A scientist on the Earth observed this motion on television and used it to estimate the free-fall acceleration on the Moon. How did the scientist make this calculation?

Torsional Pendulum

Figure 15.19 on page 468 shows a rigid object such as a disk suspended by a wire attached at the top to a fixed support. When the object is twisted through some angle θ, the twisted wire exerts on the object a restoring torque that is proportional to the angular position. That is,

$$\tau = -\kappa\theta$$

where κ (Greek letter kappa) is called the *torsion constant* of the support wire and is a rotational analog to the force constant k for a spring. The value of κ can be obtained by applying a known torque to twist the wire through a measurable angle θ. Applying Newton's second law for rotational motion, we find that

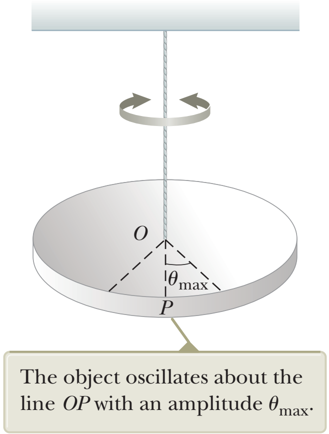


Figure 15.19 A torsional pendulum.

$$\sum \tau = I\alpha \rightarrow -\kappa\theta = I\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2}$$

$$\frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} = -\frac{\kappa}{I}\theta \qquad (15.29)$$

Again, this result is the equation of motion for a simple harmonic oscillator, with $\omega = \sqrt{\kappa/I}$ and a period

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{I}{\kappa}} \qquad (15.30)$$

This system is called a *torsional pendulum.* There is no small-angle restriction in this situation as long as the elastic limit of the wire is not exceeded.

15.6 Damped Oscillations

The oscillatory motions we have considered so far have been for ideal systems, that is, systems that oscillate indefinitely under the action of only one force, a linear restoring force. In many real systems, nonconservative forces such as friction or air resistance also act and retard the motion of the system. Consequently, the mechanical energy of the system diminishes in time, and the motion is said to be *damped.* The mechanical energy of the system is transformed into internal energy in the object and the retarding medium. Figure 15.20 depicts one such system: an object attached to a spring and submersed in a viscous liquid. Another example is a simple pendulum oscillating in air. After being set into motion, the pendulum eventually stops oscillating due to air resistance. The opening photograph for this chapter depicts damped oscillations in practice. The spring-loaded devices mounted below the bridge are dampers that transform mechanical energy of the oscillating bridge into internal energy.

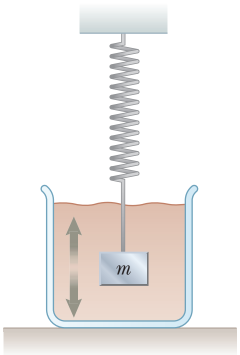


Figure 15.20 One example of a damped oscillator is an object attached to a spring and submersed in a viscous liquid.

One common type of retarding force is that discussed in Section 6.4, where the force is proportional to the speed of the moving object and acts in the direction opposite the velocity of the object with respect to the medium. This retarding force is often observed when an object moves through air, for instance. Because the retarding force can be expressed as $\vec{\mathbf{R}} = -b\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ (where b is a constant called the *damping coefficient*) and the restoring force of the system is $-kx$, we can write Newton's second law as

$$\sum F_x = -kx - bv_x = ma_x$$

$$-kx - b\frac{dx}{dt} = m\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} \qquad (15.31)$$

The solution to this equation requires mathematics that may be unfamiliar to you; we simply state it here without proof. When the retarding force is small compared with the maximum restoring force—that is, when the damping coefficient b is small—the solution to Equation 15.31 is

$$x = Ae^{-(b/2m)t}\cos(\omega t + \phi) \qquad (15.32)$$

where the angular frequency of oscillation is

$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m} - \left(\frac{b}{2m}\right)^2} \qquad (15.33)$$

This result can be verified by substituting Equation 15.32 into Equation 15.31. It is convenient to express the angular frequency of a damped oscillator in the form

$$\omega = \sqrt{\omega_0^2 - \left(\frac{b}{2m}\right)^2}$$

where $\omega_0 = \sqrt{k/m}$ represents the angular frequency in the absence of a retarding force (the undamped oscillator) and is called the **natural frequency** of the system.

Figure 15.21 shows the position as a function of time for an object oscillating in the presence of a retarding force. When the retarding force is small, the oscillatory character of the motion is preserved but the amplitude decreases exponentially in time, with the result that the motion ultimately becomes undetectable. Any system that behaves in this way is known as a **damped oscillator.** The dashed black lines in Figure 15.21, which define the *envelope* of the oscillatory curve, represent the exponential factor in Equation 15.32. This envelope shows that the amplitude decays exponentially with time. For motion with a given spring constant and object mass, the oscillations dampen more rapidly for larger values of the retarding force.

When the magnitude of the retarding force is small such that $b/2m < \omega_0$, the system is said to be **underdamped.** The resulting motion is represented by Figure 15.21 and the the blue curve in Figure 15.22. As the value of b increases, the amplitude of the oscillations decreases more and more rapidly. When b reaches a critical value b_c such that $b_c/2m = \omega_0$, the system does not oscillate and is said to be **critically damped.** In this case, the system, once released from rest at some nonequilibrium position, approaches but does not pass through the equilibrium position. The graph of position versus time for this case is the red curve in Figure 15.22.

If the medium is so viscous that the retarding force is large compared with the restoring force—that is, if $b/2m > \omega_0$—the system is **overdamped.** Again, the displaced system, when free to move, does not oscillate but rather simply returns to its equilibrium position. As the damping increases, the time interval required for the system to approach equilibrium also increases as indicated by the black curve in Figure 15.22. For critically damped and overdamped systems, there is no angular frequency ω and the solution in Equation 15.32 is not valid.

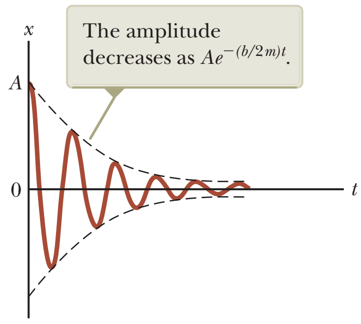


Figure 15.21 Graph of position versus time for a damped oscillator.

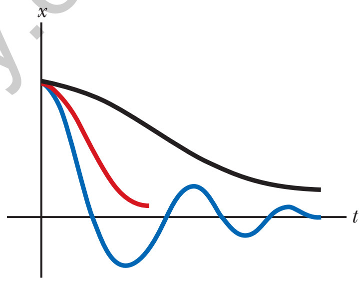


Figure 15.22 Graphs of position versus time for an underdamped oscillator (blue curve), a critically damped oscillator (red curve), and an overdamped oscillator (black curve).

15.7 Forced Oscillations

We have seen that the mechanical energy of a damped oscillator decreases in time as a result of the retarding force. It is possible to compensate for this energy decrease by applying a periodic external force that does positive work on the system. At any instant, energy can be transferred into the system by an applied force that acts in the direction of motion of the oscillator. For example, a child on a swing can be kept in motion by appropriately timed "pushes." The amplitude of motion remains constant if the energy input per cycle of motion exactly equals the decrease in mechanical energy in each cycle that results from retarding forces.

A common example of a forced oscillator is a damped oscillator driven by an external force that varies periodically, such as $F(t) = F_0 \sin \omega t$, where F_0 is a constant and ω is the angular frequency of the driving force. In general, the frequency ω of the driving force is variable, whereas the natural frequency ω_0 of the oscillator is fixed by the values of k and m. Modeling an oscillator with both retarding and driving forces as a particle under a net force, Newton's second law in this situation gives

$$\sum F_x = ma_x \rightarrow F_0 \sin \omega t - b\frac{dx}{dt} - kx = m\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} \quad \textbf{(15.34)}$$

Again, the solution of this equation is rather lengthy and will not be presented. After the driving force on an initially stationary object begins to act, the amplitude of the oscillation will increase. The system of the oscillator and the surrounding medium is a nonisolated system: work is done by the driving force, such that the vibrational energy of the system (kinetic energy of the object, elastic potential energy in the spring) and internal energy of the object and the medium increase. After a sufficiently long period of time, when the energy input per cycle from the driving force equals the amount of mechanical energy transformed to internal energy for each cycle, a steady-state condition is reached in which the oscillations proceed with constant amplitude. In this situation, the solution of Equation 15.34 is

$$x = A \cos (\omega t + \phi) \quad \textbf{(15.35)}$$

where

Amplitude of a driven oscillator

$$A = \frac{F_0/m}{\sqrt{(\omega^2 - {\omega_0}^2)^2 + \left(\frac{b\omega}{m}\right)^2}} \quad (15.36)$$

and where $\omega_0 = \sqrt{k/m}$ is the natural frequency of the undamped oscillator ($b = 0$).

Equations 15.35 and 15.36 show that the forced oscillator vibrates at the frequency of the driving force and that the amplitude of the oscillator is constant for a given driving force because it is being driven in steady-state by an external force. For small damping, the amplitude is large when the frequency of the driving force is near the natural frequency of oscillation, or when $\omega \approx \omega_0$. The dramatic increase in amplitude near the natural frequency is called **resonance,** and the natural frequency ω_0 is also called the **resonance frequency** of the system.

The reason for large-amplitude oscillations at the resonance frequency is that energy is being transferred to the system under the most favorable conditions. We can better understand this concept by taking the first time derivative of x in Equation 15.35, which gives an expression for the velocity of the oscillator. We find that v is proportional to $\sin(\omega t + \phi)$, which is the same trigonometric function as that describing the driving force. Therefore, the applied force $\vec{\mathbf{F}}$ is in phase with the velocity. The rate at which work is done on the oscillator by $\vec{\mathbf{F}}$ equals the dot product $\vec{\mathbf{F}} \cdot \vec{\mathbf{v}}$; this rate is the power delivered to the oscillator. Because the product $\vec{\mathbf{F}} \cdot \vec{\mathbf{v}}$ is a maximum when $\vec{\mathbf{F}}$ and $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ are in phase, we conclude that at resonance, the applied force is in phase with the velocity and the power transferred to the oscillator is a maximum.

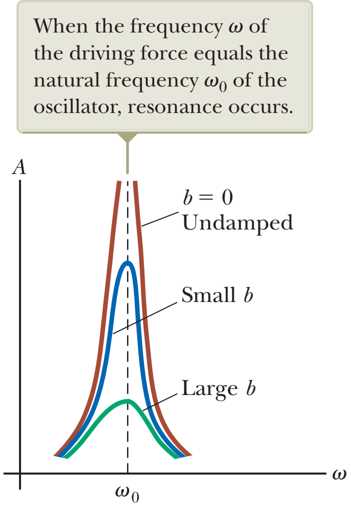


Figure 15.23 Graph of amplitude versus frequency for a damped oscillator when a periodic driving force is present. Notice that the shape of the resonance curve depends on the size of the damping coefficient b.

Figure 15.23 is a graph of amplitude as a function of driving frequency for a forced oscillator with and without damping. Notice that the amplitude increases with decreasing damping ($b \rightarrow 0$) and that the resonance curve broadens as the damping increases. In the absence of a damping force ($b = 0$), we see from Equation 15.36 that the steady-state amplitude approaches infinity as ω approaches ω_0. In other words, if there are no losses in the system and we continue to drive an initially motionless oscillator with a periodic force that is in phase with the velocity, the amplitude of motion builds without limit (see the red-brown curve in Fig. 15.23). This limitless building does not occur in practice because some damping is always present in reality.

Later in this book we shall see that resonance appears in other areas of physics. For example, certain electric circuits have natural frequencies and can be set into strong resonance by a varying voltage applied at a given frequency. A bridge has natural frequencies that can be set into resonance by an appropriate driving force. A dramatic example of such resonance occurred in 1940 when the Tacoma Narrows Bridge in the state of Washington was destroyed by resonant vibrations. Although the winds were not particularly strong on that occasion, the "flapping" of the wind across the roadway (think of the "flapping" of a flag in a strong wind) provided a periodic driving force whose frequency matched that of the bridge. The resulting oscillations of the bridge caused it to ultimately collapse (Fig. 15.24) because the bridge design had inadequate built-in safety features.

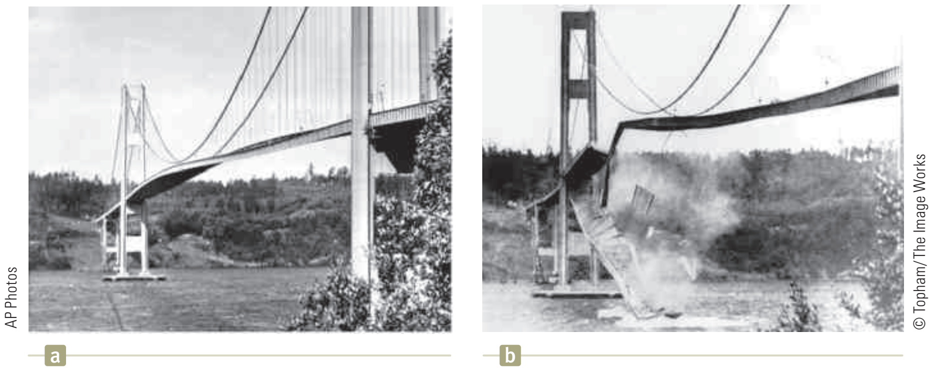


Figure 15.24 (a) In 1940, turbulent winds set up torsional vibrations in the Tacoma Narrows Bridge, causing it to oscillate at a frequency near one of the natural frequencies of the bridge structure. (b) Once established, this resonance condition led to the bridge's collapse. (Mathematicians and physicists are currently challenging some aspects of this interpretation.)

Many other examples of resonant vibrations can be cited. A resonant vibration you may have experienced is the "singing" of telephone wires in the wind. Machines often break if one vibrating part is in resonance with some other moving part. Soldiers marching in cadence across a bridge have been known to set up resonant vibrations in the structure and thereby cause it to collapse. Whenever any real physical system is driven near its resonance frequency, you can expect oscillations of very large amplitudes.

Summary

Concepts and Principles

The kinetic energy and potential energy for an object of mass m oscillating at the end of a spring of force constant k vary with time and are given by

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}m\omega^2A^2\sin^2(\omega t + \phi) \quad \textbf{(15.19)}$$

$$U = \tfrac{1}{2}kx^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2\cos^2(\omega t + \phi) \quad \textbf{(15.20)}$$

The total energy of a simple harmonic oscillator is a constant of the motion and is given by

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2 \quad \textbf{(15.21)}$$

A **simple pendulum** of length L can be modeled to move in simple harmonic motion for small angular displacements from the vertical. Its period is

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L}{g}} \quad \textbf{(15.26)}$$

A **physical pendulum** is an extended object that, for small angular displacements, can be modeled to move in simple harmonic motion about a pivot that does not go through the center of mass. The period of this motion is

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{I}{mgd}} \quad \textbf{(15.28)}$$

where I is the moment of inertia of the object about an axis through the pivot and d is the distance from the pivot to the center of mass of the object.

If an oscillator experiences a damping force $\vec{\mathbf{R}} = -b\vec{\mathbf{v}}$, its position for small damping is described by

$$x = Ae^{-(b/2m)t}\cos(\omega t + \phi) \quad \textbf{(15.32)}$$

where

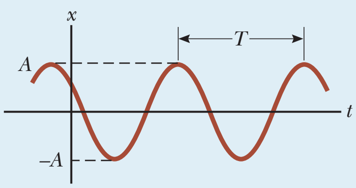
$$\omega = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m} - \left(\frac{b}{2m}\right)^2} \quad \textbf{(15.33)}$$

If an oscillator is subject to a sinusoidal driving force that is described by $F(t) = F_0 \sin \omega t$, it exhibits **resonance,** in which the amplitude is largest when the driving frequency ω matches the natural frequency $\omega_0 = \sqrt{k/m}$ of the oscillator.

Analysis Model for Problem Solving

Particle in Simple Harmonic Motion If a particle is subject to a force of the form of Hooke's law $F = -kx$, the particle exhibits **simple harmonic motion.** Its position is described by

$$x(t) = A\cos(\omega t + \phi) \quad \textbf{(15.6)}$$



where A is the **amplitude** of the motion, ω is the **angular frequency,** and ϕ is the **phase constant.** The value of ϕ depends on the initial position and initial velocity of the particle.

The **period** of the oscillation of the particle is

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}} \quad \textbf{(15.13)}$$

and the inverse of the period is the **frequency.**

Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. If a simple pendulum oscillates with small amplitude and its length is doubled, what happens to the frequency of its motion? (a) It doubles. (b) It becomes $\sqrt{2}$ times as large. (c) It becomes half as large. (d) It becomes $1/\sqrt{2}$ times as large. (e) It remains the same.

2. You attach a block to the bottom end of a spring hanging vertically. You slowly let the block move down and find that it hangs at rest with the spring stretched by 15.0 cm. Next, you lift the block back up to the initial position and release it from rest with the spring unstretched. What maximum distance does it move down? (a) 7.5 cm (b) 15.0 cm (c) 30.0 cm (d) 60.0 cm (e) The distance cannot be determined without knowing the mass and spring constant.

3. A block–spring system vibrating on a frictionless, horizontal surface with an amplitude of 6.0 cm has an energy of 12 J. If the block is replaced by one whose mass is twice the mass of the original block and the amplitude of the motion is again 6.0 cm, what is the energy of the system? (a) 12 J (b) 24 J (c) 6 J (d) 48 J (e) none of those answers

4. An object–spring system moving with simple harmonic motion has an amplitude A. When the kinetic energy of the object equals twice the potential energy stored in the spring, what is the position x of the object? (a) A (b) $\frac{1}{3}A$ (c) $A/\sqrt{3}$ (d) 0 (e) none of those answers

5. An object of mass 0.40 kg, hanging from a spring with a spring constant of 8.0 N/m, is set into an up-and-down simple harmonic motion. What is the magnitude of the acceleration of the object when it is at its maximum displacement of 0.10 m? (a) zero (b) 0.45 m/s^2 (c) 1.0 m/s^2 (d) 2.0 m/s^2 (e) 2.4 m/s^2

6. A runaway railroad car, with mass 3.0×10^5 kg, coasts across a level track at 2.0 m/s when it collides elastically with a spring-loaded bumper at the end of the track. If the spring constant of the bumper is 2.0×10^6 N/m, what is the maximum compression of the spring during the collision? (a) 0.77 m (b) 0.58 m (c) 0.34 m (d) 1.07 m (e) 1.24 m

7. The position of an object moving with simple harmonic motion is given by $x = 4\cos(6\pi t)$, where x is in meters and t is in seconds. What is the period of the oscillating system? (a) 4 s (b) $\frac{1}{6}$ s (c) $\frac{1}{3}$ s (d) 6π s (e) impossible to determine from the information given

8. If an object of mass m attached to a light spring is replaced by one of mass $9m$, the frequency of the vibrating system changes by what factor? (a) $\frac{1}{9}$ (b) $\frac{1}{3}$ (c) 3.0 (d) 9.0 (e) 6.0

9. You stand on the end of a diving board and bounce to set it into oscillation. You find a maximum response in terms of the amplitude of oscillation of the end of the board when you bounce at frequency f. You now move to the middle of the board and repeat the experiment. Is the resonance frequency for forced oscillations at this point (a) higher, (b) lower, or (c) the same as f?

10. A mass–spring system moves with simple harmonic motion along the x axis between turning points at x_1 = 20 cm and x_2 = 60 cm. For parts (i) through (iii), choose from the same five possibilities. **(i)** At which position does the particle have the greatest magnitude of momentum? (a) 20 cm (b) 30 cm (c) 40 cm (d) some other position (e) The greatest value occurs at multiple points. **(ii)** At which position does the particle have greatest kinetic energy? **(iii)** At which position does the particle-spring system have the greatest total energy?

11. A block with mass m = 0.1 kg oscillates with amplitude A = 0.1 m at the end of a spring with force constant k = 10 N/m on a frictionless, horizontal surface. Rank the periods of the following situations from greatest to smallest. If any periods are equal, show their equality in your ranking. (a) The system is as described above. (b) The system is as described in situation (a) except the amplitude is 0.2 m. (c) The situation is as described in situation (a) except the mass is 0.2 kg. (d) The situation is as described in situation (a) except the spring has force constant 20 N/m. (e) A small resistive force makes the motion underdamped.

12. For a simple harmonic oscillator, answer yes or no to the following questions. (a) Can the quantities position and velocity have the same sign? (b) Can velocity and acceleration have the same sign? (c) Can position and acceleration have the same sign?

13. The top end of a spring is held fixed. A block is hung on the bottom end as in Figure OQ15.13a, and the frequency f of the oscillation of the system is measured. The block, a second identical block, and the spring are carried up in a space shuttle to Earth orbit. The two blocks are attached to the ends of the spring. The spring is compressed without making adjacent coils touch (Fig. OQ15.13b), and the system is released to oscillate while floating within the shuttle cabin (Fig. OQ15.13c). What is the frequency of oscillation for this system in terms of f? (a) $f/2$ (b) $f/\sqrt{2}$ (c) f (d) $\sqrt{2}f$ (e) $2f$

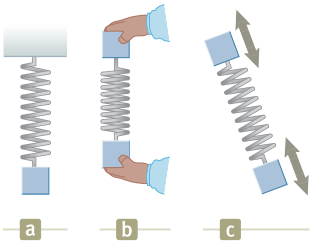


Figure OQ15.13

14. Which of the following statements is *not* true regarding a mass–spring system that moves with simple harmonic motion in the absence of friction? (a) The total energy of the system remains constant. (b) The energy of the system is continually transformed between kinetic and potential energy. (c) The total energy of the system is proportional to the square of the amplitude. (d) The potential energy stored in the system is greatest when the mass passes through the equilibrium position. (e) The velocity of the oscillating mass has its maximum value when the mass passes through the equilibrium position.

15. A simple pendulum has a period of 2.5 s. **(i)** What is its period if its length is made four times larger? (a) 1.25 s (b) 1.77 s (c) 2.5 s (d) 3.54 s (e) 5 s **(ii)** What is its period if the length is held constant at its initial value and the mass of the suspended bob is made four times larger? Choose from the same possibilities.

16. A simple pendulum is suspended from the ceiling of a stationary elevator, and the period is determined. **(i)** When the elevator accelerates upward, is the period (a) greater, (b) smaller, or (c) unchanged? **(ii)** When the elevator has a downward acceleration, is the period (a) greater, (b) smaller, or (c) unchanged? **(iii)** When the elevator moves with constant upward velocity, is the period of the pendulum (a) greater, (b) smaller, or (c) unchanged?

17. A particle on a spring moves in simple harmonic motion along the x axis between turning points at $x_1 = 100$ cm and $x_2 = 140$ cm. **(i)** At which of the following positions does the particle have maximum speed? (a) 100 cm (b) 110 cm (c) 120 cm (d) at none of those positions **(ii)** At which position does it have maximum acceleration? Choose from the same possibilities as in part (i). **(iii)** At which position is the greatest net force exerted on the particle? Choose from the same possibilities as in part (i).

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. You are looking at a small, leafy tree. You do not notice any breeze, and most of the leaves on the tree are motionless. One leaf, however, is fluttering back and forth wildly. After a while, that leaf stops moving and you notice a different leaf moving much more than all the others. Explain what could cause the large motion of one particular leaf.

2. The equations listed together on page 38 give position as a function of time, velocity as a function of time, and velocity as a function of position for an object moving in a straight line with constant acceleration. The quantity v_{xi} appears in every equation. (a) Do any of these equations apply to an object moving in a straight line with simple harmonic motion? (b) Using a similar format, make a table of equations describing simple harmonic motion. Include equations giving acceleration as a function of time and acceleration as a function of position. State the equations in such a form that they apply equally to a block–spring system, to a pendulum, and to other vibrating systems. (c) What quantity appears in every equation?

3. (a) If the coordinate of a particle varies as $x = -A\cos\omega t$, what is the phase constant in Equation 15.6? (b) At what position is the particle at $t = 0$?

4. A pendulum bob is made from a sphere filled with water. What would happen to the frequency of vibration of this pendulum if there were a hole in the sphere that allowed the water to leak out slowly?

5. Figure CQ15.5 shows graphs of the potential energy of four different systems versus the position of a particle in each system. Each particle is set into motion with a push at an arbitrarily chosen location. Describe its subsequent motion in each case (a), (b), (c), and (d).

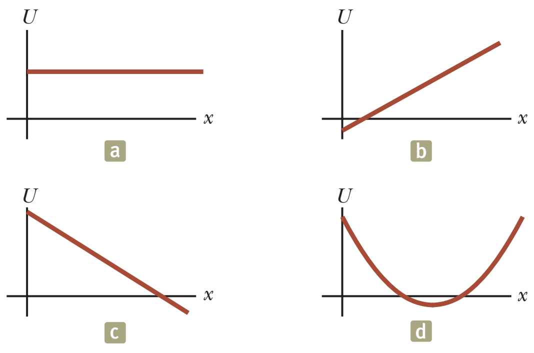


Figure CQ15.5

6. A student thinks that any real vibration must be damped. Is the student correct? If so, give convincing reasoning. If not, give an example of a real vibration that keeps constant amplitude forever if the system is isolated.

7. The mechanical energy of an undamped block–spring system is constant as kinetic energy transforms to elastic potential energy and vice versa. For comparison, explain what happens to the energy of a damped oscillator in terms of the mechanical, potential, and kinetic energies.

8. Is it possible to have damped oscillations when a system is at resonance? Explain.

9. Will damped oscillations occur for any values of b and k? Explain.

10. If a pendulum clock keeps perfect time at the base of a mountain, will it also keep perfect time when it is moved to the top of the mountain? Explain.

11. Is a bouncing ball an example of simple harmonic motion? Is the daily movement of a student from home to school and back simple harmonic motion? Why or why not?

12. A simple pendulum can be modeled as exhibiting simple harmonic motion when θ is small. Is the motion periodic when θ is large?

13. Consider the simplified single-piston engine in Figure CQ15.13. Assuming the wheel rotates with constant angular speed, explain why the piston rod oscillates in simple harmonic motion.

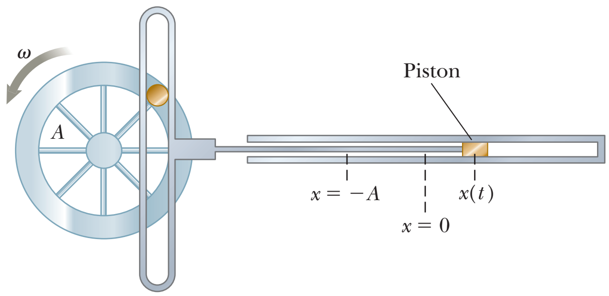


Figure CQ15.13

Problems

ENHANCED WebAssign The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Note: Ignore the mass of every spring, except in Problems 76 and 87.

Section 15.1 Motion of an Object Attached to a Spring

Problems 17, 18, 19, 22, and 59 in Chapter 7 can also be assigned with this section.

1. A 0.60-kg block attached to a spring with force constant 130 N/m is free to move on a frictionless, horizontal surface as in Figure 15.1. The block is released from rest when the spring is stretched 0.13 m. At the instant the block is released, find (a) the force on the block and (b) its acceleration.

2. When a 4.25-kg object is placed on top of a vertical spring, the spring compresses a distance of 2.62 cm. What is the force constant of the spring?

Section 15.2 Analysis Model: Particle in Simple Harmonic Motion

3. M A vertical spring stretches 3.9 cm when a 10-g object is hung from it. The object is replaced with a block of mass 25 g that oscillates up and down in simple harmonic motion. Calculate the period of motion.

4. W In an engine, a piston oscillates with simple harmonic motion so that its position varies according to the expression

$$x = 5.00 \cos\left(2t + \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$$

where x is in centimeters and t is in seconds. At $t = 0$, find (a) the position of the particle, (b) its velocity, and (c) its acceleration. Find (d) the period and (e) the amplitude of the motion.

5. M The position of a particle is given by the expression $x = 4.00 \cos(3.00\pi t + \pi)$, where x is in meters and t is in seconds. Determine (a) the frequency and (b) period of the motion, (c) the amplitude of the motion, (d) the phase constant, and (e) the position of the particle at $t = 0.250$ s.

6. A piston in a gasoline engine is in simple harmonic motion. The engine is running at the rate of 3 600 rev/min. Taking the extremes of its position relative to its center point as ±5.00 cm, find the magnitudes of the (a) maximum velocity and (b) maximum acceleration of the piston.

7. A 1.00-kg object is attached to a horizontal spring. The spring is initially stretched by 0.100 m, and the object is released from rest there. It proceeds to move without friction. The next time the speed of the object is zero is 0.500 s later. What is the maximum speed of the object?

8. W A simple harmonic oscillator takes 12.0 s to undergo five complete vibrations. Find (a) the period of its motion, (b) the frequency in hertz, and (c) the angular frequency in radians per second.

9. AMT W A 7.00-kg object is hung from the bottom end of a vertical spring fastened to an overhead beam. The object is set into vertical oscillations having a period of 2.60 s. Find the force constant of the spring.

10. M At an outdoor market, a bunch of bananas attached to the bottom of a vertical spring of force constant 16.0 N/m is set into oscillatory motion with an amplitude of 20.0 cm. It is observed that the maximum speed of the bunch of bananas is 40.0 cm/s. What is the weight of the bananas in newtons?

11. A vibration sensor, used in testing a washing machine, consists of a cube of aluminum 1.50 cm on edge mounted on one end of a strip of spring steel (like a hacksaw blade) that lies in a vertical plane. The strip's mass is small compared with that of the cube, but the strip's length is large compared with the size of the cube. The other end of the strip is clamped to the frame of the washing machine that is not operating. A horizontal force of 1.43 N applied to the cube is required to hold it 2.75 cm away from its equilibrium position. If it is released, what is its frequency of vibration?

12. (a) A hanging spring stretches by 35.0 cm when an object of mass 450 g is hung on it at rest. In this situation, we define its position as $x = 0$. The object is pulled down an additional 18.0 cm and released from rest to oscillate without friction. What is its position x at a moment 84.4 s later? (b) Find the distance traveled by the vibrating object in part (a). (c) **What If?** Another hanging spring stretches by 35.5 cm when an object of mass 440 g is hung on it at rest. We define this new position as $x = 0$. This object is also pulled down an additional 18.0 cm and released from rest to oscillate without friction. Find its position 84.4 s later. (d) Find the distance traveled by the object in part (c). (e) Why are the answers to parts (a) and (c) so different when the initial data in parts (a) and (c) are so similar and the answers to parts (b) and (d) are relatively close? Does this circumstance reveal a fundamental difficulty in calculating the future?

13. **Review.** A particle moves along the x axis. It is initially at the position 0.270 m, moving with velocity 0.140 m/s and acceleration -0.320 m/s^2. Suppose it moves as a particle under constant acceleration for 4.50 s. Find (a) its position and (b) its velocity at the end of this time interval. Next, assume it moves as a particle in simple harmonic motion for 4.50 s and $x = 0$ is its equilibrium position. Find (c) its position and (d) its velocity at the end of this time interval.

14. A ball dropped from a height of 4.00 m makes an elastic collision with the ground. Assuming no mechanical energy is lost due to air resistance, (a) show that the ensuing motion is periodic and (b) determine the period of the motion. (c) Is the motion simple harmonic? Explain.

15. A particle moving along the x axis in simple harmonic motion starts from its equilibrium position, the origin, at $t = 0$ and moves to the right. The amplitude of its motion is 2.00 cm, and the frequency is 1.50 Hz. (a) Find an expression for the position of the particle as a function of time. Determine (b) the maximum speed of the particle and (c) the earliest time ($t > 0$) at which the particle has this speed. Find (d) the maximum positive acceleration of the particle and (e) the earliest time ($t > 0$) at which the particle has this acceleration. (f) Find the total distance traveled by the particle between $t = 0$ and $t = 1.00$ s.

16. The initial position, velocity, and acceleration of an object moving in simple harmonic motion are x_i, v_i, and a_i; the angular frequency of oscillation is ω. (a) Show that the position and velocity of the object for all time can be written as

$$x(t) = x_i \cos \omega t + \left(\frac{v_i}{\omega}\right) \sin \omega t$$

$$v(t) = -x_i \omega \sin \omega t + v_i \cos \omega t$$

(b) Using A to represent the amplitude of the motion, show that

$$v^2 - ax = v_i^2 - a_i x_i = \omega^2 A^2$$

17. A particle moves in simple harmonic motion with a frequency of 3.00 Hz and an amplitude of 5.00 cm. (a) Through what total distance does the particle move during one cycle of its motion? (b) What is its maximum speed? Where does this maximum speed occur? (c) Find the maximum acceleration of the particle. Where in the motion does the maximum acceleration occur?

18. W A 1.00-kg glider attached to a spring with a force constant of 25.0 N/m oscillates on a frictionless, horizontal air track. At $t = 0$, the glider is released from rest at $x = -3.00$ cm (that is, the spring is compressed by 3.00 cm). Find (a) the period of the glider's motion, (b) the maximum values of its speed and acceleration, and (c) the position, velocity, and acceleration as functions of time.

19. M A 0.500-kg object attached to a spring with a force constant of 8.00 N/m vibrates in simple harmonic motion with an amplitude of 10.0 cm. Calculate the maximum value of its (a) speed and (b) acceleration, (c) the speed and (d) the acceleration when the object is 6.00 cm from the equilibrium position, and (e) the time interval required for the object to move from $x = 0$ to $x =$ 8.00 cm.

20. You attach an object to the bottom end of a hanging vertical spring. It hangs at rest after extending the spring 18.3 cm. You then set the object vibrating. (a) Do you have enough information to find its period? (b) Explain your answer and state whatever you can about its period.

Section 15.3 Energy of the Simple Harmonic Oscillator

21. AMT M To test the resiliency of its bumper during low-speed collisions, a 1 000-kg automobile is driven into a brick wall. The car's bumper behaves like a spring with a force constant 5.00×10^6 N/m and compresses 3.16 cm as the car is brought to rest. What was the speed of the car before impact, assuming no mechanical energy is transformed or transferred away during impact with the wall?

22. A 200-g block is attached to a horizontal spring and executes simple harmonic motion with a period of 0.250 s. The total energy of the system is 2.00 J. Find (a) the force constant of the spring and (b) the amplitude of the motion.

23. A block of unknown mass is attached to a spring with a spring constant of 6.50 N/m and undergoes simple harmonic motion with an amplitude of 10.0 cm. When the block is halfway between its equilibrium position and the end point, its speed is measured to be 30.0 cm/s. Calculate (a) the mass of the block, (b) the period of the motion, and (c) the maximum acceleration of the block.

24. A block–spring system oscillates with an amplitude of 3.50 cm. The spring constant is 250 N/m and the mass of the block is 0.500 kg. Determine (a) the mechanical energy of the system, (b) the maximum speed of the block, and (c) the maximum acceleration.

25. A particle executes simple harmonic motion with an amplitude of 3.00 cm. At what position does its speed equal half of its maximum speed?

26. The amplitude of a system moving in simple harmonic motion is doubled. Determine the change in (a) the total energy, (b) the maximum speed, (c) the maximum acceleration, and (d) the period.

27. W A 50.0-g object connected to a spring with a force constant of 35.0 N/m oscillates with an amplitude of 4.00 cm on a frictionless, horizontal surface. Find (a) the total energy of the system and (b) the speed of the object when its position is 1.00 cm. Find (c) the kinetic energy and (d) the potential energy when its position is 3.00 cm.

28. A 2.00-kg object is attached to a spring and placed on a frictionless, horizontal surface. A horizontal force of 20.0 N is required to hold the object at rest when it is pulled 0.200 m from its equilibrium position (the origin of the x axis). The object is now released from rest from this stretched position, and it subsequently undergoes simple harmonic oscillations. Find (a) the force constant of the spring, (b) the frequency of the oscillations, and (c) the maximum speed of the object. (d) Where does this maximum speed occur? (e) Find the maximum acceleration of the object. (f) Where does the maximum acceleration occur? (g) Find the total energy of the oscillating system. Find (h) the speed and (i) the acceleration of the object when its position is equal to one-third the maximum value.

29. A simple harmonic oscillator of amplitude A has a total energy E. Determine (a) the kinetic energy and (b) the potential energy when the position is one-third the amplitude. (c) For what values of the position does the kinetic energy equal one-half the potential energy? (d) Are there any values of the position where the kinetic energy is greater than the maximum potential energy? Explain.

30. GP **Review.** A 65.0-kg bungee jumper steps off a bridge with a light bungee cord tied to her body and to the bridge. The unstretched length of the cord is 11.0 m. The jumper reaches the bottom of her motion 36.0 m below the bridge before bouncing back. We wish to find the time interval between her leaving the bridge and her arriving at the bottom of her motion. Her overall motion can be separated into an 11.0-m free fall and a 25.0-m section of simple harmonic oscillation. (a) For the free-fall part, what is the appropriate analysis model to describe her motion? (b) For what time interval is she in free fall? (c) For the simple harmonic oscillation part of the plunge, is the system of the bungee jumper, the spring, and the Earth isolated or non- isolated? (d) From your response in part (c) find the spring constant of the bungee cord. (e) What is the location of the equilibrium point where the spring force balances the gravitational force exerted on the jumper? (f) What is the angular frequency of the oscillation? (g) What time interval is required for the cord to stretch by 25.0 m? (h) What is the total time interval for the entire 36.0-m drop?

31. **Review.** A 0.250-kg block resting on a frictionless, horizontal surface is attached to a spring whose force constant is 83.8 N/m as in Figure P15.31. A horizontal force $\vec{\mathbf{F}}$ causes the spring to stretch a distance of 5.46 cm from its equilibrium position. (a) Find the magnitude of $\vec{\mathbf{F}}$. (b) What is the total energy stored in the system when the spring is stretched? (c) Find the magnitude of the acceleration of the block just after the applied force is removed. (d) Find the speed of the block when it first reaches the equilibrium position. (e) If the surface is not frictionless but the block still reaches the equilibrium position, would your answer to part (d) be larger or smaller? (f) What other information would you need to know to find the actual answer to part (d) in this case? (g) What is the largest value of the coefficient of friction that would allow the block to reach the equilibrium position?

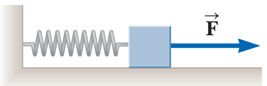


Figure P15.31

32. AMT A 326-g object is attached to a spring and executes simple harmonic motion with a period of 0.250 s. If the total energy of the system is 5.83 J, find (a) the maximum speed of the object, (b) the force constant of the spring, and (c) the amplitude of the motion.

Section 15.4 Comparing Simple Harmonic Motion with Uniform Circular Motion

33. While driving behind a car traveling at 3.00 m/s, you notice that one of the car's tires has a small hemispherical bump on its rim as shown in Figure P15.33. (a) Explain why the bump, from your viewpoint behind the car, executes simple harmonic motion. (b) If the radii of the car's tires are 0.300 m, what is the bump's period of oscillation?

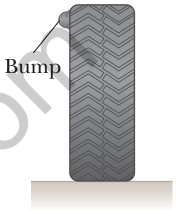


Figure P15.33

Section 15.5 The Pendulum

Problem 68 in Chapter 1 can also be assigned with this section.

34. A "seconds pendulum" is one that moves through its equilibrium position once each second. (The period of the pendulum is precisely 2 s.) The length of a seconds pendulum is 0.992 7 m at Tokyo, Japan, and 0.994 2 m at Cambridge, England. What is the ratio of the free-fall accelerations at these two locations?

35. A simple pendulum makes 120 complete oscillations in 3.00 min at a location where $g = 9.80$ m/s^2. Find (a) the period of the pendulum and (b) its length.

36. A particle of mass m slides without friction inside a hemispherical bowl of radius R. Show that if the particle starts from rest with a small displacement from equilibrium, it moves in simple harmonic motion with an angular frequency equal to that of a simple pendulum of length R. That is, $\omega = \sqrt{g/R}$.

37. M A physical pendulum in the form of a planar object moves in simple harmonic motion with a frequency of 0.450 Hz. The pendulum has a mass of 2.20 kg, and the pivot is located 0.350 m from the center of mass. Determine the moment of inertia of the pendulum about the pivot point.

38. A physical pendulum in the form of a planar object moves in simple harmonic motion with a frequency f. The pendulum has a mass m, and the pivot is located a distance d from the center of mass. Determine the moment of inertia of the pendulum about the pivot point.

39. The angular position of a pendulum is represented by the equation $\theta = 0.032\,0 \cos \omega t$, where θ is in radians and $\omega = 4.43$ rad/s. Determine the period and length of the pendulum.

40. Consider the physical pendulum of Figure 15.17. (a) Represent its moment of inertia about an axis passing through its center of mass and parallel to the axis passing through its pivot point as I_{CM}. Show that its period is

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{I_{CM} + md^2}{mgd}}$$

where d is the distance between the pivot point and the center of mass. (b) Show that the period has a minimum value when d satisfies $md^2 = I_{CM}$.

41. A simple pendulum has a mass of 0.250 kg and a length of 1.00 m. It is displaced through an angle of 15.0° and then released. Using the analysis model of a particle in simple harmonic motion, what are (a) the maximum speed of the bob, (b) its maximum angular acceleration, and (c) the maximum restoring force on the bob? (d) **What If?** Solve parts (a) through (c) again by using analysis models introduced in earlier chapters. (e) Compare the answers.

42. A very light rigid rod of length 0.500 m extends straight out from one end of a meterstick. The combination is suspended from a pivot at the upper end of the rod as shown in Figure P15.42. The combination is then pulled out by a small angle and released. (a) Determine the period of oscillation of the system. (b) By what percentage does the period differ from the period of a simple pendulum 1.00 m long?

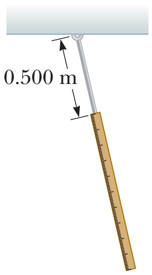


Figure P15.42

43. W **Review.** A simple pendulum is 5.00 m long. What is the period of small oscillations for this pendulum if it is located in an elevator (a) accelerating upward at 5.00 m/s^2? (b) Accelerating downward at 5.00 m/s^2? (c) What is the period of this pendulum if it is placed in a truck that is accelerating horizontally at 5.00 m/s^2?

44. A small object is attached to the end of a string to form a simple pendulum. The period of its harmonic motion is measured for small angular displacements and three lengths. For lengths of 1.000 m, 0.750 m, and 0.500 m, total time intervals for 50 oscillations of 99.8 s, 86.6 s, and 71.1 s are measured with a stopwatch. (a) Determine the period of motion for each length. (b) Determine the mean value of g obtained from these three independent measurements and compare it with the accepted value. (c) Plot T^2 versus L and obtain a value for g from the slope of your best-fit straight-line graph. (d) Compare the value found in part (c) with that obtained in part (b).

45. A watch balance wheel (Fig. P15.45) has a period of oscillation of 0.250 s. The wheel is constructed so that its mass of 20.0 g is concentrated around a rim of radius 0.500 cm. What are (a) the wheel's moment of inertia and (b) the torsion constant of the attached spring?

Figure P15.45

Section 15.6 Damped Oscillations

46. W A pendulum with a length of 1.00 m is released from an initial angle of 15.0°. After 1 000 s, its amplitude has been reduced by friction to 5.50°. What is the value of $b/2m$?

47. A 10.6-kg object oscillates at the end of a vertical spring that has a spring constant of 2.05×10^4 N/m. The effect of air resistance is represented by the damping coefficient $b = 3.00$ N · s/m. (a) Calculate the frequency of the damped oscillation. (b) By what percentage does the amplitude of the oscillation decrease in each cycle? (c) Find the time interval that elapses while the energy of the system drops to 5.00% of its initial value.

48. Show that the time rate of change of mechanical energy for a damped, undriven oscillator is given by $dE/dt = -bv^2$ and hence is always negative. To do so, differentiate the expression for the mechanical energy of an oscillator, $E = \frac{1}{2}mv^2 + \frac{1}{2}kx^2$, and use Equation 15.31.

49. Show that Equation 15.32 is a solution of Equation 15.31 provided that $b^2 < 4mk$.

Section 15.7 Forced Oscillations

50. A baby bounces up and down in her crib. Her mass is 12.5 kg, and the crib mattress can be modeled as a light spring with force constant 700 N/m. (a) The baby soon learns to bounce with maximum amplitude and minimum effort by bending her knees at what frequency? (b) If she were to use the mattress as a trampoline—losing contact with it for part of each cycle—what minimum amplitude of oscillation does she require?

51. As you enter a fine restaurant, you realize that you have accidentally brought a small electronic timer from home instead of your cell phone. In frustration, you drop the timer into a side pocket of your suit coat, not realizing that the timer is operating. The arm of your chair presses the light cloth of your coat against your body at one spot. Fabric with a length L hangs freely below that spot, with the timer at the bottom. At one point during your dinner, the timer goes off and a buzzer and a vibrator turn on and off with a frequency of 1.50 Hz. It makes the hanging part of your coat swing back and forth with remarkably large amplitude, drawing everyone's attention. Find the value of L.

52. A block weighing 40.0 N is suspended from a spring that has a force constant of 200 N/m. The system is undamped ($b = 0$) and is subjected to a harmonic driving force of frequency 10.0 Hz, resulting in a forced-motion amplitude of 2.00 cm. Determine the maximum value of the driving force.

53. A 2.00-kg object attached to a spring moves without friction ($b = 0$) and is driven by an external force given by the expression $F = 3.00 \sin (2\pi t)$, where F is in newtons and t is in seconds. The force constant of the spring is 20.0 N/m. Find (a) the resonance angular frequency of the system, (b) the angular frequency of the driven system, and (c) the amplitude of the motion.

54. Considering an undamped, forced oscillator ($b = 0$), show that Equation 15.35 is a solution of Equation 15.34, with an amplitude given by Equation 15.36.

55. M Damping is negligible for a 0.150-kg object hanging from a light, 6.30-N/m spring. A sinusoidal force with an amplitude of 1.70 N drives the system. At what frequency will the force make the object vibrate with an amplitude of 0.440 m?

Additional Problems

56. The mass of the deuterium molecule (D_2) is twice that of the hydrogen molecule (H_2). If the vibrational frequency of H_2 is 1.30×10^{14} Hz, what is the vibrational frequency of D_2? Assume the "spring constant" of attracting forces is the same for the two molecules.

57. An object of mass m moves in simple harmonic motion with amplitude 12.0 cm on a light spring. Its maximum acceleration is 108 cm/s^2. Regard m as a variable. (a) Find the period T of the object. (b) Find its frequency f. (c) Find the maximum speed v_{max} of the object. (d) Find the total energy E of the object–spring system. (e) Find the force constant k of the spring. (f) Describe the pattern of dependence of each of the quantities T, f, v_{max}, E, and k on m.

58. **Review.** This problem extends the reasoning of Problem 75 in Chapter 9. Two gliders are set in motion on an air track. Glider 1 has mass $m_1 = 0.240$ kg and moves to the right with speed 0.740 m/s. It will have a rear-end collision with glider 2, of mass $m_2 = 0.360$ kg, which initially moves to the right with speed 0.120 m/s. A light spring of force constant 45.0 N/m is attached to the back end of glider 2 as shown in Figure P9.75. When glider 1 touches the spring, superglue instantly and permanently makes it stick to its end of the spring. (a) Find the common speed the two gliders have when the spring is at maximum compression. (b) Find the maximum spring compression distance. The motion after the gliders become attached consists of a combination of (1) the constant-velocity motion of the center of mass of the two-glider system found in part (a) and (2) simple harmonic motion of the gliders relative to the center of mass. (c) Find the energy of the center-of-mass motion. (d) Find the energy of the oscillation.

59. M A small ball of mass M is attached to the end of a uniform rod of equal mass M and length L that is pivoted at the top (Fig. P15.59). Determine the tensions in the rod (a) at the pivot and (b) at the point P when the system is stationary. (c) Calculate the period of oscillation for small displacements from equilibrium and (d) determine this period for $L = 2.00$ m.

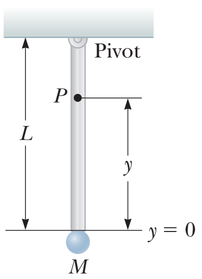


Figure P15.59

60. **Review.** A rock rests on a concrete sidewalk. An earthquake strikes, making the ground move vertically in simple harmonic motion with a constant frequency of 2.40 Hz and with gradually increasing amplitude. (a) With what amplitude does the ground vibrate when the rock begins to lose contact with the sidewalk? Another rock is sitting on the concrete bottom of a swimming pool full of water. The earthquake produces only vertical motion, so the water does not slosh from side to side. (b) Present a convincing argument that when the ground vibrates with the amplitude found in part (a), the submerged rock also barely loses contact with the floor of the swimming pool.

61. Four people, each with a mass of 72.4 kg, are in a car with a mass of 1 130 kg. An earthquake strikes. The vertical oscillations of the ground surface make the car bounce up and down on its suspension springs, but the driver manages to pull off the road and stop. When the frequency of the shaking is 1.80 Hz, the car exhibits a maximum amplitude of vibration. The earthquake ends, and the four people leave the car as fast as they can. By what distance does the car's undamaged suspension lift the car's body as the people get out?

62. To account for the walking speed of a bipedal or quadrupedal animal, model a leg that is not contacting the ground as a uniform rod of length ℓ, swinging as a physical pendulum through one half of a cycle, in resonance. Let θ_{max} represent its amplitude. (a) Show that the animal's speed is given by the expression

$$v = \frac{\sqrt{6g\ell}\sin\theta_{max}}{\pi}$$

if θ_{max} is sufficiently small that the motion is nearly simple harmonic. An empirical relationship that is based on the same model and applies over a wider range of angles is

$$v = \frac{\sqrt{6g\ell\cos(\theta_{max}/2)}\sin\theta_{max}}{\pi}$$

(b) Evaluate the walking speed of a human with leg length 0.850 m and leg-swing amplitude 28.0°. (c) What leg length would give twice the speed for the same angular amplitude?

63. M The free-fall acceleration on Mars is 3.7 m/s^2. (a) What length of pendulum has a period of 1.0 s on Earth? (b) What length of pendulum would have a 1.0-s period on Mars? An object is suspended from a spring with force constant 10 N/m. Find the mass suspended from this spring that would result in a period of 1.0 s (c) on Earth and (d) on Mars.

64. An object attached to a spring vibrates with simple harmonic motion as described by Figure P15.64. For this motion, find (a) the amplitude, (b) the period, (c) the

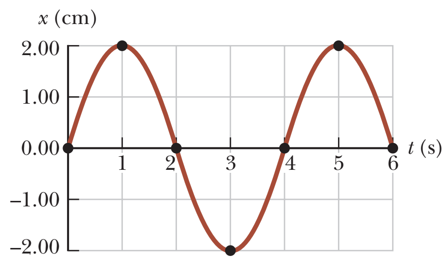


Figure P15.64

angular frequency, (d) the maximum speed, (e) the maximum acceleration, and (f) an equation for its position x as a function of time.

65. **Review.** A large block P attached to a light spring executes horizontal, simple harmonic motion as it slides across a frictionless surface with a frequency $f = 1.50$ Hz. Block B rests on it as shown in Figure P15.65, and the coefficient of static friction between the two is $\mu_s = 0.600$. What maximum amplitude of oscillation can the system have if block B is not to slip?

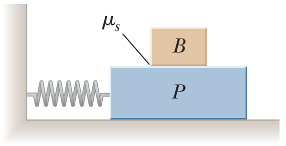


Figure P15.65
Problems 65 and 66.

66. **Review.** A large block P attached to a light spring executes horizontal, simple harmonic motion as it slides across a frictionless surface with a frequency f. Block B rests on it as shown in Figure P15.65, and the coefficient of static friction between the two is μ_s. What maximum amplitude of oscillation can the system have if block B is not to slip?

67. A pendulum of length L and mass M has a spring of force constant k connected to it at a distance h below its point of suspension (Fig. P15.67). Find the frequency of vibration of the system for small values of the amplitude (small θ). Assume the vertical suspension rod of length L is rigid, but ignore its mass.

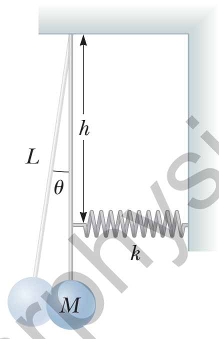


Figure P15.67

68. A block of mass m is connected to two springs of force constants k_1 and k_2 in two ways as shown in Figure P15.68. In both cases, the block moves on a frictionless table after it is displaced from equilibrium and released. Show that in the two cases the block exhibits simple harmonic motion with periods

$$\text{(a) } T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m(k_1 + k_2)}{k_1 k_2}} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{(b) } T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k_1 + k_2}}$$

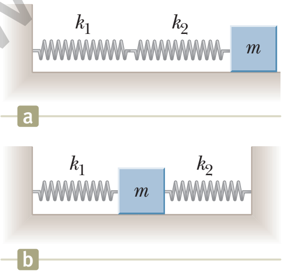


Figure P15.68

69. A horizontal plank of mass 5.00 kg and length 2.00 m is pivoted at one end. The plank's other end is supported by a spring of force constant 100 N/m (Fig. P15.69). The plank is displaced by a small angle θ from its horizontal equilibrium position and released. Find the angular frequency with which the plank moves with simple harmonic motion.

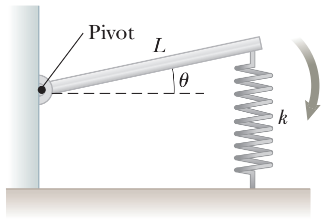


Figure P15.69
Problems 69 and 70.

70. A horizontal plank of mass m and length L is pivoted at one end. The plank's other end is supported by a spring of force constant k (Fig. P15.69). The plank is displaced by a small angle θ from its horizontal equilibrium position and released. Find the angular frequency with which the plank moves with simple harmonic motion.

71. **Review.** A particle of mass 4.00 kg is attached to a spring with a force constant of 100 N/m. It is oscillating on a frictionless, horizontal surface with an amplitude of 2.00 m. A 6.00-kg object is dropped vertically on top of the 4.00-kg object as it passes through its equilibrium point. The two objects stick together. (a) What is the new amplitude of the vibrating system after the collision? (b) By what factor has the period of the system changed? (c) By how much does the energy of the system change as a result of the collision? (d) Account for the change in energy.

72. A ball of mass m is connected to two rubber bands of length L, each under tension T as shown in Figure P15.72. The ball is displaced by a small distance y perpendicular to the length of the rubber bands. Assuming the tension does not change, show that (a) the restoring force is $-(2T/L)y$ and (b) the system exhibits simple harmonic motion with an angular frequency $\omega = \sqrt{2T/mL}$.

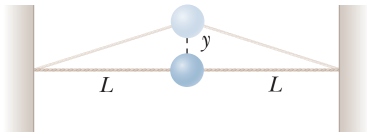


Figure P15.72

73. **Review.** One end of a light spring with force constant $k = 100$ N/m is attached to a vertical wall. A light string is tied to the other end of the horizontal spring. As shown in Figure P15.73, the string changes from horizontal to vertical as it passes over a pulley of mass M in the shape of a solid disk of radius $R = 2.00$ cm. The pulley is free to turn on a fixed, smooth axle. The vertical section of the string supports an object of mass $m = 200$ g. The string does not slip at its contact with the pulley. The object is pulled downward a small distance and released. (a) What is the angular frequency ω of oscillation of the object in terms of the mass M? (b) What is the highest possible value of the angular frequency of oscillation of

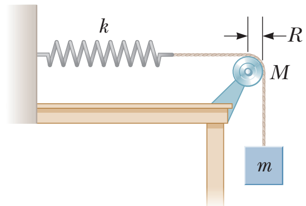


Figure P15.73

the object? (c) What is the highest possible value of the angular frequency of oscillation of the object if the pulley radius is doubled to $R = 4.00$ cm?

74. People who ride motorcycles and bicycles learn to look out for bumps in the road and especially for *washboarding,* a condition in which many equally spaced ridges are worn into the road. What is so bad about washboarding? A motorcycle has several springs and shock absorbers in its suspension, but you can model it as a single spring supporting a block. You can estimate the force constant by thinking about how far the spring compresses when a heavy rider sits on the seat. A motorcyclist traveling at highway speed must be particularly careful of washboard bumps that are a certain distance apart. What is the order of magnitude of their separation distance?

75. AMT W A simple pendulum with a length of 2.23 m and a mass of 6.74 kg is given an initial speed of 2.06 m/s at its equilibrium position. Assume it undergoes simple harmonic motion. Determine (a) its period, (b) its total energy, and (c) its maximum angular displacement.

76. When a block of mass M, connected to the end of a spring of mass $m_s = 7.40$ g and force constant k, is set into simple harmonic motion, the period of its motion is

$$T = 2\pi\sqrt{\frac{M + (m_s/3)}{k}}$$

A two-part experiment is conducted with the use of blocks of various masses suspended vertically from the spring as shown in Figure P15.76. (a) Static extensions of 17.0, 29.3, 35.3, 41.3, 47.1, and 49.3 cm are measured for M values of 20.0, 40.0, 50.0, 60.0, 70.0, and 80.0 g, respectively. Construct a graph of Mg versus x and perform a linear least-squares fit to the data. (b) From the slope of your graph, determine a value for k for this spring. (c) The system is now set into simple harmonic motion, and periods are measured with a stopwatch. With $M = 80.0$ g, the total time interval required for ten oscillations is measured to be 13.41 s. The experiment is repeated with M values of 70.0, 60.0, 50.0, 40.0, and 20.0 g, with corresponding time intervals for ten oscillations of 12.52, 11.67, 10.67, 9.62, and 7.03 s. Make a table of these masses and times. (d) Compute the experimental value for T from each of these measurements. (e) Plot a graph of T^2 versus M and (f) determine a value for k from the slope of the linear least-squares fit through the data points. (g) Compare this value of k with that obtained in part (b). (h) Obtain a value for m_s from your graph and compare it with the given value of 7.40 g.

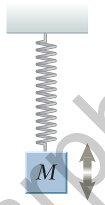


Figure P15.76

77. **Review.** A light balloon filled with helium of density 0.179 kg/m^3 is tied to a light string of length $L = 3.00$ m. The string is tied to the ground forming an "inverted" simple pendulum (Fig. 15.77a). If the balloon is displaced slightly from equilibrium as in Figure P15.77b and released, (a) show that the motion is simple harmonic and (b) determine the period of the motion. Take the density of air to be 1.20 kg/m^3. *Hint:* Use an analogy with the simple pendulum and see Chapter 14. Assume the air applies a buoyant force on the balloon but does not otherwise affect its motion.

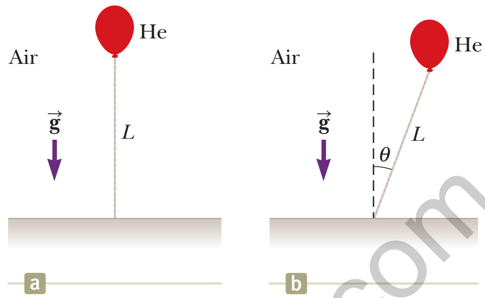


Figure P15.77

78. Consider the damped oscillator illustrated in Figure 15.20. The mass of the object is 375 g, the spring constant is 100 N/m, and $b = 0.100$ N · s/m. (a) Over what time interval does the amplitude drop to half its initial value? (b) **What If?** Over what time interval does the mechanical energy drop to half its initial value? (c) Show that, in general, the fractional rate at which the amplitude decreases in a damped harmonic oscillator is one-half the fractional rate at which the mechanical energy decreases.

79. A particle with a mass of 0.500 kg is attached to a horizontal spring with a force constant of 50.0 N/m. At the moment $t = 0$, the particle has its maximum speed of 20.0 m/s and is moving to the left. (a) Determine the particle's equation of motion, specifying its position as a function of time. (b) Where in the motion is the potential energy three times the kinetic energy? (c) Find the minimum time interval required for the particle to move from $x = 0$ to $x = 1.00$ m. (d) Find the length of a simple pendulum with the same period.

80. Your thumb squeaks on a plate you have just washed. Your sneakers squeak on the gym floor. Car tires squeal when you start or stop abruptly. You can make a goblet sing by wiping your moistened finger around its rim. When chalk squeaks on a blackboard, you can see that it makes a row of regularly spaced dashes. As these examples suggest, vibration commonly results when friction acts on a moving elastic object. The oscillation is not simple harmonic motion, but is called *stick-and-slip.* This problem models stick-and-slip motion.

A block of mass m is attached to a fixed support by a horizontal spring with force constant k and negligible mass (Fig. P15.80). Hooke's law describes the spring

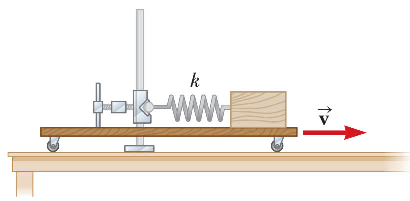


Figure P15.80

both in extension and in compression. The block sits on a long horizontal board, with which it has coefficient of static friction μ_s and a smaller coefficient of kinetic friction μ_k. The board moves to the right at constant speed v. Assume the block spends most of its time sticking to the board and moving to the right with it, so the speed v is small in comparison to the average speed the block has as it slips back toward the left. (a) Show that the maximum extension of the spring from its unstressed position is very nearly given by $\mu_s mg/k$. (b) Show that the block oscillates around an equilibrium position at which the spring is stretched by $\mu_k mg/k$. (c) Graph the block's position versus time. (d) Show that the amplitude of the block's motion is

$$A = \frac{(\mu_s - \mu_k)mg}{k}$$

(e) Show that the period of the block's motion is

$$T = \frac{2(\mu_s - \mu_k)mg}{vk} + \pi\sqrt{\frac{m}{k}}$$

It is the excess of static over kinetic friction that is important for the vibration. "The squeaky wheel gets the grease" because even a viscous fluid cannot exert a force of static friction.

81. **Review.** A lobsterman's buoy is a solid wooden cylinder of radius r and mass M. It is weighted at one end so that it floats upright in calm seawater, having density ρ. A passing shark tugs on the slack rope mooring the buoy to a lobster trap, pulling the buoy down a distance x from its equilibrium position and releasing it. (a) Show that the buoy will execute simple harmonic motion if the resistive effects of the water are ignored. (b) Determine the period of the oscillations.

82. *Why is the following situation impossible?* Your job involves building very small damped oscillators. One of your designs involves a spring–object oscillator with a spring of force constant $k = 10.0$ N/m and an object of mass $m = 1.00$ g. Your design objective is that the oscillator undergo many oscillations as its amplitude falls to 25.0% of its initial value in a certain time interval. Measurements on your latest design show that the amplitude falls to the 25.0% value in 23.1 ms. This time interval is too long for what is needed in your project. To shorten the time interval, you double the damping constant b for the oscillator. This doubling allows you to reach your design objective.

83. Two identical steel balls, each of mass 67.4 g, are moving in opposite directions at 5.00 m/s. They collide head-on and bounce apart elastically. By squeezing one of the balls in a vise while precise measurements are made of the resulting amount of compression, you find that Hooke's law is a good model of the ball's elastic behavior. A force of 16.0 kN exerted by each jaw of the vise reduces the diameter by 0.200 mm. Model the motion of each ball, while the balls are in contact, as one-half of a cycle of simple harmonic motion. Compute the time interval for which the balls are in contact. (If you solved Problem 57 in Chapter 7, compare your results from this problem with your results from that one.)

Challenge Problems

84. A smaller disk of radius r and mass m is attached rigidly to the face of a second larger disk of radius R and mass M as shown in Figure P15.84. The center of the small disk is located at the edge of the large disk. The large disk is mounted at its center on a frictionless axle. The assembly is rotated through a small angle θ from its equilibrium position and released. (a) Show that the speed of the center of the small disk as it passes through the equilibrium position is

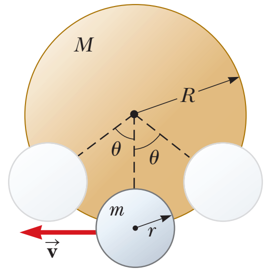


Figure P15.84

$$v = 2\left[\frac{Rg(1-\cos\theta)}{(M/m) + (r/R)^2 + 2}\right]^{1/2}$$

(b) Show that the period of the motion is

$$T = 2\pi\left[\frac{(M+2m)R^2 + mr^2}{2mgR}\right]^{1/2}$$

85. An object of mass $m_1 = 9.00$ kg is in equilibrium when connected to a light spring of constant $k = 100$ N/m that is fastened to a wall as shown in Figure P15.85a. A second object, $m_2 = 7.00$ kg, is slowly pushed up against m_1, compressing the spring by the amount $A = 0.200$ m (see Fig. P15.85b). The system is then released, and both objects start moving to the right on the frictionless surface. (a) When m_1 reaches the equilibrium point, m_2 loses contact with m_1 (see Fig. P15.85c) and moves to the right with speed v. Determine the value of v. (b) How far apart are the objects when the spring is fully stretched for the first time (the distance D in Fig. P15.85d)?

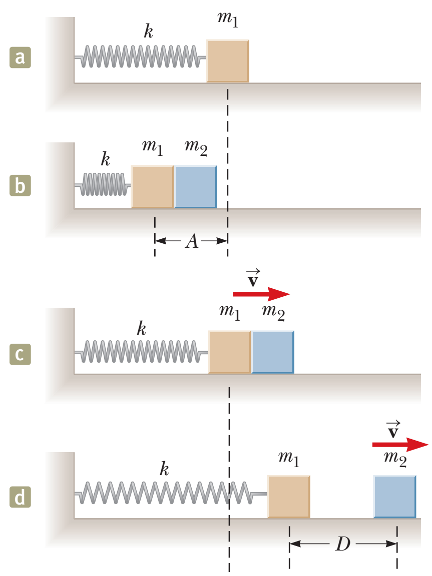


Figure P15.85

86. **Review.** *Why is the following situation impossible?* You are in the high-speed package delivery business. Your competitor in the next building gains the right-of-way to build an evacuated tunnel just above the ground all the way around the Earth. By firing packages into this tunnel at just the right speed, your competitor is able to send the packages into orbit around the Earth in this tunnel so that they arrive on the exact opposite side of the Earth in a very short time interval. You come up with a competing idea. Figuring that the distance *through* the Earth is shorter than the distance *around* the Earth, you obtain permits to build an evacuated tunnel through the center of the Earth (Fig. P15.86). By simply dropping packages into this tunnel, they fall downward and arrive at the other end of your tunnel, which is in a building right next to the other end of your competitor's tunnel. Because your packages arrive on the other side of the Earth in a shorter time interval, you win the competition and your business flourishes. *Note:* An object at a distance r from the center of the Earth is pulled toward the center of the Earth only by the mass within the sphere of radius r (the reddish region in Fig. P15.86). Assume the Earth has uniform density.

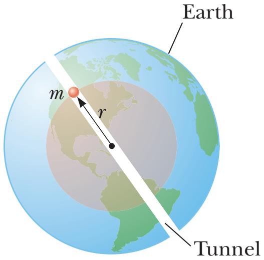


Figure P15.86

87. A block of mass M is connected to a spring of mass m and oscillates in simple harmonic motion on a frictionless, horizontal track (Fig. P15.87). The force constant of the spring is k, and the equilibrium length is ℓ. Assume all portions of the spring oscillate in phase and the velocity of a segment of the spring of length dx is proportional to the distance x from the fixed end; that is, $v_x = (x/\ell)v$. Also, notice that the mass of a segment of the spring is $dm = (m/\ell)dx$. Find (a) the kinetic energy of the system when the block has a speed v and (b) the period of oscillation.

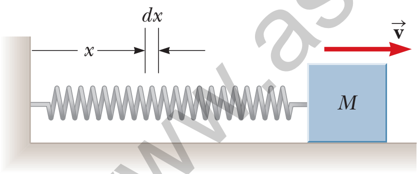


Figure P15.87

88. Review. A system consists of a spring with force constant $k = 1\ 250$ N/m, length $L = 1.50$ m, and an object of mass $m = 5.00$ kg attached to the end (Fig. P15.88). The object is placed at the level of the point of attachment with the spring unstretched, at position $y_i = L$, and then it is released so that it swings like a pendulum. (a) Find the y position of the object at the lowest point. (b) Will the pendulum's period be greater or less than the period of a simple pendulum with the same mass m and length L? Explain.

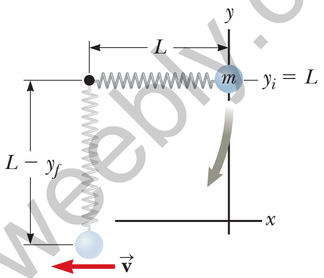


Figure P15.88

89. A light, cubical container of volume a^3 is initially filled with a liquid of mass density ρ as shown in Figure P15.89a. The cube is initially supported by a light string to form a simple pendulum of length L_i, measured from the center of mass of the filled container, where $L_i >> a$. The liquid is allowed to flow from the bottom of the container at a constant rate (dM/dt). At any time t, the level of the liquid in the container is h and the length of the pendulum is L (measured relative to the instantaneous center of mass) as shown in Figure P15.89b. (a) Find the period of the pendulum as a function of time. (b) What is the period of the pendulum after the liquid completely runs out of the container?

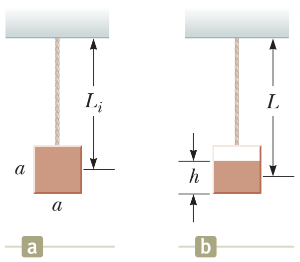


Figure P15.89

CHAPTER

16

Wave Motion

Lifeguards in New South Wales, Australia, practice taking their boat over large water waves breaking near the shore. A wave moving over the surface of water is one example of a mechanical wave. *(Travel Ink/Gallo Images/Getty Images)*

Many of us experienced waves as children when we dropped a pebble into a pond. At the point the pebble hits the water's surface, circular waves are created. These waves move outward from the creation point in expanding circles until they reach the shore. If you were to examine carefully the motion of a small object floating on the disturbed water, you would see that the object moves vertically and horizontally about its original position but does not undergo any net displacement away from or toward the point at which the pebble hit the water. The small elements of water in contact with the object, as well as all the other water elements on the pond's surface, behave in the same way. That is, the water *wave* moves from the point of origin to the shore, but the water is not carried with it.

The world is full of waves, the two main types being *mechanical* waves and *electromagnetic* waves. In the case of mechanical waves, some physical medium is being disturbed; in our pebble example, elements of water are disturbed. Electromagnetic waves do not require a medium to propagate; some examples of electromagnetic waves are visible light, radio waves, television signals, and x-rays. Here, in this part of the book, we study only mechanical waves.

Consider again the small object floating on the water. We have caused the object to move at one point in the water by dropping a pebble at another location. The object has gained kinetic energy from our action, so energy must have transferred from the point at which the pebble is dropped to the position of the object. This feature is central to wave motion: *energy* is transferred over a distance, but *matter* is not.

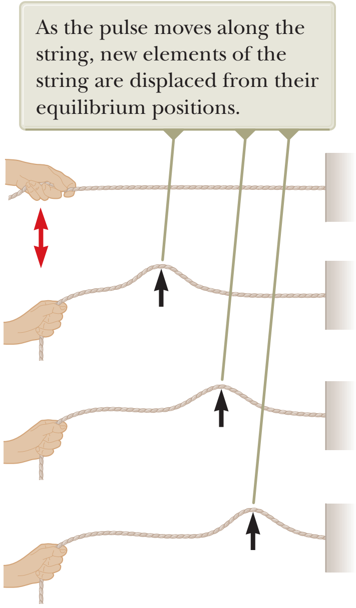


Figure 16.1 A hand moves the end of a stretched string up and down once (red arrow), causing a pulse to travel along the string.

16.1 Propagation of a Disturbance

The introduction to this chapter alluded to the essence of wave motion: the transfer of energy through space without the accompanying transfer of matter. In the list of energy transfer mechanisms in Chapter 8, two mechanisms—mechanical waves and electromagnetic radiation—depend on waves. By contrast, in another mechanism, matter transfer, the energy transfer is accompanied by a movement of matter through space with no wave character in the process.

All mechanical waves require (1) some source of disturbance, (2) a medium containing elements that can be disturbed, and (3) some physical mechanism through which elements of the medium can influence each other. One way to demonstrate wave motion is to flick one end of a long string that is under tension and has its opposite end fixed as shown in Figure 16.1. In this manner, a single bump (called a *pulse*) is formed and travels along the string with a definite speed. Figure 16.1 represents four consecutive "snapshots" of the creation and propagation of the traveling pulse. The hand is the source of the disturbance. The string is the medium through which the pulse travels—individual elements of the string are disturbed from their equilibrium position. Furthermore, the elements of the string are connected together so they influence each other. The pulse has a definite height and a definite speed of propagation along the medium. The shape of the pulse changes very little as it travels along the string.[1]

We shall first focus on a pulse traveling through a medium. Once we have explored the behavior of a pulse, we will then turn our attention to a *wave*, which is a *periodic* disturbance traveling through a medium. We create a pulse on our string by flicking the end of the string once as in Figure 16.1. If we were to move the end of the string up and down repeatedly, we would create a traveling wave, which has characteristics a pulse does not have. We shall explore these characteristics in Section 16.2.

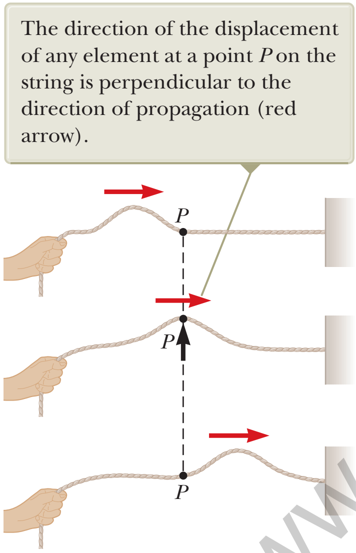


Figure 16.2 The displacement of a particular string element for a transverse pulse traveling on a stretched string.

As the pulse in Figure 16.1 travels, each disturbed element of the string moves in a direction *perpendicular* to the direction of propagation. Figure 16.2 illustrates this point for one particular element, labeled *P*. Notice that no part of the string ever moves in the direction of the propagation. A traveling wave or pulse that causes the elements of the disturbed medium to move perpendicular to the direction of propagation is called a **transverse wave.**

Compare this wave with another type of pulse, one moving down a long, stretched spring as shown in Figure 16.3. The left end of the spring is pushed briefly to the right and then pulled briefly to the left. This movement creates a sudden compression of a region of the coils. The compressed region travels along the spring (to the right in Fig. 16.3). Notice that the direction of the displacement of the coils is *parallel* to the direction of propagation of the compressed region. A traveling wave or pulse that causes the elements of the medium to move parallel to the direction of propagation is called a **longitudinal wave.**

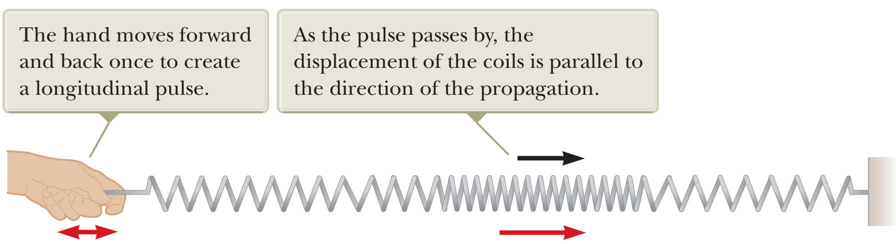


Figure 16.3 A longitudinal pulse along a stretched spring.

[1]In reality, the pulse changes shape and gradually spreads out during the motion. This effect, called *dispersion,* is common to many mechanical waves as well as to electromagnetic waves. We do not consider dispersion in this chapter.

Sound waves, which we shall discuss in Chapter 17, are another example of longitudinal waves. The disturbance in a sound wave is a series of high-pressure and low-pressure regions that travel through air.

Some waves in nature exhibit a combination of transverse and longitudinal displacements. Surface-water waves are a good example. When a water wave travels on the surface of deep water, elements of water at the surface move in nearly circular paths as shown in Figure 16.4. The disturbance has both transverse and longitudinal components. The transverse displacements seen in Figure 16.4 represent the variations in vertical position of the water elements. The longitudinal displacements represent elements of water moving back and forth in a horizontal direction.

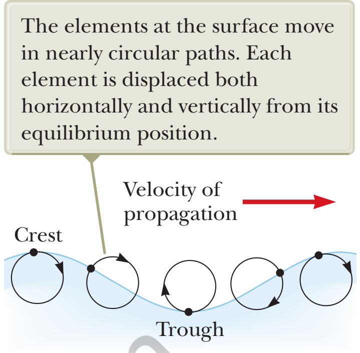


Figure 16.4 The motion of water elements on the surface of deep water in which a wave is propagating is a combination of transverse and longitudinal displacements.

The three-dimensional waves that travel out from a point under the Earth's surface at which an earthquake occurs are of both types, transverse and longitudinal. The longitudinal waves are the faster of the two, traveling at speeds in the range of 7 to 8 km/s near the surface. They are called **P waves,** with "P" standing for *primary,* because they travel faster than the transverse waves and arrive first at a seismograph (a device used to detect waves due to earthquakes). The slower transverse waves, called **S waves,** with "S" standing for *secondary,* travel through the Earth at 4 to 5 km/s near the surface. By recording the time interval between the arrivals of these two types of waves at a seismograph, the distance from the seismograph to the point of origin of the waves can be determined. This distance is the radius of an imaginary sphere centered on the seismograph. The origin of the waves is located somewhere on that sphere. The imaginary spheres from three or more monitoring stations located far apart from one another intersect at one region of the Earth, and this region is where the earthquake occurred.

Consider a pulse traveling to the right on a long string as shown in Figure 16.5. Figure 16.5a represents the shape and position of the pulse at time $t = 0$. At this time, the shape of the pulse, whatever it may be, can be represented by some mathematical function that we will write as $y(x, 0) = f(x)$. This function describes the transverse position y of the element of the string located at each value of x at time $t = 0$. Because the speed of the pulse is v, the pulse has traveled to the right a distance vt at the time t (Fig. 16.5b). We assume the shape of the pulse does not change with time. Therefore, at time t, the shape of the pulse is the same as it was at time $t = 0$ as in Figure 16.5a. Consequently, an element of the string at x at this time has the same y position as an element located at $x - vt$ had at time $t = 0$:

$$y(x, t) = y(x - vt, 0)$$

In general, then, we can represent the transverse position y for all positions and times, measured in a stationary frame with the origin at O, as

$$y(x, t) = f(x - vt) \qquad \textbf{(16.1)}$$

Similarly, if the pulse travels to the left, the transverse positions of elements of the string are described by

$$y(x, t) = f(x + vt) \qquad \textbf{(16.2)}$$

The function y, sometimes called the **wave function,** depends on the two variables x and t. For this reason, it is often written $y(x, t)$, which is read "y as a function of x and t."

It is important to understand the meaning of y. Consider an element of the string at point P in Figure 16.5, identified by a particular value of its x coordinate. As the pulse passes through P, the y coordinate of this element increases, reaches a maximum, and then decreases to zero. The wave function $y(x, t)$ represents the y coordinate—the transverse position—of any element located at position x at any time t. Furthermore, if t is fixed (as, for example, in the case of taking a snapshot of the pulse), the wave function $y(x)$, sometimes called the **waveform,** defines a curve representing the geometric shape of the pulse at that time.

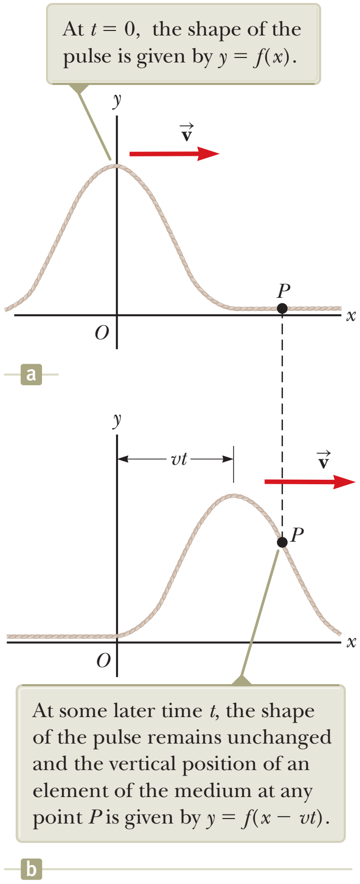


Figure 16.5 A one-dimensional pulse traveling to the right on a string with a speed v.

Quick Quiz 16.1 **(i)** In a long line of people waiting to buy tickets, the first person leaves and a pulse of motion occurs as people step forward to fill the gap. As each person steps forward, the gap moves through the line. Is the propagation of this gap (a) transverse or (b) longitudinal? **(ii)** Consider "the wave" at a baseball game: people stand up and raise their arms as the wave arrives at their location, and the resultant pulse moves around the stadium. Is this wave (a) transverse or (b) longitudinal?

Example 16.1 A Pulse Moving to the Right

A pulse moving to the right along the x axis is represented by the wave function

$$y(x, t) = \frac{2}{(x - 3.0t)^2 + 1}$$

where x and y are measured in centimeters and t is measured in seconds. Find expressions for the wave function at $t = 0$, $t = 1.0$ s, and $t = 2.0$ s.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Figure 16.6a shows the pulse represented by this wave function at $t = 0$. Imagine this pulse moving to the right at a speed of 3.0 cm/s and maintaining its shape as suggested by Figures 16.6b and 16.6c.

Categorize We categorize this example as a relatively simple analysis problem in which we interpret the mathematical representation of a pulse.

Analyze The wave function is of the form $y = f(x - vt)$. Inspection of the expression for $y(x, t)$ and comparison to Equation 16.1 reveal that the wave speed is $v = 3.0$ cm/s. Furthermore, by letting $x - 3.0t = 0$, we find that the maximum value of y is given by $A = 2.0$ cm.

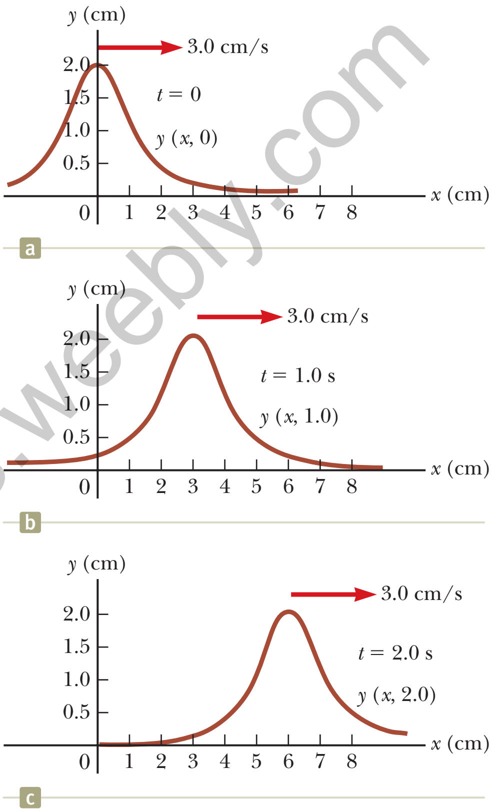


Figure 16.6 (Example 16.1) Graphs of the function $y(x, t) = 2/[(x - 3.0t)^2 + 1]$ at (a) $t = 0$, (b) $t = 1.0$ s, and (c) $t = 2.0$ s.

Write the wave function expression at $t = 0$:

$$y(x, 0) = \frac{2}{x^2 + 1}$$

Write the wave function expression at $t = 1.0$ s:

$$y(x, 1.0) = \frac{2}{(x - 3.0)^2 + 1}$$

Write the wave function expression at $t = 2.0$ s:

$$y(x, 2.0) = \frac{2}{(x - 6.0)^2 + 1}$$

For each of these expressions, we can substitute various values of x and plot the wave function. This procedure yields the wave functions shown in the three parts of Figure 16.6.

Finalize These snapshots show that the pulse moves to the right without changing its shape and that it has a constant speed of 3.0 cm/s.

WHAT IF? What if the wave function were

$$y(x, t) = \frac{4}{(x + 3.0t)^2 + 1}$$

How would that change the situation?

Answer One new feature in this expression is the plus sign in the denominator rather than the minus sign. The new expression represents a pulse with a similar shape as that in Figure 16.6, but moving to the left as time progresses.

16.1 continued

Another new feature here is the numerator of 4 rather than 2. Therefore, the new expression represents a pulse with twice the height of that in Figure 16.6.

16.2 Analysis Model: Traveling Wave

In this section, we introduce an important wave function whose shape is shown in Figure 16.7. The wave represented by this curve is called a **sinusoidal wave** because the curve is the same as that of the function sin θ plotted against θ. A sinusoidal wave could be established on the rope in Figure 16.1 by shaking the end of the rope up and down in simple harmonic motion.

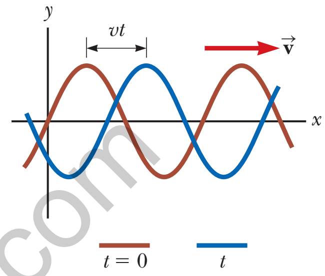


Figure 16.7 A one-dimensional sinusoidal wave traveling to the right with a speed v. The brown curve represents a snapshot of the wave at $t = 0$, and the blue curve represents a snapshot at some later time t.

The sinusoidal wave is the simplest example of a periodic continuous wave and can be used to build more complex waves (see Section 18.8). The brown curve in Figure 16.7 represents a snapshot of a traveling sinusoidal wave at $t = 0$, and the blue curve represents a snapshot of the wave at some later time t. Imagine two types of motion that can occur. First, the entire waveform in Figure 16.7 moves to the right so that the brown curve moves toward the right and eventually reaches the position of the blue curve. This movement is the motion of the *wave.* If we focus on one element of the medium, such as the element at $x = 0$, we see that each element moves up and down along the y axis in simple harmonic motion. This movement is the motion of the *elements of the medium.* It is important to differentiate between the motion of the wave and the motion of the elements of the medium.

In the early chapters of this book, we developed several analysis models based on three simplification models: the particle, the system, and the rigid object. With our introduction to waves, we can develop a new simplification model, the **wave,** that will allow us to explore more analysis models for solving problems. An ideal particle has zero size. We can build physical objects with nonzero size as combinations of particles. Therefore, the particle can be considered a basic building block. An ideal wave has a single frequency and is infinitely long; that is, the wave exists throughout the Universe. (A wave of finite length must necessarily have a mixture of frequencies.) When this concept is explored in Section 18.8, we will find that ideal waves can be combined to build complex waves, just as we combined particles.

In what follows, we will develop the principal features and mathematical representations of the analysis model of a **traveling wave.** This model is used in situations in which a wave moves through space without interacting with other waves or particles.

Figure 16.8a shows a snapshot of a traveling wave moving through a medium. Figure 16.8b shows a graph of the position of one element of the medium as a function of time. A point in Figure 16.8a at which the displacement of the element from its normal position is highest is called the **crest** of the wave. The lowest point is called the **trough.** The distance from one crest to the next is called the **wavelength** λ (Greek letter lambda). More generally, the wavelength is the minimum distance between any two identical points on adjacent waves as shown in Figure 16.8a.

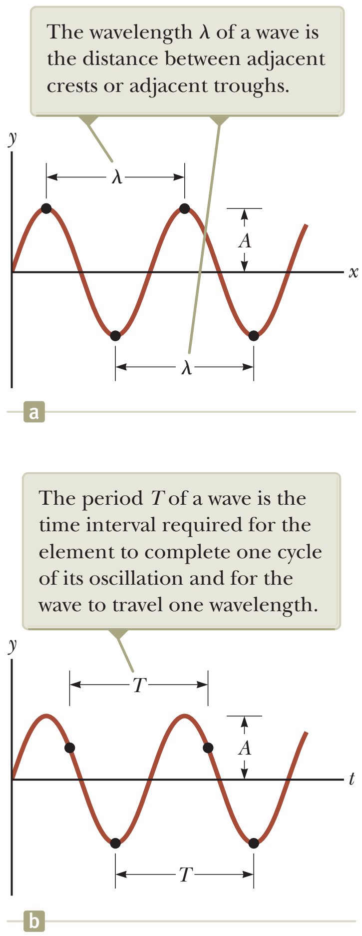


Figure 16.8 (a) A snapshot of a sinusoidal wave. (b) The position of one element of the medium as a function of time.

If you count the number of seconds between the arrivals of two adjacent crests at a given point in space, you measure the **period** T of the waves. In general, the period is the time interval required for two identical points of adjacent waves to pass by a point as shown in Figure 16.8b. The period of the wave is the same as the period of the simple harmonic oscillation of one element of the medium.

The same information is more often given by the inverse of the period, which is called the **frequency** f. In general, the frequency of a periodic wave is the number of crests (or troughs, or any other point on the wave) that pass a given point in a unit time interval. The frequency of a sinusoidal wave is related to the period by the expression

$$f = \frac{1}{T} \quad (16.3)$$

Pitfall Prevention 16.1

What's the Difference Between Figures 16.8a and 16.8b? Notice the visual similarity between Figures 16.8a and 16.8b. The shapes are the same, but (a) is a graph of vertical position versus horizontal position, whereas (b) is vertical position versus time. Figure 16.8a is a pictorial representation of the wave *for a series of elements of the medium;* it is what you would see at an instant of time. Figure 16.8b is a graphical representation of the position of *one element of the medium* as a function of time. That both figures have the identical shape represents Equation 16.1: a wave is the *same* function of both x and t.

The frequency of the wave is the same as the frequency of the simple harmonic oscillation of one element of the medium. The most common unit for frequency, as we learned in Chapter 15, is s^{-1}, or **hertz** (Hz). The corresponding unit for T is seconds.

The maximum position of an element of the medium relative to its equilibrium position is called the **amplitude** A of the wave as indicated in Figure 16.8.

Waves travel with a specific speed, and this speed depends on the properties of the medium being disturbed. For instance, sound waves travel through room-temperature air with a speed of about 343 m/s (781 mi/h), whereas they travel through most solids with a speed greater than 343 m/s.

Consider the sinusoidal wave in Figure 16.8a, which shows the position of the wave at $t = 0$. Because the wave is sinusoidal, we expect the wave function at this instant to be expressed as $y(x, 0) = A \sin ax$, where A is the amplitude and a is a constant to be determined. At $x = 0$, we see that $y(0, 0) = A \sin a(0) = 0$, consistent with Figure 16.8a. The next value of x for which y is zero is $x = \lambda/2$. Therefore,

$$y\left(\frac{\lambda}{2}, 0\right) = A \sin\left(a\frac{\lambda}{2}\right) = 0$$

For this equation to be true, we must have $a\lambda/2 = \pi$, or $a = 2\pi/\lambda$. Therefore, the function describing the positions of the elements of the medium through which the sinusoidal wave is traveling can be written

$$y(x, 0) = A \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}x\right) \quad \textbf{(16.4)}$$

where the constant A represents the wave amplitude and the constant λ is the wavelength. Notice that the vertical position of an element of the medium is the same whenever x is increased by an integral multiple of λ. Based on our discussion of Equation 16.1, if the wave moves to the right with a speed v, the wave function at some later time t is

$$y(x, t) = A \sin\left[\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(x - vt)\right] \quad \textbf{(16.5)}$$

If the wave were traveling to the left, the quantity $x - vt$ would be replaced by $x + vt$ as we learned when we developed Equations 16.1 and 16.2.

By definition, the wave travels through a displacement Δx equal to one wavelength λ in a time interval Δt of one period T. Therefore, the wave speed, wavelength, and period are related by the expression

$$v = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{\lambda}{T} \quad \textbf{(16.6)}$$

Substituting this expression for v into Equation 16.5 gives

$$y = A \sin\left[2\pi\left(\frac{x}{\lambda} - \frac{t}{T}\right)\right] \quad \textbf{(16.7)}$$

This form of the wave function shows the *periodic* nature of y. Note that we will often use y rather than $y(x, t)$ as a shorthand notation. At any given time t, y has the *same* value at the positions x, $x + \lambda$, $x + 2\lambda$, and so on. Furthermore, at any given position x, the value of y is the same at times t, $t + T$, $t + 2T$, and so on.

We can express the wave function in a convenient form by defining two other quantities, the **angular wave number** k (usually called simply the **wave number**) and the **angular frequency** ω:

Angular wave number ▶

$$k \equiv \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \quad \textbf{(16.8)}$$

Angular frequency ▶

$$\omega \equiv \frac{2\pi}{T} = 2\pi f \quad \textbf{(16.9)}$$

Using these definitions, Equation 16.7 can be written in the more compact form

$$y = A \sin (kx - \omega t) \quad (16.10)$$

◀ Wave function for a sinusoidal wave

Using Equations 16.3, 16.8, and 16.9, the wave speed v originally given in Equation 16.6 can be expressed in the following alternative forms:

$$v = \frac{\omega}{k} \quad (16.11)$$

$$v = \lambda f \quad (16.12)$$

◀ Speed of a sinusoidal wave

The wave function given by Equation 16.10 assumes the vertical position y of an element of the medium is zero at $x = 0$ and $t = 0$. That need not be the case. If it is not, we generally express the wave function in the form

$$y = A \sin (kx - \omega t + \phi) \quad (16.13)$$

◀ General expression for a sinusoidal wave

where ϕ is the **phase constant,** just as we learned in our study of periodic motion in Chapter 15. This constant can be determined from the initial conditions. The primary equations in the mathematical representation of the traveling wave analysis model are Equations 16.3, 16.10, and 16.12.

Quick Quiz 16.2 A sinusoidal wave of frequency f is traveling along a stretched string. The string is brought to rest, and a second traveling wave of frequency $2f$ is established on the string. **(i)** What is the wave speed of the second wave? (a) twice that of the first wave (b) half that of the first wave (c) the same as that of the first wave (d) impossible to determine **(ii)** From the same choices, describe the wavelength of the second wave. **(iii)** From the same choices, describe the amplitude of the second wave.

Example 16.2 A Traveling Sinusoidal Wave AM

A sinusoidal wave traveling in the positive x direction has an amplitude of 15.0 cm, a wavelength of 40.0 cm, and a frequency of 8.00 Hz. The vertical position of an element of the medium at $t = 0$ and $x = 0$ is also 15.0 cm as shown in Figure 16.9.

(A) Find the wave number k, period T, angular frequency ω, and speed v of the wave.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Figure 16.9 shows the wave at $t = 0$. Imagine this wave moving to the right and maintaining its shape.

Categorize From the description in the problem statement, we see that we are analyzing a mechanical wave moving through a medium, so we categorize the problem with the *traveling wave* model.

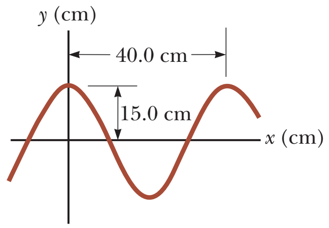


Figure 16.9 (Example 16.2) A sinusoidal wave of wavelength $\lambda = 40.0$ cm and amplitude $A = 15.0$ cm.

Analyze

Evaluate the wave number from Equation 16.8: $k = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} = \frac{2\pi \text{ rad}}{40.0 \text{ cm}} = 15.7 \text{ rad/m}$

Evaluate the period of the wave from Equation 16.3: $T = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{8.00 \text{ s}^{-1}} = 0.125 \text{ s}$

Evaluate the angular frequency of the wave from Equation 16.9: $\omega = 2\pi f = 2\pi(8.00 \text{ s}^{-1}) = 50.3 \text{ rad/s}$

Evaluate the wave speed from Equation 16.12: $v = \lambda f = (40.0 \text{ cm})(8.00 \text{ s}^{-1}) = 3.20 \text{ m/s}$

continued

16.2 continued

(B) Determine the phase constant ϕ and write a general expression for the wave function.

SOLUTION

Substitute $A = 15.0$ cm, $y = 15.0$ cm, $x = 0$, and $t = 0$ into Equation 16.13:

$$15.0 = (15.0) \sin \phi \;\rightarrow\; \sin \phi = 1 \;\rightarrow\; \phi = \frac{\pi}{2} \text{ rad}$$

Write the wave function:

$$y = A \sin\left(kx - \omega t + \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = A \cos(kx - \omega t)$$

Substitute the values for A, k, and ω in SI units into this expression:

$$y = 0.150 \cos(15.7x - 50.3t)$$

Finalize Review the results carefully and make sure you understand them. How would the graph in Figure 16.9 change if the phase angle were zero? How would the graph change if the amplitude were 30.0 cm? How would the graph change if the wavelength were 10.0 cm?

Sinusoidal Waves on Strings

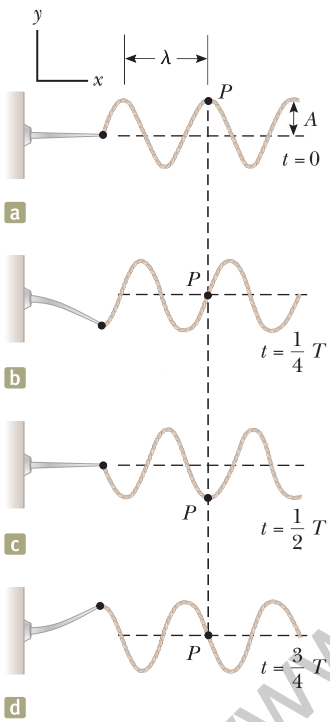


Figure 16.10 One method for producing a sinusoidal wave on a string. The left end of the string is connected to a blade that is set into oscillation. Every element of the string, such as that at point *P*, oscillates with simple harmonic motion in the vertical direction.

In Figure 16.1, we demonstrated how to create a pulse by jerking a taut string up and down once. To create a series of such pulses—a wave—let's replace the hand with an oscillating blade vibrating in simple harmonic motion. Figure 16.10 represents snapshots of the wave created in this way at intervals of $T/4$. Because the end of the blade oscillates in simple harmonic motion, each element of the string, such as that at *P*, also oscillates vertically with simple harmonic motion. Therefore, every element of the string can be treated as a simple harmonic oscillator vibrating with a frequency equal to the frequency of oscillation of the blade.[2] Notice that while each element oscillates in the y direction, the wave travels to the right in the $+x$ direction with a speed v. Of course, that is the definition of a transverse wave.

If we define $t = 0$ as the time for which the configuration of the string is as shown in Figure 16.10a, the wave function can be written as

$$y = A \sin(kx - \omega t)$$

We can use this expression to describe the motion of any element of the string. An element at point *P* (or any other element of the string) moves only vertically, and so its x coordinate remains constant. Therefore, the **transverse speed** v_y (not to be confused with the wave speed v) and the **transverse acceleration** a_y of elements of the string are

$$v_y = \left.\frac{dy}{dt}\right]_{x=\text{constant}} = \frac{\partial y}{\partial t} = -\omega A \cos(kx - \omega t) \tag{16.14}$$

$$a_y = \left.\frac{dv_y}{dt}\right]_{x=\text{constant}} = \frac{\partial v_y}{\partial t} = -\omega^2 A \sin(kx - \omega t) \tag{16.15}$$

These expressions incorporate partial derivatives because y depends on both x and t. In the operation $\partial y/\partial t$, for example, we take a derivative with respect to t while holding x constant. The maximum magnitudes of the transverse speed and transverse acceleration are simply the absolute values of the coefficients of the cosine and sine functions:

$$v_{y,\max} = \omega A \tag{16.16}$$

$$a_{y,\max} = \omega^2 A \tag{16.17}$$

The transverse speed and transverse acceleration of elements of the string do not reach their maximum values simultaneously. The transverse speed reaches its maximum value (ωA) when $y = 0$, whereas the magnitude of the transverse acceleration

[2] In this arrangement, we are assuming that a string element always oscillates in a vertical line. The tension in the string would vary if an element were allowed to move sideways. Such motion would make the analysis very complex.

reaches its maximum value ($\omega^2 A$) when $y = \pm A$. Finally, Equations 16.16 and 16.17 are identical in mathematical form to the corresponding equations for simple harmonic motion, Equations 15.17 and 15.18.

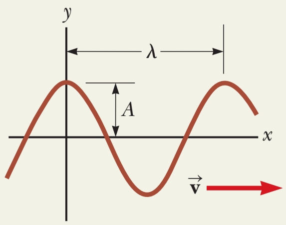
Pitfall Prevention 16.2

Two Kinds of Speed/Velocity Do not confuse v, the speed of the wave as it propagates along the string, with v_y, the transverse velocity of a point on the string. The speed v is constant for a uniform medium, whereas v_y varies sinusoidally.

Quick Quiz 16.3 The amplitude of a wave is doubled, with no other changes made to the wave. As a result of this doubling, which of the following statements is correct? **(a)** The speed of the wave changes. **(b)** The frequency of the wave changes. **(c)** The maximum transverse speed of an element of the medium changes. **(d)** Statements **(a)** through **(c)** are all true. **(e)** None of statements **(a)** through **(c)** is true.

Analysis Model Traveling Wave

Imagine a source vibrating such that it influences the medium that is in contact with the source. Such a source creates a disturbance that propagates through the medium. If the source vibrates in simple harmonic motion with period T, sinusoidal waves propagate through the medium at a speed given by



$$v = \frac{\lambda}{T} = \lambda f \qquad \textbf{(16.6, 16.12)}$$

where λ is the **wavelength** of the wave and f is its **frequency.** A sinusoidal wave can be expressed as

$$y = A \sin (kx - \omega t) \qquad \textbf{(16.10)}$$

where A is the **amplitude** of the wave, k is its **wave number,** and ω is its **angular frequency.**

Examples:

- a vibrating blade sends a sinusoidal wave down a string attached to the blade
- a loudspeaker vibrates back and forth, emitting sound waves into the air (Chapter 17)
- a guitar body vibrates, emitting sound waves into the air (Chapter 18)
- a vibrating electric charge creates an electromagnetic wave that propagates into space at the speed of light (Chapter 34)

16.3 The Speed of Waves on Strings

One aspect of the behavior of *linear* mechanical waves is that the wave speed depends only on the properties of the medium through which the wave travels. Waves for which the amplitude A is small relative to the wavelength λ can be represented as linear waves. (See Section 16.6.) In this section, we determine the speed of a transverse wave traveling on a stretched string.

Let us use a mechanical analysis to derive the expression for the speed of a pulse traveling on a stretched string under tension T. Consider a pulse moving to the right with a uniform speed v, measured relative to a stationary (with respect to the Earth) inertial reference frame as shown in Figure 16.11a. Newton's laws are valid in any inertial reference frame. Therefore, let us view this pulse from a different inertial reference frame, one that moves along with the pulse at the same speed so that the pulse appears to be at rest in the frame as in Figure 16.11b. In this reference frame, the pulse remains fixed and each element of the string moves to the left through the pulse shape.

A short element of the string, of length Δs, forms an approximate arc of a circle of radius R as shown in the magnified view in Figure 16.11b. In our moving frame of reference, the element of the string moves to the left with speed v. As it travels through the arc, we can model the element as a particle in uniform circular motion. This element has a centripetal acceleration of v^2/R, which is supplied by components of the force $\vec{\mathbf{T}}$ whose magnitude is the tension in the string. The force $\vec{\mathbf{T}}$ acts on each side of the element, tangent to the arc, as in Figure 16.11b. The horizontal components of $\vec{\mathbf{T}}$ cancel, and each vertical component $T \sin \theta$ acts downward. Hence, the magnitude of the total radial force on the element is $2T \sin \theta$.

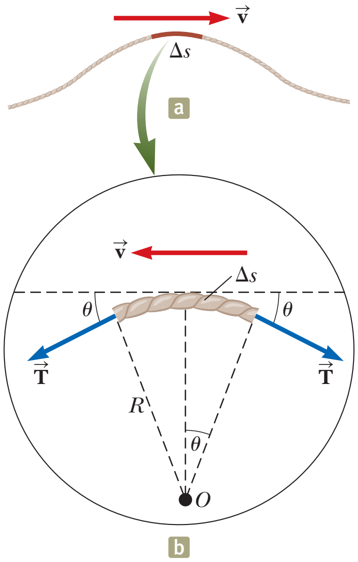


Figure 16.11 (a) In the reference frame of the Earth, a pulse moves to the right on a string with speed v. (b) In a frame of reference moving to the right with the pulse, the small element of length Δs moves to the left with speed v.

Because the element is small, θ is small and we can use the small-angle approximation $\sin\theta \approx \theta$. Therefore, the magnitude of the total radial force is

$$F_r = 2T\sin\theta \approx 2T\theta$$

The element has mass $m = \mu\Delta s$, where μ is the mass per unit length of the string. Because the element forms part of a circle and subtends an angle of 2θ at the center, $\Delta s = R(2\theta)$, and

$$m = \mu\Delta s = 2\mu R\theta$$

The element of the string is modeled as a particle under a net force. Therefore, applying Newton's second law to this element in the radial direction gives

$$F_r = \frac{mv^2}{R} \rightarrow 2T\theta = \frac{2\mu R\theta v^2}{R} \rightarrow T = \mu v^2$$

Solving for v gives

Speed of a wave on a stretched string ▶

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} \quad \textbf{(16.18)}$$

Pitfall Prevention 16.3

Multiple *T*'s Do not confuse the *T* in Equation 16.18 for the tension with the symbol *T* used in this chapter for the period of a wave. The context of the equation should help you identify which quantity is meant. There simply aren't enough letters in the alphabet to assign a unique letter to each variable!

Notice that this derivation is based on the assumption that the pulse height is small relative to the length of the pulse. Using this assumption, we were able to use the approximation $\sin\theta \approx \theta$. Furthermore, the model assumes that the tension T is not affected by the presence of the pulse, so T is the same at all points on the pulse. Finally, this proof does *not* assume any particular shape for the pulse. We therefore conclude that a pulse of *any shape* will travel on the string with speed $v = \sqrt{T/\mu}$, without any change in pulse shape.

Quick Quiz 16.4 Suppose you create a pulse by moving the free end of a taut string up and down once with your hand beginning at $t = 0$. The string is attached at its other end to a distant wall. The pulse reaches the wall at time t. Which of the following actions, taken by itself, decreases the time interval required for the pulse to reach the wall? More than one choice may be correct. **(a)** moving your hand more quickly, but still only up and down once by the same amount **(b)** moving your hand more slowly, but still only up and down once by the same amount **(c)** moving your hand a greater distance up and down in the same amount of time **(d)** moving your hand a lesser distance up and down in the same amount of time **(e)** using a heavier string of the same length and under the same tension **(f)** using a lighter string of the same length and under the same tension **(g)** using a string of the same linear mass density but under decreased tension **(h)** using a string of the same linear mass density but under increased tension

Example 16.3 The Speed of a Pulse on a Cord AM

A uniform string has a mass of 0.300 kg and a length of 6.00 m (Fig. 16.12). The string passes over a pulley and supports a 2.00-kg object. Find the speed of a pulse traveling along this string.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize In Figure 16.12, the hanging block establishes a tension in the horizontal string. This tension determines the speed with which waves move on the string.

Categorize To find the tension in the string, we model the hanging block as a *particle in equilibrium*. Then we use the tension to evaluate the wave speed on the string using Equation 16.18.

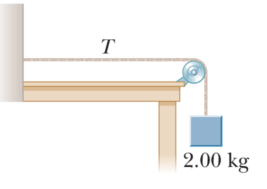


Figure 16.12 (Example 16.3) The tension T in the cord is maintained by the suspended object. The speed of any wave traveling along the cord is given by $v = \sqrt{T/\mu}$.

Analyze Apply the particle in equilibrium model to the block: $\sum F_y = T - m_{\text{block}}g = 0$

Solve for the tension in the string: $T = m_{\text{block}}g$

16.3 continued

Use Equation 16.18 to find the wave speed, using $\mu = m_{string}/\ell$ for the linear mass density of the string:

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} = \sqrt{\frac{m_{block}\, g\ell}{m_{string}}}$$

Evaluate the wave speed:

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{(2.00 \text{ kg})(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2)(6.00 \text{ m})}{0.300 \text{ kg}}} = 19.8 \text{ m/s}$$

Finalize The calculation of the tension neglects the small mass of the string. Strictly speaking, the string can never be exactly straight; therefore, the tension is not uniform.

WHAT IF? What if the block were swinging back and forth with respect to the vertical like a pendulum? How would that affect the wave speed on the string?

Answer The swinging block is categorized as a *particle under a net force.* The magnitude of one of the forces on the block is the tension in the string, which determines the wave speed. As the block swings, the tension changes, so the wave speed changes.

When the block is at the bottom of the swing, the string is vertical and the tension is larger than the weight of the block because the net force must be upward to provide the centripetal acceleration of the block. Therefore, the wave speed must be greater than 19.8 m/s.

When the block is at its highest point at the end of a swing, it is momentarily at rest, so there is no centripetal acceleration at that instant. The block is a particle in equilibrium in the radial direction. The tension is balanced by a component of the gravitational force on the block. Therefore, the tension is smaller than the weight and the wave speed is less than 19.8 m/s. With what frequency does the speed of the wave vary? Is it the same frequency as the pendulum?

Example 16.4 Rescuing the Hiker AM

An 80.0-kg hiker is trapped on a mountain ledge following a storm. A helicopter rescues the hiker by hovering above him and lowering a cable to him. The mass of the cable is 8.00 kg, and its length is 15.0 m. A sling of mass 70.0 kg is attached to the end of the cable. The hiker attaches himself to the sling, and the helicopter then accelerates upward. Terrified by hanging from the cable in midair, the hiker tries to signal the pilot by sending transverse pulses up the cable. A pulse takes 0.250 s to travel the length of the cable. What is the acceleration of the helicopter? Assume the tension in the cable is uniform.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine the effect of the acceleration of the helicopter on the cable. The greater the upward acceleration, the larger the tension in the cable. In turn, the larger the tension, the higher the speed of pulses on the cable.

Categorize This problem is a combination of one involving the speed of pulses on a string and one in which the hiker and sling are modeled as a *particle under a net force.*

Analyze Use the time interval for the pulse to travel from the hiker to the helicopter to find the speed of the pulses on the cable:

$$v = \frac{\Delta x}{\Delta t} = \frac{15.0 \text{ m}}{0.250 \text{ s}} = 60.0 \text{ m/s}$$

Solve Equation 16.18 for the tension in the cable:

$$(1) \quad v = \sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} \rightarrow T = \mu v^2$$

Model the hiker and sling as a particle under a net force, noting that the acceleration of this particle of mass m is the same as the acceleration of the helicopter:

$$\sum F = ma \rightarrow T - mg = ma$$

Solve for the acceleration and substitute the tension from Equation (1):

$$a = \frac{T}{m} - g = \frac{\mu v^2}{m} - g = \frac{m_{cable}\, v^2}{\ell_{cable}\, m} - g$$

continued

▸ 16.4 continued

Substitute numerical values:

$$a = \frac{(8.00\text{ kg})(60.0\text{ m/s})^2}{(15.0\text{ m})(150.0\text{ kg})} - 9.80\text{ m/s}^2 = 3.00\text{ m/s}^2$$

Finalize A real cable has stiffness in addition to tension. Stiffness tends to return a wire to its original straight-line shape even when it is not under tension. For example, a piano wire straightens if released from a curved shape; package-wrapping string does not.

Stiffness represents a restoring force in addition to tension and increases the wave speed. Consequently, for a real cable, the speed of 60.0 m/s that we determined is most likely associated with a smaller acceleration of the helicopter.

16.4 Reflection and Transmission

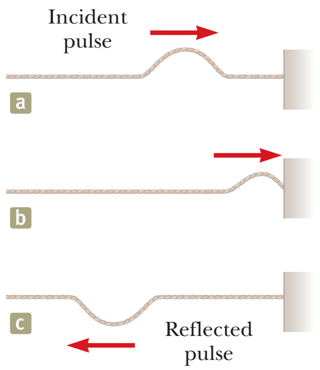


Figure 16.13 The reflection of a traveling pulse at the fixed end of a stretched string. The reflected pulse is inverted, but its shape is otherwise unchanged.

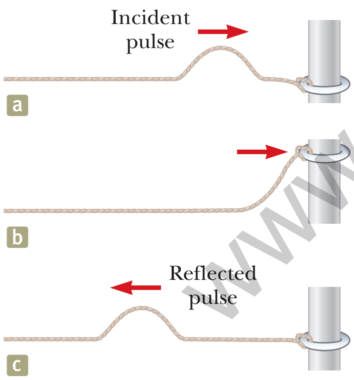


Figure 16.14 The reflection of a traveling pulse at the free end of a stretched string. The reflected pulse is not inverted.

The traveling wave model describes waves traveling through a uniform medium without interacting with anything along the way. We now consider how a traveling wave is affected when it encounters a change in the medium. For example, consider a pulse traveling on a string that is rigidly attached to a support at one end as in Figure 16.13. When the pulse reaches the support, a severe change in the medium occurs: the string ends. As a result, the pulse undergoes **reflection;** that is, the pulse moves back along the string in the opposite direction.

Notice that the reflected pulse is *inverted*. This inversion can be explained as follows. When the pulse reaches the fixed end of the string, the string produces an upward force on the support. By Newton's third law, the support must exert an equal-magnitude and oppositely directed (downward) reaction force on the string. This downward force causes the pulse to invert upon reflection.

Now consider another case. This time, the pulse arrives at the end of a string that is free to move vertically as in Figure 16.14. The tension at the free end is maintained because the string is tied to a ring of negligible mass that is free to slide vertically on a smooth post without friction. Again, the pulse is reflected, but this time it is not inverted. When it reaches the post, the pulse exerts a force on the free end of the string, causing the ring to accelerate upward. The ring rises as high as the incoming pulse, and then the downward component of the tension force pulls the ring back down. This movement of the ring produces a reflected pulse that is not inverted and that has the same amplitude as the incoming pulse.

Finally, consider a situation in which the boundary is intermediate between these two extremes. In this case, part of the energy in the incident pulse is reflected and part undergoes **transmission;** that is, some of the energy passes through the boundary. For instance, suppose a light string is attached to a heavier string as in Figure 16.15. When a pulse traveling on the light string reaches the boundary between the two strings, part of the pulse is reflected and inverted and part is transmitted to the heavier string. The reflected pulse is inverted for the same reasons described earlier in the case of the string rigidly attached to a support.

The reflected pulse has a smaller amplitude than the incident pulse. In Section 16.5, we show that the energy carried by a wave is related to its amplitude. According to the principle of conservation of energy, when the pulse breaks up into a reflected pulse and a transmitted pulse at the boundary, the sum of the energies of these two pulses must equal the energy of the incident pulse. Because the reflected pulse contains only part of the energy of the incident pulse, its amplitude must be smaller.

When a pulse traveling on a heavy string strikes the boundary between the heavy string and a lighter one as in Figure 16.16, again part is reflected and part is transmitted. In this case, the reflected pulse is not inverted.

In either case, the relative heights of the reflected and transmitted pulses depend on the relative densities of the two strings. If the strings are identical, there is no discontinuity at the boundary and no reflection takes place.

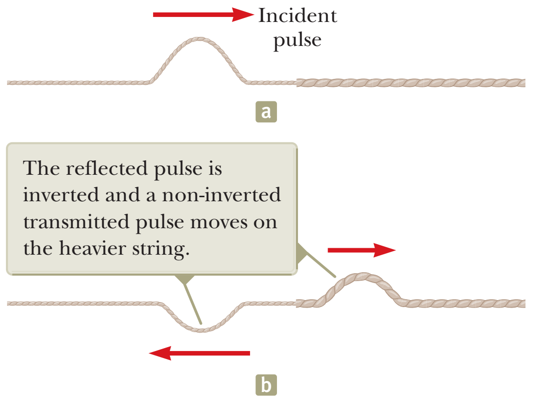


Figure 16.15 (a) A pulse traveling to the right on a light string approaches the junction with a heavier string. (b) The situation after the pulse reaches the junction.

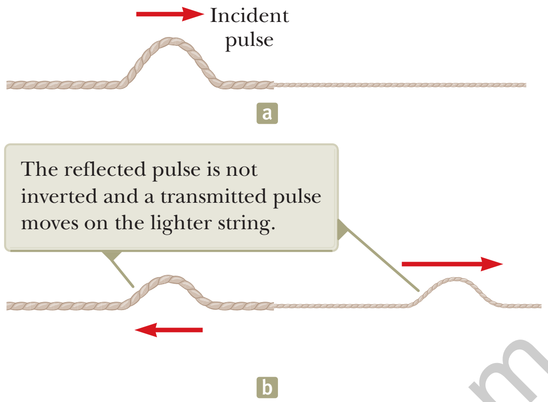


Figure 16.16 (a) A pulse traveling to the right on a heavy string approaches the junction with a lighter string. (b) The situation after the pulse reaches the junction.

According to Equation 16.18, the speed of a wave on a string increases as the mass per unit length of the string decreases. In other words, a wave travels more rapidly on a light string than on a heavy string if both are under the same tension. The following general rules apply to reflected waves: When a wave or pulse travels from medium A to medium B and $v_A > v_B$ (that is, when B is denser than A), it is inverted upon reflection. When a wave or pulse travels from medium A to medium B and $v_A < v_B$ (that is, when A is denser than B), it is not inverted upon reflection.

16.5 Rate of Energy Transfer by Sinusoidal Waves on Strings

Waves transport energy through a medium as they propagate. For example, suppose an object is hanging on a stretched string and a pulse is sent down the string as in Figure 16.17a. When the pulse meets the suspended object, the object is momentarily displaced upward as in Figure 16.17b. In the process, energy is transferred to the object and appears as an increase in the gravitational potential energy of the object–Earth system. This section examines the rate at which energy is transported along a string. We shall assume a one-dimensional sinusoidal wave in the calculation of the energy transferred.

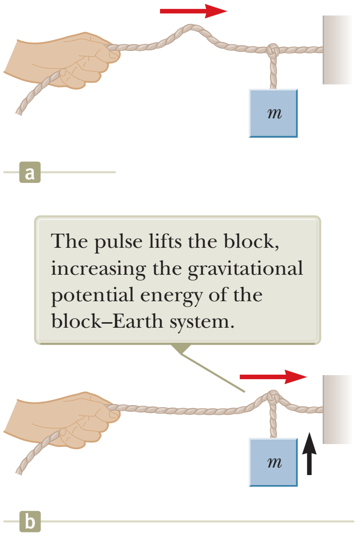


Figure 16.17 (a) A pulse travels to the right on a stretched string, carrying energy with it. (b) The energy of the pulse arrives at the hanging block.

Consider a sinusoidal wave traveling on a string (Fig. 16.18). The source of the energy is some external agent at the left end of the string. We can consider the string to be a nonisolated system. As the external agent performs work on the end of the string, moving it up and down, energy enters the system of the string and propagates along its length. Let's focus our attention on an infinitesimal element of the string of length dx and mass dm. Each such element oscillates vertically with its position described by Equation 15.6. Therefore, we can model each element of the string as a particle in simple harmonic motion, with the oscillation in the y direction. All elements have the same angular frequency ω and the same amplitude A. The kinetic energy K associated with a moving particle is $K = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$. If we apply this equation to the infinitesimal element, the kinetic energy dK associated with the up and down motion of this element is

$$dK = \tfrac{1}{2}(dm)v_y^2$$

where v_y is the transverse speed of the element. If μ is the mass per unit length of the string, the mass dm of the element of length dx is equal to $\mu\ dx$. Hence, we can express the kinetic energy of an element of the string as

$$dK = \tfrac{1}{2}(\mu\ dx)v_y^2 \qquad \textbf{(16.19)}$$

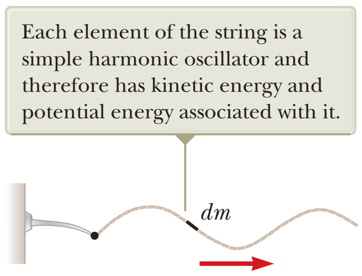


Figure 16.18 A sinusoidal wave traveling along the x axis on a stretched string.

Substituting for the general transverse speed of an element of the medium using Equation 16.14 gives

$$dK = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu[-\omega A\cos(kx - \omega t)]^2\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2A^2\cos^2(kx - \omega t)\,dx$$

If we take a snapshot of the wave at time $t = 0$, the kinetic energy of a given element is

$$dK = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A^2\cos^2 kx\,dx$$

Integrating this expression over all the string elements in a wavelength of the wave gives the total kinetic energy K_λ in one wavelength:

$$K_\lambda = \int dK = \int_0^\lambda \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2A^2\cos^2 kx\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2A^2\int_0^\lambda \cos^2 kx\,dx$$

$$= \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2A^2\left[\tfrac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{4k}\sin 2kx\right]_0^\lambda = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2A^2\left[\tfrac{1}{2}\lambda\right] = \tfrac{1}{4}\mu\omega^2A^2\lambda$$

In addition to kinetic energy, there is potential energy associated with each element of the string due to its displacement from the equilibrium position and the restoring forces from neighboring elements. A similar analysis to that above for the total potential energy U_λ in one wavelength gives exactly the same result:

$$U_\lambda = \tfrac{1}{4}\mu\omega^2A^2\lambda$$

The total energy in one wavelength of the wave is the sum of the potential and kinetic energies:

$$E_\lambda = U_\lambda + K_\lambda = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2A^2\lambda \qquad \textbf{(16.20)}$$

As the wave moves along the string, this amount of energy passes by a given point on the string during a time interval of one period of the oscillation. Therefore, the power P, or rate of energy transfer T_{MW} associated with the mechanical wave, is

$$P = \frac{T_{\text{MW}}}{\Delta t} = \frac{E_\lambda}{T} = \frac{\tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2A^2\lambda}{T} = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2A^2\left(\frac{\lambda}{T}\right)$$

Power of a wave ▶

$$P = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2A^2v \qquad \textbf{(16.21)}$$

Equation 16.21 shows that the rate of energy transfer by a sinusoidal wave on a string is proportional to (a) the square of the frequency, (b) the square of the amplitude, and (c) the wave speed. In fact, the rate of energy transfer in *any* sinusoidal wave is proportional to the square of the angular frequency and to the square of the amplitude.

Quick Quiz 16.5 Which of the following, taken by itself, would be most effective in increasing the rate at which energy is transferred by a wave traveling along a string? **(a)** reducing the linear mass density of the string by one half **(b)** doubling the wavelength of the wave **(c)** doubling the tension in the string **(d)** doubling the amplitude of the wave

Example 16.5 Power Supplied to a Vibrating String

A taut string for which $\mu = 5.00 \times 10^{-2}$ kg/m is under a tension of 80.0 N. How much power must be supplied to the string to generate sinusoidal waves at a frequency of 60.0 Hz and an amplitude of 6.00 cm?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Consider Figure 16.10 again and notice that the vibrating blade supplies energy to the string at a certain rate. This energy then propagates to the right along the string.

16.5 continued

Categorize We evaluate quantities from equations developed in the chapter, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 16.21 to evaluate the power: $P = \frac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A^2 v$

Use Equations 16.9 and 16.18 to substitute for ω and v: $P = \frac{1}{2}\mu(2\pi f)^2 A^2\left(\sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}}\right) = 2\pi^2 f^2 A^2\sqrt{\mu T}$

Substitute numerical values: $P = 2\pi^2(60.0 \text{ Hz})^2(0.060\,0 \text{ m})^2\sqrt{(0.050\,0 \text{ kg/m})(80.0 \text{ N})} = 512 \text{ W}$

WHAT IF? What if the string is to transfer energy at a rate of 1 000 W? What must be the required amplitude if all other parameters remain the same?

Answer Let us set up a ratio of the new and old power, reflecting only a change in the amplitude:

$$\frac{P_{\text{new}}}{P_{\text{old}}} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A_{\text{new}}^2\, v}{\frac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A_{\text{old}}^2\, v} = \frac{A_{\text{new}}^2}{A_{\text{old}}^2}$$

Solving for the new amplitude gives

$$A_{\text{new}} = A_{\text{old}}\sqrt{\frac{P_{\text{new}}}{P_{\text{old}}}} = (6.00 \text{ cm})\sqrt{\frac{1\,000 \text{ W}}{512 \text{ W}}} = 8.39 \text{ cm}$$

16.6 The Linear Wave Equation

In Section 16.1, we introduced the concept of the wave function to represent waves traveling on a string. All wave functions $y(x, t)$ represent solutions of an equation called the *linear wave equation*. This equation gives a complete description of the wave motion, and from it one can derive an expression for the wave speed. Furthermore, the linear wave equation is basic to many forms of wave motion. In this section, we derive this equation as applied to waves on strings.

Suppose a traveling wave is propagating along a string that is under a tension T. Let's consider one small string element of length Δx (Fig. 16.19). The ends of the element make small angles θ_A and θ_B with the x axis. Forces act on the string at its ends where it connects to neighboring elements. Therefore, the element is modeled as a particle under a net force. The net force acting on the element in the vertical direction is

$$\sum F_y = T\sin\theta_B - T\sin\theta_A = T(\sin\theta_B - \sin\theta_A)$$

Because the angles are small, we can use the approximation $\sin\theta \approx \tan\theta$ to express the net force as

$$\sum F_y \approx T(\tan\theta_B - \tan\theta_A) \qquad \textbf{(16.22)}$$

Imagine undergoing an infinitesimal displacement outward from the right end of the rope element in Figure 16.19 along the blue line representing the force $\vec{\mathbf{T}}$. This displacement has infinitesimal x and y components and can be represented by the vector $dx\,\hat{\mathbf{i}} + dy\,\hat{\mathbf{j}}$. The tangent of the angle with respect to the x axis for this displacement is dy/dx. Because we evaluate this tangent at a particular instant of time, we must express it in partial form as $\partial y/\partial x$. Substituting for the tangents in Equation 16.22 gives

$$\sum F_y \approx T\left[\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_B - \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_A\right] \qquad \textbf{(16.23)}$$

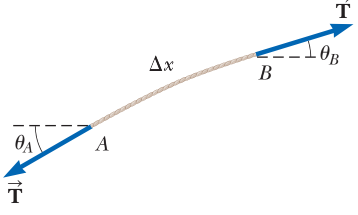


Figure 16.19 An element of a string under tension T.

Now, from the particle under a net force model, let's apply Newton's second law to the element, with the mass of the element given by $m = \mu\,\Delta x$:

$$\sum F_y = ma_y = \mu\,\Delta x\left(\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2}\right) \quad \textbf{(16.24)}$$

Combining Equation 16.23 with Equation 16.24 gives

$$\mu\,\Delta x\left(\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2}\right) = T\left[\left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_B - \left(\frac{\partial y}{\partial x}\right)_A\right]$$

$$\frac{\mu}{T}\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} = \frac{(\partial y/\partial x)_B - (\partial y/dx)_A}{\Delta x} \quad \textbf{(16.25)}$$

The right side of Equation 16.25 can be expressed in a different form if we note that the partial derivative of any function is defined as

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} \equiv \lim_{\Delta x \to 0}\frac{f(x + \Delta x) - f(x)}{\Delta x}$$

Associating $f(x + \Delta x)$ with $(\partial y/\partial x)_B$ and $f(x)$ with $(\partial y/\partial x)_A$, we see that, in the limit $\Delta x \to 0$, Equation 16.25 becomes

Linear wave equation for a string ▶

$$\frac{\mu}{T}\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} = \frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2} \quad \textbf{(16.26)}$$

This expression is the linear wave equation as it applies to waves on a string.

The linear wave equation (Eq. 16.26) is often written in the form

Linear wave equation in general ▶

$$\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{v^2}\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} \quad \textbf{(16.27)}$$

Equation 16.27 applies in general to various types of traveling waves. For waves on strings, y represents the vertical position of elements of the string. For sound waves propagating through a gas, y corresponds to longitudinal position of elements of the gas from equilibrium or variations in either the pressure or the density of the gas. In the case of electromagnetic waves, y corresponds to electric or magnetic field components.

We have shown that the sinusoidal wave function (Eq. 16.10) is one solution of the linear wave equation (Eq. 16.27). Although we do not prove it here, the linear wave equation is satisfied by *any* wave function having the form $y = f(x \pm vt)$. Furthermore, we have seen that the linear wave equation is a direct consequence of the particle under a net force model applied to any element of a string carrying a traveling wave.

Summary

Definitions

A one-dimensional **sinusoidal wave** is one for which the positions of the elements of the medium vary sinusoidally. A sinusoidal wave traveling to the right can be expressed with a **wave function**

$$y(x, t) = A\sin\left[\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}(x - vt)\right] \quad \textbf{(16.5)}$$

where A is the **amplitude,** λ is the **wavelength,** and v is the **wave speed.**

The **angular wave number** k and **angular frequency** ω of a wave are defined as follows:

$$k \equiv \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \quad \textbf{(16.8)}$$

$$\omega \equiv \frac{2\pi}{T} = 2\pi f \quad \textbf{(16.9)}$$

where T is the **period** of the wave and f is its **frequency.**

A **transverse wave** is one in which the elements of the medium move in a direction *perpendicular* to the direction of propagation.

A **longitudinal wave** is one in which the elements of the medium move in a direction *parallel* to the direction of propagation.

Concepts and Principles

Any one-dimensional wave traveling with a speed v in the x direction can be represented by a wave function of the form

$$y\,(x,\,t) = f(x \pm vt) \qquad \textbf{(16.1, 16.2)}$$

where the positive sign applies to a wave traveling in the negative x direction and the negative sign applies to a wave traveling in the positive x direction. The shape of the wave at any instant in time (a snapshot of the wave) is obtained by holding t constant.

The speed of a wave traveling on a taut string of mass per unit length μ and tension T is

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} \qquad \textbf{(16.18)}$$

A wave is totally or partially reflected when it reaches the end of the medium in which it propagates or when it reaches a boundary where its speed changes discontinuously. If a wave traveling on a string meets a fixed end, the wave is reflected and inverted. If the wave reaches a free end, it is reflected but not inverted.

The **power** transmitted by a sinusoidal wave on a stretched string is

$$P = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu\omega^2 A^2 v \qquad \textbf{(16.21)}$$

Wave functions are solutions to a differential equation called the **linear wave equation:**

$$\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{v^2}\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2} \qquad \textbf{(16.27)}$$

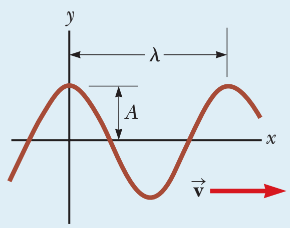
Analysis Model for Problem Solving

Traveling Wave. The wave speed of a sinusoidal wave is

$$v = \frac{\lambda}{T} = \lambda f \qquad \textbf{(16.6, 16.12)}$$

A sinusoidal wave can be expressed as

$$y = A\sin\,(kx - \omega t) \qquad \textbf{(16.10)}$$



Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. If one end of a heavy rope is attached to one end of a lightweight rope, a wave can move from the heavy rope into the lighter one. **(i)** What happens to the speed of the wave? (a) It increases. (b) It decreases. (c) It is constant. (d) It changes unpredictably. **(ii)** What happens to the frequency? Choose from the same possibilities. **(iii)** What happens to the wavelength? Choose from the same possibilities.

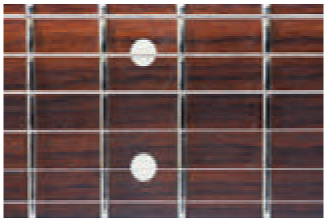
2. If you stretch a rubber hose and pluck it, you can observe a pulse traveling up and down the hose. **(i)** What happens to the speed of the pulse if you stretch the hose more tightly? (a) It increases. (b) It decreases. (c) It is constant. (d) It changes unpredictably. **(ii)** What happens to the speed if you fill the hose with water? Choose from the same possibilities.

3. Rank the waves represented by the following functions from the largest to the smallest according to **(i)** their amplitudes, **(ii)** their wavelengths, **(iii)** their frequencies, **(iv)** their periods, and **(v)** their speeds. If the values of a quantity are equal for two waves, show them as having equal rank. For all functions, x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. (a) $y = 4\sin(3x - 15t)$ (b) $y = 6\cos(3x + 15t - 2)$ (c) $y = 8\sin(2x + 15t)$ (d) $y = 8\cos(4x + 20t)$ (e) $y = 7\sin(6x - 24t)$

4. By what factor would you have to multiply the tension in a stretched string so as to double the wave speed?

Assume the string does not stretch. (a) a factor of 8 (b) a factor of 4 (c) a factor of 2 (d) a factor of 0.5 (e) You could not change the speed by a predictable factor by changing the tension.

5. When all the strings on a guitar (Fig. OQ16.5) are stretched to the same tension, will the speed of a wave along the most massive bass string be (a) faster, (b) slower, or (c) the same as the speed of a wave on the lighter strings? Alternatively, (d) is the speed on the bass string not necessarily any of these answers?



Joseph/Getty Images

Figure OQ16.5

6. Which of the following statements is not necessarily true regarding mechanical waves? (a) They are formed by some source of disturbance. (b) They are sinusoidal in nature. (c) They carry energy. (d) They require a medium through which to propagate. (e) The wave speed depends on the properties of the medium in which they travel.

7. (a) Can a wave on a string move with a wave speed that is greater than the maximum transverse speed $v_{y,\text{max}}$ of an element of the string? (b) Can the wave speed be much greater than the maximum element speed? (c) Can the wave speed be equal to the maximum element speed? (d) Can the wave speed be less than $v_{y,\text{max}}$?

[8.] A source vibrating at constant frequency generates a sinusoidal wave on a string under constant tension. If the power delivered to the string is doubled, by what factor does the amplitude change? (a) a factor of 4 (b) a factor of 2 (c) a factor of $\sqrt{2}$ (d) a factor of 0.707 (e) cannot be predicted

9. The distance between two successive peaks of a sinusoidal wave traveling along a string is 2 m. If the frequency of this wave is 4 Hz, what is the speed of the wave? (a) 4 m/s (b) 1 m/s (c) 8 m/s (d) 2 m/s (e) impossible to answer from the information given

Conceptual Questions

[1.] denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. Why is a solid substance able to transport both longitudinal waves and transverse waves, but a homogeneous fluid is able to transport only longitudinal waves?

[2.] (a) How would you create a longitudinal wave in a stretched spring? (b) Would it be possible to create a transverse wave in a spring?

3. When a pulse travels on a taut string, does it always invert upon reflection? Explain.

4. In mechanics, massless strings are often assumed. Why is that not a good assumption when discussing waves on strings?

5. If you steadily shake one end of a taut rope three times each second, what would be the period of the sinusoidal wave set up in the rope?

6. (a) If a long rope is hung from a ceiling and waves are sent up the rope from its lower end, why does the speed of the waves change as they ascend? (b) Does the speed of the ascending waves increase or decrease? Explain.

7. Why is a pulse on a string considered to be transverse?

8. Does the vertical speed of an element of a horizontal, taut string, through which a wave is traveling, depend on the wave speed? Explain.

9. In an earthquake, both S (transverse) and P (longitudinal) waves propagate from the focus of the earthquake. The focus is in the ground radially below the epicenter on the surface (Fig. CQ16.9). Assume the waves move in straight lines through uniform material. The S waves travel through the Earth more slowly than the P waves (at about 5 km/s versus 8 km/s). By detecting the time of arrival of the waves at a seismograph, (a) how can one determine the distance to the focus of the earthquake? (b) How many detection stations are necessary to locate the focus unambiguously?

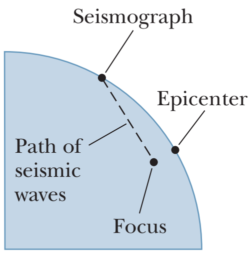


Figure CQ16.9

Problems

The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

[1.] full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 16.1 Propagation of a Disturbance

1. A seismographic station receives S and P waves from an earthquake, separated in time by 17.3 s. Assume the waves have traveled over the same path at speeds of 4.50 km/s and 7.80 km/s. Find the distance from the seismograph to the focus of the quake.

2. Ocean waves with a crest-to-crest distance of 10.0 m can be described by the wave function

$$y(x, t) = 0.800 \sin [0.628(x - vt)]$$

where x and y are in meters, t is in seconds, and $v = 1.20$ m/s. (a) Sketch $y(x, t)$ at $t = 0$. (b) Sketch $y(x, t)$ at $t = 2.00$ s. (c) Compare the graph in part (b) with that for part (a) and explain similarities and differences. (d) How has the wave moved between graph (a) and graph (b)?

3. At $t = 0$, a transverse pulse in a wire is described by the function

$$y = \frac{6.00}{x^2 + 3.00}$$

where x and y are in meters. If the pulse is traveling in the positive x direction with a speed of 4.50 m/s, write the function $y(x, t)$ that describes this pulse.

4. Two points A and B on the surface of the Earth are at the same longitude and 60.0° apart in latitude as shown in Figure P16.4. Suppose an earthquake at point A creates a P wave that reaches point B by traveling straight through the body of the Earth at a constant speed of 7.80 km/s. The earthquake also radiates a Rayleigh wave that travels at 4.50 km/s. In addition to P and S waves, Rayleigh waves are a third type of seismic wave that travels along the *surface* of the Earth rather than through the *bulk* of the Earth. (a) Which of these two seismic waves arrives at B first? (b) What is the time difference between the arrivals of these two waves at B?

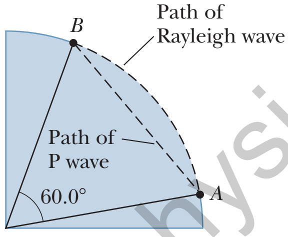


Figure P16.4

Section 16.2 Analysis Model: Traveling Wave

5. A wave is described by $y = 0.020\,0 \sin (kx - \omega t)$, where $k = 2.11$ rad/m, $\omega = 3.62$ rad/s, x and y are in meters, and t is in seconds. Determine (a) the amplitude, (b) the wavelength, (c) the frequency, and (d) the speed of the wave.

6. A certain uniform string is held under constant tension. (a) Draw a side-view snapshot of a sinusoidal wave on a string as shown in diagrams in the text. (b) Immediately below diagram (a), draw the same wave at a moment later by one-quarter of the period of the wave. (c) Then, draw a wave with an amplitude 1.5 times larger than the wave in diagram (a). (d) Next, draw a wave differing from the one in your diagram (a) just by having a wavelength 1.5 times larger. (e) Finally, draw a wave differing from that in diagram (a) just by having a frequency 1.5 times larger.

7. A sinusoidal wave is traveling along a rope. The oscillator that generates the wave completes 40.0 vibrations in 30.0 s. A given crest of the wave travels 425 cm along the rope in 10.0 s. What is the wavelength of the wave?

8. For a certain transverse wave, the distance between two successive crests is 1.20 m, and eight crests pass a given point along the direction of travel every 12.0 s. Calculate the wave speed.

9. The wave function for a traveling wave on a taut string is (in SI units)

$$y(x, t) = 0.350 \sin \left(10\pi t - 3\pi x + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$$

(a) What are the speed and direction of travel of the wave? (b) What is the vertical position of an element of the string at $t = 0$, $x = 0.100$ m? What are (c) the wavelength and (d) the frequency of the wave? (e) What is the maximum transverse speed of an element of the string?

10. When a particular wire is vibrating with a frequency of 4.00 Hz, a transverse wave of wavelength 60.0 cm is produced. Determine the speed of waves along the wire.

11. The string shown in Figure P16.11 is driven at a frequency of 5.00 Hz. The amplitude of the motion is $A = 12.0$ cm, and the wave speed is $v = 20.0$ m/s. Furthermore, the wave is such that $y = 0$ at $x = 0$ and $t = 0$. Determine (a) the angular frequency and (b) the wave number for this wave. (c) Write an expression for the wave function. Calculate (d) the maximum transverse speed and (e) the maximum transverse acceleration of an element of the string.

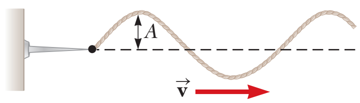


Figure P16.11

12. Consider the sinusoidal wave of Example 16.2 with the wave function

$$y = 0.150 \cos (15.7x - 50.3t)$$

where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. At a certain instant, let point A be at the origin and point B be the closest point to A along the x axis where the wave is 60.0° out of phase with A. What is the coordinate of B?

13. A sinusoidal wave of wavelength 2.00 m and amplitude 0.100 m travels on a string with a speed of 1.00 m/s to the right. At $t = 0$, the left end of the string is at the origin. For this wave, find (a) the frequency, (b) the angular frequency, (c) the angular wave number, and (d) the wave function in SI units. Determine the equation of motion in SI units for (e) the left end of the string and (f) the point on the string at $x = 1.50$ m to the right of the left end. (g) What is the maximum speed of any element of the string?

14. (a) Plot y versus t at $x = 0$ for a sinusoidal wave of the form $y = 0.150 \cos (15.7x - 50.3t)$, where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. (b) Determine the period of vibration. (c) State how your result compares with the value found in Example 16.2.

15. W A transverse wave on a string is described by the wave function

$$y = 0.120 \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{8}x + 4\pi t\right)$$

where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. Determine (a) the transverse speed and (b) the transverse acceleration at $t = 0.200$ s for an element of the string located at $x = 1.60$ m. What are (c) the wavelength, (d) the period, and (e) the speed of propagation of this wave?

16. A wave on a string is described by the wave function $y = 0.100 \sin(0.50x - 20t)$, where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. (a) Show that an element of the string at $x = 2.00$ m executes harmonic motion. (b) Determine the frequency of oscillation of this particular element.

17. W A sinusoidal wave is described by the wave function $y = 0.25 \sin(0.30x - 40t)$ where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. Determine for this wave (a) the amplitude, (b) the angular frequency, (c) the angular wave number, (d) the wavelength, (e) the wave speed, and (f) the direction of motion.

18. GP A sinusoidal wave traveling in the negative x direction (to the left) has an amplitude of 20.0 cm, a wavelength of 35.0 cm, and a frequency of 12.0 Hz. The transverse position of an element of the medium at $t = 0$, $x = 0$ is $y = -3.00$ cm, and the element has a positive velocity here. We wish to find an expression for the wave function describing this wave. (a) Sketch the wave at $t = 0$. (b) Find the angular wave number k from the wavelength. (c) Find the period T from the frequency. Find (d) the angular frequency ω and (e) the wave speed v. (f) From the information about $t = 0$, find the phase constant ϕ. (g) Write an expression for the wave function $y(x, t)$.

19. (a) Write the expression for y as a function of x and t in SI units for a sinusoidal wave traveling along a rope in the negative x direction with the following characteristics: $A = 8.00$ cm, $\lambda = 80.0$ cm, $f = 3.00$ Hz, and $y(0, t) = 0$ at $t = 0$. (b) **What If?** Write the expression for y as a function of x and t for the wave in part (a) assuming $y(x, 0) = 0$ at the point $x = 10.0$ cm.

20. A transverse sinusoidal wave on a string has a period $T = 25.0$ ms and travels in the negative x direction with a speed of 30.0 m/s. At $t = 0$, an element of the string at $x = 0$ has a transverse position of 2.00 cm and is traveling downward with a speed of 2.00 m/s. (a) What is the amplitude of the wave? (b) What is the initial phase angle? (c) What is the maximum transverse speed of an element of the string? (d) Write the wave function for the wave.

Section 16.3 The Speed of Waves on Strings

21. **Review.** The elastic limit of a steel wire is 2.70×10^8 Pa. What is the maximum speed at which transverse wave pulses can propagate along this wire without exceeding this stress? (The density of steel is 7.86×10^3 kg/m^3.)

22. W A piano string having a mass per unit length equal to 5.00×10^{-3} kg/m is under a tension of 1 350 N. Find the speed with which a wave travels on this string.

23. M Transverse waves travel with a speed of 20.0 m/s on a string under a tension of 6.00 N. What tension is required for a wave speed of 30.0 m/s on the same string?

24. A student taking a quiz finds on a reference sheet the two equations

$$f = \frac{1}{T} \quad \text{and} \quad v = \sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}}$$

She has forgotten what T represents in each equation. (a) Use dimensional analysis to determine the units required for T in each equation. (b) Explain how you can identify the physical quantity each T represents from the units.

25. W An Ethernet cable is 4.00 m long. The cable has a mass of 0.200 kg. A transverse pulse is produced by plucking one end of the taut cable. The pulse makes four trips down and back along the cable in 0.800 s. What is the tension in the cable?

26. A transverse traveling wave on a taut wire has an amplitude of 0.200 mm and a frequency of 500 Hz. It travels with a speed of 196 m/s. (a) Write an equation in SI units of the form $y = A \sin(kx - \omega t)$ for this wave. (b) The mass per unit length of this wire is 4.10 g/m. Find the tension in the wire.

27. AMT M A steel wire of length 30.0 m and a copper wire of length 20.0 m, both with 1.00-mm diameters, are connected end to end and stretched to a tension of 150 N. During what time interval will a transverse wave travel the entire length of the two wires?

28. *Why is the following situation impossible?* An astronaut on the Moon is studying wave motion using the apparatus discussed in Example 16.3 and shown in Figure 16.12. He measures the time interval for pulses to travel along the horizontal wire. Assume the horizontal wire has a mass of 4.00 g and a length of 1.60 m and assume a 3.00-kg object is suspended from its extension around the pulley. The astronaut finds that a pulse requires 26.1 ms to traverse the length of the wire.

29. AMT Tension is maintained in a string as in Figure P16.29. The observed wave speed is $v = 24.0$ m/s when the suspended mass is $m = 3.00$ kg. (a) What is the mass per unit length of the string? (b) What is the wave speed when the suspended mass is $m = 2.00$ kg?

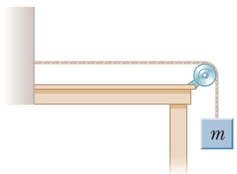


Figure P16.29 Problems 29 and 47.

30. **Review.** A light string with a mass per unit length of 8.00 g/m has its ends tied to two walls separated by a distance equal to three-fourths the length of the string (Fig. P16.30, p. 503). An object of mass m is suspended from the center of the string, putting a tension in the string. (a) Find an expression for the transverse wave speed in the string as a function of the mass of the hanging object. (b) What should be the mass of the object suspended from the string if the wave speed is to be 60.0 m/s?

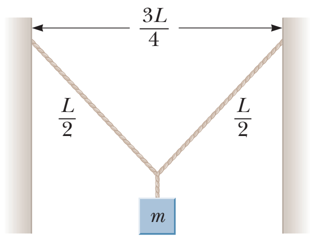


Figure P16.30

31. W Transverse pulses travel with a speed of 200 m/s along a taut copper wire whose diameter is 1.50 mm. What is the tension in the wire? (The density of copper is 8.92 g/cm^3.)

Section 16.5 Rate of Energy Transfer by Sinusoidal Waves on Strings

32. In a region far from the epicenter of an earthquake, a seismic wave can be modeled as transporting energy in a single direction without absorption, just as a string wave does. Suppose the seismic wave moves from granite into mudfill with similar density but with a much smaller bulk modulus. Assume the speed of the wave gradually drops by a factor of 25.0, with negligible reflection of the wave. (a) Explain whether the amplitude of the ground shaking will increase or decrease. (b) Does it change by a predictable factor? (This phenomenon led to the collapse of part of the Nimitz Freeway in Oakland, California, during the Loma Prieta earthquake of 1989.)

33. Transverse waves are being generated on a rope under constant tension. By what factor is the required power increased or decreased if (a) the length of the rope is doubled and the angular frequency remains constant, (b) the amplitude is doubled and the angular frequency is halved, (c) both the wavelength and the amplitude are doubled, and (d) both the length of the rope and the wavelength are halved?

34. M Sinusoidal waves 5.00 cm in amplitude are to be transmitted along a string that has a linear mass density of 4.00×10^{-2} kg/m. The source can deliver a maximum power of 300 W, and the string is under a tension of 100 N. What is the highest frequency f at which the source can operate?

35. M A sinusoidal wave on a string is described by the wave function

$$y = 0.15 \sin (0.80x - 50t)$$

where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. The mass per unit length of this string is 12.0 g/m. Determine (a) the speed of the wave, (b) the wavelength, (c) the frequency, and (d) the power transmitted by the wave.

36. W A taut rope has a mass of 0.180 kg and a length of 3.60 m. What power must be supplied to the rope so as to generate sinusoidal waves having an amplitude of 0.100 m and a wavelength of 0.500 m and traveling with a speed of 30.0 m/s?

37. AMT A long string carries a wave; a 6.00-m segment of the string contains four complete wavelengths and has a mass of 180 g. The string vibrates sinusoidally with a frequency of 50.0 Hz and a peak-to-valley displacement of 15.0 cm. (The "peak-to-valley" distance is the vertical distance from the farthest positive position to the farthest negative position.) (a) Write the function that describes this wave traveling in the positive x direction. (b) Determine the power being supplied to the string.

38. A horizontal string can transmit a maximum power P_0 (without breaking) if a wave with amplitude A and angular frequency ω is traveling along it. To increase this maximum power, a student folds the string and uses this "double string" as a medium. Assuming the tension in the two strands together is the same as the original tension in the single string and the angular frequency of the wave remains the same, determine the maximum power that can be transmitted along the "double string."

39. The wave function for a wave on a taut string is

$$y(x, t) = 0.350 \sin \left(10\pi t - 3\pi x + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$$

where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. If the linear mass density of the string is 75.0 g/m, (a) what is the average rate at which energy is transmitted along the string? (b) What is the energy contained in each cycle of the wave?

40. A two-dimensional water wave spreads in circular ripples. Show that the amplitude A at a distance r from the initial disturbance is proportional to $1/\sqrt{r}$. *Suggestion:* Consider the energy carried by one outward-moving ripple.

Section 16.6 The Linear Wave Equation

41. Show that the wave function $y = \ln [b(x - vt)]$ is a solution to Equation 16.27, where b is a constant.

42. (a) Evaluate A in the scalar equality $4 (7 + 3) = A$. (b) Evaluate A, B, and C in the vector equality $700\,\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 3.00\,\hat{\mathbf{k}} = A\hat{\mathbf{i}} + B\hat{\mathbf{j}} + C\hat{\mathbf{k}}$. (c) Explain how you arrive at the answers to convince a student who thinks that you cannot solve a single equation for three different unknowns. (d) **What If?** The functional equality or identity

$$A + B \cos (Cx + Dt + E) = 7.00 \cos (3x + 4t + 2)$$

is true for all values of the variables x and t, measured in meters and in seconds, respectively. Evaluate the constants A, B, C, D, and E. (e) Explain how you arrive at your answers to part (d).

43. Show that the wave function $y = e^{b(x - vt)}$ is a solution of the linear wave equation (Eq. 16.27), where b is a constant.

44. (a) Show that the function $y(x, t) = x^2 + v^2t^2$ is a solution to the wave equation. (b) Show that the function in part (a) can be written as $f(x + vt) + g(x - vt)$ and determine the functional forms for f and g. (c) **What If?** Repeat parts (a) and (b) for the function $y(x, t) = \sin (x) \cos (vt)$.

Additional Problems

45. Motion-picture film is projected at a frequency of 24.0 frames per second. Each photograph on the film is the same height of 19.0 mm, just like each oscillation in a wave is the same length. Model the height of a frame as the wavelength of a wave. At what constant speed does the film pass into the projector?

46. "The wave" is a particular type of pulse that can propagate through a large crowd gathered at a sports arena (Fig. P16.46). The elements of the medium are the spectators, with zero position corresponding to their being seated and maximum position corresponding to their standing and raising their arms. When a large fraction of the spectators participates in the wave motion, a somewhat stable pulse shape can develop. The wave speed depends on people's reaction time, which is typically on the order of 0.1 s. Estimate the order of magnitude, in minutes, of the time interval required for such a pulse to make one circuit around a large sports stadium. State the quantities you measure or estimate and their values.

Joe Klamar/AFP/Getty Images

Figure P16.46

47. A sinusoidal wave in a rope is described by the wave function

$$y = 0.20 \sin (0.75\pi x + 18\pi t)$$

where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. The rope has a linear mass density of 0.250 kg/m. The tension in the rope is provided by an arrangement like the one illustrated in Figure P16.29. What is the mass of the suspended object?

48. The ocean floor is underlain by a layer of basalt that constitutes the crust, or uppermost layer, of the Earth in that region. Below this crust is found denser periodotite rock that forms the Earth's mantle. The boundary between these two layers is called the Mohorovicic discontinuity ("Moho" for short). If an explosive charge is set off at the surface of the basalt, it generates a seismic wave that is reflected back out at the Moho. If the speed of this wave in basalt is 6.50 km/s and the two-way travel time is 1.85 s, what is the thickness of this oceanic crust?

49. **Review.** A 2.00-kg block hangs from a rubber cord, being supported so that the cord is not stretched. The unstretched length of the cord is 0.500 m, and its mass is 5.00 g. The "spring constant" for the cord is 100 N/m. The block is released and stops momentarily at the lowest point. (a) Determine the tension in the cord when the block is at this lowest point. (b) What is the length of the cord in this "stretched" position? (c) If the block is held in this lowest position, find the speed of a transverse wave in the cord.

50. **Review.** A block of mass M hangs from a rubber cord. The block is supported so that the cord is not stretched. The unstretched length of the cord is L_0, and its mass is m, much less than M. The "spring constant" for the cord is k. The block is released and stops momentarily at the lowest point. (a) Determine the tension in the string when the block is at this lowest point. (b) What is the length of the cord in this "stretched" position? (c) If the block is held in this lowest position, find the speed of a transverse wave in the cord.

51. A transverse wave on a string is described by the wave function

$$y(x, t) = 0.350 \sin (1.25x + 99.6t)$$

where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. Consider the element of the string at $x = 0$. (a) What is the time interval between the first two instants when this element has a position of $y = 0.175$ m? (b) What distance does the wave travel during the time interval found in part (a)?

52. A sinusoidal wave in a string is described by the wave function

$$y = 0.150 \sin (0.800x - 50.0t)$$

where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. The mass per length of the string is 12.0 g/m. (a) Find the maximum transverse acceleration of an element of this string. (b) Determine the maximum transverse force on a 1.00-cm segment of the string. (c) State how the force found in part (b) compares with the tension in the string.

53. **Review.** A block of mass M, supported by a string, rests on a frictionless incline making an angle θ with the horizontal (Fig. P16.53). The length of the string is L, and its mass is $m << M$. Derive an expression for the time interval required for a transverse wave to travel from one end of the string to the other.

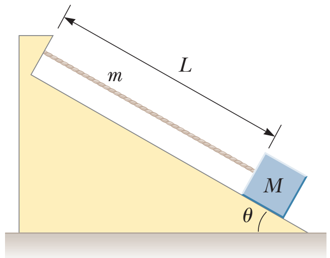


Figure P16.53

54. An undersea earthquake or a landslide can produce an ocean wave of short duration carrying great energy, called a tsunami. When its wavelength is large compared to the ocean depth d, the speed of a water wave is given approximately by $v = \sqrt{gd}$. Assume an earthquake occurs all along a tectonic plate boundary running north to south and produces a straight tsunami wave crest moving everywhere to the west. (a) What physical quantity can you consider to be constant in the motion of any one wave crest? (b) Explain why the amplitude of the wave increases as the wave approaches shore. (c) If the wave has amplitude 1.80 m when its speed is 200 m/s, what will be its amplitude where the water is 9.00 m deep? (d) Explain why the amplitude at the shore should be expected to be still greater, but cannot be meaningfully predicted by your model.

55. AMT **Review.** A block of mass $M = 0.450$ kg is attached to one end of a cord of mass 0.003 20 kg; the other end of the cord is attached to a fixed point. The block rotates with constant angular speed in a circle on a frictionless, horizontal table as shown in Figure P16.55. Through what angle does the block rotate in the time interval during which a transverse wave travels along the string from the center of the circle to the block?

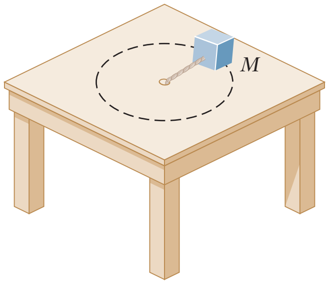


Figure P16.55 Problems 55, 56, and 57.

56. **Review.** A block of mass $M = 0.450$ kg is attached to one end of a cord of mass $m = 0.003\ 20$ kg; the other end of the cord is attached to a fixed point. The block rotates with constant angular speed $\omega = 10.0$ rad/s in a circle on a frictionless, horizontal table as shown in Figure P16.55. What time interval is required for a transverse wave to travel along the string from the center of the circle to the block?

57. **Review.** A block of mass M is attached to one end of a cord of mass m; the other end of the cord is attached to a fixed point. The block rotates with constant angular speed ω in a circle on a frictionless, horizontal table as shown in Figure P16.55. What time interval is required for a transverse wave to travel along the string from the center of the circle to the block?

58. A string with linear density 0.500 g/m is held under tension 20.0 N. As a transverse sinusoidal wave propagates on the string, elements of the string move with maximum speed $v_{y,\max}$. (a) Determine the power transmitted by the wave as a function of $v_{y,\max}$. (b) State in words the proportionality between power and $v_{y,\max}$. (c) Find the energy contained in a section of string 3.00 m long as a function of $v_{y,\max}$. (d) Express the answer to part (c) in terms of the mass m of this section. (e) Find the energy that the wave carries past a point in 6.00 s.

59. A wire of density ρ is tapered so that its cross-sectional area varies with x according to

$$A = 1.00 \times 10^{-5}\,x + 1.00 \times 10^{-6}$$

where A is in meters squared and x is in meters. The tension in the wire is T. (a) Derive a relationship for the speed of a wave as a function of position. (b) **What If?** Assume the wire is aluminum and is under a tension $T = 24.0$ N. Determine the wave speed at the origin and at $x = 10.0$ m.

60. A rope of total mass m and length L is suspended vertically. Analysis shows that for short transverse pulses, the waves above a short distance from the free end of the rope can be represented to a good approximation by the linear wave equation discussed in Section 16.6. Show that a transverse pulse travels the length of the rope in a time interval that is given approximately by $\Delta t \approx 2\sqrt{L/g}$. *Suggestion:* First find an expression for the wave speed at any point a distance x from the lower end by considering the rope's tension as resulting from the weight of the segment below that point.

61. A pulse traveling along a string of linear mass density μ is described by the wave function

$$y = [A_0 e^{-bx}] \sin (kx - \omega t)$$

where the factor in brackets is said to be the amplitude. (a) What is the power $P(x)$ carried by this wave at a point x? (b) What is the power $P(0)$ carried by this wave at the origin? (c) Compute the ratio $P(x)/P(0)$.

62. *Why is the following situation impossible?* Tsunamis are ocean surface waves that have enormous wavelengths (100 to 200 km), and the propagation speed for these waves is $v \approx \sqrt{g d_{\text{avg}}}$, where d_{avg} is the average depth of the water. An earthquake on the ocean floor in the Gulf of Alaska produces a tsunami that reaches Hilo, Hawaii, 4 450 km away, in a time interval of 5.88 h. (This method was used in 1856 to estimate the average depth of the Pacific Ocean long before soundings were made to give a direct determination.)

63. M **Review.** An aluminum wire is held between two clamps under zero tension at room temperature. Reducing the temperature, which results in a decrease in the wire's equilibrium length, increases the tension in the wire. Taking the cross-sectional area of the wire to be 5.00×10^{-6} m^2, the density to be 2.70×10^3 kg/m^3, and Young's modulus to be 7.00×10^{10} N/m^2, what strain ($\Delta L/L$) results in a transverse wave speed of 100 m/s?

Challenge Problems

64. Assume an object of mass M is suspended from the bottom of the rope of mass m and length L in Problem 60. (a) Show that the time interval for a transverse pulse to travel the length of the rope is

$$\Delta t = 2\sqrt{\frac{L}{mg}}\left(\sqrt{M+m} - \sqrt{M}\right)$$

(b) **What If?** Show that the expression in part (a) reduces to the result of Problem 60 when $M = 0$. (c) Show that for $m << M$, the expression in part (a) reduces to

$$\Delta t = \sqrt{\frac{mL}{Mg}}$$

65. A rope of total mass m and length L is suspended vertically. As shown in Problem 60, a pulse travels from the bottom to the top of the rope in an approximate time interval $\Delta t = 2\sqrt{L/g}$ with a speed that varies with position x measured from the bottom of the rope as $v = \sqrt{gx}$. Assume the linear wave equation in Section 16.6 describes waves at all locations on the rope. (a) Over what time interval does a pulse travel halfway up the rope? Give your answer as a fraction of the quantity $2\sqrt{L/g}$. (b) A pulse starts traveling up the rope. How far has it traveled after a time interval $\sqrt{L/g}$?

66. A string on a musical instrument is held under tension T and extends from the point $x = 0$ to the point $x = L$. The string is overwound with wire in such a way that its mass per unit length $\mu(x)$ increases uniformly from μ_0 at $x = 0$ to μ_L at $x = L$. (a) Find an expression for $\mu(x)$ as a function of x over the range $0 \le x \le L$. (b) Find an expression for the time interval required for a transverse pulse to travel the length of the string.

67. If a loop of chain is spun at high speed, it can roll along the ground like a circular hoop without collapsing. Consider a chain of uniform linear mass density μ whose center of mass travels to the right at a high speed v_0 as shown in Figure P16.67. (a) Determine the tension in the chain in terms of μ and v_0. Assume the weight of an individual link is negligible compared to the tension. (b) If the loop rolls over a small bump, the resulting deformation of the chain causes two transverse pulses to propagate along the chain, one moving clockwise and one moving counterclockwise. What is the speed of the pulses traveling along the chain? (c) Through what angle does each pulse travel during the time interval over which the loop makes one revolution?

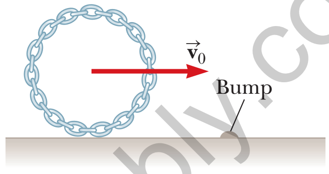


Figure P16.67

Sound Waves

CHAPTER

17

Three musicians play the alpenhorn in Valais, Switzerland. In this chapter, we explore the behavior of sound waves such as those coming from these large musical instruments. *(Stefano Cellai/AGE fotostock)*

Most of the waves we studied in Chapter 16 are constrained to move along a one-dimensional medium. For example, the wave in Figure 16.7 is a purely mathematical construct moving along the *x* axis. The wave in Figure 16.10 is constrained to move along the length of the string. We have also seen waves moving through a two-dimensional medium, such as the ripples on the water surface in the introduction to Part 2 on page 449 and the waves moving over the surface of the ocean in Figure 16.4. In this chapter, we investigate mechanical waves that move through three-dimensional bulk media. For example, seismic waves leaving the focus of an earthquake travel through the three-dimensional interior of the Earth.

We will focus our attention on **sound waves,** which travel through any material, but are most commonly experienced as the mechanical waves traveling through air that result in the human perception of hearing. As sound waves travel through air, elements of air are disturbed from their equilibrium positions. Accompanying these movements are changes in density and pressure of the air along the direction of wave motion. If the source of the sound waves vibrates sinusoidally, the density and pressure variations are also sinusoidal. The mathematical description of sinusoidal sound waves is very similar to that of sinusoidal waves on strings, as discussed in Chapter 16.

Sound waves are divided into three categories that cover different frequency ranges. (1) *Audible waves* lie within the range of sensitivity of the human ear. They can be generated in a variety of ways, such as by musical instruments, human voices, or loudspeakers. (2) *Infrasonic waves* have frequencies below the audible range. Elephants can use infrasonic waves to communicate with one another, even when separated by many kilometers. (3) *Ultrasonic waves* have frequencies above the audible range. You may have used a "silent" whistle to retrieve your dog. Dogs easily hear the ultrasonic sound this whistle emits, although humans cannot detect it at all. Ultrasonic waves are also used in medical imaging.

This chapter begins with a discussion of the pressure variations in a sound wave, the speed of sound waves, and wave intensity, which is a function of wave amplitude. We then provide an alternative description of the intensity of sound waves that compresses the wide range of intensities to which the ear is sensitive into a smaller range for convenience. The effects of the motion of sources and listeners on the frequency of a sound are also investigated.

17.1 Pressure Variations in Sound Waves

In Chapter 16, we began our investigation of waves by imagining the creation of a single pulse that traveled down a string (Figure 16.1) or a spring (Figure 16.3). Let's do something similar for sound. We describe pictorially the motion of a one-dimensional longitudinal sound pulse moving through a long tube containing a compressible gas as shown in Figure 17.1. A piston at the left end can be quickly moved to the right to compress the gas and create the pulse. Before the piston is moved, the gas is undisturbed and of uniform density as represented by the uniformly shaded region in Figure 17.1a. When the piston is pushed to the right (Fig. 17.1b), the gas just in front of it is compressed (as represented by the more heavily shaded region); the pressure and density in this region are now higher than they were before the piston moved. When the piston comes to rest (Fig. 17.1c), the compressed region of the gas continues to move to the right, corresponding to a longitudinal pulse traveling through the tube with speed v.

One can produce a one-dimensional *periodic* sound wave in the tube of gas in Figure 17.1 by causing the piston to move in simple harmonic motion. The results are shown in Figure 17.2. The darker parts of the colored areas in this figure represent regions in which the gas is compressed and the density and pressure are above their equilibrium values. A compressed region is formed whenever the pis-

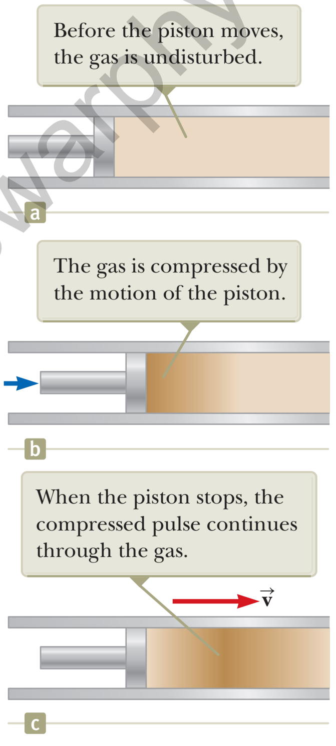


Figure 17.1 Motion of a longitudinal pulse through a compressible gas. The compression (darker region) is produced by the moving piston.

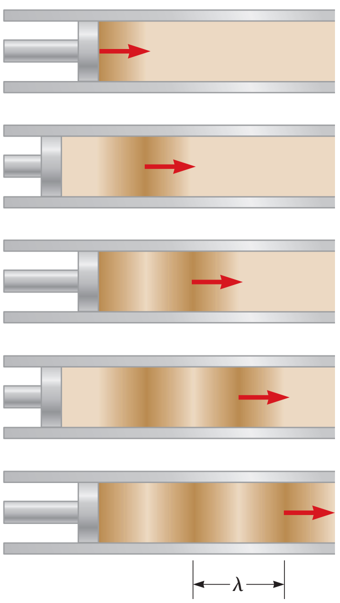


Figure 17.2 A longitudinal wave propagating through a gas-filled tube. The source of the wave is an oscillating piston at the left.

ton is pushed into the tube. This compressed region, called a **compression,** moves through the tube, continuously compressing the region just in front of itself. When the piston is pulled back, the gas in front of it expands and the pressure and density in this region fall below their equilibrium values (represented by the lighter parts of the colored areas in Fig. 17.2). These low-pressure regions, called **rarefactions,** also propagate along the tube, following the compressions. Both regions move at the speed of sound in the medium.

As the piston oscillates sinusoidally, regions of compression and rarefaction are continuously set up. The distance between two successive compressions (or two successive rarefactions) equals the wavelength λ of the sound wave. Because the sound wave is longitudinal, as the compressions and rarefactions travel through the tube, any small element of the gas moves with simple harmonic motion parallel to the direction of the wave. If $s(x, t)$ is the position of a small element relative to its equilibrium position,[1] we can express this harmonic position function as

$$s(x, t) = s_{\text{max}} \cos (kx - \omega t) \tag{17.1}$$

where s_{max} is the maximum position of the element relative to equilibrium. This parameter is often called the **displacement amplitude** of the wave. The parameter k is the wave number, and ω is the angular frequency of the wave. Notice that the displacement of the element is along x, in the direction of propagation of the sound wave.

The variation in the gas pressure ΔP measured from the equilibrium value is also periodic with the same wave number and angular frequency as for the displacement in Equation 17.1. Therefore, we can write

$$\Delta P = \Delta P_{\text{max}} \sin (kx - \omega t) \tag{17.2}$$

where **the pressure amplitude ΔP_{max}** is the maximum change in pressure from the equilibrium value.

Notice that we have expressed the displacement by means of a cosine function and the pressure by means of a sine function. We will justify this choice in the procedure that follows and relate the pressure amplitude P_{max} to the displacement amplitude s_{max}. Consider the piston–tube arrangement of Figure 17.1 once again. In Figure 17.3a, we focus our attention on a small cylindrical element of undisturbed gas of length Δx and area A. The volume of this element is $V_i = A\,\Delta x$.

Figure 17.3b shows this element of gas after a sound wave has moved it to a new position. The cylinder's two flat faces move through different distances s_1 and s_2. The change in volume ΔV of the element in the new position is equal to $A\,\Delta s$, where $\Delta s = s_1 - s_2$.

From the definition of bulk modulus (see Eq. 12.8), we express the pressure variation in the element of gas as a function of its change in volume:

$$\Delta P = -B\frac{\Delta V}{V_i}$$

Let's substitute for the initial volume and the change in volume of the element:

$$\Delta P = -B\frac{A\,\Delta s}{A\,\Delta x}$$

Let the length Δx of the cylinder approach zero so that the ratio $\Delta s/\Delta x$ becomes a partial derivative:

$$\Delta P = -B\frac{\partial s}{\partial x} \tag{17.3}$$

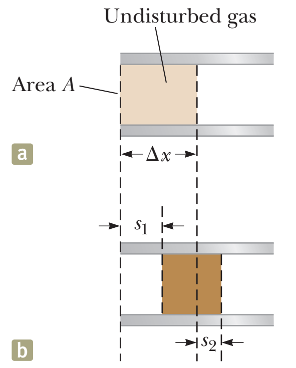


Figure 17.3 (a) An undisturbed element of gas of length Δx in a tube of cross-sectional area A. (b) When a sound wave propagates through the gas, the element is moved to a new position and has a different length. The parameters s_1 and s_2 describe the displacements of the ends of the element from their equilibrium positions.

[1]We use $s(x, t)$ here instead of $y(x, t)$ because the displacement of elements of the medium is not perpendicular to the x direction.

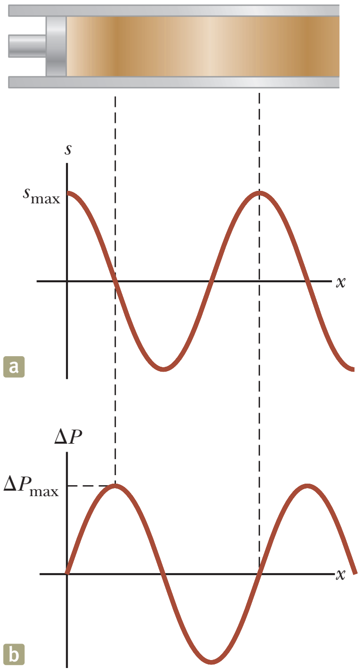


Figure 17.4 (a) Displacement amplitude and (b) pressure amplitude versus position for a sinusoidal longitudinal wave.

Substitute the position function given by Equation 17.1:

$$\Delta P = -B\frac{\partial}{\partial x}[s_{max}\cos(kx - \omega t)] = Bs_{max}k\ \sin(kx - \omega t)$$

From this result, we see that a displacement described by a cosine function leads to a pressure described by a sine function. We also see that the displacement and pressure amplitudes are related by

$$\Delta P_{max} = Bs_{max}k \quad \textbf{(17.4)}$$

This relationship depends on the bulk modulus of the gas, which is not as readily available as is the density of the gas. Once we determine the speed of sound in a gas in Section 17.2, we will be able to provide an expression that relates ΔP_{max} and s_{max} in terms of the density of the gas.

This discussion shows that a sound wave may be described equally well in terms of either pressure or displacement. A comparison of Equations 17.1 and 17.2 shows that the pressure wave is 90° out of phase with the displacement wave. Graphs of these functions are shown in Figure 17.4. The pressure variation is a maximum when the displacement from equilibrium is zero, and the displacement from equilibrium is a maximum when the pressure variation is zero.

Quick Quiz 17.1 If you blow across the top of an empty soft-drink bottle, a pulse of sound travels down through the air in the bottle. At the moment the pulse reaches the bottom of the bottle, what is the correct description of the displacement of elements of air from their equilibrium positions and the pressure of the air at this point? **(a)** The displacement and pressure are both at a maximum. **(b)** The displacement and pressure are both at a minimum. **(c)** The displacement is zero, and the pressure is a maximum. **(d)** The displacement is zero, and the pressure is a minimum.

17.2 Speed of Sound Waves

We now extend the discussion begun in Section 17.1 to evaluate the speed of sound in a gas. In Figure 17.5a, consider the cylindrical element of gas between the piston and the dashed line. This element of gas is in equilibrium under the influence of forces of equal magnitude, from the piston on the left and from the rest of the gas on the right. The magnitude of these forces is PA, where P is the pressure in the gas and A is the cross-sectional area of the tube.

Figure 17.5b shows the situation after a time interval Δt during which the piston moves to the right at a constant speed v_x due to a force from the left on the piston that has increased in magnitude to $(P + \Delta P)A$. By the end of the time interval Δt,

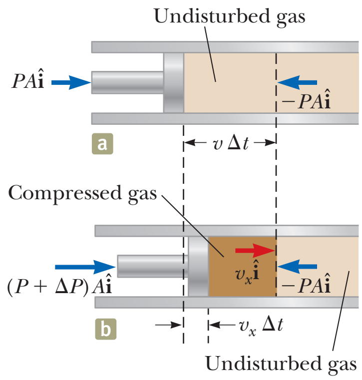


Figure 17.5 (a) An undisturbed element of gas of length $v\ \Delta t$ in a tube of cross-sectional area A. The element is in equilibrium between forces on either end. (b) When the piston moves inward at constant velocity v_x due to an increased force on the left, the element also moves with the same velocity.

every bit of gas in the element is moving with speed v_x. That will not be true in general for a macroscopic element of gas, but it will become true if we shrink the length of the element to an infinitesimal value.

The length of the undisturbed element of gas is chosen to be $v\,\Delta t$, where v is the speed of sound in the gas and Δt is the time interval between the configurations in Figures 17.5a and 17.5b. Therefore, at the end of the time interval Δt, the sound wave will just reach the right end of the cylindrical element of gas. The gas to the right of the element is undisturbed because the sound wave has not reached it yet.

The element of gas is modeled as a nonisolated system in terms of momentum. The force from the piston has provided an impulse to the element, which in turn exhibits a change in momentum. Therefore, we evaluate both sides of the impulse–momentum theorem:

$$\Delta\vec{\mathbf{p}} = \vec{\mathbf{I}} \quad (17.5)$$

On the right, the impulse is provided by the constant force due to the increased pressure on the piston:

$$\vec{\mathbf{I}} = \sum \vec{\mathbf{F}}\,\Delta t = (A\,\Delta P\,\Delta t)\,\hat{\mathbf{i}}$$

The pressure change ΔP can be related to the volume change and then to the speeds v and v_x through the bulk modulus:

$$\Delta P = -B\frac{\Delta V}{V_i} = -B\frac{(-v_x A\,\Delta t)}{vA\,\Delta t} = B\frac{v_x}{v}$$

Therefore, the impulse becomes

$$\vec{\mathbf{I}} = \left(AB\frac{v_x}{v}\,\Delta t\right)\hat{\mathbf{i}} \quad (17.6)$$

On the left-hand side of the impulse–momentum theorem, Equation 17.5, the change in momentum of the element of gas of mass m is as follows:

$$\Delta\vec{\mathbf{p}} = m\,\Delta\vec{\mathbf{v}} = (\rho V_i)(v_x\hat{\mathbf{i}} - 0) = (\rho v v_x A\,\Delta t)\,\hat{\mathbf{i}} \quad (17.7)$$

Substituting Equations 17.6 and 17.7 into Equation 17.5, we find

$$\rho v v_x A\,\Delta t = AB\frac{v_x}{v}\,\Delta t$$

which reduces to an expression for the speed of sound in a gas:

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{B}{\rho}} \quad (17.8)$$

It is interesting to compare this expression with Equation 16.18 for the speed of transverse waves on a string, $v = \sqrt{T/\mu}$. In both cases, the wave speed depends on an elastic property of the medium (bulk modulus B or string tension T) and on an inertial property of the medium (volume density ρ or linear density μ). In fact, the speed of all mechanical waves follows an expression of the general form

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{\text{elastic property}}{\text{inertial property}}}$$

For longitudinal sound waves in a solid rod of material, for example, the speed of sound depends on Young's modulus Y and the density ρ. Table 17.1 (page 512) provides the speed of sound in several different materials.

The speed of sound also depends on the temperature of the medium. For sound traveling through air, the relationship between wave speed and air temperature is

$$v = 331\sqrt{1 + \frac{T_C}{273}} \quad (17.9)$$

Table 17.1 Speed of Sound in Various Media

Medium	v (m/s)	Medium	v (m/s)	Medium	v (m/s)
Gases		**Liquids at 25°C**		**Solids**[a]	
Hydrogen (0°C)	1 286	Glycerol	1 904	Pyrex glass	5 640
Helium (0°C)	972	Seawater	1 533	Iron	5 950
Air (20°C)	343	Water	1 493	Aluminum	6 420
Air (0°C)	331	Mercury	1 450	Brass	4 700
Oxygen (0°C)	317	Kerosene	1 324	Copper	5 010
		Methyl alcohol	1 143	Gold	3 240
		Carbon tetrachloride	926	Lucite	2 680
				Lead	1 960
				Rubber	1 600

[a]Values given are for propagation of longitudinal waves in bulk media. Speeds for longitudinal waves in thin rods are smaller, and speeds of transverse waves in bulk are smaller yet.

where v is in meters/second, 331 m/s is the speed of sound in air at 0°C, and T_C is the air temperature in degrees Celsius. Using this equation, one finds that at 20°C, the speed of sound in air is approximately 343 m/s.

This information provides a convenient way to estimate the distance to a thunderstorm. First count the number of seconds between seeing the flash of lightning and hearing the thunder. Dividing this time interval by 3 gives the approximate distance to the lightning in kilometers because 343 m/s is approximately $\frac{1}{3}$ km/s. Dividing the time interval in seconds by 5 gives the approximate distance to the lightning in miles because the speed of sound is approximately $\frac{1}{5}$ mi/s.

Having an expression (Eq. 17.8) for the speed of sound, we can now express the relationship between pressure amplitude and displacement amplitude for a sound wave (Eq. 17.4) as

$$\Delta P_{\max} = B s_{\max} k = (\rho v^2) s_{\max}\left(\frac{\omega}{v}\right) = \rho v \omega s_{\max} \tag{17.10}$$

This expression is a bit more useful than Equation 17.4 because the density of a gas is more readily available than is the bulk modulus.

17.3 Intensity of Periodic Sound Waves

In Chapter 16, we showed that a wave traveling on a taut string transports energy, consistent with the notion of energy transfer by mechanical waves in Equation 8.2. Naturally, we would expect sound waves to also represent a transfer of energy. Consider the element of gas acted on by the piston in Figure 17.5. Imagine that the piston is moving back and forth in simple harmonic motion at angular frequency ω. Imagine also that the length of the element becomes very small so that the entire element moves with the same velocity as the piston. Then we can model the element as a particle on which the piston is doing work. The rate at which the piston is doing work on the element at any instant of time is given by Equation 8.19:

$$Power = \vec{\mathbf{F}} \cdot \vec{\mathbf{v}}_x$$

where we have used *Power* rather than P so that we don't confuse power P with pressure P! The force $\vec{\mathbf{F}}$ on the element of gas is related to the pressure and the velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}_x$ of the element is the derivative of the displacement function, so we find

$$Power = [\Delta P(x, t)A]\hat{\mathbf{i}} \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial t}[s(x, t)\,\hat{\mathbf{i}}]$$

$$= [\rho v \omega A s_{\max} \sin(kx - \omega t)]\left\{\frac{\partial}{\partial t}[s_{\max}\cos(kx - \omega t)]\right\}$$

$$= \rho v \omega A s_{max} \sin(kx - \omega t)][\omega s_{max} \sin(kx - \omega t)]$$

$$= \rho v \omega^2 A s_{max}^2 \sin^2(kx - \omega t)$$

We now find the time average power over one period of the oscillation. For any given value of x, which we can choose to be $x = 0$, the average value of $\sin^2(kx - \omega t)$ over one period T is

$$\frac{1}{T}\int_0^T \sin^2(0 - \omega t)\,dt = \frac{1}{T}\int_0^T \sin^2 \omega t\,dt = \frac{1}{T}\left(\frac{t}{2} + \frac{\sin 2\omega t}{2\omega}\right)\Big|_0^T = \frac{1}{2}$$

Therefore,

$$(Power)_{avg} = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v \omega^2 A s_{max}^2$$

We define the **intensity** I of a wave, or the power per unit area, as the rate at which the energy transported by the wave transfers through a unit area A perpendicular to the direction of travel of the wave:

$$I \equiv \frac{(Power)_{avg}}{A} \qquad \textbf{(17.11)}$$

◀ **Intensity of a sound wave**

In this case, the intensity is therefore

$$I = \tfrac{1}{2}\rho v(\omega s_{max})^2$$

Hence, the intensity of a periodic sound wave is proportional to the square of the displacement amplitude and to the square of the angular frequency. This expression can also be written in terms of the pressure amplitude ΔP_{max}; in this case, we use Equation 17.10 to obtain

$$I = \frac{(\Delta P_{max})^2}{2\rho v} \qquad \textbf{(17.12)}$$

The string waves we studied in Chapter 16 are constrained to move along the one-dimensional string, as discussed in the introduction to this chapter. The sound waves we have studied with regard to Figures 17.1 through 17.3 and 17.5 are constrained to move in one dimension along the length of the tube. As we mentioned in the introduction, however, sound waves can move through three-dimensional bulk media, so let's place a sound source in the open air and study the results.

Consider the special case of a point source emitting sound waves equally in all directions. If the air around the source is perfectly uniform, the sound power radiated in all directions is the same, and the speed of sound in all directions is the same. The result in this situation is called a **spherical wave.** Figure 17.6 shows these spherical waves as a series of circular arcs concentric with the source. Each arc represents a surface over which the phase of the wave is constant. We call such a surface of constant phase a **wave front.** The radial distance between adjacent wave fronts that have the same phase is the wavelength λ of the wave. The radial lines pointing outward from the source, representing the direction of propagation of the waves, are called **rays.**

The average power emitted by the source must be distributed uniformly over each spherical wave front of area $4\pi r^2$. Hence, the wave intensity at a distance r from the source is

$$I = \frac{(Power)_{avg}}{A} = \frac{(Power)_{avg}}{4\pi r^2} \qquad \textbf{(17.13)}$$

The intensity decreases as the square of the distance from the source. This inverse-square law is reminiscent of the behavior of gravity in Chapter 13.

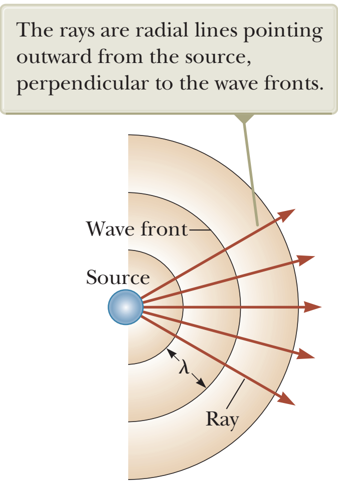


Figure 17.6 Spherical waves emitted by a point source. The circular arcs represent the spherical wave fronts that are concentric with the source.

Quick Quiz 17.2 A vibrating guitar string makes very little sound if it is not mounted on the guitar body. Why does the sound have greater intensity if the string is attached to the guitar body? **(a)** The string vibrates with more energy. **(b)** The energy leaves the guitar at a greater rate. **(c)** The sound power is spread over a larger area at the listener's position. **(d)** The sound power is concentrated over a smaller area at the listener's position. **(e)** The speed of sound is higher in the material of the guitar body. **(f)** None of these answers is correct.

Example 17.1 Hearing Limits

The faintest sounds the human ear can detect at a frequency of 1 000 Hz correspond to an intensity of about $1.00 \times 10^{-12}\ \text{W/m}^2$, which is called *threshold of hearing*. The loudest sounds the ear can tolerate at this frequency correspond to an intensity of about $1.00\ \text{W/m}^2$, the *threshold of pain*. Determine the pressure amplitude and displacement amplitude associated with these two limits.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Think about the quietest environment you have ever experienced. It is likely that the intensity of sound in even this quietest environment is higher than the threshold of hearing.

Categorize Because we are given intensities and asked to calculate pressure and displacement amplitudes, this problem is an analysis problem requiring the concepts discussed in this section.

Analyze To find the amplitude of the pressure variation at the threshold of hearing, use Equation 17.12, taking the speed of sound waves in air to be $v = 343$ m/s and the density of air to be $\rho = 1.20\ \text{kg/m}^3$:

$$\Delta P_{max} = \sqrt{2\rho v I}$$
$$= \sqrt{2(1.20\ \text{kg/m}^3)(343\ \text{m/s})(1.00 \times 10^{-12}\ \text{W/m}^2)}$$
$$= 2.87 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{N/m}^2$$

Calculate the corresponding displacement amplitude using Equation 17.10, recalling that $\omega = 2\pi f$ (Eq. 16.9):

$$s_{max} = \frac{\Delta P_{max}}{\rho v \omega} = \frac{2.87 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{N/m}^2}{(1.20\ \text{kg/m}^3)(343\ \text{m/s})(2\pi \times 1\,000\ \text{Hz})}$$
$$= 1.11 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{m}$$

In a similar manner, one finds that the loudest sounds the human ear can tolerate (the threshold of pain) correspond to a pressure amplitude of $28.7\ \text{N/m}^2$ and a displacement amplitude equal to 1.11×10^{-5} m.

Finalize Because atmospheric pressure is about $10^5\ \text{N/m}^2$, the result for the pressure amplitude tells us that the ear is sensitive to pressure fluctuations as small as 3 parts in 10^{10}! The displacement amplitude is also a remarkably small number! If we compare this result for s_{max} to the size of an atom (about 10^{-10} m), we see that the ear is an extremely sensitive detector of sound waves.

Example 17.2 Intensity Variations of a Point Source

A point source emits sound waves with an average power output of 80.0 W.

(A) Find the intensity 3.00 m from the source.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine a small loudspeaker sending sound out at an average rate of 80.0 W uniformly in all directions. You are standing 3.00 m away from the speakers. As the sound propagates, the energy of the sound waves is spread out over an ever-expanding sphere, so the intensity of the sound falls off with distance.

Categorize We evaluate the intensity from an equation generated in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

17.2 continued

Because a point source emits energy in the form of spherical waves, use Equation 17.13 to find the intensity:

$$I = \frac{(Power)_{avg}}{4\pi r^2} = \frac{80.0\text{ W}}{4\pi(3.00\text{ m})^2} = 0.707\text{ W/m}^2$$

This intensity is close to the threshold of pain.

(B) Find the distance at which the intensity of the sound is 1.00×10^{-8} W/m^2.

SOLUTION

Solve for r in Equation 17.13 and use the given value for I:

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{(Power)_{avg}}{4\pi I}} = \sqrt{\frac{80.0\text{ W}}{4\pi(1.00 \times 10^{-8}\text{ W/m}^2)}}$$

$$= 2.52 \times 10^4\text{ m}$$

Sound Level in Decibels

Example 17.1 illustrates the wide range of intensities the human ear can detect. Because this range is so wide, it is convenient to use a logarithmic scale, where the **sound level** β (Greek letter beta) is defined by the equation

$$\beta \equiv 10 \log \left(\frac{I}{I_0}\right) \qquad \textbf{(17.14)}$$

The constant I_0 is the *reference intensity,* taken to be at the threshold of hearing ($I_0 = 1.00 \times 10^{-12}$ W/m^2), and I is the intensity in watts per square meter to which the sound level β corresponds, where β is measured[2] in **decibels** (dB). On this scale, the threshold of pain ($I = 1.00$ W/m^2) corresponds to a sound level of $\beta = 10 \log [(1\text{ W/m}^2)/(10^{-12}\text{ W/m}^2)] = 10 \log (10^{12}) = 120$ dB, and the threshold of hearing corresponds to $\beta = 10 \log [(10^{-12}\text{ W/m}^2)/(10^{-12}\text{ W/m}^2)] = 0$ dB.

Prolonged exposure to high sound levels may seriously damage the human ear. Ear plugs are recommended whenever sound levels exceed 90 dB. Recent evidence suggests that "noise pollution" may be a contributing factor to high blood pressure, anxiety, and nervousness. Table 17.2 gives some typical sound levels.

Table 17.2 Sound Levels

Source of Sound	β (dB)
Nearby jet airplane	150
Jackhammer; machine gun	130
Siren; rock concert	120
Subway; power lawn mower	100
Busy traffic	80
Vacuum cleaner	70
Normal conversation	60
Mosquito buzzing	40
Whisper	30
Rustling leaves	10
Threshold of hearing	0

Quick Quiz 17.3 Increasing the intensity of a sound by a factor of 100 causes the sound level to increase by what amount? **(a)** 100 dB **(b)** 20 dB **(c)** 10 dB **(d)** 2 dB

Example 17.3 Sound Levels

Two identical machines are positioned the same distance from a worker. The intensity of sound delivered by each operating machine at the worker's location is 2.0×10^{-7} W/m^2.

(A) Find the sound level heard by the worker when one machine is operating.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine a situation in which one source of sound is active and is then joined by a second identical source, such as one person speaking and then a second person speaking at the same time or one musical instrument playing and then being joined by a second instrument.

Categorize This example is a relatively simple analysis problem requiring Equation 17.14.

continued

[2]The unit *bel* is named after the inventor of the telephone, Alexander Graham Bell (1847–1922). The prefix *deci-* is the SI prefix that stands for 10^{-1}.

▶ 17.3 continued

Analyze Use Equation 17.14 to calculate the sound level at the worker's location with one machine operating:

$$\beta_1 = 10 \log \left(\frac{2.0 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{W/m}^2}{1.00 \times 10^{-12}\ \text{W/m}^2} \right) = 10 \log (2.0 \times 10^5) = \boxed{53\ \text{dB}}$$

(B) Find the sound level heard by the worker when two machines are operating.

SOLUTION

Use Equation 17.14 to calculate the sound level at the worker's location with double the intensity:

$$\beta_2 = 10 \log \left(\frac{4.0 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{W/m}^2}{1.00 \times 10^{-12}\ \text{W/m}^2} \right) = 10 \log (4.0 \times 10^5) = \boxed{56\ \text{dB}}$$

Finalize These results show that when the intensity is doubled, the sound level increases by only 3 dB. This 3-dB increase is independent of the original sound level. (Prove this to yourself!)

WHAT IF? *Loudness* is a psychological response to a sound. It depends on both the intensity and the frequency of the sound. As a rule of thumb, a doubling in loudness is approximately associated with an increase in sound level of 10 dB. (This rule of thumb is relatively inaccurate at very low or very high frequencies.) If the loudness of the machines in this example is to be doubled, how many machines at the same distance from the worker must be running?

Answer Using the rule of thumb, a doubling of loudness corresponds to a sound level increase of 10 dB. Therefore,

$$\beta_2 - \beta_1 = 10\ \text{dB} = 10 \log \left(\frac{I_2}{I_0} \right) - 10 \log \left(\frac{I_1}{I_0} \right) = 10 \log \left(\frac{I_2}{I_1} \right)$$

$$\log \left(\frac{I_2}{I_1} \right) = 1 \quad \rightarrow \quad I_2 = 10 I_1$$

Therefore, ten machines must be operating to double the loudness.

Loudness and Frequency

The discussion of sound level in decibels relates to a *physical* measurement of the strength of a sound. Let us now extend our discussion from the What If? section of Example 17.3 concerning the *psychological* "measurement" of the strength of a sound.

Of course, we don't have instruments in our bodies that can display numerical values of our reactions to stimuli. We have to "calibrate" our reactions somehow by comparing different sounds to a reference sound, but that is not easy to accomplish. For example, earlier we mentioned that the threshold intensity is 10^{-12} W/m^2, corresponding to an intensity level of 0 dB. In reality, this value is the threshold only for a sound of frequency 1 000 Hz, which is a standard reference frequency in acoustics. If we perform an experiment to measure the threshold intensity at other frequencies, we find a distinct variation of this threshold as a function of frequency. For example, at 100 Hz, a barely audible sound must have an intensity level of about 30 dB! Unfortunately, there is no simple relationship between physical measurements and psychological "measurements." The 100-Hz, 30-dB sound is psychologically "equal" in loudness to the 1 000-Hz, 0-dB sound (both are just barely audible), but they are not physically equal in sound level (30 dB $\neq$ 0 dB).

By using test subjects, the human response to sound has been studied, and the results are shown in the white area of Figure 17.7 along with the approximate frequency and sound-level ranges of other sound sources. The lower curve of the white area corresponds to the threshold of hearing. Its variation with frequency is clear from this diagram. Notice that humans are sensitive to frequencies ranging from about 20 Hz to about 20 000 Hz. The upper bound of the white area is the thresh-

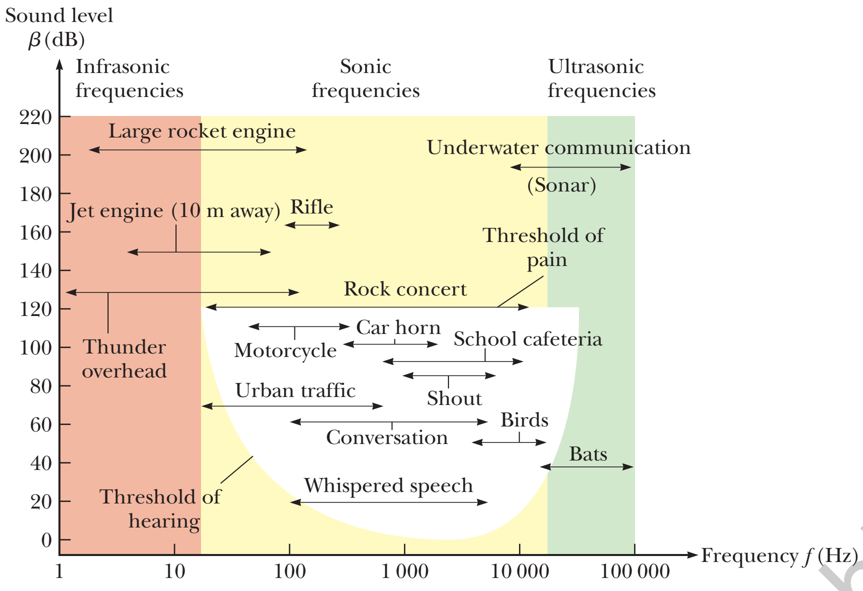


Figure 17.7 Approximate ranges of frequency and sound level of various sources and that of normal human hearing, shown by the white area. (From R. L. Reese, *University Physics*, Pacific Grove, Brooks/Cole, 2000.)

old of pain. Here the boundary of the white area appears straight because the psychological response is relatively independent of frequency at this high sound level.

The most dramatic change with frequency is in the lower left region of the white area, for low frequencies and low intensity levels. Our ears are particularly insensitive in this region. If you are listening to your home entertainment system and the bass (low frequencies) and treble (high frequencies) sound balanced at a high volume, try turning the volume down and listening again. You will probably notice that the bass seems weak, which is due to the insensitivity of the ear to low frequencies at low sound levels as shown in Figure 17.7.

17.4 The Doppler Effect

Perhaps you have noticed how the sound of a vehicle's horn changes as the vehicle moves past you. The frequency of the sound you hear as the vehicle approaches you is higher than the frequency you hear as it moves away from you. This experience is one example of the **Doppler effect.**[3]

To see what causes this apparent frequency change, imagine you are in a boat that is lying at anchor on a gentle sea where the waves have a period of $T = 3.0$ s. Hence, every 3.0 s a crest hits your boat. Figure 17.8a shows this situation, with the water waves moving toward the left. If you set your watch to $t = 0$ just as one crest hits, the watch reads 3.0 s when the next crest hits, 6.0 s when the third crest

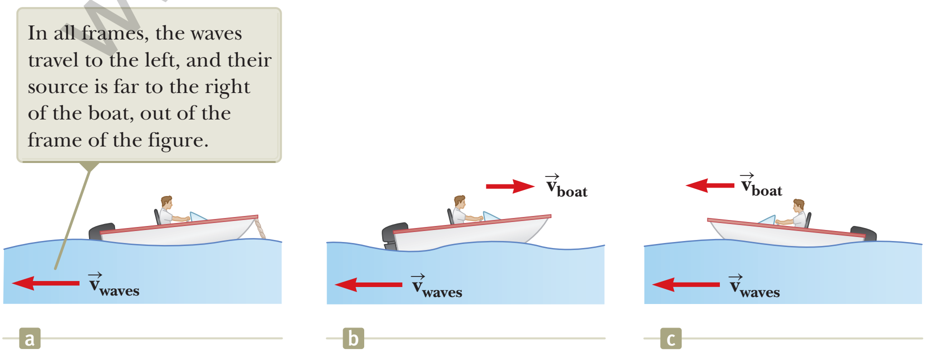


Figure 17.8 (a) Waves moving toward a stationary boat. (b) The boat moving toward the wave source. (c) The boat moving away from the wave source.

[3]Named after Austrian physicist Christian Johann Doppler (1803–1853), who in 1842 predicted the effect for both sound waves and light waves.

hits, and so on. From these observations, you conclude that the wave frequency is $f = 1/T = 1/(3.0\text{ s}) = 0.33\text{ Hz}$. Now suppose you start your motor and head directly into the oncoming waves as in Figure 17.8b. Again you set your watch to $t = 0$ as a crest hits the front (the bow) of your boat. Now, however, because you are moving toward the next wave crest as it moves toward you, it hits you less than 3.0 s after the first hit. In other words, the period you observe is shorter than the 3.0-s period you observed when you were stationary. Because $f = 1/T$, you observe a higher wave frequency than when you were at rest.

If you turn around and move in the same direction as the waves (Fig. 17.8c), you observe the opposite effect. You set your watch to $t = 0$ as a crest hits the back (the stern) of the boat. Because you are now moving away from the next crest, more than 3.0 s has elapsed on your watch by the time that crest catches you. Therefore, you observe a lower frequency than when you were at rest.

These effects occur because the *relative* speed between your boat and the waves depends on the direction of travel and on the speed of your boat. (See Section 4.6.) When you are moving toward the right in Figure 17.8b, this relative speed is higher than that of the wave speed, which leads to the observation of an increased frequency. When you turn around and move to the left, the relative speed is lower, as is the observed frequency of the water waves.

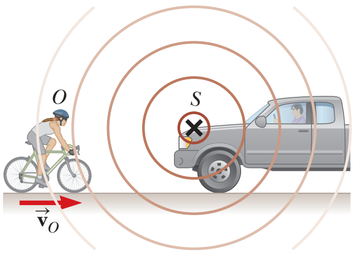


Figure 17.9 An observer O (the cyclist) moves with a speed v_O toward a stationary point source S, the horn of a parked truck. The observer hears a frequency f' that is greater than the source frequency.

Let's now examine an analogous situation with sound waves in which the water waves become sound waves, the water becomes the air, and the person on the boat becomes an observer listening to the sound. In this case, an observer O is moving and a sound source S is stationary. For simplicity, we assume the air is also stationary and the observer moves directly toward the source (Fig. 17.9). The observer moves with a speed v_O toward a stationary point source ($v_S = 0$), where *stationary* means at rest with respect to the medium, air.

If a point source emits sound waves and the medium is uniform, the waves move at the same speed in all directions radially away from the source; the result is a spherical wave as mentioned in Section 17.3. The distance between adjacent wave fronts equals the wavelength λ. In Figure 17.9, the circles are the intersections of these three-dimensional wave fronts with the two-dimensional paper.

We take the frequency of the source in Figure 17.9 to be f, the wavelength to be λ, and the speed of sound to be v. If the observer were also stationary, he would detect wave fronts at a frequency f. (That is, when $v_O = 0$ and $v_S = 0$, the observed frequency equals the source frequency.) When the observer moves toward the source, the speed of the waves relative to the observer is $v' = v + v_O$, as in the case of the boat in Figure 17.8, but the wavelength λ is unchanged. Hence, using Equation 16.12, $v = \lambda f$, we can say that the frequency f' heard by the observer is *increased* and is given by

$$f' = \frac{v'}{\lambda} = \frac{v + v_O}{\lambda}$$

Because $\lambda = v/f$, we can express f' as

$$f' = \left(\frac{v + v_O}{v}\right) f \quad \text{(observer moving toward source)} \qquad \textbf{(17.15)}$$

If the observer is moving away from the source, the speed of the wave relative to the observer is $v' = v - v_O$. The frequency heard by the observer in this case is *decreased* and is given by

$$f' = \left(\frac{v - v_O}{v}\right) f \quad \text{(observer moving away from source)} \qquad \textbf{(17.16)}$$

These last two equations can be reduced to a single equation by adopting a sign convention. Whenever an observer moves with a speed v_O relative to a stationary source, the frequency heard by the observer is given by Equation 17.15, with v_O interpreted as follows: a positive value is substituted for v_O when the observer moves

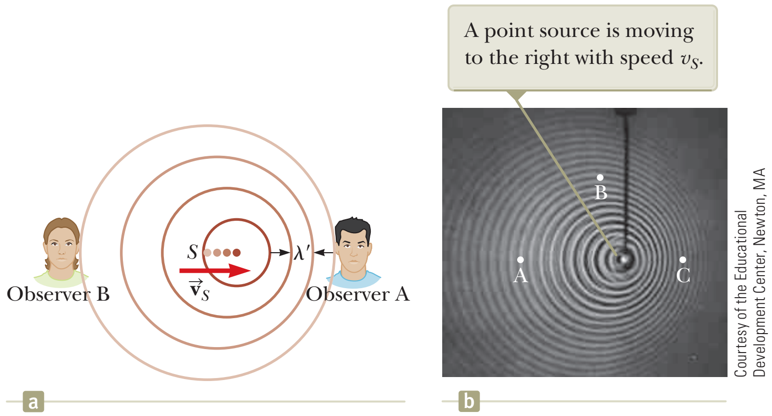


Figure 17.10 (a) A source S moving with a speed v_S toward a stationary observer A and away from a stationary observer B. Observer A hears an increased frequency, and observer B hears a decreased frequency. (b) The Doppler effect in water, observed in a ripple tank. Letters shown in the photo refer to Quick Quiz 17.4.

toward the source, and a negative value is substituted when the observer moves away from the source.

Now suppose the source is in motion and the observer is at rest. If the source moves directly toward observer A in Figure 17.10a, each new wave is emitted from a position to the right of the origin of the previous wave. As a result, the wave fronts heard by the observer are closer together than they would be if the source were not moving. (Fig. 17.10b shows this effect for waves moving on the surface of water.) As a result, the wavelength λ' measured by observer A is shorter than the wavelength λ of the source. During each vibration, which lasts for a time interval T (the period), the source moves a distance $v_S T = v_S/f$ and the wavelength is *shortened* by this amount. Therefore, the observed wavelength λ' is

$$\lambda' = \lambda - \Delta\lambda = \lambda - \frac{v_S}{f}$$

Because $\lambda = v/f$, the frequency f' heard by observer A is

$$f' = \frac{v}{\lambda'} = \frac{v}{\lambda - (v_S/f)} = \frac{v}{(v/f) - (v_S/f)}$$

$$f' = \left(\frac{v}{v - v_S}\right)f \quad \text{(source moving toward observer)} \qquad \textbf{(17.17)}$$

That is, the observed frequency is *increased* whenever the source is moving toward the observer.

When the source moves away from a stationary observer, as is the case for observer B in Figure 17.10a, the observer measures a wavelength λ' that is *greater* than λ and hears a *decreased* frequency:

$$f' = \left(\frac{v}{v + v_S}\right)f \quad \text{(source moving away from observer)} \qquad \textbf{(17.18)}$$

We can express the general relationship for the observed frequency when a source is moving and an observer is at rest as Equation 17.17, with the same sign convention applied to v_S as was applied to v_O: a positive value is substituted for v_S when the source moves toward the observer, and a negative value is substituted when the source moves away from the observer.

Finally, combining Equations 17.15 and 17.17 gives the following general relationship for the observed frequency that includes all four conditions described by Equations 17.15 through 17.18:

$$f' = \left(\frac{v + v_O}{v - v_S}\right)f \qquad \textbf{(17.19)}$$

◀ **General Doppler-shift expression**

Pitfall Prevention 17.1

Doppler Effect Does Not Depend on Distance Some people think that the Doppler effect depends on the distance between the source and the observer. Although the *intensity* of a sound varies as the distance changes, the apparent *frequency* depends only on the relative speed of source and observer. As you listen to an approaching source, you will detect increasing intensity but constant frequency. As the source passes, you will hear the frequency suddenly drop to a new constant value and the intensity begin to decrease.

In this expression, the signs for the values substituted for v_O and v_S depend on the direction of the velocity. A positive value is used for motion of the observer or the source *toward* the other (associated with an *increase* in observed frequency), and a negative value is used for motion of one *away from* the other (associated with a *decrease* in observed frequency).

Although the Doppler effect is most typically experienced with sound waves, it is a phenomenon common to all waves. For example, the relative motion of source and observer produces a frequency shift in light waves. The Doppler effect is used in police radar systems to measure the speeds of motor vehicles. Likewise, astronomers use the effect to determine the speeds of stars, galaxies, and other celestial objects relative to the Earth.

Quick Quiz 17.4 Consider detectors of water waves at three locations A, B, and C in Figure 17.10b. Which of the following statements is true? **(a)** The wave speed is highest at location A. **(b)** The wave speed is highest at location C. **(c)** The detected wavelength is largest at location B. **(d)** The detected wavelength is largest at location C. **(e)** The detected frequency is highest at location C. **(f)** The detected frequency is highest at location A.

Quick Quiz 17.5 You stand on a platform at a train station and listen to a train approaching the station at a constant velocity. While the train approaches, but before it arrives, what do you hear? **(a)** the intensity and the frequency of the sound both increasing **(b)** the intensity and the frequency of the sound both decreasing **(c)** the intensity increasing and the frequency decreasing **(d)** the intensity decreasing and the frequency increasing **(e)** the intensity increasing and the frequency remaining the same **(f)** the intensity decreasing and the frequency remaining the same

Example 17.4 The Broken Clock Radio AM

Your clock radio awakens you with a steady and irritating sound of frequency 600 Hz. One morning, it malfunctions and cannot be turned off. In frustration, you drop the clock radio out of your fourth-story dorm window, 15.0 m from the ground. Assume the speed of sound is 343 m/s. As you listen to the falling clock radio, what frequency do you hear just before you hear it striking the ground?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The speed of the clock radio increases as it falls. Therefore, it is a source of sound moving away from you with an increasing speed so the frequency you hear should be less than 600 Hz.

Categorize We categorize this problem as one in which we combine the *particle under constant acceleration* model for the falling radio with our understanding of the frequency shift of sound due to the Doppler effect.

Analyze Because the clock radio is modeled as a particle under constant acceleration due to gravity, use Equation 2.13 to express the speed of the source of sound:

$$(1)\quad v_S = v_{yi} + a_y t = 0 - gt = -gt$$

From Equation 2.16, find the time at which the clock radio strikes the ground:

$$y_f = y_i + v_{yi}t - \tfrac{1}{2}gt^2 = 0 + 0 - \tfrac{1}{2}gt^2 \rightarrow t = \sqrt{-\frac{2y_f}{g}}$$

Substitute into Equation (1):

$$v_S = (-g)\sqrt{-\frac{2y_f}{g}} = -\sqrt{-2gy_f}$$

Use Equation 17.19 to determine the Doppler-shifted frequency heard from the falling clock radio:

$$f' = \left[\frac{v + 0}{v - (-\sqrt{-2gy_f})}\right]f = \left(\frac{v}{v + \sqrt{-2gy_f}}\right)f$$

17.4 continued

Substitute numerical values:

$$f' = \left[\frac{343 \text{ m/s}}{343 \text{ m/s} + \sqrt{-2(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2)(-15.0 \text{ m})}}\right](600 \text{ Hz})$$

$$= 571 \text{ Hz}$$

Finalize The frequency is lower than the actual frequency of 600 Hz because the clock radio is moving away from you. If it were to fall from a higher floor so that it passes below $y = -15.0$ m, the clock radio would continue to accelerate and the frequency would continue to drop.

Example 17.5 Doppler Submarines

A submarine (sub A) travels through water at a speed of 8.00 m/s, emitting a sonar wave at a frequency of 1 400 Hz. The speed of sound in the water is 1 533 m/s. A second submarine (sub B) is located such that both submarines are traveling directly toward each other. The second submarine is moving at 9.00 m/s.

(A) What frequency is detected by an observer riding on sub B as the subs approach each other?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Even though the problem involves subs moving in water, there is a Doppler effect just like there is when you are in a moving car and listening to a sound moving through the air from another car.

Categorize Because both subs are moving, we categorize this problem as one involving the Doppler effect for both a moving source and a moving observer.

Analyze Use Equation 17.19 to find the Doppler-shifted frequency heard by the observer in sub B, being careful with the signs assigned to the source and observer speeds:

$$f' = \left(\frac{v + v_O}{v - v_S}\right)f$$

$$f' = \left[\frac{1\,533 \text{ m/s} + (+9.00 \text{ m/s})}{1\,533 \text{ m/s} - (+8.00 \text{ m/s})}\right](1\,400 \text{ Hz}) = 1\,416 \text{ Hz}$$

(B) The subs barely miss each other and pass. What frequency is detected by an observer riding on sub B as the subs recede from each other?

SOLUTION

Use Equation 17.19 to find the Doppler-shifted frequency heard by the observer in sub B, again being careful with the signs assigned to the source and observer speeds:

$$f' = \left(\frac{v + v_O}{v - v_S}\right)f$$

$$f' = \left[\frac{1\,533 \text{ m/s} + (-9.00 \text{ m/s})}{1\,533 \text{ m/s} - (-8.00 \text{ m/s})}\right](1\,400 \text{ Hz}) = 1\,385 \text{ Hz}$$

Notice that the frequency drops from 1 416 Hz to 1 385 Hz as the subs pass. This effect is similar to the drop in frequency you hear when a car passes by you while blowing its horn.

(C) While the subs are approaching each other, some of the sound from sub A reflects from sub B and returns to sub A. If this sound were to be detected by an observer on sub A, what is its frequency?

SOLUTION

The sound of apparent frequency 1 416 Hz found in part (A) is reflected from a moving source (sub B) and then detected by a moving observer (sub A). Find the frequency detected by sub A:

$$f'' = \left(\frac{v + v_O}{v - v_S}\right)f'$$

$$= \left[\frac{1\,533 \text{ m/s} + (+8.00 \text{ m/s})}{1\,533 \text{ m/s} - (+9.00 \text{ m/s})}\right](1\,416 \text{ Hz}) = 1\,432 \text{ Hz}$$

continued

17.5 continued

Finalize This technique is used by police officers to measure the speed of a moving car. Microwaves are emitted from the police car and reflected by the moving car. By detecting the Doppler-shifted frequency of the reflected microwaves, the police officer can determine the speed of the moving car.

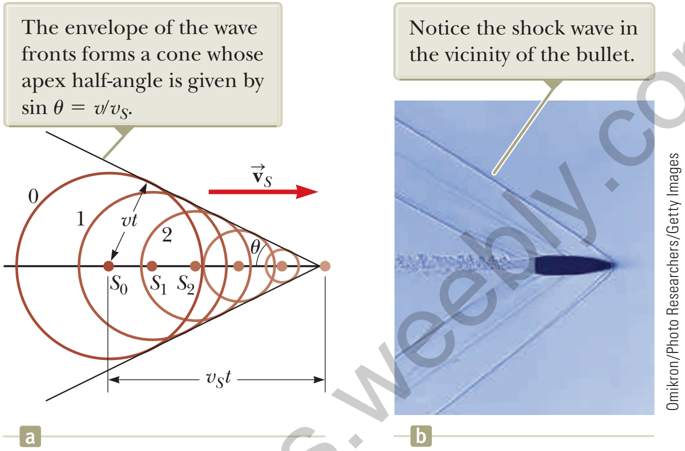


Figure 17.11 (a) A representation of a shock wave produced when a source moves from S_0 to the right with a speed v_S that is greater than the wave speed v in the medium. (b) A stroboscopic photograph of a bullet moving at supersonic speed through the hot air above a candle.

Shock Waves

Now consider what happens when the speed v_S of a source *exceeds* the wave speed v. This situation is depicted graphically in Figure 17.11a. The circles represent spherical wave fronts emitted by the source at various times during its motion. At $t = 0$, the source is at S_0 and moving toward the right. At later times, the source is at S_1, and then S_2, and so on. At the time t, the wave front centered at S_0 reaches a radius of vt. In this same time interval, the source travels a distance $v_S t$. Notice in Figure 17.11a that a straight line can be drawn tangent to all the wave fronts generated at various times. Therefore, the envelope of these wave fronts is a cone whose apex half-angle θ (the "Mach angle") is given by

$$\sin\theta = \frac{vt}{v_S t} = \frac{v}{v_S}$$

The ratio v_S/v is referred to as the *Mach number,* and the conical wave front produced when $v_S > v$ (supersonic speeds) is known as a *shock wave.* An interesting analogy to shock waves is the V-shaped wave fronts produced by a boat (the bow wave) when the boat's speed exceeds the speed of the surface-water waves (Fig. 17.12).

Jet airplanes traveling at supersonic speeds produce shock waves, which are responsible for the loud "sonic boom" one hears. The shock wave carries a great deal of energy concentrated on the surface of the cone, with correspondingly great pressure variations. Such shock waves are unpleasant to hear and can cause damage to buildings when aircraft fly supersonically at low altitudes. In fact, an airplane flying at supersonic speeds produces a double boom because two shock waves are formed, one from the nose of the plane and one from the tail. People near the path of a space shuttle as it glides toward its landing point have reported hearing what sounds like two very closely spaced cracks of thunder.

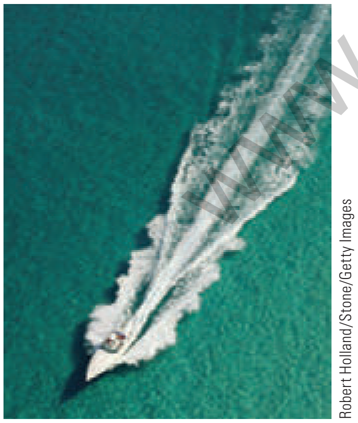


Figure 17.12 The V-shaped bow wave of a boat is formed because the boat speed is greater than the speed of the water waves it generates. A bow wave is analogous to a shock wave formed by an airplane traveling faster than sound.

Quick Quiz 17.6 An airplane flying with a constant velocity moves from a cold air mass into a warm air mass. Does the Mach number **(a)** increase, **(b)** decrease, or **(c)** stay the same?

Summary

Definitions

The **intensity** of a periodic sound wave, which is the power per unit area, is

$$I \equiv \frac{(Power)_{avg}}{A} = \frac{(\Delta P_{max})^2}{2\rho v} \qquad \textbf{(17.11, 17.12)}$$

The **sound level** of a sound wave in decibels is

$$\beta \equiv 10 \log\left(\frac{I}{I_0}\right) \qquad \textbf{(17.14)}$$

The constant I_0 is a reference intensity, usually taken to be at the threshold of hearing (1.00×10^{-12} W/m^2), and I is the intensity of the sound wave in watts per square meter.

Concepts and Principles

Sound waves are longitudinal and travel through a compressible medium with a speed that depends on the elastic and inertial properties of that medium. The speed of sound in a gas having a bulk modulus B and density ρ is

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{B}{\rho}} \qquad \textbf{(17.8)}$$

For sinusoidal sound waves, the variation in the position of an element of the medium is

$$s(x, t) = s_{max} \cos(kx - \omega t) \qquad \textbf{(17.1)}$$

and the variation in pressure from the equilibrium value is

$$\Delta P = \Delta P_{max} \sin(kx - \omega t) \qquad \textbf{(17.2)}$$

where ΔP_{max} is the **pressure amplitude.** The pressure wave is 90° out of phase with the displacement wave. The relationship between s_{max} and ΔP_{max} is

$$\Delta P_{max} = \rho v \omega s_{max} \qquad \textbf{(17.10)}$$

The change in frequency heard by an observer whenever there is relative motion between a source of sound waves and the observer is called the **Doppler effect.** The observed frequency is

$$f' = \left(\frac{v + v_O}{v - v_S}\right) f \qquad \textbf{(17.19)}$$

In this expression, the signs for the values substituted for v_O and v_S depend on the direction of the velocity. A positive value for the speed of the observer or source is substituted if the velocity of one is toward the other, whereas a negative value represents a velocity of one away from the other.

Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. Table 17.1 shows the speed of sound is typically an order of magnitude larger in solids than in gases. To what can this higher value be most directly attributed? (a) the difference in density between solids and gases (b) the difference in compressibility between solids and gases (c) the limited size of a solid object compared to a free gas (d) the impossibility of holding a gas under significant tension

2. Two sirens A and B are sounding so that the frequency from A is twice the frequency from B. Compared with the speed of sound from A, is the speed of sound from B (a) twice as fast, (b) half as fast, (c) four times as fast, (d) one-fourth as fast, or (e) the same?

3. As you travel down the highway in your car, an ambulance approaches you from the rear at a high speed (Fig. OQ17.3) sounding its siren at a frequency of 500 Hz. Which statement is correct? (a) You hear a frequency less than 500 Hz. (b) You hear a frequency equal to 500 Hz. (c) You hear a frequency greater

Anthony Redpath/Corbis

Figure OQ17.3

than 500 Hz. (d) You hear a frequency greater than 500 Hz, whereas the ambulance driver hears a frequency lower than 500 Hz. (e) You hear a frequency less than 500 Hz, whereas the ambulance driver hears a frequency of 500 Hz.

4. What happens to a sound wave as it travels from air into water? (a) Its intensity increases. (b) Its wavelength decreases. (c) Its frequency increases. (d) Its frequency remains the same. (e) Its velocity decreases.

5. A church bell in a steeple rings once. At 300 m in front of the church, the maximum sound intensity is 2 $\mu W/m^2$. At 950 m behind the church, the maximum intensity is 0.2 $\mu W/m^2$. What is the main reason for the difference in the intensity? (a) Most of the sound is absorbed by the air before it gets far away from the source. (b) Most of the sound is absorbed by the ground as it travels away from the source. (c) The bell broadcasts the sound mostly toward the front. (d) At a larger distance, the power is spread over a larger area.

6. If a 1.00-kHz sound source moves at a speed of 50.0 m/s toward a listener who moves at a speed of 30.0 m/s in a direction away from the source, what is the apparent frequency heard by the listener? (a) 796 Hz (b) 949 Hz (c) 1 000 Hz (d) 1 068 Hz (e) 1 273 Hz

7. A sound wave can be characterized as (a) a transverse wave, (b) a longitudinal wave, (c) a transverse wave or a longitudinal wave, depending on the nature of its source, (d) one that carries no energy, or (e) a wave that does not require a medium to be transmitted from one place to the other.

8. Assume a change at the source of sound reduces the wavelength of a sound wave in air by a factor of 2. **(i)** What happens to its frequency? (a) It increases by a factor of 4. (b) It increases by a factor of 2. (c) It is unchanged. (d) It decreases by a factor of 2. (e) It changes by an unpredictable factor. **(ii)** What happens to its speed? Choose from the same possibilities as in part (i).

9. A point source broadcasts sound into a uniform medium. If the distance from the source is tripled, how does the intensity change? (a) It becomes one-ninth as large. (b) It becomes one-third as large. (c) It is unchanged. (d) It becomes three times larger. (e) It becomes nine times larger.

10. Suppose an observer and a source of sound are both at rest relative to the ground and a strong wind is blowing away from the source toward the observer. **(i)** What effect does the wind have on the observed frequency? (a) It causes an increase. (b) It causes a decrease. (c) It causes no change. **(ii)** What effect does the wind have on the observed wavelength? Choose from the same possibilities as in part (i). **(iii)** What effect does the wind have on the observed speed of the wave? Choose from the same possibilities as in part (i).

11. A source of sound vibrates with constant frequency. Rank the frequency of sound observed in the following cases from highest to the lowest. If two frequencies are equal, show their equality in your ranking. All the motions mentioned have the same speed, 25 m/s. (a) The source and observer are stationary. (b) The source is moving toward a stationary observer. (c) The source is moving away from a stationary observer. (d) The observer is moving toward a stationary source. (e) The observer is moving away from a stationary source.

12. With a sensitive sound-level meter, you measure the sound of a running spider as −10 dB. What does the negative sign imply? (a) The spider is moving away from you. (b) The frequency of the sound is too low to be audible to humans. (c) The intensity of the sound is too faint to be audible to humans. (d) You have made a mistake; negative signs do not fit with logarithms.

13. Doubling the power output from a sound source emitting a single frequency will result in what increase in decibel level? (a) 0.50 dB (b) 2.0 dB (c) 3.0 dB (d) 4.0 dB (e) above 20 dB

14. Of the following sounds, which one is most likely to have a sound level of 60 dB? (a) a rock concert (b) the turning of a page in this textbook (c) dinner-table conversation (d) a cheering crowd at a football game

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. How can an object move with respect to an observer so that the sound from it is not shifted in frequency?

2. Older auto-focus cameras sent out a pulse of sound and measured the time interval required for the pulse to reach an object, reflect off of it, and return to be detected. Can air temperature affect the camera's focus? New cameras use a more reliable infrared system.

3. A friend sitting in her car far down the road waves to you and beeps her horn at the same moment. How far away must she be for you to calculate the speed of sound to two significant figures by measuring the time interval required for the sound to reach you?

4. How can you determine that the speed of sound is the same for all frequencies by listening to a band or orchestra?

5. Explain how the distance to a lightning bolt (Fig. CQ17.5) can be determined by counting the seconds between the flash and the sound of thunder.

Figure CQ17.5

6. You are driving toward a cliff and honk your horn. Is there a Doppler shift of the sound when you hear the echo? If so, is it like a moving source or a moving observer? What if the reflection occurs not from a cliff, but from the forward edge of a huge alien spacecraft moving toward you as you drive?

7. The radar systems used by police to detect speeders are sensitive to the Doppler shift of a pulse of microwaves. Discuss how this sensitivity can be used to measure the speed of a car.

8. *The Tunguska event.* On June 30, 1908, a meteor burned up and exploded in the atmosphere above the Tunguska River valley in Siberia. It knocked down trees over thousands of square kilometers and started a forest fire, but produced no crater and apparently caused no human casualties. A witness sitting on his doorstep outside the zone of falling trees recalled events in the following sequence. He saw a moving light in the sky, brighter than the Sun and descending at a low angle to the horizon. He felt his face become warm. He felt the ground shake. An invisible agent picked him up and immediately dropped him about a meter from where he had been seated. He heard a very loud protracted rumbling. Suggest an explanation for these observations and for the order in which they happened.

9. A sonic ranger is a device that determines the distance to an object by sending out an ultrasonic sound pulse and measuring the time interval required for the wave to return by reflection from the object. Typically, these devices cannot reliably detect an object that is less than half a meter from the sensor. Why is that?

Problems

ENHANCED WebAssign The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Note: Throughout this chapter, pressure variations ΔP are measured relative to atmospheric pressure, 1.013×10^5 Pa.

Section 17.1 Pressure Variations in Sound Waves

1. W A sinusoidal sound wave moves through a medium and is described by the displacement wave function

$$s(x, t) = 2.00 \cos (15.7x - 858t)$$

where s is in micrometers, x is in meters, and t is in seconds. Find (a) the amplitude, (b) the wavelength, and (c) the speed of this wave. (d) Determine the instantaneous displacement from equilibrium of the elements of the medium at the position $x = 0.050\,0$ m at $t = 3.00$ ms. (e) Determine the maximum speed of the element's oscillatory motion.

2. As a certain sound wave travels through the air, it produces pressure variations (above and below atmospheric pressure) given by $\Delta P = 1.27 \sin (\pi x - 340\pi t)$ in SI units. Find (a) the amplitude of the pressure variations, (b) the frequency, (c) the wavelength in air, and (d) the speed of the sound wave.

3. Write an expression that describes the pressure variation as a function of position and time for a sinusoidal sound wave in air. Assume the speed of sound is 343 m/s, $\lambda = 0.100$ m, and $\Delta P_{max} = 0.200$ Pa.

Section 17.2 Speed of Sound Waves

Problem 85 in Chapter 2 can also be assigned with this section.

Note: In the rest of this chapter, unless otherwise specified, the equilibrium density of air is $\rho = 1.20$ kg/m^3 and the speed of sound in air is $v = 343$ m/s. Use Table 17.1 to find speeds of sound in other media.

4. M An experimenter wishes to generate in air a sound wave that has a displacement amplitude of 5.50×10^{-6} m. The pressure amplitude is to be limited to 0.840 Pa. What is the minimum wavelength the sound wave can have?

5. Calculate the pressure amplitude of a 2.00-kHz sound wave in air, assuming that the displacement amplitude is equal to 2.00×10^{-8} m.

6. Earthquakes at fault lines in the Earth's crust create seismic waves, which are longitudinal (P waves) or transverse (S waves). The P waves have a speed of about 7 km/s. Estimate the average bulk modulus of the Earth's crust given that the density of rock is about 2 500 kg/m^3.

7. A dolphin (Fig. P17.7) in seawater at a temperature of 25°C emits a sound wave directed toward the ocean floor 150 m below. How much time passes before it hears an echo?

Stephen Frink/Photographer's Choice/Getty Images

Figure P17.7

8. A sound wave propagates in air at 27°C with frequency 4.00 kHz. It passes through a region where the temperature gradually changes and then moves through air at 0°C. Give numerical answers to the following questions to the extent possible and state your reasoning about what happens to the wave physically. (a) What happens to the speed of the wave? (b) What happens to its frequency? (c) What happens to its wavelength?

9. Ultrasound is used in medicine both for diagnostic imaging (Fig. P17.9, page 526) and for therapy. For diagnosis, short pulses of ultrasound are passed through the patient's body. An echo reflected from a structure of interest is recorded, and the distance to the structure can be determined from the time delay for the echo's return. To reveal detail, the wavelength of the reflected ultrasound must be small compared to the size of the object reflecting the wave. The speed of ultrasound in human tissue is about 1 500 m/s (nearly the same as the speed of sound in water). (a) What is the wavelength of ultrasound with a frequency of 2.40 MHz? (b) In the whole set of imaging techniques, frequencies in the range 1.00 MHz to 20.0 MHz are used. What is the range of wavelengths corresponding to this range of frequencies?

Figure P17.9 A view of a fetus in the uterus made with ultrasound imaging.

10. W A sound wave in air has a pressure amplitude equal to 4.00×10^{-3} Pa. Calculate the displacement amplitude of the wave at a frequency of 10.0 kHz.

11. W Suppose you hear a clap of thunder 16.2 s after seeing the associated lightning strike. The speed of light in air is 3.00×10^{8} m/s. (a) How far are you from the lightning strike? (b) Do you need to know the value of the speed of light to answer? Explain.

12. W A rescue plane flies horizontally at a constant speed searching for a disabled boat. When the plane is directly above the boat, the boat's crew blows a loud horn. By the time the plane's sound detector receives the horn's sound, the plane has traveled a distance equal to half its altitude above the ocean. Assuming it takes the sound 2.00 s to reach the plane, determine (a) the speed of the plane and (b) its altitude.

13. AMT W A flowerpot is knocked off a window ledge from a height d = 20.0 m above the sidewalk as shown in Figure P17.13. It falls toward an unsuspecting man of height h = 1.75 m who is standing below. Assume the man requires a time interval of Δt = 0.300 s to respond to the warning. How close to the sidewalk can the flowerpot fall before it is too late for a warning shouted from the balcony to reach the man in time?

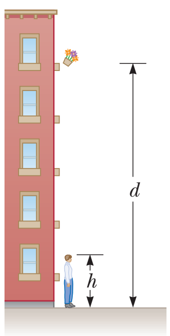


Figure P17.13 Problems 13 and 14.

14. A flowerpot is knocked off a balcony from a height d above the sidewalk as shown in Figure P17.13. It falls toward an unsuspecting man of height h who is standing below. Assume the man requires a time interval of Δt to respond to the warning. How close to the sidewalk can the flowerpot fall before it is too late for a warning shouted from the balcony to reach the man in time? Use the symbol v for the speed of sound.

15. The speed of sound in air (in meters per second) depends on temperature according to the approximate expression

$$v = 331.5 + 0.607T_C$$

where T_C is the Celsius temperature. In dry air, the temperature decreases about 1°C for every 150-m rise in altitude. (a) Assume this change is constant up to an altitude of 9 000 m. What time interval is required for the sound from an airplane flying at 9 000 m to reach the ground on a day when the ground temperature is 30°C? (b) **What If?** Compare your answer with the time interval required if the air were uniformly at 30°C. Which time interval is longer?

16. A sound wave moves down a cylinder as in Figure 17.2. Show that the pressure variation of the wave is described by $\Delta P = \pm \rho v \omega \sqrt{s_{max}^2 - s^2}$, where $s = s(x, t)$ is given by Equation 17.1.

17. A hammer strikes one end of a thick iron rail of length 8.50 m. A microphone located at the opposite end of the rail detects two pulses of sound, one that travels through the air and a longitudinal wave that travels through the rail. (a) Which pulse reaches the microphone first? (b) Find the separation in time between the arrivals of the two pulses.

18. A cowboy stands on horizontal ground between two parallel, vertical cliffs. He is not midway between the cliffs. He fires a shot and hears its echoes. The second echo arrives 1.92 s after the first and 1.47 s before the third. Consider only the sound traveling parallel to the ground and reflecting from the cliffs. (a) What is the distance between the cliffs? (b) **What If?** If he can hear a fourth echo, how long after the third echo does it arrive?

Section 17.3 Intensity of Periodic Sound Waves

19. Calculate the sound level (in decibels) of a sound wave that has an intensity of 4.00 μW/m^2.

20. The area of a typical eardrum is about 5.00×10^{-5} m^2. (a) Calculate the average sound power incident on an eardrum at the threshold of pain, which corresponds to an intensity of 1.00 W/m^2. (b) How much energy is transferred to the eardrum exposed to this sound for 1.00 min?

21. The intensity of a sound wave at a fixed distance from a speaker vibrating at 1.00 kHz is 0.600 W/m^2. (a) Determine the intensity that results if the frequency is increased to 2.50 kHz while a constant displacement amplitude is maintained. (b) Calculate the intensity if the frequency is reduced to 0.500 kHz and the displacement amplitude is doubled.

22. The intensity of a sound wave at a fixed distance from a speaker vibrating at a frequency f is I. (a) Determine the intensity that results if the frequency is increased to f' while a constant displacement amplitude is maintained. (b) Calculate the intensity if the frequency is reduced to $f/2$ and the displacement amplitude is doubled.

23. A person wears a hearing aid that uniformly increases the sound level of all audible frequencies of sound by 30.0 dB. The hearing aid picks up sound having a frequency of 250 Hz at an intensity of 3.0×10^{-11} W/m^2. What is the intensity delivered to the eardrum?

24. The sound intensity at a distance of 16 m from a noisy generator is measured to be 0.25 W/m^2. What is the sound intensity at a distance of 28 m from the generator?

25. W The power output of a certain public-address speaker is 6.00 W. Suppose it broadcasts equally in all directions. (a) Within what distance from the speaker would the sound be painful to the ear? (b) At what distance from the speaker would the sound be barely audible?

26. A sound wave from a police siren has an intensity of 100.0 W/m^2 at a certain point; a second sound wave from a nearby ambulance has an intensity level that is 10 dB greater than the police siren's sound wave at the same point. What is the sound level of the sound wave due to the ambulance?

27. M A train sounds its horn as it approaches an intersection. The horn can just be heard at a level of 50 dB by an observer 10 km away. (a) What is the average power generated by the horn? (b) What intensity level of the horn's sound is observed by someone waiting at an intersection 50 m from the train? Treat the horn as a point source and neglect any absorption of sound by the air.

28. As the people sing in church, the sound level everywhere inside is 101 dB. No sound is transmitted through the massive walls, but all the windows and doors are open on a summer morning. Their total area is 22.0 m^2. (a) How much sound energy is radiated through the windows and doors in 20.0 min? (b) Suppose the ground is a good reflector and sound radiates from the church uniformly in all horizontal and upward directions. Find the sound level 1.00 km away.

29. The most soaring vocal melody is in Johann Sebastian Bach's Mass in B Minor. In one section, the basses, tenors, altos, and sopranos carry the melody from a low D to a high A. In concert pitch, these notes are now assigned frequencies of 146.8 Hz and 880.0 Hz. Find the wavelengths of (a) the initial note and (b) the final note. Assume the chorus sings the melody with a uniform sound level of 75.0 dB. Find the pressure amplitudes of (c) the initial note and (d) the final note. Find the displacement amplitudes of (e) the initial note and (f) the final note.

30. Show that the difference between decibel levels β_1 and β_2 of a sound is related to the ratio of the distances r_1 and r_2 from the sound source by

$$\beta_2 - \beta_1 = 20 \log \left(\frac{r_1}{r_2} \right)$$

31. M A family ice show is held at an enclosed arena. The skaters perform to music with level 80.0 dB. This level is too loud for your baby, who yells at 75.0 dB. (a) What total sound intensity engulfs you? (b) What is the combined sound level?

32. W Two small speakers emit sound waves of different frequencies equally in all directions. Speaker A has an output of 1.00 mW, and speaker B has an output of 1.50 mW. Determine the sound level (in decibels) at point C in Figure P17.32 assuming (a) only speaker A emits sound, (b) only speaker B emits sound, and (c) both speakers emit sound.

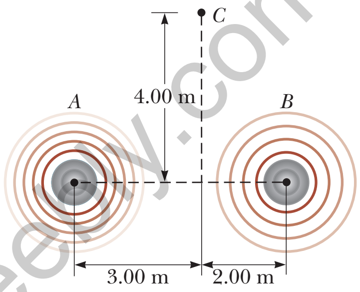


Figure P17.32

33. M A firework charge is detonated many meters above the ground. At a distance of d_1 = 500 m from the explosion, the acoustic pressure reaches a maximum of ΔP_{max} = 10.0 Pa (Fig. P17.33). Assume the speed of sound is constant at 343 m/s throughout the atmosphere over the region considered, the ground absorbs all the sound falling on it, and the air absorbs sound energy as described by the rate 7.00 dB/km. What is the sound level (in decibels) at a distance of d_2 = 4.00×10^3 m from the explosion?

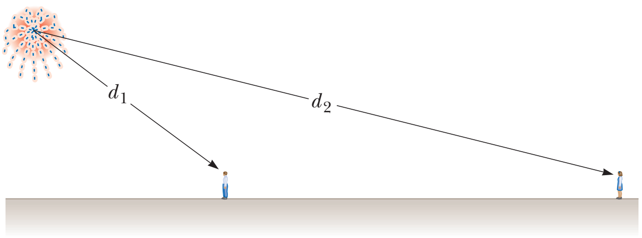


Figure P17.33

34. A fireworks rocket explodes at a height of 100 m above the ground. An observer on the ground directly under the explosion experiences an average sound intensity of 7.00×10^{-2} W/m^2 for 0.200 s. (a) What is the total amount of energy transferred away from the explosion by sound? (b) What is the sound level (in decibels) heard by the observer?

35. The sound level at a distance of 3.00 m from a source is 120 dB. At what distance is the sound level (a) 100 dB and (b) 10.0 dB?

36. *Why is the following situation impossible?* It is early on a Saturday morning, and much to your displeasure your next-door neighbor starts mowing his lawn. As you try to get back to sleep, your next-door neighbor on the other side of your house also begins to mow the lawn with an identical mower the same distance away. This situation annoys you greatly because the total sound now has twice the loudness it had when only one neighbor was mowing.

Section 17.4 The Doppler Effect

37. An ambulance moving at 42 m/s sounds its siren whose frequency is 450 Hz. A car is moving in the same direction as the ambulance at 25 m/s. What frequency does a person in the car hear (a) as the ambulance approaches the car? (b) After the ambulance passes the car?

38. When high-energy charged particles move through a transparent medium with a speed greater than the speed of light in that medium, a shock wave, or bow wave, of light is produced. This phenomenon is called the *Cerenkov effect.* When a nuclear reactor is shielded by a large pool of water, Cerenkov radiation can be seen as a blue glow in the vicinity of the reactor core due to high-speed electrons moving through the water (Fig. 17.38). In a particular case, the Cerenkov radiation produces a wave front with an apex half-angle of 53.0°. Calculate the speed of the electrons in the water. The speed of light in water is 2.25×10^8 m/s.

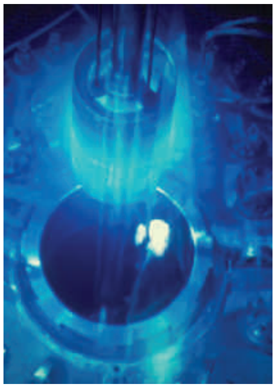

U.S. Department of Energy/Photo Researchers, Inc.

Figure P17.38

39. A driver travels northbound on a highway at a speed of 25.0 m/s. A police car, traveling southbound at a speed of 40.0 m/s, approaches with its siren producing sound at a frequency of 2 500 Hz. (a) What frequency does the driver observe as the police car approaches? (b) What frequency does the driver detect after the police car passes him? (c) Repeat parts (a) and (b) for the case when the police car is behind the driver and travels northbound.

40. GP Submarine A travels horizontally at 11.0 m/s through ocean water. It emits a sonar signal of frequency $f = 5.27 \times 10^3$ Hz in the forward direction. Submarine B is in front of submarine A and traveling at 3.00 m/s relative to the water in the same direction as submarine A. A crewman in submarine B uses his equipment to detect the sound waves ("pings") from submarine A. We wish to determine what is heard by the crewman in submarine B. (a) An observer on which submarine detects a frequency f' as described by Equation 17.19? (b) In Equation 17.19, should the sign of v_S be positive or negative? (c) In Equation 17.19, should the sign of v_O be positive or negative? (d) In Equation 17.19, what speed of sound should be used? (e) Find the frequency of the sound detected by the crewman on submarine B.

41. AMT **Review.** A block with a speaker bolted to it is connected to a spring having spring constant $k = 20.0$ N/m and oscillates as shown in Figure P17.41. The total mass of the block and speaker is 5.00 kg, and the amplitude of this unit's motion is 0.500 m. The speaker emits sound waves of frequency 440 Hz. Determine (a) the highest and (b) the lowest frequencies heard by the person to the right of the speaker. (c)If the maximum sound level heard by the person is 60.0 dB when the speaker is at its closest distance $d = 1.00$ m from him, what is the minimum sound level heard by the observer?

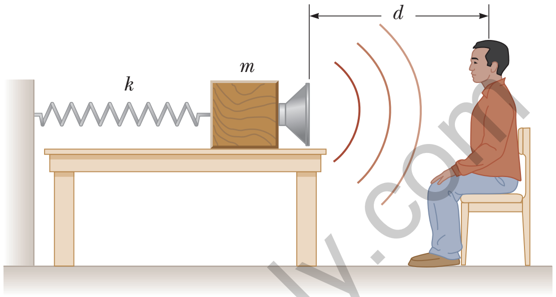


Figure P17.41 Problems 41 and 42.

42. **Review.** A block with a speaker bolted to it is connected to a spring having spring constant k and oscillates as shown in Figure P17.41. The total mass of the block and speaker is m, and the amplitude of this unit's motion is A. The speaker emits sound waves of frequency f. Determine (a) the highest and (b) the lowest frequencies heard by the person to the right of the speaker. (c) If the maximum sound level heard by the person is β when the speaker is at its closest distance d from him, what is the minimum sound level heard by the observer?

43. Expectant parents are thrilled to hear their unborn baby's heartbeat, revealed by an ultrasonic detector that produces beeps of audible sound in synchronization with the fetal heartbeat. Suppose the fetus's ventricular wall moves in simple harmonic motion with an amplitude of 1.80 mm and a frequency of 115 beats per minute. (a) Find the maximum linear speed of the heart wall. Suppose a source mounted on the detector in contact with the mother's abdomen produces sound at 2 000 000.0 Hz, which travels through tissue at 1.50 km/s. (b) Find the maximum change in frequency between the sound that arrives at the wall of the baby's heart and the sound emitted by the source. (c) Find the maximum change in frequency between the reflected sound received by the detector and that emitted by the source.

44. *Why is the following situation impossible?* At the Summer Olympics, an athlete runs at a constant speed down a straight track while a spectator near the edge of the track blows a note on a horn with a fixed frequency. When the athlete passes the horn, she hears the frequency of the horn fall by the musical interval called a minor third. That is, the frequency she hears drops to five-sixths its original value.

45. M Standing at a crosswalk, you hear a frequency of 560 Hz from the siren of an approaching ambulance. After the ambulance passes, the observed frequency of the siren is 480 Hz. Determine the ambulance's speed from these observations.

46. **Review.** A tuning fork vibrating at 512 Hz falls from rest and accelerates at 9.80 m/s^2. How far below the point of release is the tuning fork when waves of frequency 485 Hz reach the release point?

47. AMT M A supersonic jet traveling at Mach 3.00 at an altitude of h = 20 000 m is directly over a person at time t = 0 as shown in Figure P17.47. Assume the average speed of sound in air is 335 m/s over the path of the sound. (a) At what time will the person encounter the shock wave due to the sound emitted at t = 0? (b) Where will the plane be when this shock wave is heard?

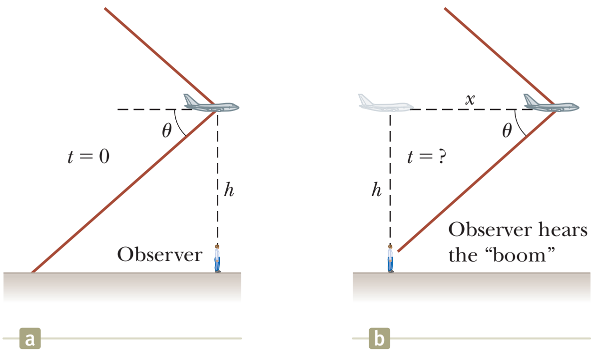


Figure P17.47

Additional Problems

48. A bat (Fig. P17.48) can detect very small objects, such as an insect whose length is approximately equal to one wavelength of the sound the bat makes. If a bat emits chirps at a frequency of 60.0 kHz and the speed of sound in air is 340 m/s, what is the smallest insect the bat can detect?

Hugh Lansdown/Shutterstock.com

Figure P17.48 Problems 48 and 63.

49. Some studies suggest that the upper frequency limit of hearing is determined by the diameter of the eardrum. The diameter of the eardrum is approximately equal to half the wavelength of the sound wave at this upper limit. If the relationship holds exactly, what is the diameter of the eardrum of a person capable of hearing 20 000 Hz? (Assume a body temperature of 37.0°C.)

50. The highest note written for a singer in a published score was F-sharp above high C, 1.480 kHz, for Zerbinetta in the original version of Richard Strauss's opera *Ariadne auf Naxos.* (a) Find the wavelength of this sound in air. (b) Suppose people in the fourth row of seats hear this note with level 81.0 dB. Find the displacement amplitude of the sound. (c) **What If?** In response to complaints, Strauss later transposed the note down to F above high C, 1.397 kHz. By what increment did the wavelength change?

51. Trucks carrying garbage to the town dump form a nearly steady procession on a country road, all traveling at 19.7 m/s in the same direction. Two trucks arrive at the dump every 3 min. A bicyclist is also traveling toward the dump, at 4.47 m/s. (a) With what frequency do the trucks pass the cyclist? (b) **What If?** A hill does not slow down the trucks, but makes the out-of-shape cyclist's speed drop to 1.56 m/s. How often do the trucks whiz past the cyclist now?

52. If a salesman claims a loudspeaker is rated at 150 W, he is referring to the maximum electrical power input to the speaker. Assume a loudspeaker with an input power of 150 W broadcasts sound equally in all directions and produces sound with a level of 103 dB at a distance of 1.60 m from its center. (a) Find its sound power output. (b) Find the efficiency of the speaker, that is, the fraction of input power that is converted into useful output power.

53. An interstate highway has been built through a neighborhood in a city. In the afternoon, the sound level in an apartment in the neighborhood is 80.0 dB as 100 cars pass outside the window every minute. Late at night, the traffic flow is only five cars per minute. What is the average late-night sound level?

54. A train whistle (f = 400 Hz) sounds higher or lower in frequency depending on whether it approaches or recedes. (a) Prove that the difference in frequency between the approaching and receding train whistle is

$$\Delta f = \frac{2u/v}{1 - u^2/v^2} f$$

where u is the speed of the train and v is the speed of sound. (b) Calculate this difference for a train moving at a speed of 130 km/h. Take the speed of sound in air to be 340 m/s.

55. An ultrasonic tape measure uses frequencies above 20 MHz to determine dimensions of structures such as buildings. It does so by emitting a pulse of ultrasound into air and then measuring the time interval for an echo to return from a reflecting surface whose distance away is to be measured. The distance is displayed as a digital readout. For a tape measure that emits a pulse of ultrasound with a frequency of 22.0 MHz, (a) what is the distance to an object from which the echo pulse returns after 24.0 ms when the air temperature is 26°C? (b) What should be the duration of the emitted pulse if it is to include ten cycles of the ultrasonic wave? (c) What is the spatial length of such a pulse?

56. The tensile stress in a thick copper bar is 99.5% of its elastic breaking point of 13.0 × 10^{10} N/m^2. If a 500-Hz sound wave is transmitted through the material, (a) what displacement amplitude will cause the bar to break? (b) What is the maximum speed of the elements of copper at this moment? (c) What is the sound intensity in the bar?

57. AMT **Review.** A 150-g glider moves at $v_1 = 2.30$ m/s on an air track toward an originally stationary 200-g glider as shown in Figure P17.57. The gliders undergo a completely inelastic collision and latch together over a time interval of 7.00 ms. A student suggests roughly half the decrease in mechanical energy of the two-glider system is transferred to the environment by sound. Is this suggestion reasonable? To evaluate the idea, find the implied sound level at a position 0.800 m from the gliders. If the student's idea is unreasonable, suggest a better idea.

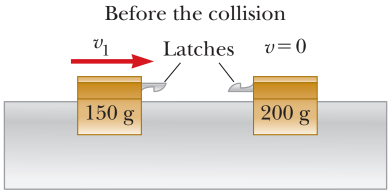


Figure P17.57

58. Consider the following wave function in SI units:

$$\Delta P(r, t) = \left(\frac{25.0}{r}\right) \sin\,(1.36r - 2\,030t)$$

Explain how this wave function can apply to a wave radiating from a small source, with r being the radial distance from the center of the source to any point outside the source. Give the most detailed description of the wave that you can. Include answers to such questions as the following and give representative values for any quantities that can be evaluated. (a) Does the wave move more toward the right or the left? (b) As it moves away from the source, what happens to its amplitude? (c) Its speed? (d) Its frequency? (e) Its wavelength? (f) Its power? (g) Its intensity?

59. **Review.** For a certain type of steel, stress is always proportional to strain with Young's modulus 20×10^{10} N/m^2. The steel has density 7.86×10^3 kg/m^3. It will fail by bending permanently if subjected to compressive stress greater than its yield strength $\sigma_y = 400$ MPa. A rod 80.0 cm long, made of this steel, is fired at 12.0 m/s straight at a very hard wall. (a) The speed of a one-dimensional compressional wave moving along the rod is given by $v = \sqrt{Y/\rho}$, where Y is Young's modulus for the rod and ρ is the density. Calculate this speed. (b) After the front end of the rod hits the wall and stops, the back end of the rod keeps moving as described by Newton's first law until it is stopped by excess pressure in a sound wave moving back through the rod. What time interval elapses before the back end of the rod receives the message that it should stop? (c) How far has the back end of the rod moved in this time interval? Find (d) the strain and (e) the stress in the rod. (f) If it is not to fail, what is the maximum impact speed a rod can have in terms of σ_y, Y, and ρ?

60. A large set of unoccupied football bleachers has solid seats and risers. You stand on the field in front of the bleachers and sharply clap two wooden boards together once. The sound pulse you produce has no definite frequency and no wavelength. The sound you hear reflected from the bleachers has an identifiable frequency and may remind you of a short toot on a trumpet, buzzer, or kazoo. (a) Explain what accounts for this sound. Compute order-of-magnitude estimates for (b) the frequency, (c) the wavelength, and (d) the duration of the sound on the basis of data you specify.

61. M To measure her speed, a skydiver carries a buzzer emitting a steady tone at 1 800 Hz. A friend on the ground at the landing site directly below listens to the amplified sound he receives. Assume the air is calm and the speed of sound is independent of altitude. While the skydiver is falling at terminal speed, her friend on the ground receives waves of frequency 2 150 Hz. (a) What is the skydiver's speed of descent? (b) **What If?** Suppose the skydiver can hear the sound of the buzzer reflected from the ground. What frequency does she receive?

62. Spherical waves of wavelength 45.0 cm propagate outward from a point source. (a) Explain how the intensity at a distance of 240 cm compares with the intensity at a distance of 60.0 cm. (b) Explain how the amplitude at a distance of 240 cm compares with the amplitude at a distance of 60.0 cm. (c) Explain how the phase of the wave at a distance of 240 cm compares with the phase at 60.0 cm at the same moment.

63. A bat (Fig. P17.48), moving at 5.00 m/s, is chasing a flying insect. If the bat emits a 40.0-kHz chirp and receives back an echo at 40.4 kHz, (a) what is the speed of the insect? (b) Will the bat be able to catch the insect? Explain.

64. Two ships are moving along a line due east (Fig. P17.64). The trailing vessel has a speed relative to a land-based observation point of $v_1 = 64.0$ km/h, and the leading ship has a speed of $v_2 = 45.0$ km/h relative to that point. The two ships are in a region of the ocean where the current is moving uniformly due west at $v_{\text{current}} = 10.0$ km/h. The trailing ship transmits a sonar signal at a frequency of 1 200.0 Hz through the water. What frequency is monitored by the leading ship?

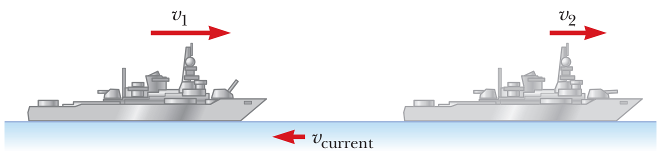


Figure P17.64

65. A police car is traveling east at 40.0 m/s along a straight road, overtaking a car ahead of it moving east at 30.0 m/s. The police car has a malfunctioning siren that is stuck at 1 000 Hz. (a) What would be the wavelength in air of the siren sound if the police car were at rest? (b) What is the wavelength in front of the police car? (c) What is it behind the police car? (d) What is the frequency heard by the driver being chased?

66. The speed of a one-dimensional compressional wave traveling along a thin copper rod is 3.56 km/s. The rod is given a sharp hammer blow at one end. A listener at the far end of the rod hears the sound twice, transmitted through the metal and through air, with a time interval Δt between the two pulses. (a) Which sound arrives first? (b) Find the length of the rod as a function of Δt. (c) Find the length of the rod if $\Delta t = 127$ ms. (d) Imagine that the copper rod is replaced by another material through which the speed of sound is v_r. What is the length of the rod in terms of t and v_r? (e) Would the answer to part (d) go to a well-defined limit as the speed of sound in the rod goes to infinity? Explain your answer.

67. A large meteoroid enters the Earth's atmosphere at a speed of 20.0 km/s and is not significantly slowed before entering the ocean. (a) What is the Mach angle of the shock wave from the meteoroid in the lower atmosphere? (b) If we assume the meteoroid survives the impact with the ocean surface, what is the (initial) Mach angle of the shock wave the meteoroid produces in the water?

68. Three metal rods are located relative to each other as shown in Figure P17.68, where $L_3 = L_1 + L_2$. The speed of sound in a rod is given by $v = \sqrt{Y/\rho}$, where Y is Young's modulus for the rod and ρ is the density. Values of density and Young's modulus for the three materials are $\rho_1 = 2.70 \times 10^3$ kg/m^3, $Y_1 = 7.00 \times 10^{10}$ N/m^2, $\rho_2 = 11.3 \times 10^3$ kg/m^3, $Y_2 = 1.60 \times 10^{10}$ N/m^2, $\rho_3 = 8.80 \times 10^3$ kg/m^3, $Y_3 = 11.0 \times 10^{10}$ N/m^2. If $L_3 = 1.50$ m, what must the ratio L_1/L_2 be if a sound wave is to travel the length of rods 1 and 2 in the same time interval required for the wave to travel the length of rod 3?

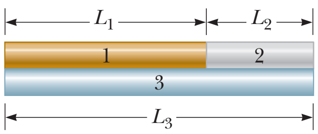


Figure P17.68

69. M With particular experimental methods, it is possible to produce and observe in a long, thin rod both a transverse wave whose speed depends primarily on tension in the rod and a longitudinal wave whose speed is determined by Young's modulus and the density of the material according to the expression $v = \sqrt{Y/\rho}$. The transverse wave can be modeled as a wave in a stretched string. A particular metal rod is 150 cm long and has a radius of 0.200 cm and a mass of 50.9 g. Young's modulus for the material is 6.80×10^{10} N/m^2. What must the tension in the rod be if the ratio of the speed of longitudinal waves to the speed of transverse waves is 8.00?

70. A siren mounted on the roof of a firehouse emits sound at a frequency of 900 Hz. A steady wind is blowing with a speed of 15.0 m/s. Taking the speed of sound in calm air to be 343 m/s, find the wavelength of the sound (a) upwind of the siren and (b) downwind of the siren. Firefighters are approaching the siren from various directions at 15.0 m/s. What frequency does a firefighter hear (c) if she is approaching from an upwind position so that she is moving in the direction in which the wind is blowing and (d) if she is approaching from a downwind position and moving against the wind?

Challenge Problems

71. The Doppler equation presented in the text is valid when the motion between the observer and the source occurs on a straight line so that the source and observer are moving either directly toward or directly away from each other. If this restriction is relaxed, one must use the more general Doppler equation

$$f' = \left(\frac{v + v_O \cos\theta_O}{v - v_S \cos\theta_S}\right) f$$

where θ_O and θ_S are defined in Figure P17.71a. Use the preceding equation to solve the following problem. A train moves at a constant speed of $v = 25.0$ m/s toward the intersection shown in Figure P17.71b. A car is stopped near the crossing, 30.0 m from the tracks. The train's horn emits a frequency of 500 Hz when the train is 40.0 m from the intersection. (a) What is the frequency heard by the passengers in the car? (b) If the train emits this sound continuously and the car is stationary at this position long before the train arrives until long after it leaves, what range of frequencies do passengers in the car hear? (c) Suppose the car is foolishly trying to beat the train to the intersection and is traveling at 40.0 m/s toward the tracks. When the car is 30.0 m from the tracks and the train is 40.0 m from the intersection, what is the frequency heard by the passengers in the car now?

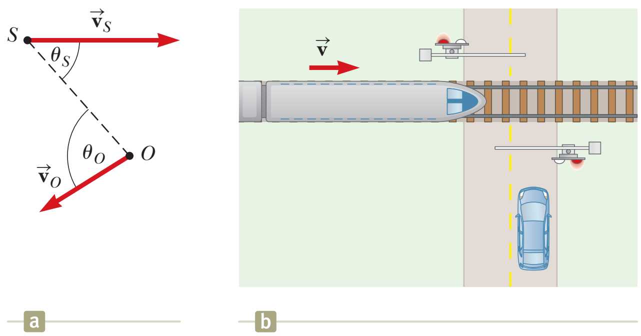


Figure P17.71

72. In Section 17.2, we derived the speed of sound in a gas using the impulse–momentum theorem applied to the cylinder of gas in Figure 17.5. Let us find the speed of sound in a gas using a different approach based on the element of gas in Figure 17.3. Proceed as follows. (a) Draw a force diagram for this element showing the forces exerted on the left and right surfaces due to the pressure of the gas on either side of the element. (b) By applying Newton's second law to the element, show that

$$-\frac{\partial(\Delta P)}{\partial x} A\,\Delta x = \rho A\,\Delta x \frac{\partial^2 s}{\partial t^2}$$

(c) By substituting $\Delta P = -(B\, \partial s/\partial x)$ (Eq. 17.3), derive the following wave equation for sound:

$$\frac{B}{\rho}\frac{\partial^2 s}{\partial x^2} = \frac{\partial^2 s}{\partial t^2}$$

(d) To a mathematical physicist, this equation demonstrates the existence of sound waves and determines their speed. As a physics student, you must take another step or two. Substitute into the wave equation the trial solution $s(x, t) = s_{max} \cos (kx - \omega t)$. Show that this function satisfies the wave equation, provided $\omega/k = v = \sqrt{B/\rho}$.

73. Equation 17.13 states that at distance r away from a point source with power $(Power)_{avg}$, the wave intensity is

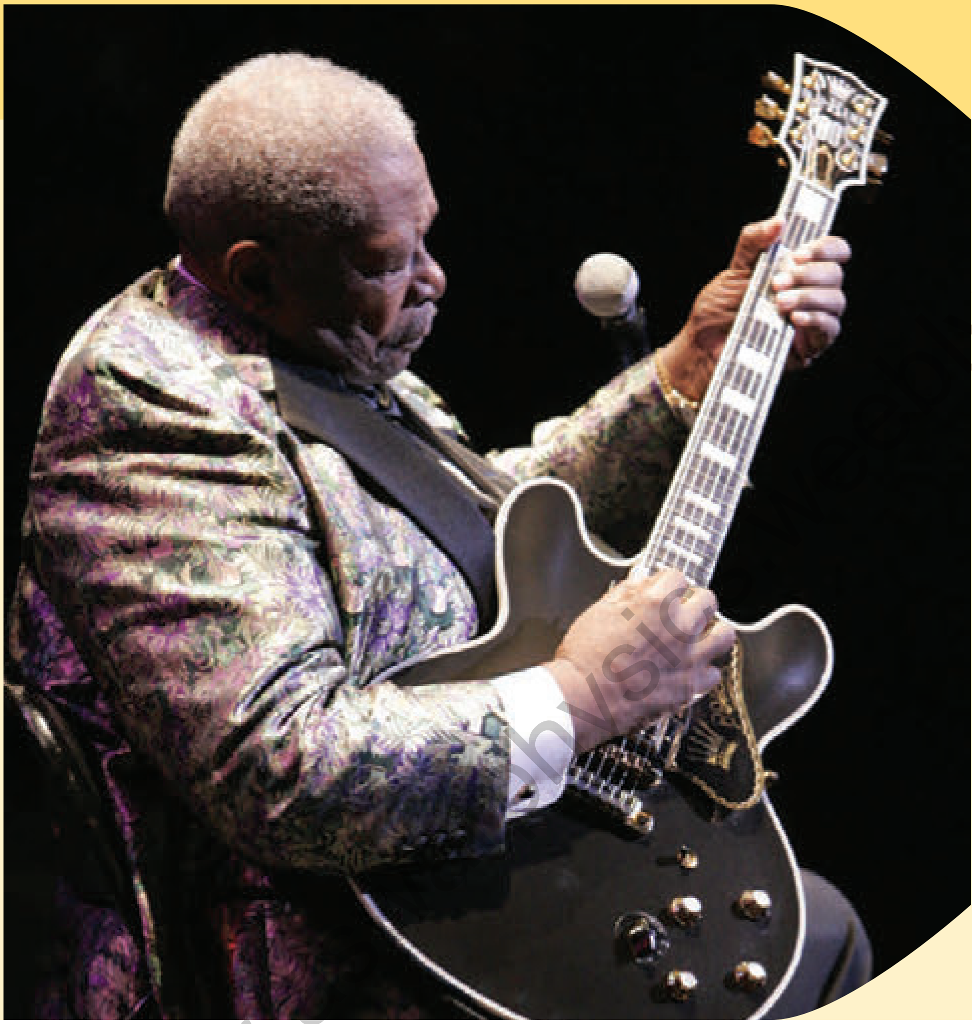
$$I = \frac{(Power)_{avg}}{4\pi r^2}$$

Study Figure 17.10 and prove that at distance r straight in front of a point source with power $(Power)_{avg}$ moving with constant speed v_S the wave intensity is

$$I = \frac{(Power)_{avg}}{4\pi r^2}\left(\frac{v - v_S}{v}\right)$$

Superposition and Standing Waves

CHAPTER 18



Blues master B. B. King takes advantage of standing waves on strings. He changes to higher notes on the guitar by pushing the strings against the frets on the fingerboard, shortening the lengths of the portions of the strings that vibrate. *(AP Photo/Danny Moloshok)*

The wave model was introduced in the previous two chapters. We have seen that waves are very different from particles. A particle is of zero size, whereas a wave has a characteristic size, its wavelength. Another important difference between waves and particles is that we can explore the possibility of two or more waves combining at one point in the same medium. Particles can be combined to form extended objects, but the particles must be at *different* locations. In contrast, two waves can both be present at the same location. The ramifications of this possibility are explored in this chapter.

When waves are combined in systems with boundary conditions, only certain allowed frequencies can exist and we say the frequencies are *quantized.* Quantization is a notion that is at the heart of quantum mechanics, a subject introduced formally in Chapter 40. There we show that analysis of waves under boundary conditions explains many of the quantum phenomena. In this chapter, we use quantization to understand the behavior of the wide array of musical instruments that are based on strings and air columns.

We also consider the combination of waves having different frequencies. When two sound waves having nearly the same frequency interfere, we hear variations in the loudness called *beats.* Finally, we discuss how any nonsinusoidal periodic wave can be described as a sum of sine and cosine functions.

18.1 Analysis Model: Waves in Interference

Many interesting wave phenomena in nature cannot be described by a single traveling wave. Instead, one must analyze these phenomena in terms of a combination of traveling waves. As noted in the introduction, waves have a remarkable difference from particles in that waves can be combined at the *same* location in space. To analyze such wave combinations, we make use of the **superposition principle:**

Superposition principle ▶

> If two or more traveling waves are moving through a medium, the resultant value of the wave function at any point is the algebraic sum of the values of the wave functions of the individual waves.

Waves that obey this principle are called *linear waves.* (See Section 16.6.) In the case of mechanical waves, linear waves are generally characterized by having amplitudes much smaller than their wavelengths. Waves that violate the superposition principle are called *nonlinear waves* and are often characterized by large amplitudes. In this book, we deal only with linear waves.

One consequence of the superposition principle is that two traveling waves can pass through each other without being destroyed or even altered. For instance, when two pebbles are thrown into a pond and hit the surface at different locations, the expanding circular surface waves from the two locations simply pass through each other with no permanent effect. The resulting complex pattern can be viewed as two independent sets of expanding circles.

Pitfall Prevention 18.1

Do Waves Actually *Interfere?* In popular usage, the term *interfere* implies that an agent affects a situation in some way so as to preclude something from happening. For example, in American football, *pass interference* means that a defending player has affected the receiver so that the receiver is unable to catch the ball. This usage is very different from its use in physics, where waves pass through each other and interfere, but do not affect each other in any way. In physics, interference is similar to the notion of *combination* as described in this chapter.

Figure 18.1 is a pictorial representation of the superposition of two pulses. The wave function for the pulse moving to the right is y_1, and the wave function for the pulse moving to the left is y_2. The pulses have the same speed but different shapes, and the displacement of the elements of the medium is in the positive y direction for both pulses. When the waves overlap (Fig. 18.1b), the wave function for the resulting complex wave is given by $y_1 + y_2$. When the crests of the pulses coincide (Fig. 18.1c), the resulting wave given by $y_1 + y_2$ has a larger amplitude than that of the individual pulses. The two pulses finally separate and continue moving in their original directions (Fig. 18.1d). Notice that the pulse shapes remain unchanged after the interaction, as if the two pulses had never met!

The combination of separate waves in the same region of space to produce a resultant wave is called **interference.** For the two pulses shown in Figure 18.1, the displacement of the elements of the medium is in the positive y direction for both pulses, and the resultant pulse (created when the individual pulses overlap) exhibits an amplitude greater than that of either individual pulse. Because the displacements caused by the two pulses are in the same direction, we refer to their superposition as **constructive interference.**

Constructive interference ▶

Now consider two pulses traveling in opposite directions on a taut string where one pulse is inverted relative to the other as illustrated in Figure 18.2. When these pulses begin to overlap, the resultant pulse is given by $y_1 + y_2$, but the values of the function y_2 are negative. Again, the two pulses pass through each other; because the displacements caused by the two pulses are in opposite directions, however, we refer to their superposition as **destructive interference.**

Destructive interference ▶

The superposition principle is the centerpiece of the analysis model called **waves in interference.** In many situations, both in acoustics and optics, waves combine according to this principle and exhibit interesting phenomena with practical applications.

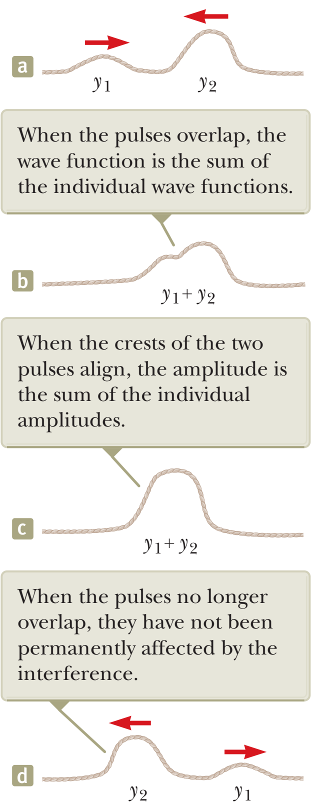


Figure 18.1 Constructive interference. Two positive pulses travel on a stretched string in opposite directions and overlap.

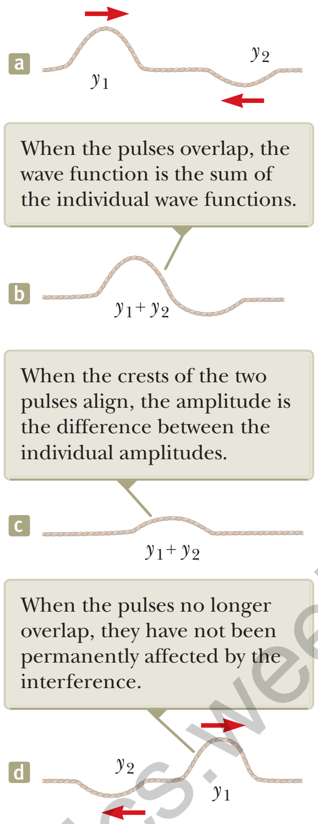


Figure 18.2 Destructive interference. Two pulses, one positive and one negative, travel on a stretched string in opposite directions and overlap.

Quick Quiz 18.1 Two pulses move in opposite directions on a string and are identical in shape except that one has positive displacements of the elements of the string and the other has negative displacements. At the moment the two pulses completely overlap on the string, what happens? **(a)** The energy associated with the pulses has disappeared. **(b)** The string is not moving. **(c)** The string forms a straight line. **(d)** The pulses have vanished and will not reappear.

Superposition of Sinusoidal Waves

Let us now apply the principle of superposition to two sinusoidal waves traveling in the same direction in a linear medium. If the two waves are traveling to the right and have the same frequency, wavelength, and amplitude but differ in phase, we can express their individual wave functions as

$$y_1 = A \sin (kx - \omega t) \qquad y_2 = A \sin (kx - \omega t + \phi)$$

where, as usual, $k = 2\pi/\lambda$, $\omega = 2\pi f$, and ϕ is the phase constant as discussed in Section 16.2. Hence, the resultant wave function y is

$$y = y_1 + y_2 = A\,[\sin (kx - \omega t) + \sin (kx - \omega t + \phi)]$$

To simplify this expression, we use the trigonometric identity

$$\sin a + \sin b = 2 \cos \left(\frac{a - b}{2}\right) \sin \left(\frac{a + b}{2}\right)$$

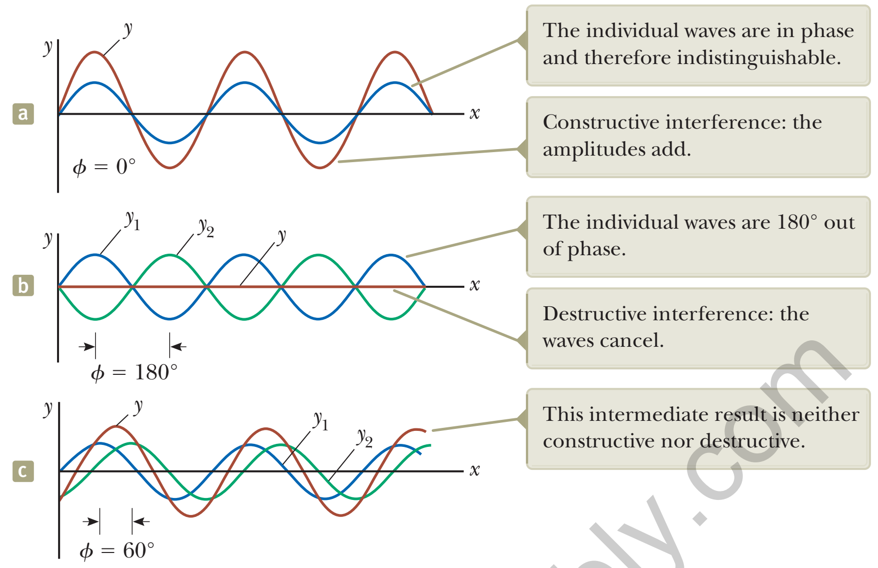


Figure 18.3 The superposition of two identical waves y_1 and y_2 (blue and green, respectively) to yield a resultant wave (red-brown).

Letting $a = kx - \omega t$ and $b = kx - \omega t + \phi$, we find that the resultant wave function y reduces to

Resultant of two traveling sinusoidal waves

$$y = 2A\cos\left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right)\sin\left(kx - \omega t + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)$$

This result has several important features. The resultant wave function y also is sinusoidal and has the same frequency and wavelength as the individual waves because the sine function incorporates the same values of k and ω that appear in the original wave functions. The amplitude of the resultant wave is $2A\cos(\phi/2)$, and its phase constant is $\phi/2$. If the phase constant ϕ of the original wave equals 0, then $\cos(\phi/2) = \cos 0 = 1$ and the amplitude of the resultant wave is $2A$, twice the amplitude of either individual wave. In this case, the crests of the two waves are at the same locations in space and the waves are said to be everywhere *in phase* and therefore interfere constructively. The individual waves y_1 and y_2 combine to form the red-brown curve y of amplitude $2A$ shown in Figure 18.3a. Because the individual waves are in phase, they are indistinguishable in Figure 18.3a, where they appear as a single blue curve. In general, constructive interference occurs when $\cos(\phi/2) = \pm 1$. That is true, for example, when $\phi = 0, 2\pi, 4\pi, \ldots$ rad, that is, when ϕ is an *even* multiple of π.

When ϕ is equal to π rad or to any *odd* multiple of π, then $\cos(\phi/2) = \cos(\pi/2) = 0$ and the crests of one wave occur at the same positions as the troughs of the second wave (Fig. 18.3b). Therefore, as a consequence of destructive interference, the resultant wave has *zero* amplitude everywhere as shown by the straight red-brown line in Figure 18.3b. Finally, when the phase constant has an arbitrary value other than 0 or an integer multiple of π rad (Fig. 18.3c), the resultant wave has an amplitude whose value is somewhere between 0 and $2A$.

In the more general case in which the waves have the same wavelength but different amplitudes, the results are similar with the following exceptions. In the in-phase case, the amplitude of the resultant wave is not twice that of a single wave, but rather is the sum of the amplitudes of the two waves. When the waves are π rad out of phase, they do not completely cancel as in Figure 18.3b. The result is a wave whose amplitude is the difference in the amplitudes of the individual waves.

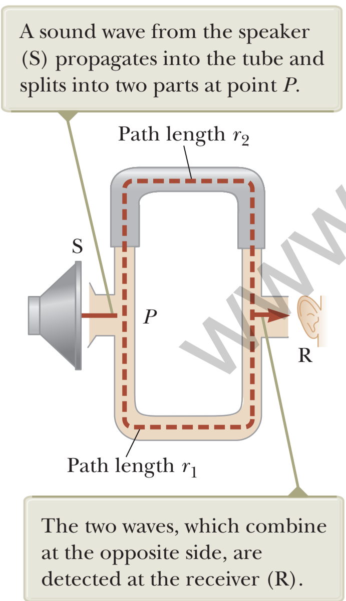


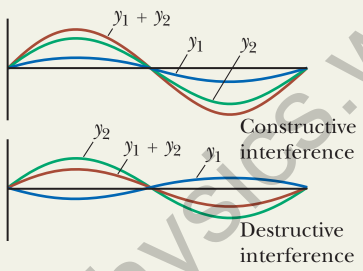
Figure 18.4 An acoustical system for demonstrating interference of sound waves. The upper path length r_2 can be varied by sliding the upper section.

Interference of Sound Waves

One simple device for demonstrating interference of sound waves is illustrated in Figure 18.4. Sound from a loudspeaker S is sent into a tube at point P, where there is a T-shaped junction. Half the sound energy travels in one direction, and half travels in the opposite direction. Therefore, the sound waves that reach the receiver R can travel along either of the two paths. The distance along any path from speaker to receiver is called the **path length** r. The lower path length r_1 is fixed, but the upper path length r_2 can be varied by sliding the U-shaped tube, which is similar to that on a slide trombone. When the difference in the path lengths $\Delta r = |r_2 - r_1|$ is either zero or some integer multiple of the wavelength λ (that is, $\Delta r = n\lambda$, where $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$), the two waves reaching the receiver at any instant are in phase and interfere constructively as shown in Figure 18.3a. For this case, a maximum in the sound intensity is detected at the receiver. If the path length r_2 is adjusted such that the path difference $\Delta r = \lambda/2, 3\lambda/2, \ldots, n\lambda/2$ (for n odd), the two waves are exactly π rad, or 180°, out of phase at the receiver and hence cancel each other. In this case of destructive interference, no sound is detected at the receiver. This simple experiment demonstrates that a phase difference may arise between two waves generated by the same source when they travel along paths of unequal lengths. This important phenomenon will be indispensable in our investigation of the interference of light waves in Chapter 37.

Analysis Model Waves in Interference

Imagine two waves traveling in the same location through a medium. The displacement of elements of the medium is affected by both waves. According to the **principle of superposition**, the displacement is the sum of the individual displacements that would be caused by each wave. When the waves are in phase, **constructive interference** occurs and the resultant displacement is larger than the individual displacements. **Destructive interference** occurs when the waves are out of phase.



Examples:

- a piano tuner listens to a piano string and a tuning fork vibrating together and notices beats (Section 18.7)
- light waves from two coherent sources combine to form an interference pattern on a screen (Chapter 37)
- a thin film of oil on top of water shows swirls of color (Chapter 37)
- x-rays passing through a crystalline solid combine to form a Laue pattern (Chapter 38)

Example 18.1 Two Speakers Driven by the Same Source AM

Two identical loudspeakers placed 3.00 m apart are driven by the same oscillator (Fig. 18.5). A listener is originally at point O, located 8.00 m from the center of the line connecting the two speakers. The listener then moves to point P, which is a perpendicular distance 0.350 m from O, and she experiences the *first minimum* in sound intensity. What is the frequency of the oscillator?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize In Figure 18.4, a sound wave enters a tube and is then *acoustically* split into two different paths before recombining at the other end. In this example, a signal representing the sound is *electrically* split and sent to two different loudspeakers. After leaving the speakers, the sound waves recombine at the position of the listener. Despite the difference in how the splitting occurs, the path difference discussion related to Figure 18.4 can be applied here.

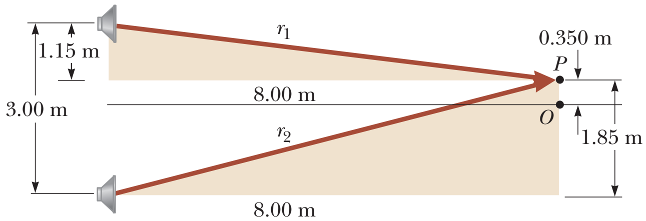


Figure 18.5 (Example 18.1) Two identical loudspeakers emit sound waves to a listener at P.

Categorize Because the sound waves from two separate sources combine, we apply the *waves in interference* analysis model.

continued

18.1 continued

Analyze Figure 18.5 shows the physical arrangement of the speakers, along with two shaded right triangles that can be drawn on the basis of the lengths described in the problem. The first minimum occurs when the two waves reaching the listener at point *P* are 180° out of phase, in other words, when their path difference Δr equals $\lambda/2$.

From the shaded triangles, find the path lengths from the speakers to the listener:

$$r_1 = \sqrt{(8.00 \text{ m})^2 + (1.15 \text{ m})^2} = 8.08 \text{ m}$$

$$r_2 = \sqrt{(8.00 \text{ m})^2 + (1.85 \text{ m})^2} = 8.21 \text{ m}$$

Hence, the path difference is $r_2 - r_1 = 0.13$ m. Because this path difference must equal $\lambda/2$ for the first minimum, $\lambda = 0.26$ m.

To obtain the oscillator frequency, use Equation 16.12, $v = \lambda f$, where v is the speed of sound in air, 343 m/s:

$$f = \frac{v}{\lambda} = \frac{343 \text{ m/s}}{0.26 \text{ m}} = 1.3 \text{ kHz}$$

Finalize This example enables us to understand why the speaker wires in a stereo system should be connected properly. When connected the wrong way—that is, when the positive (or red) wire is connected to the negative (or black) terminal on one of the speakers and the other is correctly wired—the speakers are said to be "out of phase," with one speaker moving outward while the other moves inward. As a consequence, the sound wave coming from one speaker destructively interferes with the wave coming from the other at point *O* in Figure 18.5. A rarefaction region due to one speaker is superposed on a compression region from the other speaker. Although the two sounds probably do not completely cancel each other (because the left and right stereo signals are usually not identical), a substantial loss of sound quality occurs at point *O*.

WHAT IF? What if the speakers were connected out of phase? What happens at point *P* in Figure 18.5?

Answer In this situation, the path difference of $\lambda/2$ combines with a phase difference of $\lambda/2$ due to the incorrect wiring to give a full phase difference of λ. As a result, the waves are in phase and there is a *maximum* intensity at point *P*.

18.2 Standing Waves

Figure 18.6 Two identical loudspeakers emit sound waves toward each other. When they overlap, identical waves traveling in opposite directions will combine to form standing waves.

The sound waves from the pair of loudspeakers in Example 18.1 leave the speakers in the forward direction, and we considered interference at a point in front of the speakers. Suppose we turn the speakers so that they face each other and then have them emit sound of the same frequency and amplitude. In this situation, two identical waves travel in opposite directions in the same medium as in Figure 18.6. These waves combine in accordance with the waves in interference model.

We can analyze such a situation by considering wave functions for two transverse sinusoidal waves having the same amplitude, frequency, and wavelength but traveling in opposite directions in the same medium:

$$y_1 = A \sin (kx - \omega t) \qquad y_2 = A \sin (kx + \omega t)$$

where y_1 represents a wave traveling in the positive x direction and y_2 represents one traveling in the negative x direction. Adding these two functions gives the resultant wave function y:

$$y = y_1 + y_2 = A \sin (kx - \omega t) + A \sin (kx + \omega t)$$

When we use the trigonometric identity $\sin (a \pm b) = \sin a \cos b \pm \cos a \sin b$, this expression reduces to

$$y = (2A \sin kx) \cos \omega t \tag{18.1}$$

Equation 18.1 represents the wave function of a **standing wave.** A standing wave such as the one on a string shown in Figure 18.7 is an oscillation pattern *with a stationary outline* that results from the superposition of two identical waves traveling in opposite directions.

The amplitude of the vertical oscillation of any element of the string depends on the horizontal position of the element. Each element vibrates within the confines of the envelope function $2A \sin kx$.

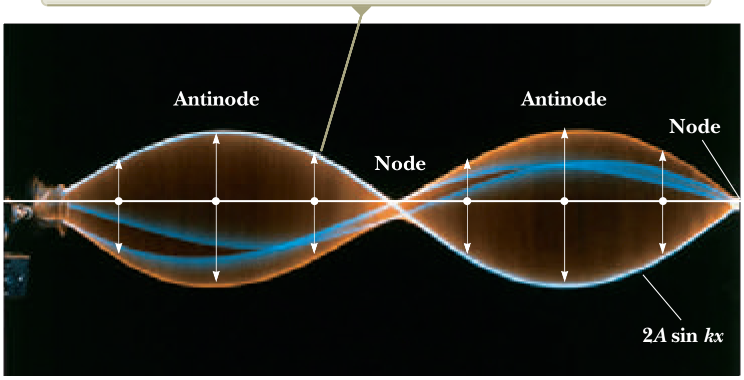


Figure 18.7 Multiflash photograph of a standing wave on a string. The time behavior of the vertical displacement from equilibrium of an individual element of the string is given by $\cos \omega t$. That is, each element vibrates at an angular frequency ω.

Notice that Equation 18.1 does not contain a function of $kx - \omega t$. Therefore, it is not an expression for a single traveling wave. When you observe a standing wave, there is no sense of motion in the direction of propagation of either original wave. Comparing Equation 18.1 with Equation 15.6, we see that it describes a special kind of simple harmonic motion. Every element of the medium oscillates in simple harmonic motion with the same angular frequency ω (according to the $\cos \omega t$ factor in the equation). The amplitude of the simple harmonic motion of a given element (given by the factor $2A \sin kx$, the coefficient of the cosine function) depends on the location x of the element in the medium, however.

If you can find a noncordless telephone with a coiled cord connecting the handset to the base unit, you can see the difference between a standing wave and a traveling wave. Stretch the coiled cord out and flick it with a finger. You will see a pulse traveling along the cord. Now shake the handset up and down and adjust your shaking frequency until every coil on the cord is moving up at the same time and then down. That is a standing wave, formed from the combination of waves moving away from your hand and reflected from the base unit toward your hand. Notice that there is no sense of traveling along the cord like there was for the pulse. You only see up-and-down motion of the elements of the cord.

Equation 18.1 shows that the amplitude of the simple harmonic motion of an element of the medium has a minimum value of zero when x satisfies the condition $\sin kx = 0$, that is, when

$$kx = 0, \pi, 2\pi, 3\pi, \ldots$$

Because $k = 2\pi/\lambda$, these values for kx give

$$x = 0, \frac{\lambda}{2}, \lambda, \frac{3\lambda}{2}, \ldots = \frac{n\lambda}{2} \quad n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots \quad \textbf{(18.2)}$$

◀ Positions of nodes

These points of zero amplitude are called **nodes.**

The element of the medium with the *greatest* possible displacement from equilibrium has an amplitude of $2A$, which we define as the amplitude of the standing wave. The positions in the medium at which this maximum displacement occurs are called **antinodes.** The antinodes are located at positions for which the coordinate x satisfies the condition $\sin kx = \pm 1$, that is, when

$$kx = \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}, \frac{5\pi}{2}, \ldots$$

Therefore, the positions of the antinodes are given by

$$x = \frac{\lambda}{4}, \frac{3\lambda}{4}, \frac{5\lambda}{4}, \ldots = \frac{n\lambda}{4} \quad n = 1, 3, 5, \ldots \quad \textbf{(18.3)}$$

◀ Positions of antinodes

Pitfall Prevention 18.2

Three Types of Amplitude We need to distinguish carefully here between the **amplitude of the individual waves,** which is A, and the **amplitude of the simple harmonic motion of the elements of the medium,** which is $2A \sin kx$. A given element in a standing wave vibrates within the constraints of the *envelope* function $2A \sin kx$, where x is that element's position in the medium. Such vibration is in contrast to traveling sinusoidal waves, in which all elements oscillate with the same amplitude and the same frequency and the amplitude A of the wave is the same as the amplitude A of the simple harmonic motion of the elements. Furthermore, we can identify the **amplitude of the standing wave** as $2A$.

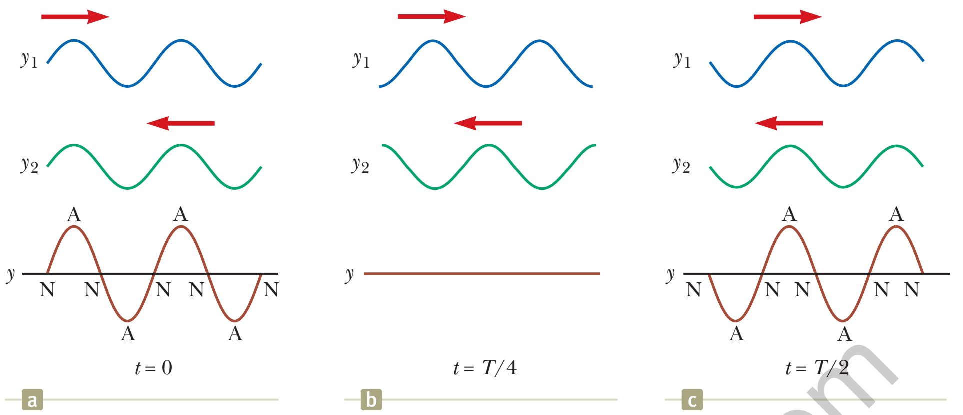


Figure 18.8 Standing-wave patterns produced at various times by two waves of equal amplitude traveling in opposite directions. For the resultant wave y, the nodes (N) are points of zero displacement and the antinodes (A) are points of maximum displacement.

Two nodes and two antinodes are labeled in the standing wave in Figure 18.7. The light blue curve labeled $2A \sin kx$ in Figure 18.7 represents one wavelength of the traveling waves that combine to form the standing wave. Figure 18.7 and Equations 18.2 and 18.3 provide the following important features of the locations of nodes and antinodes:

The distance between adjacent antinodes is equal to $\lambda/2$.
The distance between adjacent nodes is equal to $\lambda/2$.
The distance between a node and an adjacent antinode is $\lambda/4$.

Wave patterns of the elements of the medium produced at various times by two transverse traveling waves moving in opposite directions are shown in Figure 18.8. The blue and green curves are the wave patterns for the individual traveling waves, and the red-brown curves are the wave patterns for the resultant standing wave. At $t = 0$ (Fig. 18.8a), the two traveling waves are in phase, giving a wave pattern in which each element of the medium is at rest and experiencing its maximum displacement from equilibrium. One-quarter of a period later, at $t = T/4$ (Fig. 18.8b), the traveling waves have moved one-fourth of a wavelength (one to the right and the other to the left). At this time, the traveling waves are out of phase, and each element of the medium is passing through the equilibrium position in its simple harmonic motion. The result is zero displacement for elements at all values of x; that is, the wave pattern is a straight line. At $t = T/2$ (Fig. 18.8c), the traveling waves are again in phase, producing a wave pattern that is inverted relative to the $t = 0$ pattern. In the standing wave, the elements of the medium alternate in time between the extremes shown in Figures 18.8a and 18.8c.

Quick Quiz 18.2 Consider the waves in Figure 18.8 to be waves on a stretched string. Define the velocity of elements of the string as positive if they are moving upward in the figure. **(i)** At the moment the string has the shape shown by the red-brown curve in Figure 18.8a, what is the instantaneous velocity of elements along the string? (a) zero for all elements (b) positive for all elements (c) negative for all elements (d) varies with the position of the element **(ii)** From the same choices, at the moment the string has the shape shown by the red-brown curve in Figure 18.8b, what is the instantaneous velocity of elements along the string?

Example 18.2 Formation of a Standing Wave

Two waves traveling in opposite directions produce a standing wave. The individual wave functions are

$$y_1 = 4.0 \sin (3.0x - 2.0t)$$

$$y_2 = 4.0 \sin (3.0x + 2.0t)$$

where x and y are measured in centimeters and t is in seconds.

(A) Find the amplitude of the simple harmonic motion of the element of the medium located at $x = 2.3$ cm.

▶ 18.2 continued

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The waves described by the given equations are identical except for their directions of travel, so they indeed combine to form a standing wave as discussed in this section. We can represent the waves graphically by the blue and green curves in Figure 18.8.

Categorize We will substitute values into equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

From the equations for the waves, we see that $A = 4.0$ cm, $k = 3.0$ rad/cm, and $\omega = 2.0$ rad/s. Use Equation 18.1 to write an expression for the standing wave:

$$y = (2A \sin kx) \cos \omega t = 8.0 \sin 3.0x \cos 2.0t$$

Find the amplitude of the simple harmonic motion of the element at the position $x = 2.3$ cm by evaluating the sine function at this position:

$$y_{\max} = (8.0 \text{ cm}) \sin 3.0x \big|_{x=2.3}$$
$$= (8.0 \text{ cm}) \sin (6.9 \text{ rad}) = \boxed{4.6 \text{ cm}}$$

(B) Find the positions of the nodes and antinodes if one end of the string is at $x = 0$.

SOLUTION

Find the wavelength of the traveling waves:

$$k = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} = 3.0 \text{ rad/cm} \rightarrow \lambda = \frac{2\pi}{3.0} \text{ cm}$$

Use Equation 18.2 to find the locations of the nodes:

$$x = n\frac{\lambda}{2} = \boxed{n\left(\frac{\pi}{3.0}\right) \text{cm} \quad n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots}$$

Use Equation 18.3 to find the locations of the antinodes:

$$x = n\frac{\lambda}{4} = \boxed{n\left(\frac{\pi}{6.0}\right) \text{cm} \quad n = 1, 3, 5, 7, \ldots}$$

18.3 Analysis Model: Waves Under Boundary Conditions

Consider a string of length L fixed at both ends as shown in Figure 18.9. We will use this system as a model for a guitar string or piano string. Waves can travel in both directions on the string. Therefore, standing waves can be set up in the string by a continuous superposition of waves incident on and reflected from the ends. Notice that there is a *boundary condition* for the waves on the string: because the ends of the string are fixed, they must necessarily have zero displacement and are therefore nodes by definition. The condition that both ends of the string must be nodes fixes the wavelength of the standing wave on the string according to Equation 18.2, which, in turn, determines the frequency of the wave. The boundary condition results in the string having a number of discrete natural patterns of oscillation, called **normal modes,** each of which has a characteristic frequency that is easily calculated. This situation in which only certain frequencies of oscillation are allowed is called **quantization.** Quantization is a common occurrence when waves are subject to boundary conditions and is a central feature in our discussions of quantum physics in the extended version of this text. Notice in Figure 18.8 that there are no boundary conditions, so standing waves of *any* frequency can be established; there is no quantization without boundary conditions. Because boundary conditions occur so often for waves, we identify an analysis model called **waves under boundary conditions** for the discussion that follows.

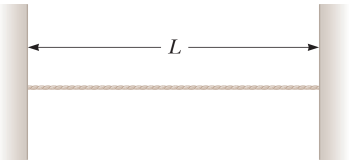


Figure 18.9 A string of length L fixed at both ends.

The normal modes of oscillation for the string in Figure 18.9 can be described by imposing the boundary conditions that the ends be nodes and that the nodes be separated by one-half of a wavelength with antinodes halfway between the nodes. The first normal mode that is consistent with these requirements, shown in Figure 18.10a (page 542), has nodes at its ends and one antinode in the middle. This normal

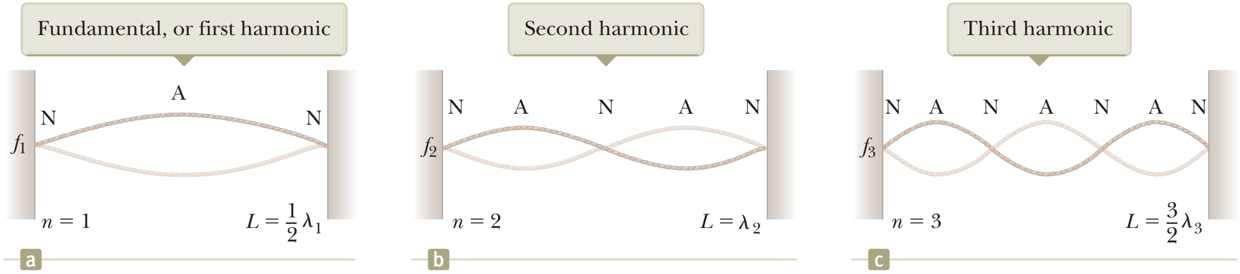


Figure 18.10 The normal modes of vibration of the string in Figure 18.9 form a harmonic series. The string vibrates between the extremes shown.

mode is the longest-wavelength mode that is consistent with our boundary conditions. The first normal mode occurs when the wavelength λ_1 is equal to twice the length of the string, or $\lambda_1 = 2L$. The section of a standing wave from one node to the next node is called a *loop*. In the first normal mode, the string is vibrating in one loop. In the second normal mode (see Fig. 18.10b), the string vibrates in two loops. When the left half of the string is moving upward, the right half is moving downward. In this case, the wavelength λ_2 is equal to the length of the string, as expressed by $\lambda_2 = L$. The third normal mode (see Fig. 18.10c) corresponds to the case in which $\lambda_3 = 2L/3$, and the string vibrates in three loops. In general, the wavelengths of the various normal modes for a string of length L fixed at both ends are

Wavelengths of normal modes ▶

$$\lambda_n = \frac{2L}{n} \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{18.4}$$

where the index n refers to the nth normal mode of oscillation. These modes are *possible*. The *actual* modes that are excited on a string are discussed shortly.

The natural frequencies associated with the modes of oscillation are obtained from the relationship $f = v/\lambda$, where the wave speed v is the same for all frequencies. Using Equation 18.4, we find that the natural frequencies f_n of the normal modes are

Natural frequencies of normal modes as functions of wave speed and length of string ▶

$$f_n = \frac{v}{\lambda_n} = n\frac{v}{2L} \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{18.5}$$

These natural frequencies are also called the *quantized frequencies* associated with the vibrating string fixed at both ends.

Because $v = \sqrt{T/\mu}$ (see Eq. 16.18) for waves on a string, where T is the tension in the string and μ is its linear mass density, we can also express the natural frequencies of a taut string as

Natural frequencies of normal modes as functions of string tension and linear mass density ▶

$$f_n = \frac{n}{2L}\sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{18.6}$$

The lowest frequency f_1, which corresponds to $n = 1$, is called either the **fundamental** or the **fundamental frequency** and is given by

Fundamental frequency of a taut string ▶

$$f_1 = \frac{1}{2L}\sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} \tag{18.7}$$

The frequencies of the remaining normal modes are integer multiples of the fundamental frequency (Eq. 18.5). Frequencies of normal modes that exhibit such an integer- multiple relationship form a **harmonic series,** and the normal modes are called **harmonics.** The fundamental frequency f_1 is the frequency of the first harmonic, the frequency $f_2 = 2f_1$ is that of the second harmonic, and the frequency $f_n = nf_1$ is that of the nth harmonic. Other oscillating systems, such as a drumhead, exhibit normal modes, but the frequencies are not related as integer multiples of a fundamental (see Section 18.6). Therefore, we do not use the term *harmonic* in association with those types of systems.

Let us examine further how the various harmonics are created in a string. To excite only a single harmonic, the string would have to be distorted into a shape that corresponds to that of the desired harmonic. After being released, the string would vibrate at the frequency of that harmonic. This maneuver is difficult to perform, however, and is not how a string of a musical instrument is excited. If the string is distorted into a general, nonsinusoidal shape, the resulting vibration includes a combination of various harmonics. Such a distortion occurs in musical instruments when the string is plucked (as in a guitar), bowed (as in a cello), or struck (as in a piano). When the string is distorted into a nonsinusoidal shape, only waves that satisfy the boundary conditions can persist on the string. These waves are the harmonics.

The frequency of a string that defines the musical note that it plays is that of the fundamental, even though other harmonics are present. The string's frequency can be varied by changing the string's tension or its length. For example, the tension in guitar and violin strings is varied by a screw adjustment mechanism or by tun ing pegs located on the neck of the instrument. As the tension is increased, the frequency of the normal modes increases in accordance with Equation 18.6. Once the instrument is "tuned," players vary the frequency by moving their fingers along the neck, thereby changing the length of the oscillating portion of the string. As the length is shortened, the frequency increases because, as Equation 18.6 specifies, the normal-mode frequencies are inversely proportional to string length.

uick Quiz 18.3 When a standing wave is set up on a string fixed at both ends, which of the following statements is true? **(a)** The number of nodes is equal to the number of antinodes. **(b)** The wavelength is equal to the length of the string divided by an integer. **(c)** The frequency is equal to the number of nodes times the fundamental frequency. **(d)** The shape of the string at any instant shows a symmetry about the midpoint of the string.

Analysis Model Waves Under Boundary Conditions

Imagine a wave that is not free to travel throughout all space as in the traveling wave model. If the wave is subject to bound ary conditions, such that cer tain requirements must be met at specific locations in space, the wave is limited to a set of **normal modes** with quantized wavelengths and quantized natural frequencies.

For waves on a string fixed at both ends, the natural frequencies are

$$\quad 1, 2, 3, \qquad \textbf{(18.6)}$$

where is the tension in the string and is its linear mass density.

Examples:

- waves traveling back and forth on a guitar string combine to form a standing wave
- sound waves traveling back and forth in a clarinet combine to form stand- ing waves (Section 18.5)
- a microscopic particle confined to small region of space is modeled as a wave and exhibits quantized energies (Chapter 41)
- the Fermi energy of metal is deter mined by modeling electrons as wave- like particles in a box (Chapter 43)

Example 18.3 Give Me a C Note!

The middle C string on a piano has a fundamental frequency of 262 Hz, and the string for the first A above middle C has a fundamental frequency of 440 Hz.

Calculate the frequencies of the next two harmonics of the C string.

continued

18.3 continued

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Remember that the harmonics of a vibrating string have frequencies that are related by integer multiples of the fundamental.

Categorize This first part of the example is a simple substitution problem.

Knowing that the fundamental frequency is $f_1 = 262$ Hz, find the frequencies of the next harmonics by multiplying by integers:

$$f_2 = 2f_1 = 524 \text{ Hz}$$

$$f_3 = 3f_1 = 786 \text{ Hz}$$

(B) If the A and C strings have the same linear mass density μ and length L, determine the ratio of tensions in the two strings.

SOLUTION

Categorize This part of the example is more of an analysis problem than is part (A) and uses the *waves under boundary conditions* model.

Analyze Use Equation 18.7 to write expressions for the fundamental frequencies of the two strings:

$$f_{1A} = \frac{1}{2L}\sqrt{\frac{T_A}{\mu}} \quad \text{and} \quad f_{1C} = \frac{1}{2L}\sqrt{\frac{T_C}{\mu}}$$

Divide the first equation by the second and solve for the ratio of tensions:

$$\frac{f_{1A}}{f_{1C}} = \sqrt{\frac{T_A}{T_C}} \rightarrow \frac{T_A}{T_C} = \left(\frac{f_{1A}}{f_{1C}}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{440}{262}\right)^2 = 2.82$$

Finalize If the frequencies of piano strings were determined solely by tension, this result suggests that the ratio of tensions from the lowest string to the highest string on the piano would be enormous. Such large tensions would make it difficult to design a frame to support the strings. In reality, the frequencies of piano strings vary due to additional parameters, including the mass per unit length and the length of the string. The What If? below explores a variation in length.

WHAT IF? If you look inside a real piano, you'll see that the assumption made in part (B) is only partially true. The strings are not likely to have the same length. The string densities for the given notes might be equal, but suppose the length of the A string is only 64% of the length of the C string. What is the ratio of their tensions?

Answer Using Equation 18.7 again, we set up the ratio of frequencies:

$$\frac{f_{1A}}{f_{1C}} = \frac{L_C}{L_A}\sqrt{\frac{T_A}{T_C}} \rightarrow \frac{T_A}{T_C} = \left(\frac{L_A}{L_C}\right)^2\left(\frac{f_{1A}}{f_{1C}}\right)^2$$

$$\frac{T_A}{T_C} = (0.64)^2\left(\frac{440}{262}\right)^2 = 1.16$$

Notice that this result represents only a 16% increase in tension, compared with the 182% increase in part (B).

Example 18.4 Changing String Vibration with Water AM

One end of a horizontal string is attached to a vibrating blade, and the other end passes over a pulley as in Figure 18.11a. A sphere of mass 2.00 kg hangs on the end of the string. The string is vibrating in its second harmonic. A container of water is raised under the sphere so that the sphere is completely submerged. In this configuration, the string vibrates in its fifth harmonic as shown in Figure 18.11b. What is the radius of the sphere?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine what happens when the sphere is immersed in the water. The buoyant force acts upward on the sphere, reducing the tension in the string. The change in tension causes a change in the speed of waves on the

18.4 continued

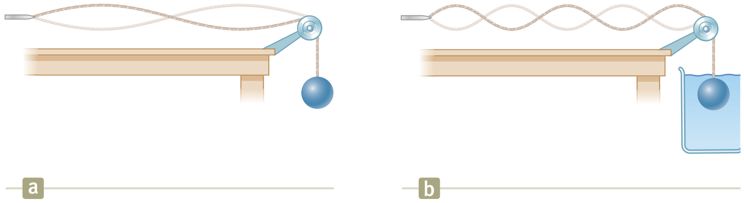


Figure 18.11 (Example 18.4) (a) When the sphere hangs in air, the string vibrates in its second harmonic. (b) When the sphere is immersed in water, the string vibrates in its fifth harmonic.

string, which in turn causes a change in the wavelength. This altered wavelength results in the string vibrating in its fifth normal mode rather than the second.

Categorize The hanging sphere is modeled as a *particle in equilibrium*. One of the forces acting on it is the buoyant force from the water. We also apply the *waves under boundary conditions* model to the string.

Analyze Apply the particle in equilibrium model to the sphere in Figure 18.11a, identifying T_1 as the tension in the string as the sphere hangs in air:

$$\sum F = T_1 - mg = 0$$
$$T_1 = mg$$

Apply the particle in equilibrium model to the sphere in Figure 18.11b, where T_2 is the tension in the string as the sphere is immersed in water:

$$T_2 + B - mg = 0$$
$$(1) \quad B = mg - T_2$$

The desired quantity, the radius of the sphere, will appear in the expression for the buoyant force B. Before proceeding in this direction, however, we must evaluate T_2 from the information about the standing wave.

Write the equation for the frequency of a standing wave on a string (Eq. 18.6) twice, once before the sphere is immersed and once after. Notice that the frequency f is the same in both cases because it is determined by the vibrating blade. In addition, the linear mass density μ and the length L of the vibrating portion of the string are the same in both cases. Divide the equations:

$$f = \frac{n_1}{2L}\sqrt{\frac{T_1}{\mu}} \qquad f = \frac{n_2}{2L}\sqrt{\frac{T_2}{\mu}} \quad \rightarrow \quad 1 = \frac{n_1}{n_2}\sqrt{\frac{T_1}{T_2}}$$

Solve for T_2:

$$T_2 = \left(\frac{n_1}{n_2}\right)^2 T_1 = \left(\frac{n_1}{n_2}\right)^2 mg$$

Substitute this result into Equation (1):

$$(2) \quad B = mg - \left(\frac{n_1}{n_2}\right)^2 mg = mg\left[1 - \left(\frac{n_1}{n_2}\right)^2\right]$$

Using Equation 14.5, express the buoyant force in terms of the radius of the sphere:

$$B = \rho_{\text{water}}\, g V_{\text{sphere}} = \rho_{\text{water}}\, g\left(\tfrac{4}{3}\pi r^3\right)$$

Solve for the radius of the sphere and substitute from Equation (2):

$$r = \left(\frac{3B}{4\pi\rho_{\text{water}}\, g}\right)^{1/3} = \left\{\frac{3m}{4\pi\rho_{\text{water}}}\left[1 - \left(\frac{n_1}{n_2}\right)^2\right]\right\}^{1/3}$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$r = \left\{\frac{3(2.00\ \text{kg})}{4\pi(1\,000\ \text{kg/m}^3)}\left[1 - \left(\frac{2}{5}\right)^2\right]\right\}^{1/3}$$
$$= 0.073\,7\ \text{m} = 7.37\ \text{cm}$$

Finalize Notice that only certain radii of the sphere will result in the string vibrating in a normal mode; the speed of waves on the string must be changed to a value such that the length of the string is an integer multiple of half wavelengths. This limitation is a feature of the *quantization* that was introduced earlier in this chapter: the sphere radii that cause the string to vibrate in a normal mode are *quantized*.

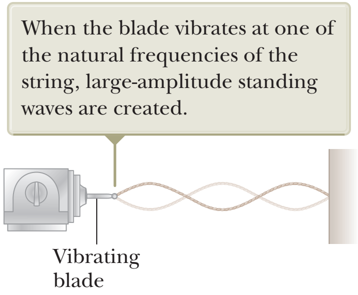


Figure 18.12 Standing waves are set up in a string when one end is connected to a vibrating blade.

18.4 Resonance

We have seen that a system such as a taut string is capable of oscillating in one or more normal modes of oscillation. Suppose we drive such a string with a vibrating blade as in Figure 18.12. We find that if a periodic force is applied to such a system, the amplitude of the resulting motion of the string is greatest when the frequency of the applied force is equal to one of the natural frequencies of the system. This phenomenon, known as *resonance,* was discussed in Section 15.7 with regard to a simple harmonic oscillator. Although a block–spring system or a simple pendulum has only one natural frequency, standing-wave systems have a whole set of natural frequencies, such as that given by Equation 18.6 for a string. Because an oscillating system exhibits a large amplitude when driven at any of its natural frequencies, these frequencies are often referred to as **resonance frequencies.**

Consider the string in Figure 18.12 again. The fixed end is a node, and the end connected to the blade is very nearly a node because the amplitude of the blade's motion is small compared with that of the elements of the string. As the blade oscillates, transverse waves sent down the string are reflected from the fixed end. As we learned in Section 18.3, the string has natural frequencies that are determined by its length, tension, and linear mass density (see Eq. 18.6). When the frequency of the blade equals one of the natural frequencies of the string, standing waves are produced and the string oscillates with a large amplitude. In this resonance case, the wave generated by the oscillating blade is in phase with the reflected wave and the string absorbs energy from the blade. If the string is driven at a frequency that is not one of its natural frequencies, the oscillations are of low amplitude and exhibit no stable pattern.

Resonance is very important in the excitation of musical instruments based on air columns. We shall discuss this application of resonance in Section 18.5.

18.5 Standing Waves in Air Columns

The waves under boundary conditions model can also be applied to sound waves in a column of air such as that inside an organ pipe or a clarinet. Standing waves in this case are the result of interference between longitudinal sound waves traveling in opposite directions.

In a pipe closed at one end, the closed end is a **displacement node** because the rigid barrier at this end does not allow longitudinal motion of the air. Because the pressure wave is 90° out of phase with the displacement wave (see Section 17.1), the closed end of an air column corresponds to a **pressure antinode** (that is, a point of maximum pressure variation).

The open end of an air column is approximately a **displacement antinode**[1] and a pressure node. We can understand why no pressure variation occurs at an open end by noting that the end of the air column is open to the atmosphere; therefore, the pressure at this end must remain constant at atmospheric pressure.

You may wonder how a sound wave can reflect from an open end because there may not appear to be a change in the medium at this point: the medium through which the sound wave moves is air both inside and outside the pipe. Sound can be represented as a pressure wave, however, and a compression region of the sound wave is constrained by the sides of the pipe as long as the region is inside the pipe. As the compression region exits at the open end of the pipe, the constraint of the pipe is removed and the compressed air is free to expand into the atmosphere. Therefore, there is a change in the *character* of the medium between the inside

[1]Strictly speaking, the open end of an air column is not exactly a displacement antinode. A compression reaching an open end does not reflect until it passes beyond the end. For a tube of circular cross section, an end correction equal to approximately $0.6R$, where R is the tube's radius, must be added to the length of the air column. Hence, the effective length of the air column is longer than the true length L. We ignore this end correction in this discussion.

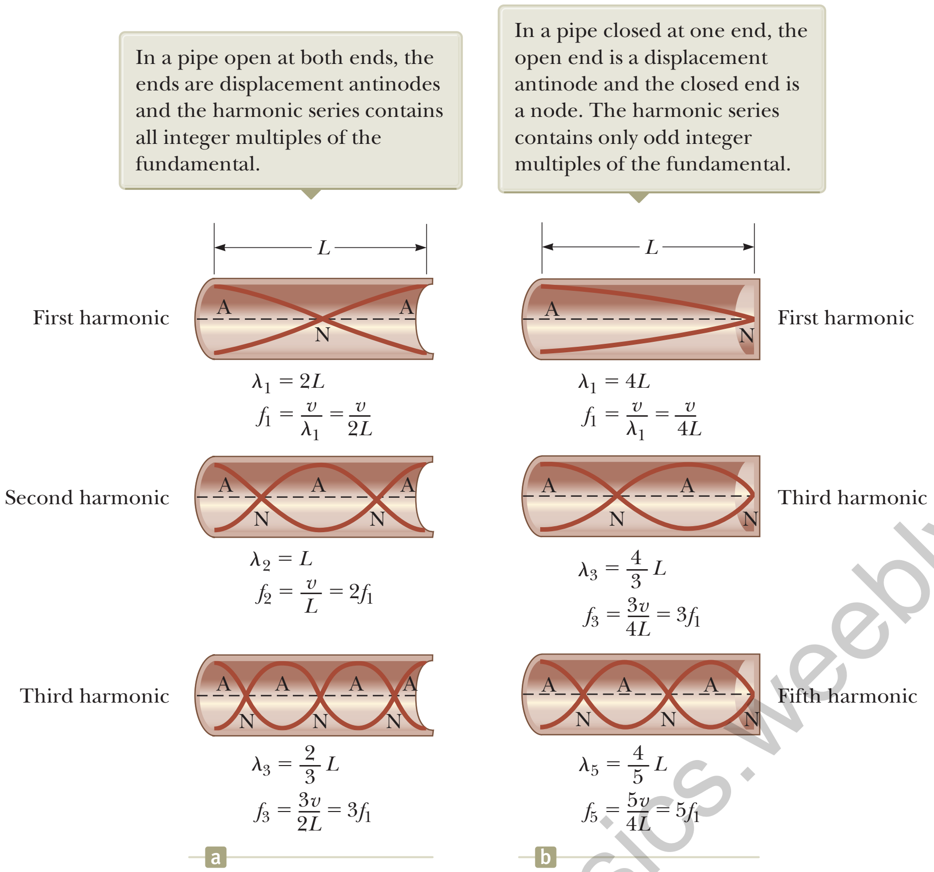


Figure 18.13 Graphical representations of the motion of elements of air in standing longitudinal waves in (a) a column open at both ends and (b) a column closed at one end.

of the pipe and the outside even though there is no change in the *material* of the medium. This change in character is sufficient to allow some reflection.

With the boundary conditions of nodes or antinodes at the ends of the air column, we have a set of normal modes of oscillation as is the case for the string fixed at both ends. Therefore, the air column has quantized frequencies.

The first three normal modes of oscillation of a pipe open at both ends are shown in Figure 18.13a. Notice that both ends are displacement antinodes (approximately). In the first normal mode, the standing wave extends between two adjacent antinodes, which is a distance of half a wavelength. Therefore, the wavelength is twice the length of the pipe, and the fundamental frequency is $f_1 = v/2L$. As Figure 18.13a shows, the frequencies of the higher harmonics are $2f_1, 3f_1, \ldots$.

In a pipe open at both ends, the natural frequencies of oscillation form a harmonic series that includes all integral multiples of the fundamental frequency.

Because all harmonics are present and because the fundamental frequency is given by the same expression as that for a string (see Eq. 18.5), we can express the natural frequencies of oscillation as

$$f_n = n\frac{v}{2L} \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{18.8}$$

◀ **Natural frequencies of a pipe open at both ends**

Despite the similarity between Equations 18.5 and 18.8, you must remember that v in Equation 18.5 is the speed of waves on the string, whereas v in Equation 18.8 is the speed of sound in air.

If a pipe is closed at one end and open at the other, the closed end is a displacement node (see Fig. 18.13b). In this case, the standing wave for the fundamental mode extends from an antinode to the adjacent node, which is one-fourth of a wavelength. Hence, the wavelength for the first normal mode is $4L$, and the fundamental

Pitfall Prevention 18.3

Sound Waves in Air Are Longitudinal, Not Transverse The standing longitudinal waves are drawn as transverse waves in Figure 18.13. Because they are in the same direction as the propagation, it is difficult to draw longitudinal displacements. Therefore, it is best to interpret the red-brown curves in Figure 18.13 as a graphical representation of the waves (our diagrams of string waves are pictorial representations), with the vertical axis representing the horizontal displacement $s(x, t)$ of the elements of the medium.

frequency is $f_1 = v/4L$. As Figure 18.13b shows, the higher-frequency waves that satisfy our conditions are those that have a node at the closed end and an antinode at the open end; hence, the higher harmonics have frequencies $3f_1, 5f_1, \ldots$.

In a pipe closed at one end, the natural frequencies of oscillation form a harmonic series that includes only odd integral multiples of the fundamental frequency.

We express this result mathematically as

Natural frequencies of a pipe closed at one end and open at the other

$$f_n = n\frac{v}{4L} \quad n = 1, 3, 5, \ldots \qquad \textbf{(18.9)}$$

It is interesting to investigate what happens to the frequencies of instruments based on air columns and strings during a concert as the temperature rises. The sound emitted by a flute, for example, becomes sharp (increases in frequency) as the flute warms up because the speed of sound increases in the increasingly warmer air inside the flute (consider Eq. 18.8). The sound produced by a violin becomes flat (decreases in frequency) as the strings thermally expand because the expansion causes their tension to decrease (see Eq. 18.6).

Musical instruments based on air columns are generally excited by resonance. The air column is presented with a sound wave that is rich in many frequencies. The air column then responds with a large-amplitude oscillation to the frequencies that match the quantized frequencies in its set of harmonics. In many woodwind instruments, the initial rich sound is provided by a vibrating reed. In brass instruments, this excitation is provided by the sound coming from the vibration of the player's lips. In a flute, the initial excitation comes from blowing over an edge at the mouthpiece of the instrument in a manner similar to blowing across the opening of a bottle with a narrow neck. The sound of the air rushing across the bottle opening has many frequencies, including one that sets the air cavity in the bottle into resonance.

Quick Quiz 18.4 A pipe open at both ends resonates at a fundamental frequency f_{open}. When one end is covered and the pipe is again made to resonate, the fundamental frequency is f_{closed}. Which of the following expressions describes how these two resonant frequencies compare? **(a)** $f_{closed} = f_{open}$ **(b)** $f_{closed} = \frac{1}{2}f_{open}$ **(c)** $f_{closed} = 2f_{open}$ **(d)** $f_{closed} = \frac{3}{2}f_{open}$

Quick Quiz 18.5 Balboa Park in San Diego has an outdoor organ. When the air temperature increases, the fundamental frequency of one of the organ pipes **(a)** stays the same, **(b)** goes down, **(c)** goes up, or **(d)** is impossible to determine.

Example 18.5 Wind in a Culvert

A section of drainage culvert 1.23 m in length makes a howling noise when the wind blows across its open ends.

(A) Determine the frequencies of the first three harmonics of the culvert if it is cylindrical in shape and open at both ends. Take $v = 343$ m/s as the speed of sound in air.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The sound of the wind blowing across the end of the pipe contains many frequencies, and the culvert responds to the sound by vibrating at the natural frequencies of the air column.

Categorize This example is a relatively simple substitution problem.

Find the frequency of the first harmonic of the culvert, modeling it as an air column open at both ends:

$$f_1 = \frac{v}{2L} = \frac{343\text{ m/s}}{2(1.23\text{ m})} = 139\text{ Hz}$$

Find the next harmonics by multiplying by integers:

$$f_2 = 2f_1 = 279\text{ Hz}$$

$$f_3 = 3f_1 = 418\text{ Hz}$$

18.5 continued

(B) What are the three lowest natural frequencies of the culvert if it is blocked at one end?

SOLUTION

Find the frequency of the first harmonic of the culvert, modeling it as an air column closed at one end:

$$f_1 = \frac{v}{4L} = \frac{343 \text{ m/s}}{4(1.23 \text{ m})} = 69.7 \text{ Hz}$$

Find the next two harmonics by multiplying by odd integers:

$$f_3 = 3f_1 = 209 \text{ Hz}$$

$$f_5 = 5f_1 = 349 \text{ Hz}$$

Example 18.6 Measuring the Frequency of a Tuning Fork AM

A simple apparatus for demonstrating resonance in an air column is depicted in Figure 18.14. A vertical pipe open at both ends is partially submerged in water, and a tuning fork vibrating at an unknown frequency is placed near the top of the pipe. The length L of the air column can be adjusted by moving the pipe vertically. The sound waves generated by the fork are reinforced when L corresponds to one of the resonance frequencies of the pipe. For a certain pipe, the smallest value of L for which a peak occurs in the sound intensity is 9.00 cm.

(A) What is the frequency of the tuning fork?

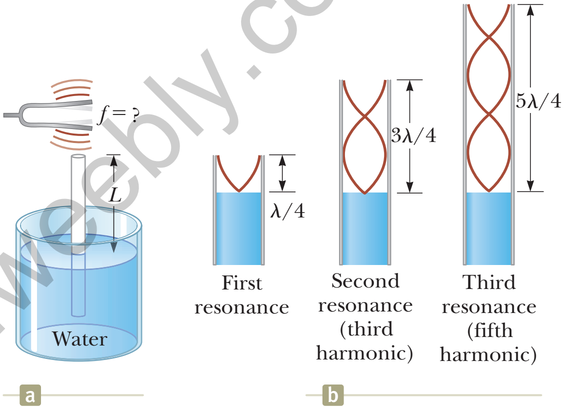


Figure 18.14 (Example 18.6) (a) Apparatus for demonstrating the resonance of sound waves in a pipe closed at one end. The length L of the air column is varied by moving the pipe vertically while it is partially submerged in water. (b) The first three normal modes of the system shown in (a).

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Sound waves from the tuning fork enter the pipe at its upper end. Although the pipe is open at its lower end to allow the water to enter, the water's surface acts like a barrier. The waves reflect from the water surface and combine with those moving downward to form a standing wave.

Categorize Because of the reflection of the sound waves from the water surface, we can model the pipe as open at the upper end and closed at the lower end. Therefore, we can apply the *waves under boundary conditions* model to this situation.

Analyze

Use Equation 18.9 to find the fundamental frequency for $L = 0.090\,0$ m:

$$f_1 = \frac{v}{4L} = \frac{343 \text{ m/s}}{4(0.090\,0 \text{ m})} = 953 \text{ Hz}$$

Because the tuning fork causes the air column to resonate at this frequency, this frequency must also be that of the tuning fork.

(B) What are the values of L for the next two resonance conditions?

SOLUTION

Use Equation 16.12 to find the wavelength of the sound wave from the tuning fork:

$$\lambda = \frac{v}{f} = \frac{343 \text{ m/s}}{953 \text{ Hz}} = 0.360 \text{ m}$$

Notice from Figure 18.14b that the length of the air column for the second resonance is $3\lambda/4$:

$$L = 3\lambda/4 = 0.270 \text{ m}$$

Notice from Figure 18.14b that the length of the air column for the third resonance is $5\lambda/4$:

$$L = 5\lambda/4 = 0.450 \text{ m}$$

Finalize Consider how this problem differs from the preceding example. In the culvert, the length was fixed and the air column was presented with a mixture of many frequencies. The pipe in this example is presented with one single frequency from the tuning fork, and the length of the pipe is varied until resonance is achieved.

18.6 Standing Waves in Rods and Membranes

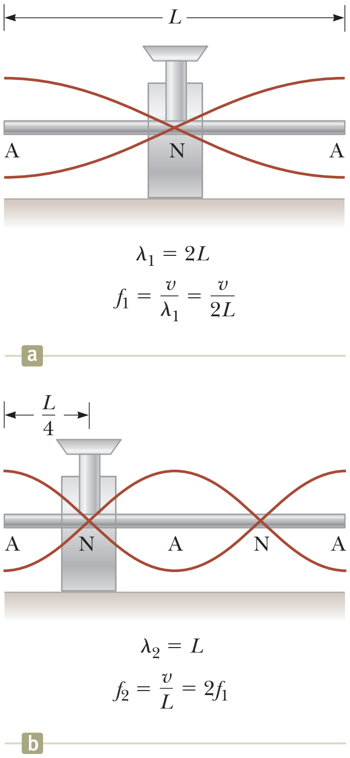


Figure 18.15 Normal-mode longitudinal vibrations of a rod of length L (a) clamped at the middle to produce the first normal mode and (b) clamped at a distance $L/4$ from one end to produce the second normal mode. Notice that the red-brown curves are graphical representations of oscillations parallel to the rod (longitudinal waves).

Standing waves can also be set up in rods and membranes. A rod clamped in the middle and stroked parallel to the rod at one end oscillates as depicted in Figure 18.15a. The oscillations of the elements of the rod are longitudinal, and so the red-brown curves in Figure 18.15 represent *longitudinal* displacements of various parts of the rod. For clarity, the displacements have been drawn in the transverse direction as they were for air columns. The midpoint is a displacement node because it is fixed by the clamp, whereas the ends are displacement antinodes because they are free to oscillate. The oscillations in this setup are analogous to those in a pipe open at both ends. The red-brown lines in Figure 18.15a represent the first normal mode, for which the wavelength is $2L$ and the frequency is $f = v/2L$, where v is the speed of longitudinal waves in the rod. Other normal modes may be excited by clamping the rod at different points. For example, the second normal mode (Fig. 18.15b) is excited by clamping the rod a distance $L/4$ away from one end.

It is also possible to set up transverse standing waves in rods. Musical instruments that depend on transverse standing waves in rods or bars include triangles, marimbas, xylophones, glockenspiels, chimes, and vibraphones. Other devices that make sounds from vibrating bars include music boxes and wind chimes.

Two-dimensional oscillations can be set up in a flexible membrane stretched over a circular hoop such as that in a drumhead. As the membrane is struck at some point, waves that arrive at the fixed boundary are reflected many times. The resulting sound is not harmonic because the standing waves have frequencies that are *not* related by integer multiples. Without this relationship, the sound may be more correctly described as *noise* rather than as music. The production of noise is in contrast to the situation in wind and stringed instruments, which produce sounds that we describe as musical.

Some possible normal modes of oscillation for a two-dimensional circular membrane are shown in Figure 18.16. Whereas nodes are *points* in one-dimensional standing waves on strings and in air columns, a two-dimensional oscillator has *curves* along which there is no displacement of the elements of the medium. The lowest normal mode, which has a frequency f_1, contains only one nodal curve; this curve runs around the outer edge of the membrane. The other possible normal modes show additional nodal curves that are circles and straight lines across the diameter of the membrane.

18.7 Beats: Interference in Time

The interference phenomena we have studied so far involve the superposition of two or more waves having the same frequency. Because the amplitude of the oscil-

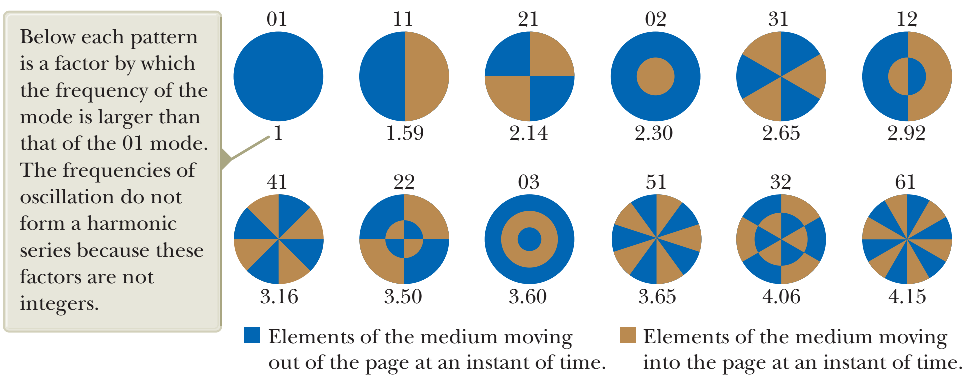


Figure 18.16 Representation of some of the normal modes possible in a circular membrane fixed at its perimeter. The pair of numbers above each pattern corresponds to the number of radial nodes and the number of circular nodes, respectively. In each diagram, elements of the membrane on either side of a nodal line move in opposite directions, as indicated by the colors. *(Adapted from T. D. Rossing,* The Science of Sound, 3rd ed., *Reading, Massachusetts, Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., 2001)*

lation of elements of the medium varies with the position in space of the element in such a wave, we refer to the phenomenon as *spatial interference.* Standing waves in strings and pipes are common examples of spatial interference.

Now let's consider another type of interference, one that results from the superposition of two waves having slightly *different* frequencies. In this case, when the two waves are observed at a point in space, they are periodically in and out of phase. That is, there is a *temporal* (time) alternation between constructive and destructive interference. As a consequence, we refer to this phenomenon as *interference in time* or *temporal interference.* For example, if two tuning forks of slightly different frequencies are struck, one hears a sound of periodically varying amplitude. This phenomenon is called **beating.**

Beating is the periodic variation in amplitude at a given point due to the superposition of two waves having slightly different frequencies.

◀ **Definition of beating**

The number of amplitude maxima one hears per second, or the *beat frequency,* equals the difference in frequency between the two sources as we shall show below. The maximum beat frequency that the human ear can detect is about 20 beats/s. When the beat frequency exceeds this value, the beats blend indistinguishably with the sounds producing them.

Consider two sound waves of equal amplitude and slightly different frequencies f_1 and f_2 traveling through a medium. We use equations similar to Equation 16.13 to represent the wave functions for these two waves at a point that we identify as $x = 0$. We also choose the phase angle in Equation 16.13 as $\phi = \pi/2$:

$$y_1 = A \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \omega_1 t\right) = A \cos\,(2\pi f_1 t)$$

$$y_2 = A \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \omega_2 t\right) = A \cos\,(2\pi f_2 t)$$

Using the superposition principle, we find that the resultant wave function at this point is

$$y = y_1 + y_2 = A\,(\cos 2\pi f_1 t + \cos 2\pi f_2 t)$$

The trigonometric identity

$$\cos a + \cos b = 2 \cos\left(\frac{a-b}{2}\right) \cos\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)$$

allows us to write the expression for y as

$$y = \left[2A \cos 2\pi\left(\frac{f_1 - f_2}{2}\right)t\right] \cos 2\pi\left(\frac{f_1 + f_2}{2}\right)t \qquad \textbf{(18.10)}$$

◀ **Resultant of two waves of different frequencies but equal amplitude**

Graphs of the individual waves and the resultant wave are shown in Figure 18.17. From the factors in Equation 18.10, we see that the resultant wave has an effective

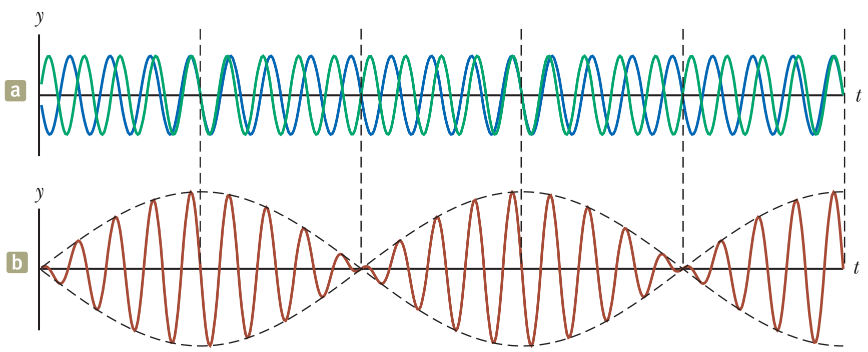


Figure 18.17 Beats are formed by the combination of two waves of slightly different frequencies. (a) The individual waves. (b) The combined wave. The envelope wave (dashed line) represents the beating of the combined sounds.

frequency equal to the average frequency $(f_1 + f_2)/2$. This wave is multiplied by an envelope wave given by the expression in the square brackets:

$$y_{\text{envelope}} = 2A \cos 2\pi\left(\frac{f_1 - f_2}{2}\right)t \quad \textbf{(18.11)}$$

That is, the amplitude and therefore the intensity of the resultant sound vary in time. The dashed black line in Figure 18.17b is a graphical representation of the envelope wave in Equation 18.11 and is a sine wave varying with frequency $(f_1 - f_2)/2$.

A maximum in the amplitude of the resultant sound wave is detected whenever

$$\cos 2\pi\left(\frac{f_1 - f_2}{2}\right)t = \pm 1$$

Hence, there are *two* maxima in each period of the envelope wave. Because the amplitude varies with frequency as $(f_1 - f_2)/2$, the number of beats per second, or the **beat frequency** f_{beat}, is twice this value. That is,

Beat frequency ▶

$$f_{\text{beat}} = |f_1 - f_2| \quad \textbf{(18.12)}$$

For instance, if one tuning fork vibrates at 438 Hz and a second one vibrates at 442 Hz, the resultant sound wave of the combination has a frequency of 440 Hz (the musical note A) and a beat frequency of 4 Hz. A listener would hear a 440-Hz sound wave go through an intensity maximum four times every second.

Example 18.7 The Mistuned Piano Strings AM

Two identical piano strings of length 0.750 m are each tuned exactly to 440 Hz. The tension in one of the strings is then increased by 1.0%. If they are now struck, what is the beat frequency between the fundamentals of the two strings?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize As the tension in one of the strings is changed, its fundamental frequency changes. Therefore, when both strings are played, they will have different frequencies and beats will be heard.

Categorize We must combine our understanding of the *waves under boundary conditions* model for strings with our new knowledge of beats.

Analyze Set up a ratio of the fundamental frequencies of the two strings using Equation 18.5:

$$\frac{f_2}{f_1} = \frac{(v_2/2L)}{(v_1/2L)} = \frac{v_2}{v_1}$$

Use Equation 16.18 to substitute for the wave speeds on the strings:

$$\frac{f_2}{f_1} = \frac{\sqrt{T_2/\mu}}{\sqrt{T_1/\mu}} = \sqrt{\frac{T_2}{T_1}}$$

Incorporate that the tension in one string is 1.0% larger than the other; that is, $T_2 = 1.010T_1$:

$$\frac{f_2}{f_1} = \sqrt{\frac{1.010T_1}{T_1}} = 1.005$$

Solve for the frequency of the tightened string:

$$f_2 = 1.005f_1 = 1.005(440 \text{ Hz}) = 442 \text{ Hz}$$

Find the beat frequency using Equation 18.12:

$$f_{\text{beat}} = 442 \text{ Hz} - 440 \text{ Hz} = \boxed{2 \text{ Hz}}$$

Finalize Notice that a 1.0% mistuning in tension leads to an easily audible beat frequency of 2 Hz. A piano tuner can use beats to tune a stringed instrument by "beating" a note against a reference tone of known frequency. The tuner can then adjust the string tension until the frequency of the sound it emits equals the frequency of the reference tone. The tuner does so by tightening or loosening the string until the beats produced by it and the reference source become too infrequent to notice.

18.8 Nonsinusoidal Wave Patterns

It is relatively easy to distinguish the sounds coming from a violin and a saxophone even when they are both playing the same note. On the other hand, a person untrained in music may have difficulty distinguishing a note played on a clarinet from the same note played on an oboe. We can use the pattern of the sound waves from various sources to explain these effects.

When frequencies that are integer multiples of a fundamental frequency are combined to make a sound, the result is a *musical* sound. A listener can assign a pitch to the sound based on the fundamental frequency. Pitch is a psychological reaction to a sound that allows the listener to place the sound on a scale from low to high (bass to treble). Combinations of frequencies that are not integer multiples of a fundamental result in a *noise* rather than a musical sound. It is much harder for a listener to assign a pitch to a noise than to a musical sound.

The wave patterns produced by a musical instrument are the result of the superposition of frequencies that are integer multiples of a fundamental. This superposition results in the corresponding richness of musical tones. The human perceptive response associated with various mixtures of harmonics is the *quality* or *timbre* of the sound. For instance, the sound of the trumpet is perceived to have a "brassy" quality (that is, we have learned to associate the adjective *brassy* with that sound); this quality enables us to distinguish the sound of the trumpet from that of the saxophone, whose quality is perceived as "reedy." The clarinet and oboe, however, both contain air columns excited by reeds; because of this similarity, they have similar mixtures of frequencies and it is more difficult for the human ear to distinguish them on the basis of their sound quality.

The sound wave patterns produced by the majority of musical instruments are nonsinusoidal. Characteristic patterns produced by a tuning fork, a flute, and a clarinet, each playing the same note, are shown in Figure 18.18. Each instrument has its own characteristic pattern. Notice, however, that despite the differences in the patterns, each pattern is periodic. This point is important for our analysis of these waves.

The problem of analyzing nonsinusoidal wave patterns appears at first sight to be a formidable task. If the wave pattern is periodic, however, it can be represented as closely as desired by the combination of a sufficiently large number of sinusoidal waves that form a harmonic series. In fact, we can represent any periodic function as a series of sine and cosine terms by using a mathematical technique based on **Fourier's theorem.**[2] The corresponding sum of terms that represents the periodic wave pattern is called a **Fourier series.** Let $y(t)$ be any function that is periodic in time with period T such that $y(t + T) = y(t)$. Fourier's theorem states that this function can be written as

$$y(t) = \sum (A_n \sin 2\pi f_n t + B_n \cos 2\pi f_n t) \quad \text{(18.13)}$$

◀ **Fourier's theorem**

where the lowest frequency is $f_1 = 1/T$. The higher frequencies are integer multiples of the fundamental, $f_n = nf_1$, and the coefficients A_n and B_n represent the amplitudes of the various waves. Figure 18.19 on page 554 represents a harmonic analysis of the wave patterns shown in Figure 18.18. Each bar in the graph represents one of the terms in the series in Equation 18.13 up to $n = 9$. Notice that a struck tuning fork produces only one harmonic (the first), whereas the flute and clarinet produce the first harmonic and many higher ones.

Notice the variation in relative intensity of the various harmonics for the flute and the clarinet. In general, any musical sound consists of a fundamental frequency f plus other frequencies that are integer multiples of f, all having different intensities.

Pitfall Prevention 18.4

Pitch Versus Frequency Do not confuse the term *pitch* with *frequency*. Frequency is the physical measurement of the number of oscillations per second. Pitch is a psychological reaction to sound that enables a person to place the sound on a scale from high to low or from treble to bass. Therefore, frequency is the stimulus and pitch is the response. Although pitch is related mostly (but not completely) to frequency, they are not the same. A phrase such as "the pitch of the sound" is incorrect because pitch is not a physical property of the sound.

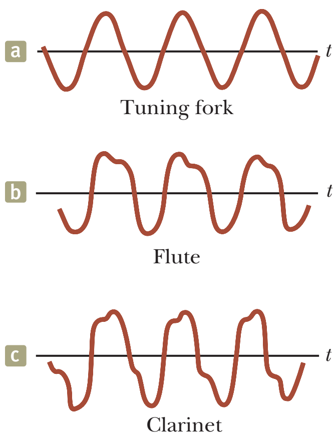


Figure 18.18 Sound wave patterns produced by (a) a tuning fork, (b) a flute, and (c) a clarinet, each at approximately the same frequency.

[2] Developed by Jean Baptiste Joseph Fourier (1786–1830).

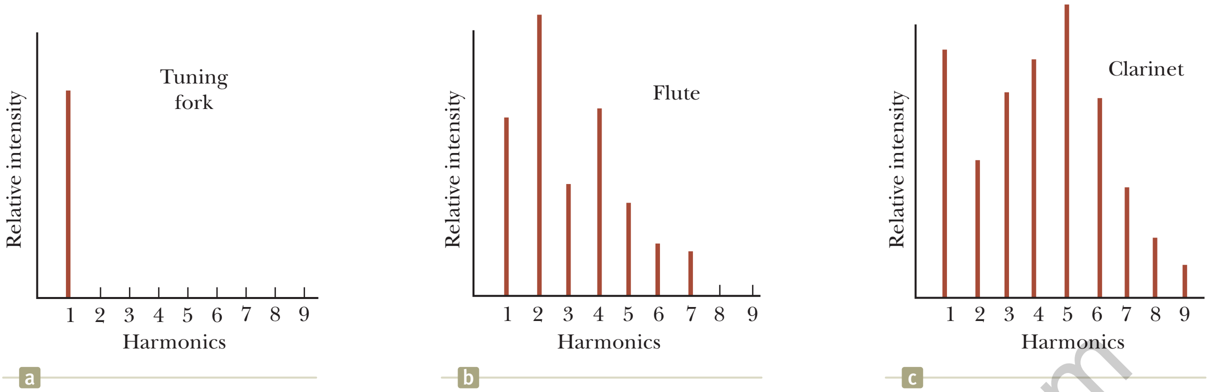


Figure 18.19 Harmonics of the wave patterns shown in Figure 18.18. Notice the variations in intensity of the various harmonics. Parts (a), (b), and (c) correspond to those in Figure 18.18.

We have discussed the *analysis* of a wave pattern using Fourier's theorem. The analysis involves determining the coefficients of the harmonics in Equation 18.13 from a knowledge of the wave pattern. The reverse process, called *Fourier synthesis,* can also be performed. In this process, the various harmonics are added together to form a resultant wave pattern. As an example of Fourier synthesis, consider the building of a square wave as shown in Figure 18.20. The symmetry of the square wave results in only odd multiples of the fundamental frequency combining in its synthesis. In Figure 18.20a, the blue curve shows the combination of f and $3f$. In Figure 18.20b, we have added $5f$ to the combination and obtained the green curve. Notice how the general shape of the square wave is approximated, even though the upper and lower portions are not flat as they should be.

Figure 18.20c shows the result of adding odd frequencies up to $9f$. This approximation (red-brown curve) to the square wave is better than the approximations in Figures 18.20a and 18.20b. To approximate the square wave as closely as possible, we must add all odd multiples of the fundamental frequency, up to infinite frequency.

Using modern technology, musical sounds can be generated electronically by mixing different amplitudes of any number of harmonics. These widely used electronic music synthesizers are capable of producing an infinite variety of musical tones.

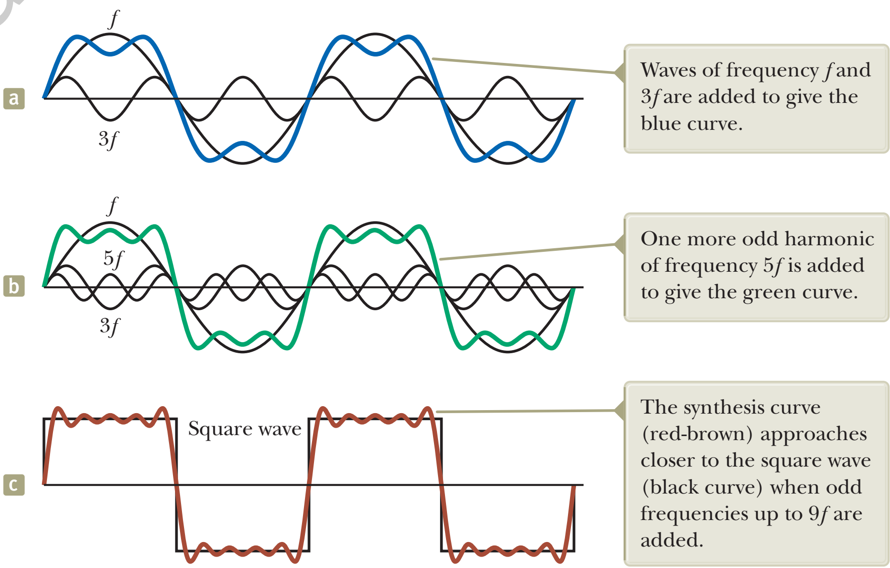


Figure 18.20 Fourier synthesis of a square wave, represented by the sum of odd multiples of the first harmonic, which has frequency f.

Summary

Concepts and Principles

The **superposition principle** specifies that when two or more waves move through a medium, the value of the resultant wave function equals the algebraic sum of the values of the individual wave functions.

The phenomenon of **beating** is the periodic variation in intensity at a given point due to the superposition of two waves having slightly different frequencies. The **beat frequency** is

$$f_{beat} = |f_1 - f_2| \quad \textbf{(18.12)}$$

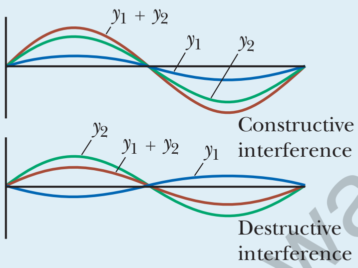
where f_1 and f_2 are the frequencies of the individual waves.

Standing waves are formed from the combination of two sinusoidal waves having the same frequency, amplitude, and wavelength but traveling in opposite directions. The resultant standing wave is described by the wave function

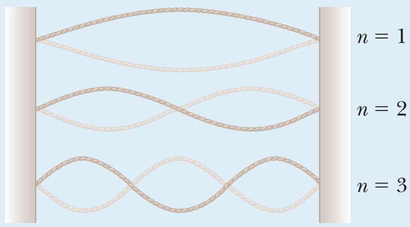
$$y = (2A \sin kx) \cos \omega t \quad \textbf{(18.1)}$$

Hence, the amplitude of the standing wave is $2A$, and the amplitude of the simple harmonic motion of any element of the medium varies according to its position as $2A \sin kx$. The points of zero amplitude (called **nodes**) occur at $x = n\lambda/2$ ($n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$). The maximum amplitude points (called **antinodes**) occur at $x = n\lambda/4$ ($n = 1, 3, 5, \ldots$). Adjacent antinodes are separated by a distance $\lambda/2$. Adjacent nodes also are separated by a distance $\lambda/2$.

Analysis Models for Problem Solving



Waves in Interference. When two traveling waves having equal frequencies superimpose, the resultant wave is described by the **principle of superposition** and has an amplitude that depends on the phase angle ϕ between the two waves. **Constructive interference** occurs when the two waves are in phase, corresponding to $\phi = 0, 2\pi, 4\pi, \ldots$ rad. **Destructive interference** occurs when the two waves are 180° out of phase, corresponding to $\phi = \pi, 3\pi, 5\pi, \ldots$ rad.



Waves Under Boundary Conditions. When a wave is subject to boundary conditions, only certain natural frequencies are allowed; we say that the frequencies are quantized.

For waves on a string fixed at both ends, the natural frequencies are

$$f_n = \frac{n}{2L}\sqrt{\frac{T}{\mu}} \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \quad \textbf{(18.6)}$$

where T is the tension in the string and μ is its linear mass density.

For sound waves with speed v in an air column of length L open at both ends, the natural frequencies are

$$f_n = n\frac{v}{2L} \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \quad \textbf{(18.8)}$$

If an air column is open at one end and closed at the other, only odd harmonics are present and the natural frequencies are

$$f_n = n\frac{v}{4L} \qquad n = 1, 3, 5, \ldots \quad \textbf{(18.9)}$$

Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. In Figure OQ18.1 (page 556), a sound wave of wavelength 0.8 m divides into two equal parts that recombine to interfere constructively, with the original difference between their path lengths being $|r_2 - r_1| = 0.8$ m. Rank the following situations according to the intensity of sound at the receiver from the highest to the lowest. Assume the tube walls absorb no sound energy. Give equal ranks to situations in which the intensity is equal.

(a) From its original position, the sliding section is moved out by 0.1 m. (b) Next it slides out an additional 0.1 m. (c) It slides out still another 0.1 m. (d) It slides out 0.1 m more.

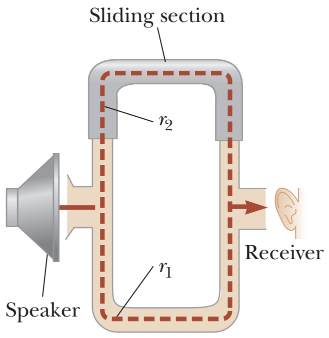


Figure OQ18.1 Objective Question 1 and Problem 6.

2. A string of length L, mass per unit length μ, and tension T is vibrating at its fundamental frequency. **(i)** If the length of the string is doubled, with all other factors held constant, what is the effect on the fundamental frequency? (a) It becomes two times larger. (b) It becomes $\sqrt{2}$ times larger. (c) It is unchanged. (d) It becomes $1/\sqrt{2}$ times as large. (e) It becomes one-half as large. **(ii)** If the mass per unit length is doubled, with all other factors held constant, what is the effect on the fundamental frequency? Choose from the same possibilities as in part (i). **(iii)** If the tension is doubled, with all other factors held constant, what is the effect on the fundamental frequency? Choose from the same possibilities as in part (i).

3. In Example 18.1, we investigated an oscillator at 1.3 kHz driving two identical side-by-side speakers. We found that a listener at point O hears sound with maximum intensity, whereas a listener at point P hears a minimum. What is the intensity at P? (a) less than but close to the intensity at O (b) half the intensity at O (c) very low but not zero (d) zero (e) indeterminate

4. A series of pulses, each of amplitude 0.1 m, is sent down a string that is attached to a post at one end. The pulses are reflected at the post and travel back along the string without loss of amplitude. **(i)** What is the net displacement at a point on the string where two pulses are crossing? Assume the string is rigidly attached to the post. (a) 0.4 m (b) 0.3 m (c) 0.2 m (d) 0.1 m (e) 0 **(ii)** Next assume the end at which reflection occurs is free to slide up and down. Now what is the net displacement at a point on the string where two pulses are crossing? Choose your answer from the same possibilities as in part (i).

5. A flute has a length of 58.0 cm. If the speed of sound in air is 343 m/s, what is the fundamental frequency of the flute, assuming it is a tube closed at one end and open at the other? (a) 148 Hz (b) 296 Hz (c) 444 Hz (d) 591 Hz (e) none of those answers

6. When two tuning forks are sounded at the same time, a beat frequency of 5 Hz occurs. If one of the tuning forks has a frequency of 245 Hz, what is the frequency of the other tuning fork? (a) 240 Hz (b) 242.5 Hz (c) 247.5 Hz (d) 250 Hz (e) More than one answer could be correct.

7. A tuning fork is known to vibrate with frequency 262 Hz. When it is sounded along with a mandolin string, four beats are heard every second. Next, a bit of tape is put onto each tine of the tuning fork, and the tuning fork now produces five beats per second with the same mandolin string. What is the frequency of the string? (a) 257 Hz (b) 258 Hz (c) 262 Hz (d) 266 Hz (e) 267 Hz

8. An archer shoots an arrow horizontally from the center of the string of a bow held vertically. After the arrow leaves it, the string of the bow will vibrate as a superposition of what standing-wave harmonics? (a) It vibrates only in harmonic number 1, the fundamental. (b) It vibrates only in the second harmonic. (c) It vibrates only in the odd-numbered harmonics 1, 3, 5, 7, ... (d) It vibrates only in the even-numbered harmonics 2, 4, 6, 8, ... (e) It vibrates in all harmonics.

9. As oppositely moving pulses of the same shape (one upward, one downward) on a string pass through each other, at one particular instant the string shows no displacement from the equilibrium position at any point. What has happened to the energy carried by the pulses at this instant of time? (a) It was used up in producing the previous motion. (b) It is all potential energy. (c) It is all internal energy. (d) It is all kinetic energy. (e) The positive energy of one pulse adds to zero with the negative energy of the other pulse.

10. A standing wave having three nodes is set up in a string fixed at both ends. If the frequency of the wave is doubled, how many antinodes will there be? (a) 2 (b) 3 (c) 4 (d) 5 (e) 6

11. Suppose all six equal-length strings of an acoustic guitar are played without fingering, that is, without being pressed down at any frets. What quantities are the same for all six strings? Choose all correct answers. (a) the fundamental frequency (b) the fundamental wavelength of the string wave (c) the fundamental wavelength of the sound emitted (d) the speed of the string wave (e) the speed of the sound emitted

12. Assume two identical sinusoidal waves are moving through the same medium in the same direction. Under what condition will the amplitude of the resultant wave be greater than either of the two original waves? (a) in all cases (b) only if the waves have no difference in phase (c) only if the phase difference is less than 90° (d) only if the phase difference is less than 120° (e) only if the phase difference is less than 180°

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. A crude model of the human throat is that of a pipe open at both ends with a vibrating source to introduce the sound into the pipe at one end. Assuming the vibrating source produces a range of frequencies, discuss the effect of changing the pipe's length.

2. When two waves interfere constructively or destructively, is there any gain or loss in energy in the system of the waves? Explain.

3. Explain how a musical instrument such as a piano may be tuned by using the phenomenon of beats.

4. What limits the amplitude of motion of a real vibrating system that is driven at one of its resonant frequencies?

5. A tuning fork by itself produces a faint sound. Explain how each of the following methods can be used to obtain a louder sound from it. Explain also any effect on the time interval for which the fork vibrates audibly. (a) holding the edge of a sheet of paper against one vibrating tine (b) pressing the handle of the tuning fork against a chalkboard or a tabletop (c) holding the tuning fork above a column of air of properly chosen length as in Example 18.6 (d) holding the tuning fork close to an open slot cut in a sheet of foam plastic or cardboard (with the slot similar in size and shape to one tine of the fork and the motion of the tines perpendicular to the sheet)

6. An airplane mechanic notices that the sound from a twin-engine aircraft rapidly varies in loudness when both engines are running. What could be causing this variation from loud to soft?

7. Despite a reasonably steady hand, a person often spills his coffee when carrying it to his seat. Discuss resonance as a possible cause of this difficulty and devise a means for preventing the spills.

8. A soft-drink bottle resonates as air is blown across its top. What happens to the resonance frequency as the level of fluid in the bottle decreases?

9. Does the phenomenon of wave interference apply only to sinusoidal waves?

Problems

Enhanced WebAssign: The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Note: Unless otherwise specified, assume the speed of sound in air is 343 m/s, its value at an air temperature of 20.0°C. At any other Celsius temperature T_C, the speed of sound in air is described by

$$v = 331\sqrt{1 + \frac{T_C}{273}}$$

where v is in m/s and T is in °C.

Section 18.1 Analysis Model: Waves in Interference

1. W Two waves are traveling in the same direction along a stretched string. The waves are 90.0° out of phase. Each wave has an amplitude of 4.00 cm. Find the amplitude of the resultant wave.

2. Two wave pulses A and B are moving in opposite directions, each with a speed $v = 2.00$ cm/s. The amplitude of A is twice the amplitude of B. The pulses are shown in Figure P18.2 at $t = 0$. Sketch the resultant wave at $t =$ 1.00 s, 1.50 s, 2.00 s, 2.50 s, and 3.00 s.

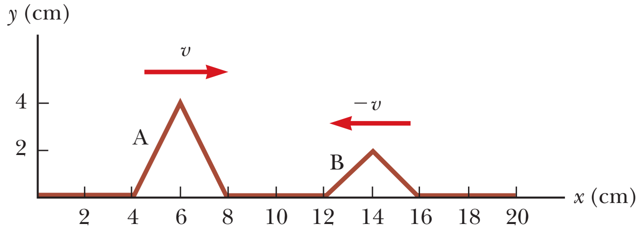


Figure P18.2

3. W Two waves on one string are described by the wave functions

$$y_1 = 3.0\cos(4.0x - 1.6t) \qquad y_2 = 4.0\sin(5.0x - 2.0t)$$

where x and y are in centimeters and t is in seconds. Find the superposition of the waves $y_1 + y_2$ at the points (a) $x = 1.00$, $t = 1.00$; (b) $x = 1.00$, $t = 0.500$; and (c) $x = 0.500$, $t = 0$. *Note:* Remember that the arguments of the trigonometric functions are in radians.

4. Two pulses of different amplitudes approach each other, each having a speed of $v = 1.00$ m/s. Figure P18.4 shows the positions of the pulses at time $t = 0$. (a) Sketch the resultant wave at $t = 2.00$ s, 4.00 s, 5.00 s, and 6.00 s. (b) **What If?** If the pulse on the right is inverted so that it is upright, how would your sketches of the resultant wave change?

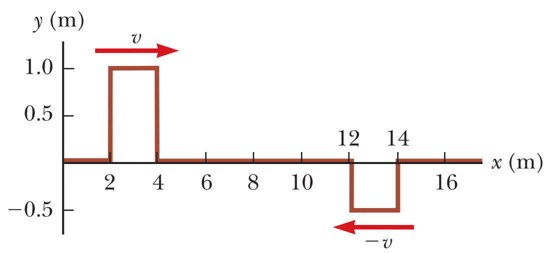


Figure P18.4

5. A tuning fork generates sound waves with a frequency of 246 Hz. The waves travel in opposite directions along a hallway, are reflected by end walls, and return. The hallway is 47.0 m long and the tuning fork is located 14.0 m from one end. What is the phase difference between the reflected waves when they meet at the tuning fork? The speed of sound in air is 343 m/s.

6. The acoustical system shown in Figure OQ18.1 is driven by a speaker emitting sound of frequency 756 Hz. (a) If constructive interference occurs at a particular location of the sliding section, by what minimum amount should the sliding section be moved upward so that destructive interference occurs instead? (b) What minimum distance from the original position of the sliding section will again result in constructive interference?

7. Two pulses traveling on the same string are described by

$$y_1 = \frac{5}{(3x - 4t)^2 + 2} \qquad y_2 = \frac{-5}{(3x + 4t - 6)^2 + 2}$$

(a) In which direction does each pulse travel? (b) At what instant do the two cancel everywhere? (c) At what point do the two pulses always cancel?

8. AMT Two identical loudspeakers are placed on a wall 2.00 m apart. A listener stands 3.00 m from the wall directly in front of one of the speakers. A single oscillator is driving the speakers at a frequency of 300 Hz. (a) What is the phase difference in radians between the waves from the speakers when they reach the observer? (b) **What If?** What is the frequency closest to 300 Hz to which the oscillator may be adjusted such that the observer hears minimal sound?

9. M Two traveling sinusoidal waves are described by the wave functions

$$y_1 = 5.00 \sin [\pi(4.00x - 1\,200t)]$$

$$y_2 = 5.00 \sin [\pi(4.00x - 1\,200t - 0.250)]$$

where x, y_1, and y_2 are in meters and t is in seconds. (a) What is the amplitude of the resultant wave function $y_1 + y_2$? (b) What is the frequency of the resultant wave function?

10. *Why is the following situation impossible?* Two identical loudspeakers are driven by the same oscillator at frequency 200 Hz. They are located on the ground a distance d = 4.00 m from each other. Starting far from the speakers, a man walks straight toward the right-hand speaker as shown in Figure P18.10. After passing through three minima in sound intensity, he walks to the next maximum and stops. Ignore any sound reflection from the ground.

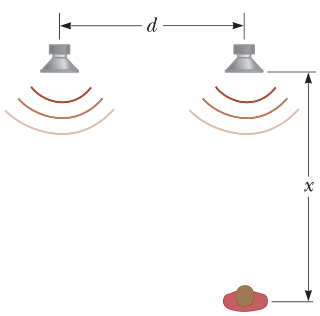


Figure P18.10

11. M Two sinusoidal waves in a string are defined by the wave functions

$$y_1 = 2.00 \sin (20.0x - 32.0t) \qquad y_2 = 2.00 \sin (25.0x - 40.0t)$$

where x, y_1, and y_2 are in centimeters and t is in seconds. (a) What is the phase difference between these two waves at the point x = 5.00 cm at t = 2.00 s? (b) What is the positive x value closest to the origin for which the two phases differ by $\pm\pi$ at t = 2.00 s? (At that location, the two waves add to zero.)

12. Two identical sinusoidal waves with wavelengths of 3.00 m travel in the same direction at a speed of 2.00 m/s. The second wave originates from the same point as the first, but at a later time. The amplitude of the resultant wave is the same as that of each of the two initial waves. Determine the minimum possible time interval between the starting moments of the two waves.

13. Two identical loudspeakers 10.0 m apart are driven by the same oscillator with a frequency of f = 21.5 Hz (Fig. P18.13) in an area where the speed of sound is 344 m/s. (a) Show that a receiver at point A records a minimum in sound intensity from the two speakers. (b) If the receiver is moved in the plane of the speakers, show that the path it should take so that the intensity remains at a minimum is along the hyperbola $9x^2 - 16y^2 = 144$ (shown in red-brown in Fig. P18.13). (c) Can the receiver remain at a minimum and move very far away from the two sources? If so, determine the limiting form of the path it must take. If not, explain how far it can go.

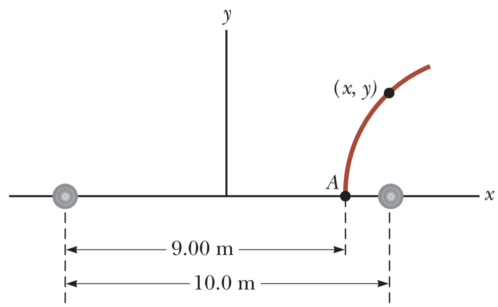


Figure P18.13

Section 18.2 Standing Waves

14. Two waves simultaneously present on a long string have a phase difference ϕ between them so that a standing wave formed from their combination is described by

$$y(x, t) = 2A \sin \left(kx + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) \cos \left(\omega t - \frac{\phi}{2}\right)$$

(a) Despite the presence of the phase angle ϕ, is it still true that the nodes are one-half wavelength apart? Explain. (b) Are the nodes different in any way from the way they would be if ϕ were zero? Explain.

15. W Two sinusoidal waves traveling in opposite directions interfere to produce a standing wave with the wave function

$$y = 1.50 \sin (0.400x) \cos (200t)$$

where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. Determine (a) the wavelength, (b) the frequency, and (c) the speed of the interfering waves.

16. Verify by direct substitution that the wave function for a standing wave given in Equation 18.1,

$$y = (2A \sin kx) \cos \omega t$$

is a solution of the general linear wave equation, Equation 16.27:

$$\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{v^2}\frac{\partial^2 y}{\partial t^2}$$

17. M Two transverse sinusoidal waves combining in a medium are described by the wave functions

$$y_1 = 3.00 \sin \pi(x + 0.600t) \qquad y_2 = 3.00 \sin \pi(x - 0.600t)$$

where x, y_1, and y_2 are in centimeters and t is in seconds. Determine the maximum transverse position of an element of the medium at (a) $x = 0.250$ cm, (b) $x = 0.500$ cm, and (c) $x = 1.50$ cm. (d) Find the three smallest values of x corresponding to antinodes.

18. A standing wave is described by the wave function

$$y = 6 \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}x\right) \cos(100\pi t)$$

where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. (a) Prepare graphs showing y as a function of x for five instants: t = 0, 5 ms, 10 ms, 15 ms, and 20 ms. (b) From the graph, identify the wavelength of the wave and explain how to do so. (c) From the graph, identify the frequency of the wave and explain how to do so. (d) From the equation, directly identify the wavelength of the wave and explain how to do so. (e) From the equation, directly identify the frequency and explain how to do so.

19. M Two identical loudspeakers are driven in phase by a common oscillator at 800 Hz and face each other at a distance of 1.25 m. Locate the points along the line joining the two speakers where relative minima of sound pressure amplitude would be expected.

Section 18.3 Analysis Model: Waves Under Boundary Conditions

20. A standing wave is established in a 120-cm-long string fixed at both ends. The string vibrates in four segments when driven at 120 Hz. (a) Determine the wavelength. (b) What is the fundamental frequency of the string?

21. A string with a mass m = 8.00 g and a length L = 5.00 m has one end attached to a wall; the other end is draped over a small, fixed pulley a distance d = 4.00 m from the wall and attached to a hanging object with a mass M = 4.00 kg as in Figure P18.21. If the horizontal part of the string is plucked, what is the fundamental frequency of its vibration?

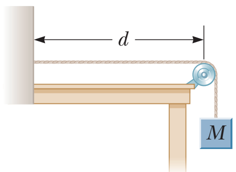


Figure P18.21

22. The 64.0-cm-long string of a guitar has a fundamental frequency of 330 Hz when it vibrates freely along its entire length. A fret is provided for limiting vibration to just the lower two-thirds of the string. (a) If the string is pressed down at this fret and plucked, what is the new fundamental frequency? (b) **What If?** The guitarist can play a "natural harmonic" by gently touching the string at the location of this fret and plucking the string at about one-sixth of the way along its length from the other end. What frequency will be heard then?

23. W The A string on a cello vibrates in its first normal mode with a frequency of 220 Hz. The vibrating segment is 70.0 cm long and has a mass of 1.20 g. (a) Find the tension in the string. (b) Determine the frequency of vibration when the string vibrates in three segments.

24. A taut string has a length of 2.60 m and is fixed at both ends. (a) Find the wavelength of the fundamental mode of vibration of the string. (b) Can you find the frequency of this mode? Explain why or why not.

25. A certain vibrating string on a piano has a length of 74.0 cm and forms a standing wave having two antinodes. (a) Which harmonic does this wave represent? (b) Determine the wavelength of this wave. (c) How many nodes are there in the wave pattern?

26. A string that is 30.0 cm long and has a mass per unit length of 9.00×10^{-3} kg/m is stretched to a tension of 20.0 N. Find (a) the fundamental frequency and (b) the next three frequencies that could cause standing-wave patterns on the string.

27. AMT W In the arrangement shown in Figure P18.27, an object can be hung from a string (with linear mass density μ = 0.002 00 kg/m) that passes over a light pulley. The string is connected to a vibrator (of constant frequency f), and the length of the string between point P and the pulley is L = 2.00 m. When the mass m of the object is either 16.0 kg or 25.0 kg, standing waves are observed; no standing waves are observed with any mass between these values, however. (a) What is the frequency of the vibrator? *Note:* The greater the tension in the string, the smaller the number of nodes in the standing wave. (b) What is the largest object mass for which standing waves could be observed?

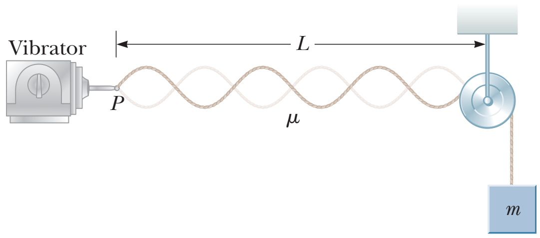


Figure P18.27 Problems 27 and 28.

28. M In the arrangement shown in Figure P18.27, an object of mass m = 5.00 kg hangs from a cord around a light pulley. The length of the cord between point P and the pulley is L = 2.00 m. (a) When the vibrator is set to a frequency of 150 Hz, a standing wave with six loops is formed. What must be the linear mass density of the cord? (b) How many loops (if any) will result if m is changed to 45.0 kg? (c) How many loops (if any) will result if m is changed to 10.0 kg?

29. **Review.** A sphere of mass $M = 1.00$ kg is supported by a string that passes over a pulley at the end of a horizontal rod of length $L = 0.300$ m (Fig. P18.29). The string makes an angle $\theta = 35.0°$ with the rod. The fundamental frequency of standing waves in the portion of the string above the rod is $f = 60.0$ Hz. Find the mass of the portion of the string above the rod.

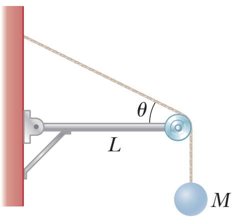


Figure P18.29
Problems 29 and 30.

30. **Review.** A sphere of mass M is supported by a string that passes over a pulley at the end of a horizontal rod of length L (Fig. P18.29). The string makes an angle θ with the rod. The fundamental frequency of standing waves in the portion of the string above the rod is f. Find the mass of the portion of the string above the rod.

31. A violin string has a length of 0.350 m and is tuned to concert G, with $f_G = 392$ Hz. (a) How far from the end of the string must the violinist place her finger to play concert A, with $f_A = 440$ Hz? (b) If this position is to remain correct to one-half the width of a finger (that is, to within 0.600 cm), what is the maximum allowable percentage change in the string tension?

32. **Review.** A solid copper object hangs at the bottom of a steel wire of negligible mass. The top end of the wire is fixed. When the wire is struck, it emits sound with a fundamental frequency of 300 Hz. The copper object is then submerged in water so that half its volume is below the water line. Determine the new fundamental frequency.

33. A standing-wave pattern is observed in a thin wire with a length of 3.00 m. The wave function is

$$y = 0.002\,00 \sin(\pi x) \cos(100\pi t)$$

where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds. (a) How many loops does this pattern exhibit? (b) What is the fundamental frequency of vibration of the wire? (c) **What If?** If the original frequency is held constant and the tension in the wire is increased by a factor of 9, how many loops are present in the new pattern?

Section 18.4 Resonance

34. The Bay of Fundy, Nova Scotia, has the highest tides in the world. Assume in midocean and at the mouth of the bay the Moon's gravity gradient and the Earth's rotation make the water surface oscillate with an amplitude of a few centimeters and a period of 12 h 24 min. At the head of the bay, the amplitude is several meters. Assume the bay has a length of 210 km and a uniform depth of 36.1 m. The speed of long-wavelength water waves is given by $v = \sqrt{gd}$, where d is the water's depth. Argue for or against the proposition that the tide is magnified by standing-wave resonance.

35. An earthquake can produce a *seiche* in a lake in which the water sloshes back and forth from end to end with remarkably large amplitude and long period. Consider a seiche produced in a farm pond. Suppose the pond is 9.15 m long and assume it has a uniform width and depth. You measure that a pulse produced at one end reaches the other end in 2.50 s. (a) What is the wave speed? (b) What should be the frequency of the ground motion during the earthquake to produce a seiche that is a standing wave with antinodes at each end of the pond and one node at the center?

36. High-frequency sound can be used to produce standing-wave vibrations in a wine glass. A standing-wave vibration in a wine glass is observed to have four nodes and four antinodes equally spaced around the 20.0-cm circumference of the rim of the glass. If transverse waves move around the glass at 900 m/s, an opera singer would have to produce a high harmonic with what frequency to shatter the glass with a resonant vibration as shown in Figure P18.36?

Steve Bronstein/Stone/Getty Images

Figure P18.36

Section 18.5 Standing Waves in Air Columns

37. The windpipe of one typical whooping crane is 5.00 feet long. What is the fundamental resonant frequency of the bird's trachea, modeled as a narrow pipe closed at one end? Assume a temperature of 37°C.

38. If a human ear canal can be thought of as resembling an organ pipe, closed at one end, that resonates at a fundamental frequency of 3 000 Hz, what is the length of the canal? Use a normal body temperature of 37°C for your determination of the speed of sound in the canal.

39. Calculate the length of a pipe that has a fundamental frequency of 240 Hz assuming the pipe is (a) closed at one end and (b) open at both ends.

40. W The overall length of a piccolo is 32.0 cm. The resonating air column is open at both ends. (a) Find the frequency of the lowest note a piccolo can sound. (b) Opening holes in the side of a piccolo effectively shortens the length of the resonant column. Assume the highest note a piccolo can sound is 4 000 Hz. Find the distance between adjacent antinodes for this mode of vibration.

41. The fundamental frequency of an open organ pipe corresponds to middle C (261.6 Hz on the chromatic musical scale). The third resonance of a closed organ pipe has the same frequency. What is the length of (a) the open pipe and (b) the closed pipe?

42. The longest pipe on a certain organ is 4.88 m. What is the fundamental frequency (at 0.00°C) if the pipe is (a) closed at one end and (b) open at each end? (c) What will be the frequencies at 20.0°C?

43. An air column in a glass tube is open at one end and closed at the other by a movable piston. The air in the tube is warmed above room temperature, and a 384-Hz tuning fork is held at the open end. Resonance is heard when the piston is at a distance d_1 = 22.8 cm from the open end and again when it is at a distance d_2 = 68.3 cm from the open end. (a) What speed of sound is implied by these data? (b) How far from the open end will the piston be when the next resonance is heard?

44. A tuning fork with a frequency of f = 512 Hz is placed near the top of the tube shown in Figure P18.44. The water level is lowered so that the length L slowly increases from an initial value of 20.0 cm. Determine the next two values of L that correspond to resonant modes.

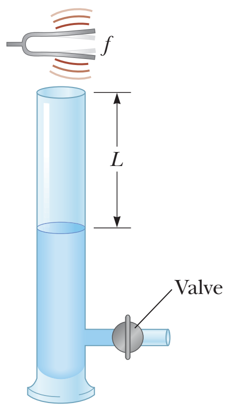


Figure P18.44

45. With a particular fingering, a flute produces a note with frequency 880 Hz at 20.0°C. The flute is open at both ends. (a) Find the air column length. (b) At the beginning of the halftime performance at a late-season football game, the ambient temperature is −5.00°C and the flutist has not had a chance to warm up her instrument. Find the frequency the flute produces under these conditions.

46. A shower stall has dimensions 86.0 cm × 86.0 cm × 210 cm. Assume the stall acts as a pipe closed at both ends, with nodes at opposite sides. Assume singing voices range from 130 Hz to 2 000 Hz and let the speed of sound in the hot air be 355 m/s. For someone singing in this shower, which frequencies would sound the richest (because of resonance)?

47. A glass tube (open at both ends) of length L is positioned near an audio speaker of frequency f = 680 Hz. For what values of L will the tube resonate with the speaker?

48. A tunnel under a river is 2.00 km long. (a) At what frequencies can the air in the tunnel resonate? (b) Explain whether it would be good to make a rule against blowing your car horn when you are in the tunnel.

49. As shown in Figure P18.49, water is pumped into a tall, vertical cylinder at a volume flow rate R = 1.00 L/min. The radius of the cylinder is r = 5.00 cm, and at the open top of the cylinder a tuning fork is vibrating with a frequency f = 512 Hz. As the water rises, what time interval elapses between successive resonances?

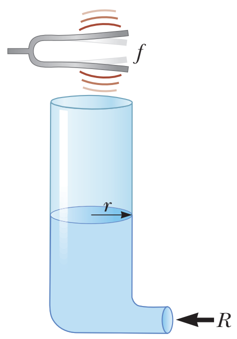


Figure P18.49
Problems 49 and 50.

50. As shown in Figure P18.49, water is pumped into a tall, vertical cylinder at a volume flow rate R. The radius of the cylinder is r, and at the open top of the cylinder a tuning fork is vibrating with a frequency f. As the water rises, what time interval elapses between successive resonances?

51. AMT M Two adjacent natural frequencies of an organ pipe are determined to be 550 Hz and 650 Hz. Calculate (a) the fundamental frequency and (b) the length of this pipe.

52. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A student is listening to the sounds from an air column that is 0.730 m long. He doesn't know if the column is open at both ends or open at only one end. He hears resonance from the air column at frequencies 235 Hz and 587 Hz.

53. A student uses an audio oscillator of adjustable frequency to measure the depth of a water well. The student reports hearing two successive resonances at 51.87 Hz and 59.85 Hz. (a) How deep is the well? (b) How many antinodes are in the standing wave at 51.87 Hz?

Section 18.6 Standing Waves in Rods and Membranes

54. An aluminum rod is clamped one-fourth of the way along its length and set into longitudinal vibration by a variable-frequency driving source. The lowest frequency that produces resonance is 4 400 Hz. The speed of sound in an aluminum rod is 5 100 m/s. Determine the length of the rod.

55. An aluminum rod 1.60 m long is held at its center. It is stroked with a rosin-coated cloth to set up a longitudinal vibration. The speed of sound in a thin rod of aluminum is 5 100 m/s. (a) What is the fundamental frequency of the waves established in the rod? (b) What harmonics are set up in the rod held in this manner? (c) **What If?** What would be the fundamental frequency if the rod were copper, in which the speed of sound is 3 560 m/s?

Section 18.7 Beats: Interference in Time

56. W While attempting to tune the note C at 523 Hz, a piano tuner hears 2.00 beats/s between a reference oscillator and the string. (a) What are the possible frequencies of the string? (b) When she tightens the string slightly, she hears 3.00 beats/s. What is the frequency of the string now? (c) By what percentage should the piano tuner now change the tension in the string to bring it into tune?

57. M In certain ranges of a piano keyboard, more than one string is tuned to the same note to provide extra loudness. For example, the note at 110 Hz has two strings at this frequency. If one string slips from its normal tension of 600 N to 540 N, what beat frequency is heard when the hammer strikes the two strings simultaneously?

58. **Review.** Jane waits on a railroad platform while two trains approach from the same direction at equal speeds of 8.00 m/s. Both trains are blowing their whistles (which have the same frequency), and one train is some distance behind the other. After the first train passes Jane but before the second train passes her, she hears beats of frequency 4.00 Hz. What is the frequency of the train whistles?

59. M **Review.** A student holds a tuning fork oscillating at 256 Hz. He walks toward a wall at a constant speed of 1.33 m/s. (a) What beat frequency does he observe between the tuning fork and its echo? (b) How fast must he walk away from the wall to observe a beat frequency of 5.00 Hz?

Section 18.8 Nonsinusoidal Wave Patterns

60. An A-major chord consists of the notes called A, C#, and E. It can be played on a piano by simultaneously striking strings with fundamental frequencies of 440.00 Hz, 554.37 Hz, and 659.26 Hz. The rich consonance of the chord is associated with near equality of the frequencies of some of the higher harmonics of the three tones. Consider the first five harmonics of each string and determine which harmonics show near equality.

61. Suppose a flutist plays a 523-Hz C note with first harmonic displacement amplitude $A_1 = 100$ nm. From Figure 18.19b read, by proportion, the displacement amplitudes of harmonics 2 through 7. Take these as the values A_2 through A_7 in the Fourier analysis of the sound and assume $B_1 = B_2 = \cdots = B_7 = 0$. Construct a graph of the waveform of the sound. Your waveform will not look exactly like the flute waveform in Figure 18.18b because you simplify by ignoring cosine terms; nevertheless, it produces the same sensation to human hearing.

Additional Problems

62. M A pipe open at both ends has a fundamental frequency of 300 Hz when the temperature is 0°C. (a) What is the length of the pipe? (b) What is the fundamental frequency at a temperature of 30.0°C?

63. A string is 0.400 m long and has a mass per unit length of 9.00×10^{-3} kg/m. What must be the tension in the string if its second harmonic has the same frequency as the second resonance mode of a 1.75-m-long pipe open at one end?

64. Two strings are vibrating at the same frequency of 150 Hz. After the tension in one of the strings is decreased, an observer hears four beats each second when the strings vibrate together. Find the new frequency in the adjusted string.

65. The ship in Figure P18.65 travels along a straight line parallel to the shore and a distance $d = 600$ m from it. The ship's radio receives simultaneous signals of the same frequency from antennas A and B, separated by a distance $L = 800$ m. The signals interfere constructively at point C, which is equidistant from A and B. The signal goes through the first minimum at point D, which is directly outward from the shore from point B. Determine the wavelength of the radio waves.

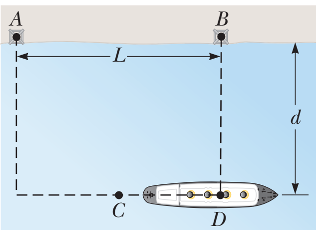


Figure P18.65

66. A 2.00-m-long wire having a mass of 0.100 kg is fixed at both ends. The tension in the wire is maintained at 20.0 N. (a) What are the frequencies of the first three allowed modes of vibration? (b) If a node is observed at a point 0.400 m from one end, in what mode and with what frequency is it vibrating?

67. The fret closest to the bridge on a guitar is 21.4 cm from the bridge as shown in Figure P18.67. When the thinnest string is pressed down at this first fret, the string produces the highest frequency that can be played on that guitar, 2 349 Hz. The next lower note that is produced on the string has frequency 2 217 Hz. How far away from the first fret should the next fret be?

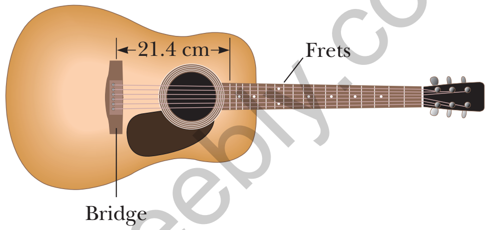


Figure P18.67

68. A string fixed at both ends and having a mass of 4.80 g, a length of 2.00 m, and a tension of 48.0 N vibrates in its second ($n = 2$) normal mode. (a) Is the wavelength in air of the sound emitted by this vibrating string larger or smaller than the wavelength of the wave on the string? (b) What is the ratio of the wavelength in air of the sound emitted by this vibrating string and the wavelength of the wave on the string?

69. A quartz watch contains a crystal oscillator in the form of a block of quartz that vibrates by contracting and expanding. An electric circuit feeds in energy to maintain the oscillation and also counts the voltage pulses to keep time. Two opposite faces of the block, 7.05 mm apart, are antinodes, moving alternately toward each other and away from each other. The plane halfway between these two faces is a node of the vibration. The speed of sound in quartz is equal to 3.70×10^3 m/s. Find the frequency of the vibration.

70. GP **Review.** For the arrangement shown in Figure P18.70, the inclined plane and the small pulley are frictionless; the string supports the object of mass M at the bottom of the plane; and the string has mass m. The system is in equilibrium, and the vertical part of the string has a length h. We wish to study standing waves set up in the vertical section of the string. (a) What analysis model describes the object of mass M? (b) What analysis model describes the waves on the vertical part of the

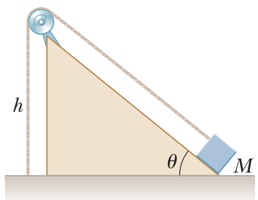


Figure P18.70

string? (c) Find the tension in the string. (d) Model the shape of the string as one leg and the hypotenuse of a right triangle. Find the whole length of the string. (e) Find the mass per unit length of the string. (f) Find the speed of waves on the string. (g) Find the lowest frequency for a standing wave on the vertical section of the string. (h) Evaluate this result for $M = 1.50$ kg, $m = 0.750$ g, $h = 0.500$ m, and $\theta = 30.0°$. (i) Find the numerical value for the lowest frequency for a standing wave on the sloped section of the string.

71. A 0.010 0-kg wire, 2.00 m long, is fixed at both ends and vibrates in its simplest mode under a tension of 200 N. When a vibrating tuning fork is placed near the wire, a beat frequency of 5.00 Hz is heard. (a) What could be the frequency of the tuning fork? (b) What should the tension in the wire be if the beats are to disappear?

72. Two speakers are driven by the same oscillator of frequency f. They are located a distance d from each other on a vertical pole. A man walks straight toward the lower speaker in a direction perpendicular to the pole as shown in Figure P18.72. (a) How many times will he hear a minimum in sound intensity? (b) How far is he from the pole at these moments? Let v represent the speed of sound and assume that the ground does not reflect sound. The man's ears are at the same level as the lower speaker.

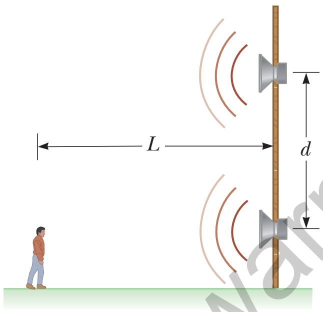


Figure P18.72

73. Review. Consider the apparatus shown in Figure 18.11 and described in Example 18.4. Suppose the number of antinodes in Figure 18.11b is an arbitrary value n. (a) Find an expression for the radius of the sphere in the water as a function of only n. (b) What is the minimum allowed value of n for a sphere of nonzero size? (c) What is the radius of the largest sphere that will produce a standing wave on the string? (d) What happens if a larger sphere is used?

74. Review. The top end of a yo-yo string is held stationary. The yo-yo itself is much more massive than the string. It starts from rest and moves down with constant acceleration 0.800 m/s^2 as it unwinds from the string. The rubbing of the string against the edge of the yo-yo excites transverse standing-wave vibrations in the string. Both ends of the string are nodes even as the length of the string increases. Consider the instant 1.20 s after the motion begins from rest. (a) Show that the rate of change with time of the wavelength of the fundamental mode of oscillation is 1.92 m/s. (b) **What if?** Is the rate of change of the wavelength of the second harmonic also 1.92 m/s at this moment? Explain your answer. (c) **What if?** The experiment is repeated after more mass has been added to the yo-yo body. The mass distribution is kept the same so that the yo-yo still moves with downward acceleration 0.800 m/s^2. At the 1.20-s point in this case, is the rate of change of the fundamental wavelength of the string vibration still equal to 1.92 m/s? Explain. (d) Is the rate of change of the second harmonic wavelength the same as in part (b)? Explain.

75. On a marimba (Fig. P18.75), the wooden bar that sounds a tone when struck vibrates in a transverse standing wave having three antinodes and two nodes. The lowest-frequency note is 87.0 Hz, produced by a bar 40.0 cm long. (a) Find the speed of transverse waves on the bar. (b) A resonant pipe suspended vertically below the center of the bar enhances the loudness of the emitted sound. If the pipe is open at the top end only, what length of the pipe is required to resonate with the bar in part (a)?


Figure P18.75

76. A nylon string has mass 5.50 g and length $L = 86.0$ cm. The lower end is tied to the floor, and the upper end is tied to a small set of wheels through a slot in a track on which the wheels move (Fig. P18.76). The wheels have a mass that is negligible compared with that of the string, and they roll without friction on the track so that the upper end of the string is essentially free. At equilibrium, the string is vertical and motionless. When it is carrying a small-amplitude wave, you may assume the string is always under uniform tension 1.30 N. (a) Find the speed of transverse waves on the string. (b) The string's vibration possibilities are a set of standing-wave states, each with a node at the fixed bottom end and an antinode at the free top end. Find the node–antinode distances for each of the three simplest states. (c) Find the frequency of each of these states.

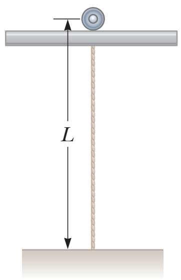


Figure P18.76

77. M Two train whistles have identical frequencies of 180 Hz. When one train is at rest in the station and the other is moving nearby, a commuter standing on the station platform hears beats with a frequency of 2.00 beats/s when the whistles operate together. What are the two possible speeds and directions the moving train can have?

78. **Review.** A loudspeaker at the front of a room and an identical loudspeaker at the rear of the room are being driven by the same oscillator at 456 Hz. A student walks at a uniform rate of 1.50 m/s along the length of the room. She hears a single tone repeatedly becoming louder and softer. (a) Model these variations as beats between the Doppler-shifted sounds the student receives. Calculate the number of beats the student hears each second. (b) Model the two speakers as producing a standing wave in the room and the student as walking between antinodes. Calculate the number of intensity maxima the student hears each second.

79. **Review.** Consider the copper object hanging from the steel wire in Problem 32. The top end of the wire is fixed. When the wire is struck, it emits sound with a fundamental frequency of 300 Hz. The copper object is then submerged in water. If the object can be positioned with any desired fraction of its volume submerged, what is the lowest possible new fundamental frequency?

80. M Two wires are welded together end to end. The wires are made of the same material, but the diameter of one is twice that of the other. They are subjected to a tension of 4.60 N. The thin wire has a length of 40.0 cm and a linear mass density of 2.00 g/m. The combination is fixed at both ends and vibrated in such a way that two antinodes are present, with the node between them being right at the weld. (a) What is the frequency of vibration? (b) What is the length of the thick wire?

81. A string of linear density 1.60 g/m is stretched between clamps 48.0 cm apart. The string does not stretch appreciably as the tension in it is steadily raised from 15.0 N at $t = 0$ to 25.0 N at $t = 3.50$ s. Therefore, the tension as a function of time is given by the expression $T = 15.0 + 10.0t/3.50$, where T is in newtons and t is in seconds. The string is vibrating in its fundamental mode throughout this process. Find the number of oscillations it completes during the 3.50-s interval.

82. A standing wave is set up in a string of variable length and tension by a vibrator of variable frequency. Both ends of the string are fixed. When the vibrator has a frequency f, in a string of length L and under tension T, n antinodes are set up in the string. (a) If the length of the string is doubled, by what factor should the frequency be changed so that the same number of antinodes is produced? (b) If the frequency and length are held constant, what tension will produce $n + 1$ antinodes? (c) If the frequency is tripled and the length of the string is halved, by what factor should the tension be changed so that twice as many antinodes are produced?

83. Two waves are described by the wave functions

$$y_1(x, t) = 5.00 \sin (2.00x - 10.0t)$$

$$y_2(x, t) = 10.0 \cos (2.00x - 10.0t)$$

where x, y_1, and y_2 are in meters and t is in seconds. (a) Show that the wave resulting from their superposition can be expressed as a single sine function. (b) Determine the amplitude and phase angle for this sinusoidal wave.

84. A flute is designed so that it produces a frequency of 261.6 Hz, middle C, when all the holes are covered and the temperature is 20.0°C. (a) Consider the flute as a pipe that is open at both ends. Find the length of the flute, assuming middle C is the fundamental. (b) A second player, nearby in a colder room, also attempts to play middle C on an identical flute. A beat frequency of 3.00 Hz is heard when both flutes are playing. What is the temperature of the second room?

85. AMT **Review.** A 12.0-kg object hangs in equilibrium from a string with a total length of $L = 5.00$ m and a linear mass density of $\mu = 0.001\ 00$ kg/m. The string is wrapped around two light, frictionless pulleys that are separated by a distance of $d = 2.00$ m (Fig. P18.85a). (a) Determine the tension in the string. (b) At what frequency must the string between the pulleys vibrate to form the standing-wave pattern shown in Figure P18.85b?

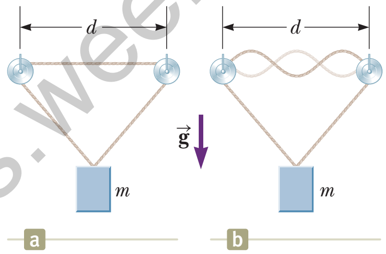


Figure P18.85 Problems 85 and 86.

86. **Review.** An object of mass m hangs in equilibrium from a string with a total length L and a linear mass density μ. The string is wrapped around two light, frictionless pulleys that are separated by a distance d (Fig. P18.85a). (a) Determine the tension in the string. (b) At what frequency must the string between the pulleys vibrate to form the standing-wave pattern shown in Figure P18.85b?

Challenge Problems

87. **Review.** Consider the apparatus shown in Figure P18.87a, where the hanging object has mass M and the string is vibrating in its second harmonic. The vibrating blade at the left maintains a constant frequency. The wind begins to blow to the right, applying a con-

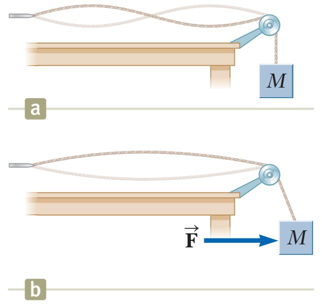


Figure P18.87

stant horizontal force $\vec{\mathbf{F}}$ on the hanging object. What is the magnitude of the force the wind must apply to the hanging object so that the string vibrates in its first harmonic as shown in Figure 18.87b?

88. In Figures 18.20a and 18.20b, notice that the amplitude of the component wave for frequency f is large, that for $3f$ is smaller, and that for $5f$ smaller still. How do we know exactly how much amplitude to assign to each frequency component to build a square wave? This problem helps us find the answer to that question. Let the square wave in Figure 18.20c have an amplitude A and let $t = 0$ be at the extreme left of the figure. So, one period T of the square wave is described by

$$y(t) = \begin{cases} A & 0 < t < \dfrac{T}{2} \\ -A & \dfrac{T}{2} < t < T \end{cases}$$

Express Equation 18.13 with angular frequencies:

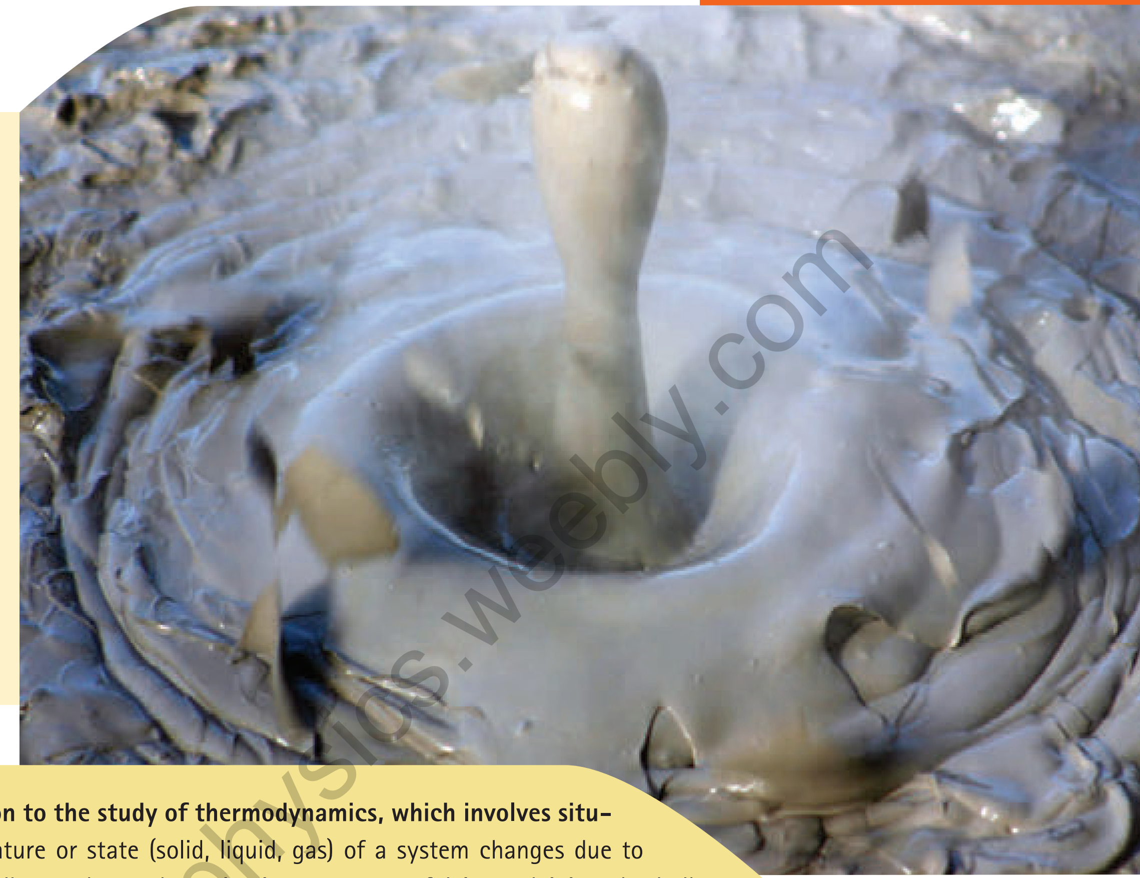
$$y(t) = \sum_n (A_n \sin n\omega t + B_n \cos n\omega t)$$

Now proceed as follows. (a) Multiply both sides of Equation 18.13 by $\sin m\omega t$ and integrate both sides over one period T. Show that the left-hand side of the resulting equation is equal to 0 if m is even and is equal to $4A/m\omega$ if m is odd. (b) Using trigonometric identities, show that all terms on the right-hand side involving B_n are equal to zero. (c) Using trigonometric identities, show that all terms on the right-hand side involving A_n are equal to zero *except* for the one case of $m = n$. (d) Show that the entire right-hand side of the equation reduces to $\frac{1}{2}A_m T$. (e) Show that the Fourier series expansion for a square wave is

$$y(t) = \sum_n \frac{4A}{n\pi} \sin n\omega t$$

Thermodynamics

PART 3



A bubble in one of the many mud pots in Yellowstone National Park is caught just at the moment of popping. A mud pot is a pool of bubbling hot mud that demonstrates the existence of thermodynamic processes below the Earth's surface. *(© Adambooth/Dreamstime.com)*

We now direct our attention to the study of thermodynamics, which involves situ- ations in which the temperature or state (solid, liquid, gas) of a system changes due to energy transfers. As we shall see, thermodynamics is very successful in explaining the bulk properties of matter and the correlation between these properties and the mechanics of atoms and molecules.

Historically, the development of thermodynamics paralleled the development of the atomic theory of matter. By the 1820s, chemical experiments had provided solid evidence for the existence of atoms. At that time, scientists recognized that a connection between thermodynamics and the structure of matter must exist. In 1827, botanist Robert Brown reported that grains of pollen suspended in a liquid move erratically from one place to another as if under constant agitation. In 1905, Albert Einstein used kinetic theory to explain the cause of this erratic motion, known today as *Brownian motion.* Einstein explained this phenomenon by assuming the grains are under constant bombardment by "invisible" molecules in the liquid, which themselves move erratically. This explanation gave scientists insight into the concept of molecular motion and gave credence to the idea that matter is made up of atoms. A connection was thus forged between the everyday world and the tiny, invisible building blocks that make up this world.

Thermodynamics also addresses more practical questions. Have you ever wondered how a refrigerator is able to cool its contents, or what types of transformations occur in a power plant or in the engine of your automobile, or what happens to the kinetic energy of a moving object when the object comes to rest? The laws of thermodynamics can be used to provide explanations for these and other phenomena. ■

CHAPTER
19
Temperature

Why would someone designing a pipeline include these strange loops? Pipelines carrying liquids often contain such loops to allow for expansion and contraction as the temperature changes. We will study thermal expansion in this chapter. *(© Lowell Georgia/CORBIS)*

In our study of mechanics, we carefully defined such concepts as *mass, force,* and *kinetic energy* to facilitate our quantitative approach. Likewise, a quantitative description of thermal phenomena requires careful definitions of such important terms as *temperature, heat,* and *internal energy.* This chapter begins with a discussion of temperature.

Next, when studying thermal phenomena, we consider the importance of the particular substance we are investigating. For example, gases expand appreciably when heated, whereas liquids and solids expand only slightly.

This chapter concludes with a study of ideal gases on the macroscopic scale. Here, we are concerned with the relationships among such quantities as pressure, volume, and temperature of a gas. In Chapter 21, we shall examine gases on a microscopic scale, using a model that represents the components of a gas as small particles.

19.1 Temperature and the Zeroth Law of Thermodynamics

We often associate the concept of temperature with how hot or cold an object feels when we touch it. In this way, our senses provide us with a qualitative indication of temperature. Our senses, however, are unreliable and often mislead us. For exam-

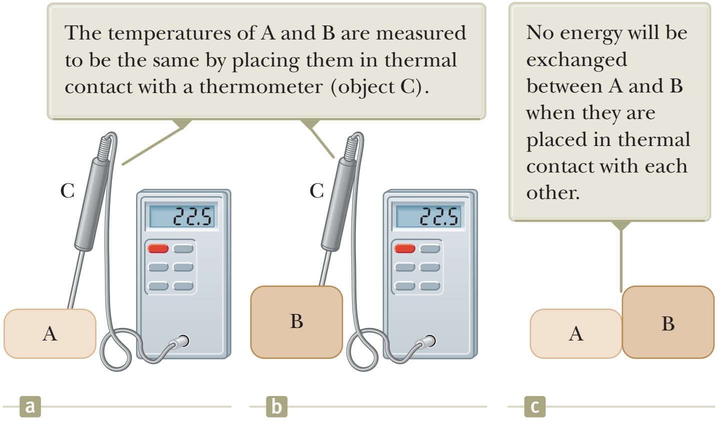


Figure 19.1 The zeroth law of thermodynamics.

ple, if you stand in bare feet with one foot on carpet and the other on an adjacent tile floor, the tile feels colder than the carpet *even though both are at the same temperature*. The two objects feel different because tile transfers energy by heat at a higher rate than carpet does. Your skin "measures" the rate of energy transfer by heat rather than the actual temperature. What we need is a reliable and reproducible method for measuring the relative hotness or coldness of objects rather than the rate of energy transfer. Scientists have developed a variety of thermometers for making such quantitative measurements.

Two objects at different initial temperatures eventually reach some intermediate temperature when placed in contact with each other. For example, when hot water and cold water are mixed in a bathtub, energy is transferred from the hot water to the cold water and the final temperature of the mixture is somewhere between the initial hot and cold temperatures.

Imagine that two objects are placed in an insulated container such that they interact with each other but not with the environment. If the objects are at different temperatures, energy is transferred between them, even if they are initially not in physical contact with each other. The energy-transfer mechanisms from Chapter 8 that we will focus on are heat and electromagnetic radiation. For purposes of this discussion, let's assume two objects are in **thermal contact** with each other if energy can be exchanged between them by these processes due to a temperature difference. **Thermal equilibrium** is a situation in which two objects would not exchange energy by heat or electromagnetic radiation if they were placed in thermal contact.

Let's consider two objects A and B, which are not in thermal contact, and a third object C, which is our thermometer. We wish to determine whether A and B are in thermal equilibrium with each other. The thermometer (object C) is first placed in thermal contact with object A until thermal equilibrium is reached[1] as shown in Figure 19.1a. From that moment on, the thermometer's reading remains constant and we record this reading. The thermometer is then removed from object A and placed in thermal contact with object B as shown in Figure 19.1b. The reading is again recorded after thermal equilibrium is reached. If the two readings are the same, we can conclude that object A and object B are in thermal equilibrium with each other. If they are placed in contact with each other as in Figure 19.1c, there is no exchange of energy between them.

[1]We assume a negligible amount of energy transfers between the thermometer and object A in the time interval during which they are in thermal contact. Without this assumption, which is also made for the thermometer and object B, the measurement of the temperature of an object disturbs the system so that the measured temperature is different from the initial temperature of the object. In practice, whenever you measure a temperature with a thermometer, you measure the disturbed system, not the original system.

We can summarize these results in a statement known as the **zeroth law of thermodynamics** (the law of equilibrium):

Zeroth law of thermodynamics

> If objects A and B are separately in thermal equilibrium with a third object C, then A and B are in thermal equilibrium with each other.

This statement can easily be proved experimentally and is very important because it enables us to define temperature. We can think of **temperature** as the property that determines whether an object is in thermal equilibrium with other objects. Two objects in thermal equilibrium with each other are at the same temperature. Conversely, if two objects have different temperatures, they are not in thermal equilibrium with each other. We now know that temperature is something that determines whether or not energy will transfer between two objects in thermal contact. In Chapter 21, we will relate temperature to the mechanical behavior of molecules.

Quick Quiz 19.1 Two objects, with different sizes, masses, and temperatures, are placed in thermal contact. In which direction does the energy travel? **(a)** Energy travels from the larger object to the smaller object. **(b)** Energy travels from the object with more mass to the one with less mass. **(c)** Energy travels from the object at higher temperature to the object at lower temperature.

19.2 Thermometers and the Celsius Temperature Scale

Thermometers are devices used to measure the temperature of a system. All thermometers are based on the principle that some physical property of a system changes as the system's temperature changes. Some physical properties that change with temperature are (1) the volume of a liquid, (2) the dimensions of a solid, (3) the pressure of a gas at constant volume, (4) the volume of a gas at constant pressure, (5) the electric resistance of a conductor, and (6) the color of an object.

A common thermometer in everyday use consists of a mass of liquid—usually mercury or alcohol—that expands into a glass capillary tube when heated (Fig. 19.2). In this case, the physical property that changes is the volume of a liquid. Any temperature change in the range of the thermometer can be defined as being proportional to the change in length of the liquid column. The thermometer can be calibrated by placing it in thermal contact with a natural system that remains

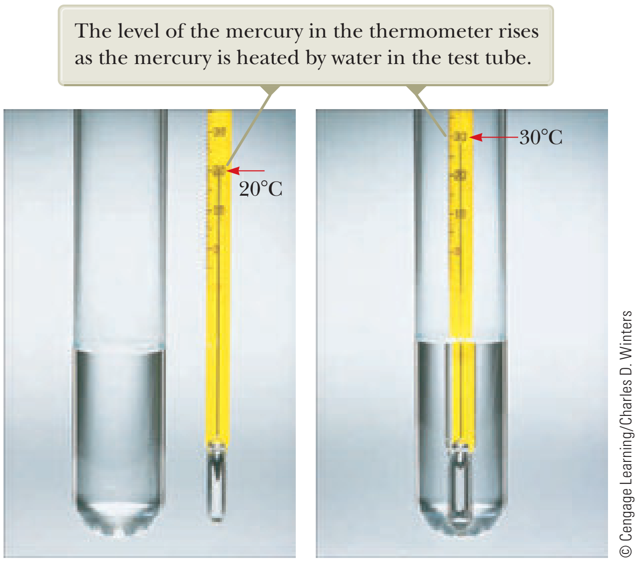


Figure 19.2 A mercury thermometer before and after increasing its temperature.

at constant temperature. One such system is a mixture of water and ice in thermal equilibrium at atmospheric pressure. On the **Celsius temperature scale,** this mixture is defined to have a temperature of zero degrees Celsius, which is written as 0°C; this temperature is called the *ice point* of water. Another commonly used system is a mixture of water and steam in thermal equilibrium at atmospheric pressure; its temperature is defined as 100°C, which is the *steam point* of water. Once the liquid levels in the thermometer have been established at these two points, the length of the liquid column between the two points is divided into 100 equal segments to create the Celsius scale. Therefore, each segment denotes a change in temperature of one Celsius degree.

Thermometers calibrated in this way present problems when extremely accurate readings are needed. For instance, the readings given by an alcohol thermometer calibrated at the ice and steam points of water might agree with those given by a mercury thermometer only at the calibration points. Because mercury and alcohol have different thermal expansion properties, when one thermometer reads a temperature of, for example, 50°C, the other may indicate a slightly different value. The discrepancies between thermometers are especially large when the temperatures to be measured are far from the calibration points.[2]

An additional practical problem of any thermometer is the limited range of temperatures over which it can be used. A mercury thermometer, for example, cannot be used below the freezing point of mercury, which is −39°C, and an alcohol thermometer is not useful for measuring temperatures above 85°C, the boiling point of alcohol. To surmount this problem, we need a universal thermometer whose readings are independent of the substance used in it. The gas thermometer, discussed in the next section, approaches this requirement.

19.3 The Constant-Volume Gas Thermometer and the Absolute Temperature Scale

One version of a gas thermometer is the constant-volume apparatus shown in Figure 19.3. The physical change exploited in this device is the variation of pressure of a fixed volume of gas with temperature. The flask is immersed in an ice-water bath, and mercury reservoir B is raised or lowered until the top of the mercury in column A is at the zero point on the scale. The height h, the difference between the mercury levels in reservoir B and column A, indicates the pressure in the flask at 0°C by means of Equation 14.4, $P = P_0 + \rho g h$.

The flask is then immersed in water at the steam point. Reservoir B is readjusted until the top of the mercury in column A is again at zero on the scale, which ensures that the gas's volume is the same as it was when the flask was in the ice bath (hence the designation "constant-volume"). This adjustment of reservoir B gives a value for the gas pressure at 100°C. These two pressure and temperature values are then plotted as shown in Figure 19.4. The line connecting the two points serves as a calibration curve for unknown temperatures. (Other experiments show that a linear relationship between pressure and temperature is a very good assumption.) To measure the temperature of a substance, the gas flask of Figure 19.3 is placed in thermal contact with the substance and the height of reservoir B is adjusted until the top of the mercury column in A is at zero on the scale. The height of the mercury column in B indicates the pressure of the gas; knowing the pressure, the temperature of the substance is found using the graph in Figure 19.4.

Now suppose temperatures of different gases at different initial pressures are measured with gas thermometers. Experiments show that the thermometer readings are nearly independent of the type of gas used as long as the gas pressure is low and the temperature is well above the point at which the gas liquefies

[2]Two thermometers that use the same liquid may also give different readings, due in part to difficulties in constructing uniform-bore glass capillary tubes.

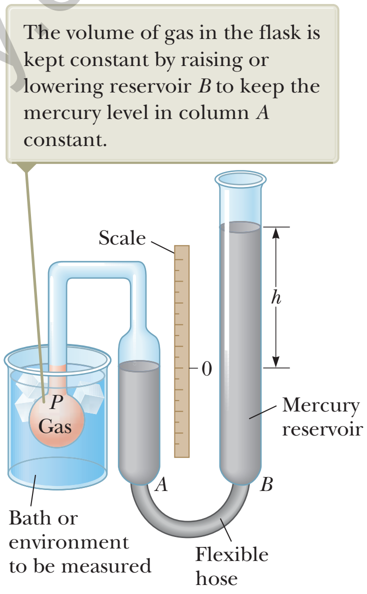


Figure 19.3 A constant-volume gas thermometer measures the pressure of the gas contained in the flask immersed in the bath.

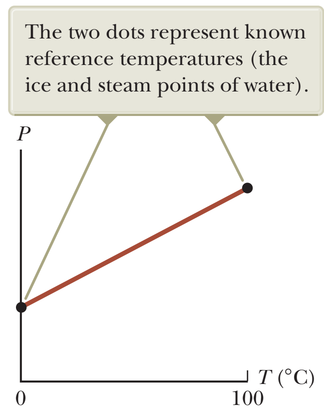


Figure 19.4 A typical graph of pressure versus temperature taken with a constant-volume gas thermometer.

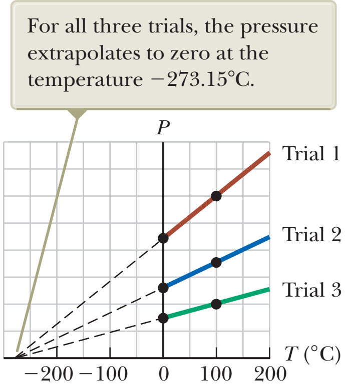


Figure 19.5 Pressure versus temperature for experimental trials in which gases have different pressures in a constant-volume gas thermometer.

(Fig. 19.5). The agreement among thermometers using various gases improves as the pressure is reduced.

If we extend the straight lines in Figure 19.5 toward negative temperatures, we find a remarkable result: **in every case, the pressure is zero when the temperature is −273.15°C!** This finding suggests some special role that this particular temperature must play. It is used as the basis for the **absolute temperature scale,** which sets −273.15°C as its zero point. This temperature is often referred to as **absolute zero.** It is indicated as a zero because at a lower temperature, the pressure of the gas would become negative, which is meaningless. The size of one degree on the absolute temperature scale is chosen to be identical to the size of one degree on the Celsius scale. Therefore, the conversion between these temperatures is

$$T_C = T - 273.15 \tag{19.1}$$

where T_C is the Celsius temperature and T is the absolute temperature.

Pitfall Prevention 19.1

A Matter of Degree Notations for temperatures in the Kelvin scale do not use the degree sign. The unit for a Kelvin temperature is simply "kelvins" and not "degrees Kelvin."

Because the ice and steam points are experimentally difficult to duplicate and depend on atmospheric pressure, an absolute temperature scale based on two new fixed points was adopted in 1954 by the International Committee on Weights and Measures. The first point is absolute zero. The second reference temperature for this new scale was chosen as the **triple point of water,** which is the single combination of temperature and pressure at which liquid water, gaseous water, and ice (solid water) coexist in equilibrium. This triple point occurs at a temperature of 0.01°C and a pressure of 4.58 mm of mercury. On the new scale, which uses the unit *kelvin,* the temperature of water at the triple point was set at 273.16 kelvins, abbreviated 273.16 K. This choice was made so that the old absolute temperature scale based on the ice and steam points would agree closely with the new scale based on the triple point. This new absolute temperature scale (also called the **Kelvin scale**) employs the SI unit of absolute temperature, the **kelvin,** which is defined to be 1/273.16 of the difference between absolute zero and the temperature of the triple point of water.

Figure 19.6 gives the absolute temperature for various physical processes and structures. The temperature of absolute zero (0 K) cannot be achieved, although laboratory experiments have come very close, reaching temperatures of less than one nanokelvin.

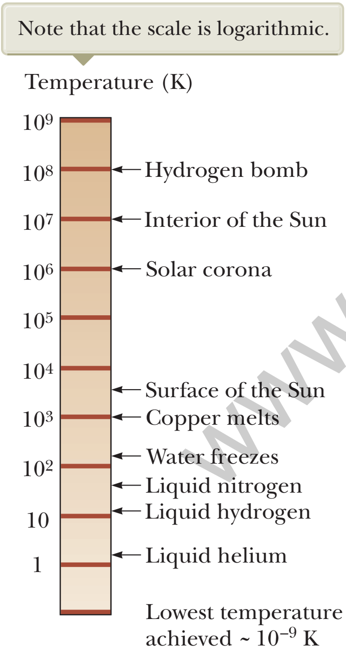


Figure 19.6 Absolute temperatures at which various physical processes occur.

The Celsius, Fahrenheit, and Kelvin Temperature Scales[3]

Equation 19.1 shows that the Celsius temperature T_C is shifted from the absolute (Kelvin) temperature T by 273.15°. Because the size of one degree is the same on the two scales, a temperature difference of 5°C is equal to a temperature difference of 5 K. The two scales differ only in the choice of the zero point. Therefore, the ice-point temperature on the Kelvin scale, 273.15 K, corresponds to 0.00°C, and the Kelvin-scale steam point, 373.15 K, is equivalent to 100.00°C.

A common temperature scale in everyday use in the United States is the **Fahrenheit scale.** This scale sets the temperature of the ice point at 32°F and the temperature of the steam point at 212°F. The relationship between the Celsius and Fahrenheit temperature scales is

$$T_F = \tfrac{9}{5}T_C + 32°\text{F} \tag{19.2}$$

We can use Equations 19.1 and 19.2 to find a relationship between changes in temperature on the Celsius, Kelvin, and Fahrenheit scales:

$$\Delta T_C = \Delta T = \tfrac{5}{9}\Delta T_F \tag{19.3}$$

Of these three temperature scales, only the Kelvin scale is based on a true zero value of temperature. The Celsius and Fahrenheit scales are based on an arbitrary zero associated with one particular substance, water, on one particular planet, the

[3]Named after Anders Celsius (1701–1744), Daniel Gabriel Fahrenheit (1686–1736), and William Thomson, Lord Kelvin (1824–1907), respectively.

Earth. Therefore, if you encounter an equation that calls for a temperature T or that involves a ratio of temperatures, you *must* convert all temperatures to kelvins. If the equation contains a change in temperature ΔT, using Celsius temperatures will give you the correct answer, in light of Equation 19.3, but it is always *safest* to convert temperatures to the Kelvin scale.

Quick Quiz 19.2 Consider the following pairs of materials. Which pair represents two materials, one of which is twice as hot as the other? **(a)** boiling water at 100°C, a glass of water at 50°C **(b)** boiling water at 100°C, frozen methane at −50°C **(c)** an ice cube at −20°C, flames from a circus fire-eater at 233°C **(d)** none of those pairs

Example 19.1 Converting Temperatures

On a day when the temperature reaches 50°F, what is the temperature in degrees Celsius and in kelvins?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize In the United States, a temperature of 50°F is well understood. In many other parts of the world, however, this temperature might be meaningless because people are familiar with the Celsius temperature scale.

Categorize This example is a simple substitution problem.

Solve Equation 19.2 for the Celsius temperature and substitute numerical values:

$$T_C = \frac{5}{9}(T_F - 32) = \frac{5}{9}(50 - 32) = \boxed{10°C}$$

Use Equation 19.1 to find the Kelvin temperature:

$$T = T_C + 273.15 = 10°C + 273.15 = \boxed{283 \text{ K}}$$

A convenient set of weather-related temperature equivalents to keep in mind is that 0°C is (literally) freezing at 32°F, 10°C is cool at 50°F, 20°C is room temperature, 30°C is warm at 86°F, and 40°C is a hot day at 104°F.

19.4 Thermal Expansion of Solids and Liquids

Our discussion of the liquid thermometer makes use of one of the best-known changes in a substance: as its temperature increases, its volume increases. This phenomenon, known as **thermal expansion,** plays an important role in numerous engineering applications. For example, thermal-expansion joints such as those shown in Figure 19.7 must be included in buildings, concrete highways, railroad tracks,

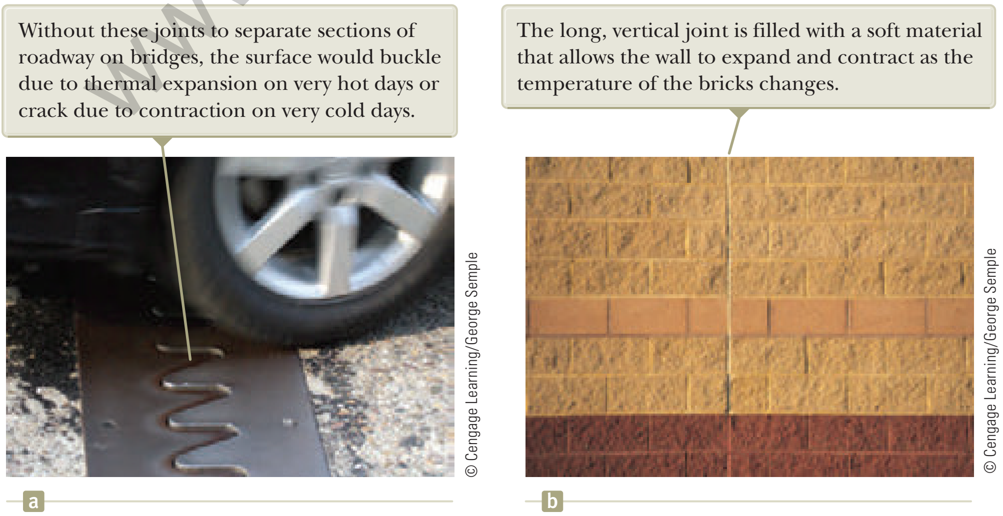


Figure 19.7 Thermal-expansion joints in (a) bridges and (b) walls.

brick walls, and bridges to compensate for dimensional changes that occur as the temperature changes.

Thermal expansion is a consequence of the change in the *average* separation between the atoms in an object. To understand this concept, let's model the atoms as being connected by stiff springs as discussed in Section 15.3 and shown in Figure 15.11b. At ordinary temperatures, the atoms in a solid oscillate about their equilibrium positions with an amplitude of approximately 10^{-11} m and a frequency of approximately 10^{13} Hz. The average spacing between the atoms is about 10^{-10} m. As the temperature of the solid increases, the atoms oscillate with greater amplitudes; as a result, the average separation between them increases.[4] Consequently, the object expands.

If thermal expansion is sufficiently small relative to an object's initial dimensions, the change in any dimension is, to a good approximation, proportional to the first power of the temperature change. Suppose an object has an initial length L_i along some direction at some temperature and the length changes by an amount ΔL for a change in temperature ΔT. Because it is convenient to consider the fractional change in length per degree of temperature change, we define the **average coefficient of linear expansion** as

$$\alpha \equiv \frac{\Delta L / L_i}{\Delta T}$$

Experiments show that α is constant for small changes in temperature. For purposes of calculation, this equation is usually rewritten as

Thermal expansion in one dimension

$$\Delta L = \alpha L_i \Delta T \quad \textbf{(19.4)}$$

or as

$$L_f - L_i = \alpha L_i (T_f - T_i) \quad \textbf{(19.5)}$$

where L_f is the final length, T_i and T_f are the initial and final temperatures, respectively, and the proportionality constant α is the average coefficient of linear expansion for a given material and has units of $(°C)^{-1}$. Equation 19.4 can be used for both thermal expansion, when the temperature of the material increases, and thermal contraction, when its temperature decreases.

Pitfall Prevention 19.2

Do Holes Become Larger or Smaller? When an object's temperature is raised, every linear dimension increases in size. That includes any holes in the material, which expand in the same way as if the hole were filled with the material as shown in Figure 19.8.

It may be helpful to think of thermal expansion as an effective magnification or as a photographic enlargement of an object. For example, as a metal washer is heated (Fig. 19.8), all dimensions, including the radius of the hole, increase according to Equation 19.4. A cavity in a piece of material expands in the same way as if the cavity were filled with the material.

Table 19.1 lists the average coefficients of linear expansion for various materials. For these materials, α is positive, indicating an increase in length with increasing temperature. That is not always the case, however. Some substances—calcite ($CaCO_3$) is one example—expand along one dimension (positive α) and contract along another (negative α) as their temperatures are increased.

Because the linear dimensions of an object change with temperature, it follows that surface area and volume change as well. The change in volume is proportional to the initial volume V_i and to the change in temperature according to the relationship

Thermal expansion in three dimensions

$$\Delta V = \beta V_i \Delta T \quad \textbf{(19.6)}$$

where β is the **average coefficient of volume expansion.** To find the relationship between β and α, assume the average coefficient of linear expansion of the solid is the same in all directions; that is, assume the material is *isotropic*. Consider a solid box of dimensions ℓ, w, and h. Its volume at some temperature T_i is $V_i = \ell w h$. If the

[4]More precisely, thermal expansion arises from the *asymmetrical* nature of the potential energy curve for the atoms in a solid as shown in Figure 15.11a. If the oscillators were truly harmonic, the average atomic separations would not change regardless of the amplitude of vibration.

Table 19.1 Average Expansion Coefficients for Some Materials Near Room Temperature

Material (Solids)	Average Linear Expansion Coefficient (α)(°C)$^{-1}$	Material (Liquids and Gases)	Average Volume Expansion Coefficient (β)(°C)$^{-1}$
Aluminum	24×10^{-6}	Acetone	1.5×10^{-4}
Brass and bronze	19×10^{-6}	Alcohol, ethyl	1.12×10^{-4}
Concrete	12×10^{-6}	Benzene	1.24×10^{-4}
Copper	17×10^{-6}	Gasoline	9.6×10^{-4}
Glass (ordinary)	9×10^{-6}	Glycerin	4.85×10^{-4}
Glass (Pyrex)	3.2×10^{-6}	Mercury	1.82×10^{-4}
Invar (Ni–Fe alloy)	0.9×10^{-6}	Turpentine	9.0×10^{-4}
Lead	29×10^{-6}	Air[a] at 0°C	3.67×10^{-3}
Steel	11×10^{-6}	Helium[a]	3.665×10^{-3}

[a]Gases do not have a specific value for the volume expansion coefficient because the amount of expansion depends on the type of process through which the gas is taken. The values given here assume the gas undergoes an expansion at constant pressure.

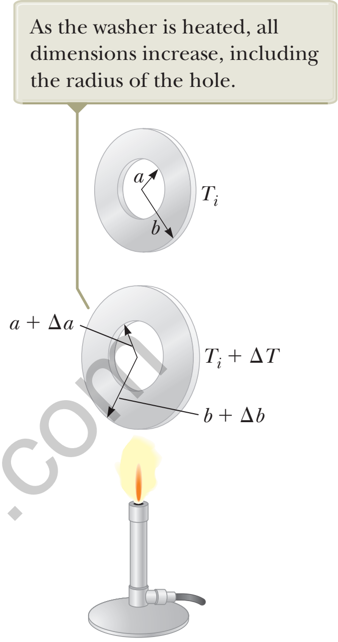


Figure 19.8 Thermal expansion of a homogeneous metal washer. (The expansion is exaggerated in this figure.)

temperature changes to $T_i + \Delta T$, its volume changes to $V_i + \Delta V$, where each dimension changes according to Equation 19.4. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} V_i + \Delta V &= (\ell + \Delta\ell)(w + \Delta w)(h + \Delta h) \\ &= (\ell + \alpha\ell\,\Delta T)(w + \alpha w\,\Delta T)(h + \alpha h\,\Delta T) \\ &= \ell w h(1 + \alpha\,\Delta T)^3 \\ &= V_i[1 + 3\alpha\,\Delta T + 3(\alpha\,\Delta T)^2 + (\alpha\,\Delta T)^3] \end{aligned}$$

Dividing both sides by V_i and isolating the term $\Delta V/V_i$, we obtain the fractional change in volume:

$$\frac{\Delta V}{V_i} = 3\alpha\,\Delta T + 3(\alpha\,\Delta T)^2 + (\alpha\,\Delta T)^3$$

Because $\alpha\,\Delta T << 1$ for typical values of ΔT ($< \sim 100$°C), we can neglect the terms $3(\alpha\,\Delta T)^2$ and $(\alpha\,\Delta T)^3$. Upon making this approximation, we see that

$$\frac{\Delta V}{V_i} = 3\alpha\,\Delta T \rightarrow \Delta V = (3\alpha)V_i\,\Delta T$$

Comparing this expression to Equation 19.6 shows that

$$\beta = 3\alpha$$

In a similar way, you can show that the change in area of a rectangular plate is given by $\Delta A = 2\alpha A_i\,\Delta T$ (see Problem 61).

A simple mechanism called a *bimetallic strip,* found in practical devices such as mechanical thermostats, uses the difference in coefficients of expansion for different materials. It consists of two thin strips of dissimilar metals bonded together. As the temperature of the strip increases, the two metals expand by different amounts and the strip bends as shown in Figure 19.9.

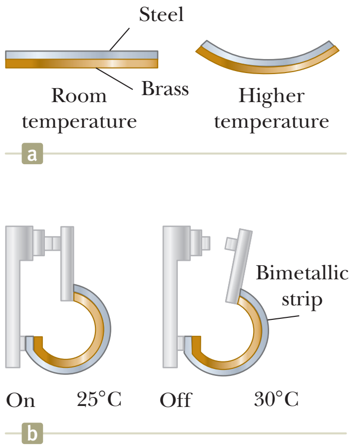


Figure 19.9 (a) A bimetallic strip bends as the temperature changes because the two metals have different expansion coefficients. (b) A bimetallic strip used in a thermostat to break or make electrical contact.

Quick Quiz 19.3 If you are asked to make a very sensitive glass thermometer, which of the following working liquids would you choose? **(a)** mercury **(b)** alcohol **(c)** gasoline **(d)** glycerin

Quick Quiz 19.4 Two spheres are made of the same metal and have the same radius, but one is hollow and the other is solid. The spheres are taken through the same temperature increase. Which sphere expands more? **(a)** The solid sphere expands more. **(b)** The hollow sphere expands more. **(c)** They expand by the same amount. **(d)** There is not enough information to say.

Example 19.2 Expansion of a Railroad Track

A segment of steel railroad track has a length of 30.000 m when the temperature is 0.0°C.

(A) What is its length when the temperature is 40.0°C?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Because the rail is relatively long, we expect to obtain a measurable increase in length for a 40°C temperature increase.

Categorize We will evaluate a length increase using the discussion of this section, so this part of the example is a substitution problem.

Use Equation 19.4 and the value of the coefficient of linear expansion from Table 19.1:

$$\Delta L = \alpha L_i \Delta T = [11 \times 10^{-6}\ (°\text{C})^{-1}](30.000\text{ m})(40.0°\text{C}) = 0.013\text{ m}$$

Find the new length of the track:

$$L_f = 30.000\text{ m} + 0.013\text{ m} = \boxed{30.013\text{ m}}$$

(B) Suppose the ends of the rail are rigidly clamped at 0.0°C so that expansion is prevented. What is the thermal stress set up in the rail if its temperature is raised to 40.0°C?

SOLUTION

Categorize This part of the example is an analysis problem because we need to use concepts from another chapter.

Analyze The thermal stress is the same as the tensile stress in the situation in which the rail expands freely and is then compressed with a mechanical force F back to its original length.

Find the tensile stress from Equation 12.6 using Young's modulus for steel from Table 12.1:

$$\text{Tensile stress} = \frac{F}{A} = Y\frac{\Delta L}{L_i}$$

$$\frac{F}{A} = (20 \times 10^{10}\text{ N/m}^2)\left(\frac{0.013\text{ m}}{30.000\text{ m}}\right) = \boxed{8.7 \times 10^7\text{ N/m}^2}$$

Finalize The expansion in part (A) is 1.3 cm. This expansion is indeed measurable as predicted in the Conceptualize step. The thermal stress in part (B) can be avoided by leaving small expansion gaps between the rails.

WHAT IF? What if the temperature drops to −40.0°C? What is the length of the unclamped segment?

Answer The expression for the change in length in Equation 19.4 is the same whether the temperature increases or decreases. Therefore, if there is an increase in length of 0.013 m when the temperature increases by 40°C, there is a decrease in length of 0.013 m when the temperature decreases by 40°C. (We assume α is constant over the entire range of temperatures.) The new length at the colder temperature is 30.000 m − 0.013 m = 29.987 m.

Example 19.3 The Thermal Electrical Short

A poorly designed electronic device has two bolts attached to different parts of the device that almost touch each other in its interior as in Figure 19.10. The steel and brass bolts are at different electric potentials, and if they touch, a short circuit will develop, damaging the device. (We will study electric potential in Chapter 25.) The initial gap between the ends of the bolts is $d = 5.0\ \mu\text{m}$ at 27°C. At what temperature will the bolts touch? Assume the distance between the walls of the device is not affected by the temperature change.

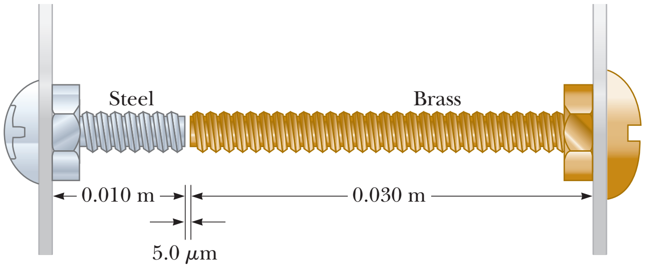


Figure 19.10 (Example 19.3) Two bolts attached to different parts of an electrical device are almost touching when the temperature is 27°C. As the temperature increases, the ends of the bolts move toward each other.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine the ends of both bolts expanding into the gap between them as the temperature rises.

19.3 continued

Categorize We categorize this example as a thermal expansion problem in which the *sum* of the changes in length of the two bolts must equal the length of the initial gap between the ends.

Analyze Set the sum of the length changes equal to the width of the gap:

$$\Delta L_{br} + \Delta L_{st} = \alpha_{br} L_{i,br}\, \Delta T + \alpha_{st} L_{i,st}\, \Delta T = d$$

Solve for ΔT:

$$\Delta T = \frac{d}{\alpha_{br} L_{i,br} + \alpha_{st} L_{i,st}}$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$\Delta T = \frac{5.0 \times 10^{-6}\text{ m}}{[19 \times 10^{-6}\,(°\text{C})^{-1}](0.030\text{ m}) + [11 \times 10^{-6}\,(°\text{C})^{-1}](0.010\text{ m})} = 7.4°\text{C}$$

Find the temperature at which the bolts touch:

$$T = 27°\text{C} + 7.4°\text{C} = 34°\text{C}$$

Finalize This temperature is possible if the air conditioning in the building housing the device fails for a long period on a very hot summer day.

The Unusual Behavior of Water

Liquids generally increase in volume with increasing temperature and have average coefficients of volume expansion about ten times greater than those of solids. Cold water is an exception to this rule as you can see from its density-versus-temperature curve shown in Figure 19.11. As the temperature increases from 0°C to 4°C, water contracts and its density therefore increases. Above 4°C, water expands with increasing temperature and so its density decreases. Therefore, the density of water reaches a maximum value of 1.000 g/cm^3 at 4°C.

We can use this unusual thermal-expansion behavior of water to explain why a pond begins freezing at the surface rather than at the bottom. When the air temperature drops from, for example, 7°C to 6°C, the surface water also cools and consequently decreases in volume. The surface water is denser than the water below it, which has not cooled and decreased in volume. As a result, the surface water sinks, and warmer water from below moves to the surface. When the air temperature is between 4°C and 0°C, however, the surface water expands as it cools, becoming less dense than the water below it. The mixing process stops, and eventually the surface water freezes. As the water freezes, the ice remains on the surface because ice is less dense than water. The ice continues to build up at the surface, while water near the

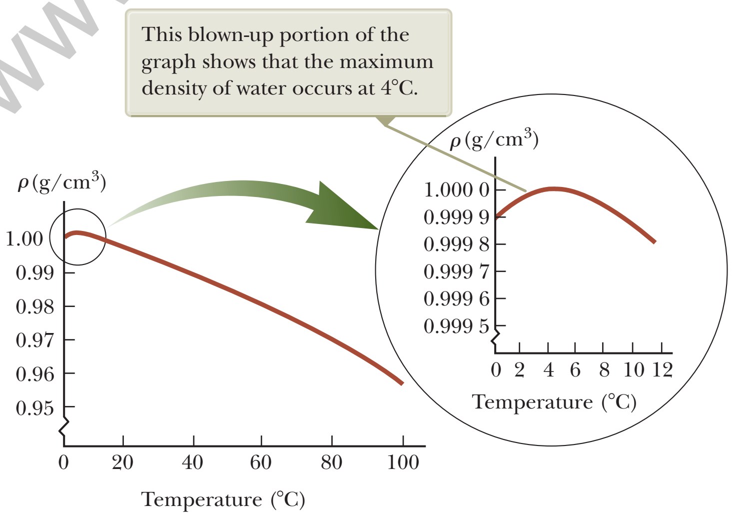


Figure 19.11 The variation in the density of water at atmospheric pressure with temperature.

bottom remains at 4°C. If that were not the case, fish and other forms of marine life would not survive.

19.5 Macroscopic Description of an Ideal Gas

The volume expansion equation $\Delta V = \beta V_i \, \Delta T$ is based on the assumption that the material has an initial volume V_i before the temperature change occurs. Such is the case for solids and liquids because they have a fixed volume at a given temperature.

The case for gases is completely different. The interatomic forces within gases are very weak, and, in many cases, we can imagine these forces to be nonexistent and still make very good approximations. Therefore, *there is no equilibrium separation* for the atoms and no "standard" volume at a given temperature; the volume depends on the size of the container. As a result, we cannot express changes in volume ΔV in a process on a gas with Equation 19.6 because we have no defined volume V_i at the beginning of the process. Equations involving gases contain the volume V, rather than a *change* in the volume from an initial value, as a variable.

For a gas, it is useful to know how the quantities volume V, pressure P, and temperature T are related for a sample of gas of mass m. In general, the equation that interrelates these quantities, called the *equation of state,* is very complicated. If the gas is maintained at a very low pressure (or low density), however, the equation of state is quite simple and can be determined from experimental results. Such a low-density gas is commonly referred to as an **ideal gas.**[5] We can use the **ideal gas model** to make predictions that are adequate to describe the behavior of real gases at low pressures.

It is convenient to express the amount of gas in a given volume in terms of the number of moles n. One **mole** of any substance is that amount of the substance that contains **Avogadro's number** $N_A = 6.022 \times 10^{23}$ of constituent particles (atoms or molecules). The number of moles n of a substance is related to its mass m through the expression

$$n = \frac{m}{M} \tag{19.7}$$

where M is the molar mass of the substance. The molar mass of each chemical element is the atomic mass (from the periodic table; see Appendix C) expressed in grams per mole. For example, the mass of one He atom is 4.00 u (atomic mass units), so the molar mass of He is 4.00 g/mol.

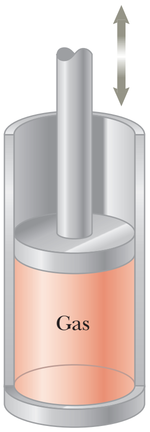


Figure 19.12 An ideal gas confined to a cylinder whose volume can be varied by means of a movable piston.

Now suppose an ideal gas is confined to a cylindrical container whose volume can be varied by means of a movable piston as in Figure 19.12. If we assume the cylinder does not leak, the mass (or the number of moles) of the gas remains constant. For such a system, experiments provide the following information:

- When the gas is kept at a constant temperature, its pressure is inversely proportional to the volume. (This behavior is described historically as Boyle's law.)
- When the pressure of the gas is kept constant, the volume is directly proportional to the temperature. (This behavior is described historically as Charles's law.)
- When the volume of the gas is kept constant, the pressure is directly proportional to the temperature. (This behavior is described historically as Gay–Lussac's law.)

These observations are summarized by the **equation of state for an ideal gas:**

Equation of state for an ideal gas ▶

$$PV = nRT \tag{19.8}$$

[5] To be more specific, the assumptions here are that the temperature of the gas must not be too low (the gas must not condense into a liquid) or too high and that the pressure must be low. The concept of an ideal gas implies that the gas molecules do not interact except upon collision and that the molecular volume is negligible compared with the volume of the container. In reality, an ideal gas does not exist. The concept of an ideal gas is nonetheless very useful because real gases at low pressures are well-modeled as ideal gases.

In this expression, also known as the **ideal gas law,** n is the number of moles of gas in the sample and R is a constant. Experiments on numerous gases show that as the pressure approaches zero, the quantity PV/nT approaches the same value R for all gases. For this reason, R is called the **universal gas constant.** In SI units, in which pressure is expressed in pascals ($1 \text{ Pa} = 1 \text{ N/m}^2$) and volume in cubic meters, the product PV has units of newton · meters, or joules, and R has the value

$$R = 8.314 \text{ J/mol} \cdot \text{K} \tag{19.9}$$

If the pressure is expressed in atmospheres and the volume in liters ($1 \text{ L} = 10^3 \text{ cm}^3 = 10^{-3} \text{ m}^3$), then R has the value

$$R = 0.082\,06 \text{ L} \cdot \text{atm/mol} \cdot \text{K}$$

Using this value of R and Equation 19.8 shows that the volume occupied by 1 mol of *any* gas at atmospheric pressure and at 0°C (273 K) is 22.4 L.

The ideal gas law states that if the volume and temperature of a fixed amount of gas do not change, the pressure also remains constant. Consider a bottle of champagne that is shaken and then spews liquid when opened as shown in Figure 19.13. A common misconception is that the pressure inside the bottle is increased when the bottle is shaken. On the contrary, because the temperature of the bottle and its contents remains constant as long as the bottle is sealed, so does the pressure, as can be shown by replacing the cork with a pressure gauge. The correct explanation is as follows. Carbon dioxide gas resides in the volume between the liquid surface and the cork. The pressure of the gas in this volume is set higher than atmospheric pressure in the bottling process. Shaking the bottle displaces some of the carbon dioxide gas into the liquid, where it forms bubbles, and these bubbles become attached to the inside of the bottle. (No new gas is generated by shaking.) When the bottle is opened, the pressure is reduced to atmospheric pressure, which causes the volume of the bubbles to increase suddenly. If the bubbles are attached to the bottle (beneath the liquid surface), their rapid expansion expels liquid from the bottle. If the sides and bottom of the bottle are first tapped until no bubbles remain beneath the surface, however, the drop in pressure does not force liquid from the bottle when the champagne is opened.

The ideal gas law is often expressed in terms of the total number of molecules N. Because the number of moles n equals the ratio of the total number of molecules and Avogadro's number N_A, we can write Equation 19.8 as

$$PV = nRT = \frac{N}{N_A} RT$$

$$PV = Nk_B T \tag{19.10}$$

where k_B is **Boltzmann's constant,** which has the value

$$k_B = \frac{R}{N_A} = 1.38 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J/K} \tag{19.11}$$

◀ Boltzmann's constant

It is common to call quantities such as P, V, and T the **thermodynamic variables** of an ideal gas. If the equation of state is known, one of the variables can always be expressed as some function of the other two.

Quick Quiz 19.5 A common material for cushioning objects in packages is made by trapping bubbles of air between sheets of plastic. Is this material more effective at keeping the contents of the package from moving around inside the package on **(a)** a hot day, **(b)** a cold day, or **(c)** either hot or cold days?

Quick Quiz 19.6 On a winter day, you turn on your furnace and the temperature of the air inside your home increases. Assume your home has the normal amount of leakage between inside air and outside air. Is the number of moles of air in your room at the higher temperature **(a)** larger than before, **(b)** smaller than before, or **(c)** the same as before?

Figure 19.13 A bottle of champagne is shaken and opened. Liquid spews out of the opening. A common misconception is that the pressure inside the bottle is increased by the shaking.

Pitfall Prevention 19.3

So Many *k*s There are a variety of physical quantities for which the letter k is used. Two we have seen previously are the force constant for a spring (Chapter 15) and the wave number for a mechanical wave (Chapter 16). Boltzmann's constant is another k, and we will see k used for thermal conductivity in Chapter 20 and for an electrical constant in Chapter 23. To make some sense of this confusing state of affairs, we use a subscript B for Boltzmann's constant to help us recognize it. In this book, you will see Boltzmann's constant as k_B, but you may see Boltzmann's constant in other resources as simply k.

Example 19.4 Heating a Spray Can

A spray can containing a propellant gas at twice atmospheric pressure (202 kPa) and having a volume of 125.00 cm^3 is at 22°C. It is then tossed into an open fire. (*Warning:* Do not do this experiment; it is very dangerous.) When the temperature of the gas in the can reaches 195°C, what is the pressure inside the can? Assume any change in the volume of the can is negligible.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Intuitively, you should expect that the pressure of the gas in the container increases because of the increasing temperature.

Categorize We model the gas in the can as ideal and use the ideal gas law to calculate the new pressure.

Analyze Rearrange Equation 19.8:

$$(1)\quad \frac{PV}{T} = nR$$

No air escapes during the compression, so n, and therefore nR, remains constant. Hence, set the initial value of the left side of Equation (1) equal to the final value:

$$(2)\quad \frac{P_iV_i}{T_i} = \frac{P_fV_f}{T_f}$$

Because the initial and final volumes of the gas are assumed to be equal, cancel the volumes:

$$(3)\quad \frac{P_i}{T_i} = \frac{P_f}{T_f}$$

Solve for P_f:

$$P_f = \left(\frac{T_f}{T_i}\right)P_i = \left(\frac{468\text{ K}}{295\text{ K}}\right)(202\text{ kPa}) = \boxed{320\text{ kPa}}$$

Finalize The higher the temperature, the higher the pressure exerted by the trapped gas as expected. If the pressure increases sufficiently, the can may explode. Because of this possibility, you should never dispose of spray cans in a fire.

WHAT IF? Suppose we include a volume change due to thermal expansion of the steel can as the temperature increases. Does that alter our answer for the final pressure significantly?

Answer Because the thermal expansion coefficient of steel is very small, we do not expect much of an effect on our final answer.

Find the change in the volume of the can using Equation 19.6 and the value for α for steel from Table 19.1:

$$\Delta V = \beta V_i\,\Delta T = 3\alpha V_i\,\Delta T$$
$$= 3[11 \times 10^{-6}\,(°\text{C})^{-1}](125.00\text{ cm}^3)(173°\text{C}) = 0.71\text{ cm}^3$$

Start from Equation (2) again and find an equation for the final pressure:

$$P_f = \left(\frac{T_f}{T_i}\right)\left(\frac{V_i}{V_f}\right)P_i$$

This result differs from Equation (3) only in the factor V_i/V_f. Evaluate this factor:

$$\frac{V_i}{V_f} = \frac{125.00\text{ cm}^3}{(125.00\text{ cm}^3 + 0.71\text{ cm}^3)} = 0.994 = 99.4\%$$

Therefore, the final pressure will differ by only 0.6% from the value calculated without considering the thermal expansion of the can. Taking 99.4% of the previous final pressure, the final pressure including thermal expansion is 318 kPa.

Summary

Definitions

Two objects are in **thermal equilibrium** with each other if they do not exchange energy when in thermal contact.

Temperature is the property that determines whether an object is in thermal equilibrium with other objects. Two objects in thermal equilibrium with each other are at the same temperature. The SI unit of absolute temperature is the **kelvin,** which is defined to be 1/273.16 of the difference between absolute zero and the temperature of the triple point of water.

Concepts and Principles

The **zeroth law of thermodynamics** states that if objects A and B are separately in thermal equilibrium with a third object C, then objects A and B are in thermal equilibrium with each other.

When the temperature of an object is changed by an amount ΔT, its length changes by an amount ΔL that is proportional to ΔT and to its initial length L_i:

$$\Delta L = \alpha L_i \Delta T \quad \textbf{(19.4)}$$

where the constant α is the **average coefficient of linear expansion.** The **average coefficient of volume expansion** β for a solid is approximately equal to 3α.

An **ideal gas** is one for which PV/nT is constant. An ideal gas is described by the **equation of state,**

$$PV = nRT \quad \textbf{(19.8)}$$

where n equals the number of moles of the gas, P is its pressure, V is its volume, R is the universal gas constant (8.314 J/mol · K), and T is the absolute temperature of the gas. A real gas behaves approximately as an ideal gas if it has a low density.

Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. Markings to indicate length are placed on a steel tape in a room that is at a temperature of 22°C. Measurements are then made with the same tape on a day when the temperature is 27°C. Assume the objects you are measuring have a smaller coefficient of linear expansion than steel. Are the measurements (a) too long, (b) too short, or (c) accurate?

2. When a certain gas under a pressure of 5.00×10^6 Pa at 25.0°C is allowed to expand to 3.00 times its original volume, its final pressure is 1.07×10^6 Pa. What is its final temperature? (a) 450 K (b) 233 K (c) 212 K (d) 191 K (e) 115 K

3. If the volume of an ideal gas is doubled while its temperature is quadrupled, does the pressure (a) remain the same, (b) decrease by a factor of 2, (c) decrease by a factor of 4, (d) increase by a factor of 2, or (e) increase by a factor of 4

4. The pendulum of a certain pendulum clock is made of brass. When the temperature increases, what happens to the period of the clock? (a) It increases. (b) It decreases. (c) It remains the same.

5. A temperature of 162°F is equivalent to what temperature in kelvins? (a) 373 K (b) 288 K (c) 345 K (d) 201 K (e) 308 K

6. A cylinder with a piston holds 0.50 m^3 of oxygen at an absolute pressure of 4.0 atm. The piston is pulled outward, increasing the volume of the gas until the pressure drops to 1.0 atm. If the temperature stays constant, what new volume does the gas occupy? (a) 1.0 m^3 (b) 1.5 m^3 (c) 2.0 m^3 (d) 0.12 m^3 (e) 2.5 m^3

7. What would happen if the glass of a thermometer expanded more on warming than did the liquid in the tube? (a) The thermometer would break. (b) It could be used only for temperatures below room temperature. (c) You would have to hold it with the bulb on top. (d) The scale on the thermometer is reversed so that higher temperature values would be found closer to the bulb. (e) The numbers would not be evenly spaced.

8. A cylinder with a piston contains a sample of a thin gas. The kind of gas and the sample size can be changed. The cylinder can be placed in different constant-temperature baths, and the piston can be held in different positions. Rank the following cases according to the pressure of the gas from the highest to the lowest, displaying any cases of equality. (a) A 0.002-mol sample of oxygen is held at 300 K in a 100-cm^3 container. (b) A 0.002-mol sample of oxygen is held at 600 K in a 200-cm^3 container. (c) A 0.002-mol sample of oxygen is held at 600 K in a 300-cm^3 container. (d) A 0.004-mol sample of helium is held at 300 K in a 200-cm^3 container. (e) A 0.004-mol sample of helium is held at 250 K in a 200-cm^3 container.

9. Two cylinders A and B at the same temperature contain the same quantity of the same kind of gas. Cylinder A has three times the volume of cylinder B. What can you conclude about the pressures the gases exert? (a) We can conclude nothing about the pressures.

(b) The pressure in A is three times the pressure in B. (c) The pressures must be equal. (d) The pressure in A must be one-third the pressure in B.

10. A rubber balloon is filled with 1 L of air at 1 atm and 300 K and is then put into a cryogenic refrigerator at 100 K. The rubber remains flexible as it cools. **(i)** What happens to the volume of the balloon? (a) It decreases to $\frac{1}{3}$ L. (b) It decreases to $1/\sqrt{3}$ L. (c) It is constant. (d) It increases to $\sqrt{3}$ L. (e) It increases to 3 L. **(ii)** What happens to the pressure of the air in the balloon? (a) It decreases to $\frac{1}{3}$ atm. (b) It decreases to $1/\sqrt{3}$ atm. (c) It is constant. (d) It increases to $\sqrt{3}$ atm. (e) It increases to 3 atm.

11. The average coefficient of linear expansion of copper is 17×10^{-6} $(°C)^{-1}$. The Statue of Liberty is 93 m tall on a summer morning when the temperature is 25°C. Assume the copper plates covering the statue are mounted edge to edge without expansion joints and do not buckle or bind on the framework supporting them as the day grows hot. What is the order of magnitude of the statue's increase in height? (a) 0.1 mm (b) 1 mm (c) 1 cm (d) 10 cm (e) 1 m

12. Suppose you empty a tray of ice cubes into a bowl partly full of water and cover the bowl. After one-half hour, the contents of the bowl come to thermal equilibrium, with more liquid water and less ice than you started with. Which of the following is true? (a) The temperature of the liquid water is higher than the temperature of the remaining ice. (b) The temperature of the liquid water is the same as that of the ice. (c) The temperature of the liquid water is less than that of the ice. (d) The comparative temperatures of the liquid water and ice depend on the amounts present.

13. A hole is drilled in a metal plate. When the metal is raised to a higher temperature, what happens to the diameter of the hole? (a) It decreases. (b) It increases. (c) It remains the same. (d) The answer depends on the initial temperature of the metal. (e) None of those answers is correct.

14. On a very cold day in upstate New York, the temperature is −25°C, which is equivalent to what Fahrenheit temperature? (a) −46°F (b) −77°F (c) 18°F (d) −25°F (e) −13°F

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. Common thermometers are made of a mercury column in a glass tube. Based on the operation of these thermometers, which has the larger coefficient of linear expansion, glass or mercury? (Don't answer the question by looking in a table.)

2. A piece of copper is dropped into a beaker of water. (a) If the water's temperature rises, what happens to the temperature of the copper? (b) Under what conditions are the water and copper in thermal equilibrium?

3. (a) What does the ideal gas law predict about the volume of a sample of gas at absolute zero? (b) Why is this prediction incorrect?

4. Some picnickers stop at a convenience store to buy some food, including bags of potato chips. They then drive up into the mountains to their picnic site. When they unload the food, they notice that the bags of chips are puffed up like balloons. Why did that happen?

5. In describing his upcoming trip to the Moon, and as portrayed in the movie *Apollo 13* (Universal, 1995), astronaut Jim Lovell said, "I'll be walking in a place where there's a 400-degree difference between sunlight and shadow." Suppose an astronaut standing on the Moon holds a thermometer in his gloved hand. (a) Is the thermometer reading the temperature of the vacuum at the Moon's surface? (b) Does it read any temperature? If so, what object or substance has that temperature?

6. Metal lids on glass jars can often be loosened by running hot water over them. Why does that work?

7. An automobile radiator is filled to the brim with water when the engine is cool. (a) What happens to the water when the engine is running and the water has been raised to a high temperature? (b) What do modern automobiles have in their cooling systems to prevent the loss of coolants?

8. When the metal ring and metal sphere in Figure CQ19.8 are both at room temperature, the sphere can barely be passed through the ring. (a) After the sphere is warmed in a flame, it cannot be passed through the ring. Explain. (b) **What If?** What if the ring is warmed and the sphere is left at room temperature? Does the sphere pass through the ring?

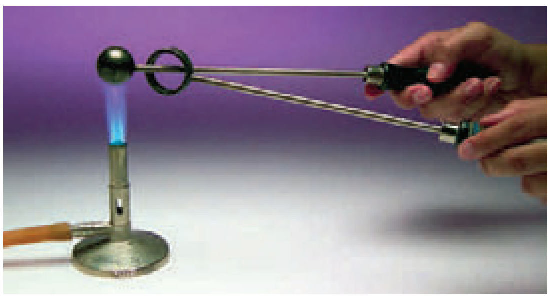


Figure CQ19.8

9. Is it possible for two objects to be in thermal equilibrium if they are not in contact with each other? Explain.

10. Use a periodic table of the elements (see Appendix C) to determine the number of grams in one mole of (a) hydrogen, which has diatomic molecules; (b) helium; and (c) carbon monoxide.

Problems

The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 19.2 Thermometers and the Celsius Temperature Scale

Section 19.3 The Constant-Volume Gas Thermometer and the Absolute Temperature Scale

1. A nurse measures the temperature of a patient to be 41.5°C. (a) What is this temperature on the Fahrenheit scale? (b) Do you think the patient is seriously ill? Explain.

2. The temperature difference between the inside and the outside of a home on a cold winter day is 57.0°F. Express this difference on (a) the Celsius scale and (b) the Kelvin scale.

3. Convert the following temperatures to their values on the Fahrenheit and Kelvin scales: (a) the sublimation point of dry ice, −78.5°C; (b) human body temperature, 37.0°C.

4. The boiling point of liquid hydrogen is 20.3 K at atmospheric pressure. What is this temperature on (a) the Celsius scale and (b) the Fahrenheit scale?

5. Liquid nitrogen has a boiling point of −195.81°C at atmospheric pressure. Express this temperature (a) in degrees Fahrenheit and (b) in kelvins.

6. Death Valley holds the record for the highest recorded temperature in the United States. On July 10, 1913, at a place called Furnace Creek Ranch, the temperature rose to 134°F. The lowest U.S. temperature ever recorded occurred at Prospect Creek Camp in Alaska on January 23, 1971, when the temperature plummeted to −79.8° F. (a) Convert these temperatures to the Celsius scale. (b) Convert the Celsius temperatures to Kelvin.

7. M In a student experiment, a constant-volume gas thermometer is calibrated in dry ice (−78.5°C) and in boiling ethyl alcohol (78.0°C). The separate pressures are 0.900 atm and 1.635 atm. (a) What value of absolute zero in degrees Celsius does the calibration yield? What pressures would be found at (b) the freezing and (c) the boiling points of water? *Hint:* Use the linear relationship $P = A + BT$, where A and B are constants.

Section 19.4 Thermal Expansion of Solids and Liquids

Note: Table 19.1 is available for use in solving problems in this section.

8. W The concrete sections of a certain superhighway are designed to have a length of 25.0 m. The sections are poured and cured at 10.0°C. What minimum spacing should the engineer leave between the sections to eliminate buckling if the concrete is to reach a temperature of 50.0°C?

9. M The active element of a certain laser is made of a glass rod 30.0 cm long and 1.50 cm in diameter. Assume the average coefficient of linear expansion of the glass is equal to $9.00 \times 10^{-6}\ (°C)^{-1}$. If the temperature of the rod increases by 65.0°C, what is the increase in (a) its length, (b) its diameter, and (c) its volume?

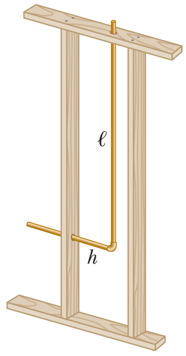


Figure P19.10

10. **Review.** Inside the wall of a house, an L-shaped section of hot-water pipe consists of three parts: a straight, horizontal piece $h = 28.0$ cm long; an elbow; and a straight, vertical piece $\ell = 134$ cm long (Fig. P19.10). A stud and a second-story floorboard hold the ends of this section of copper pipe stationary. Find the magnitude and direction of the displacement of the pipe elbow when the water flow is turned on, raising the temperature of the pipe from 18.0°C to 46.5°C.

11. M A copper telephone wire has essentially no sag between poles 35.0 m apart on a winter day when the temperature is −20.0°C. How much longer is the wire on a summer day when the temperature is 35.0°C?

12. A pair of eyeglass frames is made of epoxy plastic. At room temperature (20.0°C), the frames have circular lens holes 2.20 cm in radius. To what temperature must the frames be heated if lenses 2.21 cm in radius are to be inserted in them? The average coefficient of linear expansion for epoxy is $1.30 \times 10^{-4}\ (°C)^{-1}$.

13. The Trans-Alaska pipeline is 1 300 km long, reaching from Prudhoe Bay to the port of Valdez. It experiences temperatures from −73°C to +35°C. How much does the steel pipeline expand because of the difference in temperature? How can this expansion be compensated for?

14. Each year thousands of children are badly burned by hot tap water. Figure P19.14 (page 584) shows a cross-sectional view of an antiscalding faucet attachment designed to prevent such accidents. Within the device, a spring made of material with a high coefficient of thermal expansion controls a movable plunger. When the water temperature rises above a preset safe value, the expansion of the spring causes the plunger to shut off the water flow. Assuming that the initial length L of the unstressed spring is 2.40 cm and its coefficient of linear expansion is 22.0×10^{-6} $(°C)^{-1}$, determine the increase in length of the spring when the water temperature rises by 30.0°C. (You will find the increase in length to be small. Therefore, to provide a greater variation in valve opening for the temperature change anticipated, actual devices have a more complicated mechanical design.)

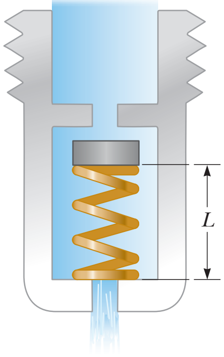


Figure P19.14

15. A square hole 8.00 cm along each side is cut in a sheet of copper. (a) Calculate the change in the area of this hole resulting when the temperature of the sheet is increased by 50.0 K. (b) Does this change represent an increase or a decrease in the area enclosed by the hole?

16. The average coefficient of volume expansion for carbon tetrachloride is 5.81×10^{-4} $(°C)^{-1}$. If a 50.0-gal steel container is filled completely with carbon tetrachloride when the temperature is 10.0°C, how much will spill over when the temperature rises to 30.0°C?

17. At 20.0°C, an aluminum ring has an inner diameter of 5.000 0 cm and a brass rod has a diameter of 5.050 0 cm. (a) If only the ring is warmed, what temperature must it reach so that it will just slip over the rod? (b) **What If?** If both the ring and the rod are warmed together, what temperature must they both reach so that the ring barely slips over the rod? (c) Would this latter process work? Explain. *Hint:* Consult Table 20.2 in the next chapter.

18. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A thin brass ring has an inner diameter 10.00 cm at 20.0°C. A solid aluminum cylinder has diameter 10.02 cm at 20.0°C. Assume the average coefficients of linear expansion of the two metals are constant. Both metals are cooled together to a temperature at which the ring can be slipped over the end of the cylinder.

19. A volumetric flask made of Pyrex is calibrated at 20.0°C. It is filled to the 100-mL mark with 35.0°C acetone. After the flask is filled, the acetone cools and the flask warms so that the combination of acetone and flask reaches a uniform temperature of 32.0°C. The combination is then cooled back to 20.0°C. (a) What is the volume of the acetone when it cools to 20.0°C? (b) At the temperature of 32.0°C, does the level of acetone lie above or below the 100-mL mark on the flask? Explain.

20. **Review.** On a day that the temperature is 20.0°C, a concrete walk is poured in such a way that the ends of the walk are unable to move. Take Young's modulus for concrete to be 7.00×10^9 N/m^2 and the compressive strength to be 2.00×10^9 N/m^2. (a) What is the stress in the cement on a hot day of 50.0°C? (b) Does the concrete fracture?

21. A hollow aluminum cylinder 20.0 cm deep has an internal capacity of 2.000 L at 20.0°C. It is completely filled with turpentine at 20.0°C. The turpentine and the aluminum cylinder are then slowly warmed together to 80.0°C. (a) How much turpentine overflows? (b) What is the volume of turpentine remaining in the cylinder at 80.0°C? (c) If the combination with this amount of turpentine is then cooled back to 20.0°C, how far below the cylinder's rim does the turpentine's surface recede?

22. **Review.** The Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco has a main span of length 1.28 km, one of the longest in the world. Imagine that a steel wire with this length and a cross-sectional area of 4.00×10^{-6} m^2 is laid in a straight line on the bridge deck with its ends attached to the towers of the bridge. On a summer day the temperature of the wire is 35.0°C. (a) When winter arrives, the towers stay the same distance apart and the bridge deck keeps the same shape as its expansion joints open. When the temperature drops to −10.0°C, what is the tension in the wire? Take Young's modulus for steel to be 20.0×10^{10} N/m^2. (b) Permanent deformation occurs if the stress in the steel exceeds its elastic limit of 3.00×10^8 N/m^2. At what temperature would the wire reach its elastic limit? (c) **What If?** Explain how your answers to parts (a) and (b) would change if the Golden Gate Bridge were twice as long.

23. A sample of lead has a mass of 20.0 kg and a density of 11.3×10^3 kg/m^3 at 0°C. (a) What is the density of lead at 90.0°C? (b) What is the mass of the sample of lead at 90.0°C?

24. A sample of a solid substance has a mass m and a density ρ_0 at a temperature T_0. (a) Find the density of the substance if its temperature is increased by an amount ΔT in terms of the coefficient of volume expansion β. (b) What is the mass of the sample if the temperature is raised by an amount ΔT?

25. An underground gasoline tank can hold 1.00×10^3 gallons of gasoline at 52.0°F. Suppose the tank is being filled on a day when the outdoor temperature (and the temperature of the gasoline in a tanker truck) is 95.0°F. When the underground tank registers that it is full, how many gallons have been transferred from the truck, according to a non-temperature-compensated gauge on the truck? Assume the temperature of the gasoline quickly cools from 95.0°F to 52.0°F upon entering the tank.

Section 19.5 Macroscopic Description of an Ideal Gas

26. A rigid tank contains 1.50 moles of an ideal gas. Determine the number of moles of gas that must be withdrawn from the tank to lower the pressure of the gas from 25.0 atm to 5.00 atm. Assume the volume of the tank and the temperature of the gas remain constant during this operation.

27. Gas is confined in a tank at a pressure of 11.0 atm and a temperature of 25.0°C. If two-thirds of the gas is withdrawn and the temperature is raised to 75.0°C, what is the pressure of the gas remaining in the tank?

28. Your father and your younger brother are confronted with the same puzzle. Your father's garden sprayer and your brother's water cannon both have tanks with a capacity of 5.00 L (Fig. P19.28). Your father puts a negligible amount of concentrated fertilizer into his tank. They both pour in 4.00 L of water and seal up their tanks, so the tanks also contain air at atmospheric pressure. Next, each uses a hand-operated pump to inject more air until the absolute pressure in the tank reaches 2.40 atm. Now each uses his device to spray out water—not air—until the stream becomes feeble, which it does when the pressure in the tank reaches 1.20 atm. To accomplish spraying out all the water, each finds he must pump up the tank three times. Here is the puzzle: most of the water sprays out after the second pumping. The first and the third pumping-up processes seem just as difficult as the second but result in a much smaller amount of water coming out. Account for this phenomenon.

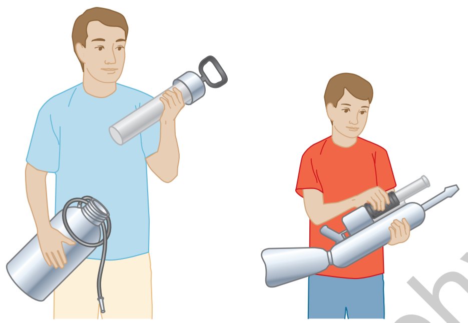


Figure P19.28

29. W Gas is contained in an 8.00-L vessel at a temperature of 20.0°C and a pressure of 9.00 atm. (a) Determine the number of moles of gas in the vessel. (b) How many molecules are in the vessel?

30. A container in the shape of a cube 10.0 cm on each edge contains air (with equivalent molar mass 28.9 g/mol) at atmospheric pressure and temperature 300 K. Find (a) the mass of the gas, (b) the gravitational force exerted on it, and (c) the force it exerts on each face of the cube. (d) Why does such a small sample exert such a great force?

31. M An auditorium has dimensions 10.0 m × 20.0 m × 30.0 m. How many molecules of air fill the auditorium at 20.0°C and a pressure of 101 kPa (1.00 atm)?

32. M The pressure gauge on a tank registers the gauge pressure, which is the difference between the interior pressure and exterior pressure. When the tank is full of oxygen (O_2), it contains 12.0 kg of the gas at a gauge pressure of 40.0 atm. Determine the mass of oxygen that has been withdrawn from the tank when the pressure reading is 25.0 atm. Assume the temperature of the tank remains constant.

33. (a) Find the number of moles in one cubic meter of an ideal gas at 20.0°C and atmospheric pressure. (b) For air, Avogadro's number of molecules has mass 28.9 g. Calculate the mass of one cubic meter of air. (c) State how this result compares with the tabulated density of air at 20.0°C.

34. Use the definition of Avogadro's number to find the mass of a helium atom.

35. A popular brand of cola contains 6.50 g of carbon dioxide dissolved in 1.00 L of soft drink. If the evaporating carbon dioxide is trapped in a cylinder at 1.00 atm and 20.0°C, what volume does the gas occupy?

36. W In state-of-the-art vacuum systems, pressures as low as 1.00×10^{-9} Pa are being attained. Calculate the number of molecules in a 1.00-m^3 vessel at this pressure and a temperature of 27.0°C.

37. M An automobile tire is inflated with air originally at 10.0°C and normal atmospheric pressure. During the process, the air is compressed to 28.0% of its original volume and the temperature is increased to 40.0°C. (a) What is the tire pressure? (b) After the car is driven at high speed, the tire's air temperature rises to 85.0°C and the tire's interior volume increases by 2.00%. What is the new tire pressure (absolute)?

38. **Review.** To measure how far below the ocean surface a bird dives to catch a fish, a scientist uses a method originated by Lord Kelvin. He dusts the interiors of plastic tubes with powdered sugar and then seals one end of each tube. He captures the bird at nighttime in its nest and attaches a tube to its back. He then catches the same bird the next night and removes the tube. In one trial, using a tube 6.50 cm long, water washes away the sugar over a distance of 2.70 cm from the open end of the tube. Find the greatest depth to which the bird dived, assuming the air in the tube stayed at constant temperature.

39. AMT M **Review.** The mass of a hot-air balloon and its cargo (not including the air inside) is 200 kg. The air outside is at 10.0°C and 101 kPa. The volume of the balloon is 400 m^3. To what temperature must the air in the balloon be warmed before the balloon will lift off? (Air density at 10.0°C is 1.244 kg/m^3.)

40. A room of volume V contains air having equivalent molar mass M (in g/mol). If the temperature of the room is raised from T_1 to T_2, what mass of air will leave the room? Assume that the air pressure in the room is maintained at P_0.

41. **Review.** At 25.0 m below the surface of the sea, where the temperature is 5.00°C, a diver exhales an air bubble having a volume of 1.00 cm^3. If the surface temperature of the sea is 20.0°C, what is the volume of the bubble just before it breaks the surface?

42. Estimate the mass of the air in your bedroom. State the quantities you take as data and the value you measure or estimate for each.

43. W A cook puts 9.00 g of water in a 2.00-L pressure cooker that is then warmed to 500°C. What is the pressure inside the container?

44. The pressure gauge on a cylinder of gas registers the gauge pressure, which is the difference between the interior pressure and the exterior pressure P_0. Let's call the gauge pressure P_g. When the cylinder is full, the mass of the gas in it is m_i at a gauge pressure of P_{gi}. Assuming the temperature of the cylinder remains constant, show that the mass of the gas *remaining* in the cylinder when the pressure reading is P_{gf} is given by

$$m_f = m_i\left(\frac{P_{gf} + P_0}{P_{gi} + P_0}\right)$$

Additional Problems

45. Long-term space missions require reclamation of the oxygen in the carbon dioxide exhaled by the crew. In one method of reclamation, 1.00 mol of carbon dioxide produces 1.00 mol of oxygen and 1.00 mol of methane as a byproduct. The methane is stored in a tank under pressure and is available to control the attitude of the spacecraft by controlled venting. A single astronaut exhales 1.09 kg of carbon dioxide each day. If the methane generated in the respiration recycling of three astronauts during one week of flight is stored in an originally empty 150-L tank at −45.0°C, what is the final pressure in the tank?

46. A steel beam being used in the construction of a skyscraper has a length of 35.000 m when delivered on a cold day at a temperature of 15.000°F. What is the length of the beam when it is being installed later on a warm day when the temperature is 90.000°F?

47. A spherical steel ball bearing has a diameter of 2.540 cm at 25.00°C. (a) What is its diameter when its temperature is raised to 100.0°C? (b) What temperature change is required to increase its volume by 1.000%?

48. A bicycle tire is inflated to a gauge pressure of 2.50 atm when the temperature is 15.0°C. While a man rides the bicycle, the temperature of the tire rises to 45.0°C. Assuming the volume of the tire does not change, find the gauge pressure in the tire at the higher temperature.

49. In a chemical processing plant, a reaction chamber of fixed volume V_0 is connected to a reservoir chamber of fixed volume $4V_0$ by a passage containing a thermally insulating porous plug. The plug permits the chambers to be at different temperatures. The plug allows gas to pass from either chamber to the other, ensuring that the pressure is the same in both. At one point in the processing, both chambers contain gas at a pressure of 1.00 atm and a temperature of 27.0°C. Intake and exhaust valves to the pair of chambers are closed. The reservoir is maintained at 27.0°C while the reaction chamber is heated to 400°C. What is the pressure in both chambers after that is done?

50. *Why is the following situation impossible?* An apparatus is designed so that steam initially at T = 150°C, P = 1.00 atm, and V = 0.500 m^3 in a piston–cylinder apparatus undergoes a process in which (1) the volume remains constant and the pressure drops to 0.870 atm, followed by (2) an expansion in which the pressure remains constant and the volume increases to 1.00 m^3, followed by (3) a return to the initial conditions. It is important that the pressure of the gas never fall below 0.850 atm so that the piston will support a delicate and very expensive part of the apparatus. Without such support, the delicate apparatus can be severely damaged and rendered useless. When the design is turned into a working prototype, it operates perfectly.

51. M A mercury thermometer is constructed as shown in Figure P19.51. The Pyrex glass capillary tube has a diameter of 0.004 00 cm, and the bulb has a diameter of 0.250 cm. Find the change in height of the mercury column that occurs with a temperature change of 30.0°C.

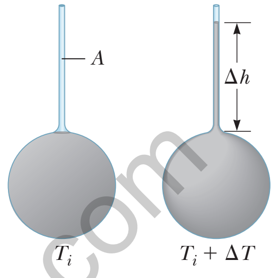


Figure P19.51 Problems 51 and 52.

52. A liquid with a coefficient of volume expansion β just fills a spherical shell of volume V (Fig. P19.51). The shell and the open capillary of area A projecting from the top of the sphere are made of a material with an average coefficient of linear expansion α. The liquid is free to expand into the capillary. Assuming the temperature increases by ΔT, find the distance Δh the liquid rises in the capillary.

53. AMT **Review.** An aluminum pipe is open at both ends and used as a flute. The pipe is cooled to 5.00°C, at which its length is 0.655 m. As soon as you start to play it, the pipe fills with air at 20.0°C. After that, by how much does its fundamental frequency change as the metal rises in temperature to 20.0°C?

54. Two metal bars are made of invar and a third bar is made of aluminum. At 0°C, each of the three bars is drilled with two holes 40.0 cm apart. Pins are put through the holes to assemble the bars into an equilateral triangle as in Figure P19.54. (a) First ignore the expansion of the invar. Find the angle between the invar bars as a function of Celsius temperature. (b) Is your answer accurate for negative as well as positive temperatures? (c) Is it accurate for 0°C? (d) Solve the problem again, including the expansion of the invar. Aluminum melts at 660°C and invar at 1 427°C. Assume the tabulated expansion coefficients are constant. What are (e) the greatest and (f) the smallest attainable angles between the invar bars?

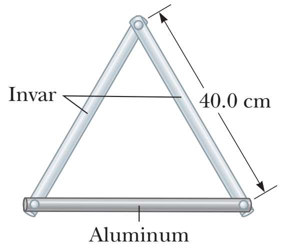


Figure P19.54

55. A student measures the length of a brass rod with a steel tape at 20.0°C. The reading is 95.00 cm. What will the tape indicate for the length of the rod when the rod and the tape are at (a) −15.0°C and (b) 55.0°C?

56. The density of gasoline is 730 kg/m^3 at 0°C. Its average coefficient of volume expansion is 9.60×10^{-4} (°C)$^{-1}$. Assume 1.00 gal of gasoline occupies 0.003 80 m^3.

How many extra kilograms of gasoline would you receive if you bought 10.0 gal of gasoline at 0°C rather than at 20.0°C from a pump that is not temperature compensated?

57. A liquid has a density ρ. (a) Show that the fractional change in density for a change in temperature ΔT is $\Delta\rho/\rho = -\beta\,\Delta T$. (b) What does the negative sign signify? (c) Fresh water has a maximum density of 1.000 0 g/cm^3 at 4.0°C. At 10.0°C, its density is 0.999 7 g/cm^3. What is β for water over this temperature interval? (d) At 0°C, the density of water is 0.999 9 g/cm^3. What is the value for β over the temperature range 0°C to 4.00°C?

58. (a) Take the definition of the coefficient of volume expansion to be

$$\beta = \frac{1}{V}\frac{dV}{dT}\bigg|_{P=\text{constant}} = \frac{1}{V}\frac{\partial V}{\partial T}$$

Use the equation of state for an ideal gas to show that the coefficient of volume expansion for an ideal gas at constant pressure is given by $\beta = 1/T$, where T is the absolute temperature. (b) What value does this expression predict for β at 0°C? State how this result compares with the experimental values for (c) helium and (d) air in Table 19.1. *Note:* These values are much larger than the coefficients of volume expansion for most liquids and solids.

59. **Review.** A clock with a brass pendulum has a period of 1.000 s at 20.0°C. If the temperature increases to 30.0°C, (a) by how much does the period change and (b) how much time does the clock gain or lose in one week?

60. A bimetallic strip of length L is made of two ribbons of different metals bonded together. (a) First assume the strip is originally straight. As the strip is warmed, the metal with the greater average coefficient of expansion expands more than the other, forcing the strip into an arc with the outer radius having a greater circumference (Fig. P19.60). Derive an expression for the angle of bending θ as a function of the initial length of the strips, their average coefficients of linear expansion, the change in temperature, and the separation of the centers of the strips ($\Delta r = r_2 - r_1$). (b) Show that the angle of bending decreases to zero when ΔT decreases to zero and also when the two average coefficients of expansion become equal. (c) **What If?** What happens if the strip is cooled?

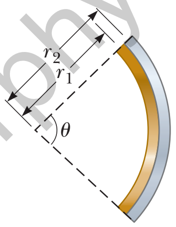


Figure P19.60

61. The rectangular plate shown in Figure P19.61 has an area A_i equal to ℓw. If the temperature increases by ΔT, each dimension increases according to Equation 19.4, where α is the average coefficient of linear expansion. (a) Show that the increase in area is $\Delta A = 2\alpha A_i\,\Delta T$. (b) What approximation does this expression assume?

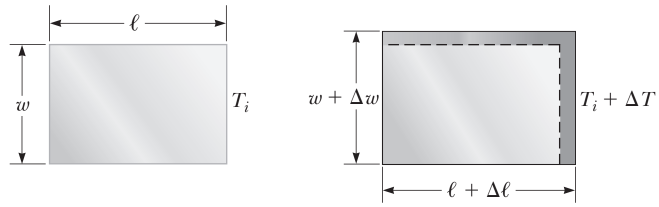


Figure P19.61

62. The measurement of the average coefficient of volume expansion β for a liquid is complicated because the container also changes size with temperature. Figure P19.62 shows a simple means for measuring β despite the expansion of the container. With this apparatus, one arm of a U-tube is maintained at 0°C in a water–ice bath, and the other arm is maintained at a different temperature T_C in a constant-temperature bath. The connecting tube is horizontal. A difference in the length or diameter of the tube between the two arms of the U-tube has no effect on the pressure balance at the bottom of the tube because the pressure depends only on the depth of the liquid. Derive an expression for β for the liquid in terms of h_0, h_t, and T_C.

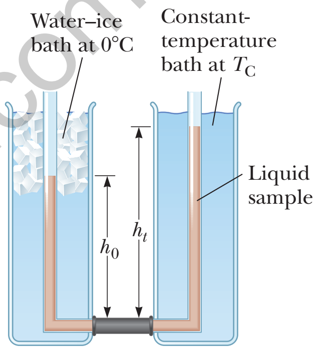


Figure P19.62

63. A copper rod and a steel rod are different in length by 5.00 cm at 0°C. The rods are warmed and cooled together. (a) Is it possible that the length difference remains constant at all temperatures? Explain. (b) If so, describe the lengths at 0°C as precisely as you can. Can you tell which rod is longer? Can you tell the lengths of the rods?

64. AMT GP A vertical cylinder of cross-sectional area A is fitted with a tight-fitting, frictionless piston of mass m (Fig. P19.64). The piston is not restricted in its motion in any way and is supported by the gas at pressure P below it. Atmospheric pressure is P_0. We wish to find the height h in Figure P19.64. (a) What analysis model is appropriate to describe the piston? (b) Write an appropriate force equation for the piston from this analysis model in terms of P, P_0, m, A, and g. (c) Suppose n moles of an ideal gas are in the cylinder at a temperature of T. Substitute for P in your answer to part (b) to find the height h of the piston above the bottom of the cylinder.

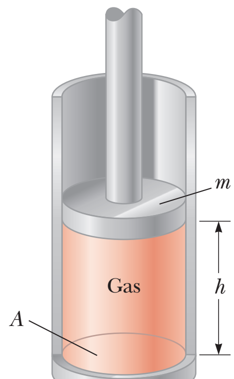


Figure P19.64

65. **Review.** Consider an object with any one of the shapes displayed in Table 10.2. What is the percentage increase in the moment of inertia of the object when it is warmed from 0°C to 100°C if it is composed of (a) copper or (b) aluminum? Assume the average linear expansion coefficients shown in Table 19.1 do not vary between 0°C and 100°C. (c) Why are the answers for parts (a) and (b) the same for all the shapes?

66. (a) Show that the density of an ideal gas occupying a volume V is given by $\rho = PM/RT$, where M is the molar mass. (b) Determine the density of oxygen gas at atmospheric pressure and 20.0°C.

67. Two concrete spans of a 250-m-long bridge are placed end to end so that no room is allowed for expansion (Fig. P19.67a). If a temperature increase of 20.0°C occurs, what is the height y to which the spans rise when they buckle (Fig. P19.67b)?

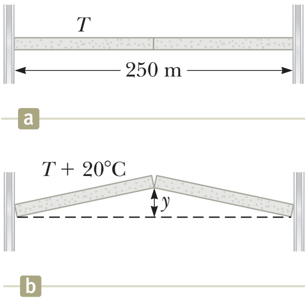


Figure P19.67 Problems 67 and 68.

68. Two concrete spans that form a bridge of length L are placed end to end so that no room is allowed for expansion (Fig. P19.67a). If a temperature increase of ΔT occurs, what is the height y to which the spans rise when they buckle (Fig. P19.67b)?

69. **Review.** (a) Derive an expression for the buoyant force on a spherical balloon, submerged in water, as a function of the depth h below the surface, the volume V_i of the balloon at the surface, the pressure P_0 at the surface, and the density ρ_w of the water. Assume the water temperature does not change with depth. (b) Does the *buoyant* force increase or decrease as the balloon is submerged? (c) At what depth is the buoyant force one-half the surface value?

70. AMT **Review.** Following a collision in outer space, a copper disk at 850°C is rotating about its axis with an angular speed of 25.0 rad/s. As the disk radiates infrared light, its temperature falls to 20.0°C. No external torque acts on the disk. (a) Does the angular speed change as the disk cools? Explain how it changes or why it does not. (b) What is its angular speed at the lower temperature?

71. Starting with Equation 19.10, show that the total pressure P in a container filled with a mixture of several ideal gases is $P = P_1 + P_2 + P_3 + \cdots$, where $P_1, P_2, \cdots$ are the pressures that each gas would exert if it alone filled the container. (These individual pressures are called the *partial pressures* of the respective gases.) This result is known as *Dalton's law of partial pressures.*

Challenge Problems

72. **Review.** A steel wire and a copper wire, each of diameter 2.000 mm, are joined end to end. At 40.0°C, each has an unstretched length of 2.000 m. The wires are connected between two fixed supports 4.000 m apart on a tabletop. The steel wire extends from $x = -2.000$ m to $x = 0$, the copper wire extends from $x = 0$ to $x = 2.000$ m, and the tension is negligible. The temperature is then lowered to 20.0°C. Assume the average coefficient of linear expansion of steel is 11.0×10^{-6} (°C)$^{-1}$ and that of copper is 17.0×10^{-6} (°C)$^{-1}$. Take Young's modulus for steel to be 20.0×10^{10} N/m^2 and that for copper to be 11.0×10^{10} N/m^2. At this lower temperature, find (a) the tension in the wire and (b) the x coordinate of the junction between the wires.

73. **Review.** A steel guitar string with a diameter of 1.00 mm is stretched between supports 80.0 cm apart. The temperature is 0.0°C. (a) Find the mass per unit length of this string. (Use the value 7.86×10^3 kg/m^3 for the density.) (b) The fundamental frequency of transverse oscillations of the string is 200 Hz. What is the tension in the string? Next, the temperature is raised to 30.0°C. Find the resulting values of (c) the tension and (d) the fundamental frequency. Assume both the Young's modulus of 20.0×10^{10} N/m^2 and the average coefficient of expansion $\alpha = 11.0 \times 10^{-6}$ (°C)$^{-1}$ have constant values between 0.0°C and 30.0°C.

74. W A cylinder is closed by a piston connected to a spring of constant 2.00×10^3 N/m (see Fig. P19.74). With the spring relaxed, the cylinder is filled with 5.00 L of gas at a pressure of 1.00 atm and a temperature of 20.0°C. (a) If the piston has a cross-sectional area of 0.010 0 m^2 and negligible mass, how high will it rise when the temperature is raised to 250°C? (b) What is the pressure of the gas at 250°C?

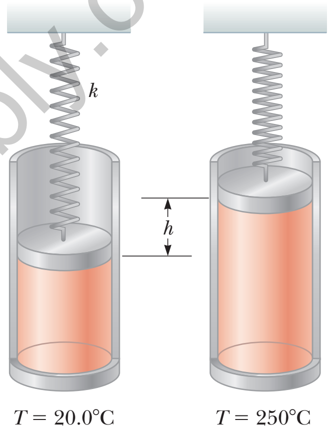


Figure P19.74

75. Helium gas is sold in steel tanks that will rupture if subjected to tensile stress greater than its yield strength of 5×10^8 N/m^2. If the helium is used to inflate a balloon, could the balloon lift the spherical tank the helium came in? Justify your answer. *Suggestion:* You may consider a spherical steel shell of radius r and thickness t having the density of iron and on the verge of breaking apart into two hemispheres because it contains helium at high pressure.

76. A cylinder that has a 40.0-cm radius and is 50.0 cm deep is filled with air at 20.0°C and 1.00 atm (Fig. P19.76a). A 20.0-kg piston is now lowered into the cylinder, compressing the air trapped inside as it takes equilibrium height h_i (Fig. P19.76b). Finally, a 25.0-kg dog stands on the piston, further compressing the air, which remains at 20°C (Fig. P19.76c). (a) How far down

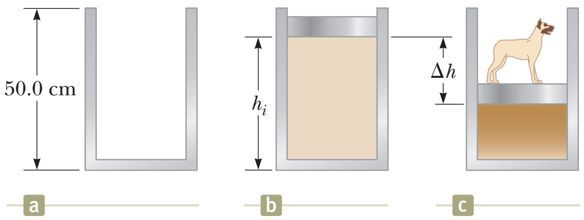


Figure P19.76

(Δh) does the piston move when the dog steps onto it? (b) To what temperature should the gas be warmed to raise the piston and dog back to h_i?

77. The relationship $L = L_i + \alpha L_i \, \Delta T$ is a valid approximation when $\alpha \, \Delta T$ is small. If $\alpha \, \Delta T$ is large, one must integrate the relationship $dL = \alpha L \, dT$ to determine the final length. (a) Assuming the coefficient of linear expansion of a material is constant as L varies, determine a general expression for the final length of a rod made of the material. Given a rod of length 1.00 m and a temperature change of 100.0°C, determine the error caused by the approximation when (b) $\alpha = 2.00 \times 10^{-5}$ (°C)$^{-1}$ (a typical value for a metal) and (c) when $\alpha = 0.020\,0$ (°C)$^{-1}$ (an unrealistically large value for comparison). (d) Using the equation from part (a), solve Problem 21 again to find more accurate results.

78. Review. A house roof is a perfectly flat plane that makes an angle θ with the horizontal. When its temperature changes, between T_c before dawn each day and T_h in the middle of each afternoon, the roof expands and contracts uniformly with a coefficient of thermal expansion α_1. Resting on the roof is a flat, rectangular metal plate with expansion coefficient α_2, greater than α_1. The length of the plate is L, measured along the slope of the roof. The component of the plate's weight perpendicular to the roof is supported by a normal force uniformly distributed over the area of the plate. The coefficient of kinetic friction between the plate and the roof is μ_k. The plate is always at the same temperature as the roof, so we assume its temperature is continuously changing. Because of the difference in expansion coefficients, each bit of the plate is moving relative to the roof below it, except for points along a certain horizontal line running across the plate called the stationary line. If the temperature is rising, parts of the plate below the stationary line are moving down relative to the roof and feel a force of kinetic friction acting up the roof. Elements of area above the stationary line are sliding up the roof, and on them kinetic friction acts downward parallel to the roof. The stationary line occupies no area, so we assume no force of static friction acts on the plate while the temperature is changing. The plate as a whole is very nearly in equilibrium, so the net friction force on it must be equal to the component of its weight acting down the incline. (a) Prove that the stationary line is at a distance of

$$\frac{L}{2}\left(1 - \frac{\tan\theta}{\mu_k}\right)$$

below the top edge of the plate. (b) Analyze the forces that act on the plate when the temperature is falling and prove that the stationary line is at that same distance above the bottom edge of the plate. (c) Show that the plate steps down the roof like an inchworm, moving each day by the distance

$$\frac{L}{\mu_k}(\alpha_2 - \alpha_1)(T_h - T_c)\tan\theta$$

(d) Evaluate the distance an aluminum plate moves each day if its length is 1.20 m, the temperature cycles between 4.00°C and 36.0°C, and if the roof has slope 18.5°, coefficient of linear expansion 1.50×10^{-5} (°C)$^{-1}$, and coefficient of friction 0.420 with the plate. (e) **What If?** What if the expansion coefficient of the plate is less than that of the roof? Will the plate creep up the roof?

79. A 1.00-km steel railroad rail is fastened securely at both ends when the temperature is 20.0°C. As the temperature increases, the rail buckles, taking the shape of an arc of a vertical circle. Find the height h of the center of the rail when the temperature is 25.0°C. (You will need to solve a transcendental equation.)

CHAPTER

20

The First Law of Thermodynamics

In this photograph of the Mt. Baker area near Bellingham, Washington, we see evidence of water in all three phases. In the lake is liquid water, and solid water in the form of snow appears on the ground. The clouds in the sky consist of liquid water droplets that have condensed from the gaseous water vapor in the air. Changes of a substance from one phase to another are a result of energy transfer. *(©iStockphoto.com/KingWu)*

Until about 1850, the fields of thermodynamics and mechanics were considered to be two distinct branches of science. The principle of conservation of energy seemed to describe only certain kinds of mechanical systems. Mid-19th-century experiments performed by Englishman James Joule and others, however, showed a strong connection between the transfer of energy by heat in thermal processes and the transfer of energy by work in mechanical processes. Today we know that mechanical energy can be transformed to internal energy, which is formally defined in this chapter. Once the concept of energy was generalized from mechanics to include internal energy, the principle of conservation of energy as discussed in Chapter 8 emerged as a universal law of nature.

This chapter focuses on the concept of internal energy, the first law of thermodynamics, and some important applications of the first law. The first law of thermodynamics describes systems in which the only energy change is that of internal energy and the transfers of energy are by heat and work. A major difference in our discussion of work in this chapter from that in most of the chapters on mechanics is that we will consider work done on *deformable* systems.

20.1 Heat and Internal Energy

At the outset, it is important to make a major distinction between internal energy and heat, terms that are often incorrectly used interchangeably in popular language.

Internal energy is all the energy of a system that is associated with its microscopic components—atoms and molecules—when viewed from a reference frame at rest with respect to the center of mass of the system.

The last part of this sentence ensures that any bulk kinetic energy of the system due to its motion through space is not included in internal energy. Internal energy includes kinetic energy of random translational, rotational, and vibrational motion of molecules; vibrational potential energy associated with forces between atoms in molecules; and electric potential energy associated with forces between molecules. It is useful to relate internal energy to the temperature of an object, but this relationship is limited. We show in Section 20.3 that internal energy changes can also occur in the absence of temperature changes. In that discussion, we will investigate the internal energy of the system when there is a *physical change,* most often related to a phase change, such as melting or boiling. We assign energy associated with *chemical changes,* related to chemical reactions, to the potential energy term in Equation 8.2, not to internal energy. Therefore, we discuss the *chemical potential energy* in, for example, a human body (due to previous meals), the gas tank of a car (due to an earlier transfer of fuel), and a battery of an electric circuit (placed in the battery during its construction in the manufacturing process).

Heat is defined as a process of transferring energy across the boundary of a system because of a temperature difference between the system and its surroundings. It is also the amount of energy Q transferred by this process.

When you *heat* a substance, you are transferring energy into it by placing it in contact with surroundings that have a higher temperature. Such is the case, for example, when you place a pan of cold water on a stove burner. The burner is at a higher temperature than the water, and so the water gains energy by heat.

Read this definition of heat (Q in Eq. 8.2) very carefully. In particular, notice what heat is *not* in the following common quotes. (1) Heat is *not* energy in a hot substance. For example, "The boiling water has a lot of heat" is incorrect; the boiling water has *internal energy* E_{int}. (2) Heat is *not* radiation. For example, "It was so hot because the sidewalk was radiating heat" is incorrect; energy is leaving the sidewalk by *electromagnetic radiation,* T_{ER} in Equation 8.2. (3) Heat is *not* warmth of an environment. For example, "The heat in the air was so oppressive" is incorrect; on a hot day, the air has a high *temperature* T.

As an analogy to the distinction between heat and internal energy, consider the distinction between work and mechanical energy discussed in Chapter 7. The work done on a system is a measure of the amount of energy transferred to the system from its surroundings, whereas the mechanical energy (kinetic energy plus potential energy) of a system is a consequence of the motion and configuration of the system. Therefore, when a person does work on a system, energy is transferred from the person to the system. It makes no sense to talk about the work *of* a system; one can refer only to the work done *on* or *by* a system when some process has occurred in which energy has been transferred to or from the system. Likewise, it makes no sense to talk about the heat *of* a system; one can refer to heat only when energy has been transferred as a result of a temperature difference. Both heat and work are ways of transferring energy between a system and its surroundings.

Units of Heat

Early studies of heat focused on the resultant increase in temperature of a substance, which was often water. Initial notions of heat were based on a fluid called *caloric* that flowed from one substance to another and caused changes in temperature. From the name of this mythical fluid came an energy unit related to thermal processes, the **calorie (cal),** which is defined as the amount of energy transfer

Pitfall Prevention 20.1

Internal Energy, Thermal Energy, and Bond Energy When reading other physics books, you may see terms such as *thermal energy* and *bond energy*. Thermal energy can be interpreted as that part of the internal energy associated with random motion of molecules and therefore related to temperature. Bond energy is the intermolecular potential energy. Therefore,

Internal energy = thermal energy + bond energy

Although this breakdown is presented here for clarification with regard to other books, we will not use these terms because there is no need for them.

Pitfall Prevention 20.2

Heat, Temperature, and Internal Energy Are Different As you read the newspaper or explore the Internet, be alert for incorrectly used phrases including the word *heat* and think about the proper word to be used in place of *heat*. Incorrect examples include "As the truck braked to a stop, a large amount of heat was generated by friction" and "The heat of a hot summer day . . . ."

necessary to raise the temperature of 1 g of water from 14.5°C to 15.5°C.[1] (The "Calorie," written with a capital "C" and used in describing the energy content of foods, is actually a kilocalorie.) The unit of energy in the U.S. customary system is the **British thermal unit (Btu),** which is defined as the amount of energy transfer required to raise the temperature of 1 lb of water from 63°F to 64°F.

Once the relationship between energy in thermal and mechanical processes became clear, there was no need for a separate unit related to thermal processes. The *joule* has already been defined as an energy unit based on mechanical processes. Scientists are increasingly turning away from the calorie and the Btu and are using the joule when describing thermal processes. In this textbook, heat, work, and internal energy are usually measured in joules.

James Prescott Joule
British physicist (1818–1889)
Joule received some formal education in mathematics, philosophy, and chemistry from John Dalton but was in large part self-educated. Joule's research led to the establishment of the principle of conservation of energy. His study of the quantitative relationship among electrical, mechanical, and chemical effects of heat culminated in his announcement in 1843 of the amount of work required to produce a unit of energy, called the mechanical equivalent of heat.

The Mechanical Equivalent of Heat

In Chapters 7 and 8, we found that whenever friction is present in a mechanical system, the mechanical energy in the system decreases; in other words, mechanical energy is not conserved in the presence of nonconservative forces. Various experiments show that this mechanical energy does not simply disappear but is transformed into internal energy. You can perform such an experiment at home by hammering a nail into a scrap piece of wood. What happens to all the kinetic energy of the hammer once you have finished? Some of it is now in the nail as internal energy, as demonstrated by the nail being measurably warmer. Notice that there is *no* transfer of energy by heat in this process. For the nail and board as a nonisolated system, Equation 8.2 becomes $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = W + T_{\text{MW}}$, where W is the work done by the hammer on the nail and T_{MW} is the energy leaving the system by sound waves when the nail is struck. Although this connection between mechanical and internal energy was first suggested by Benjamin Thompson, it was James Prescott Joule who established the equivalence of the decrease in mechanical energy and the increase in internal energy.

A schematic diagram of Joule's most famous experiment is shown in Figure 20.1. The system of interest is the Earth, the two blocks, and the water in a thermally insulated container. Work is done within the system on the water by a rotating paddle wheel, which is driven by heavy blocks falling at a constant speed. If the energy transformed in the bearings and the energy passing through the walls by heat are neglected, the decrease in potential energy of the system as the blocks fall equals the work done by the paddle wheel on the water and, in turn, the increase in internal energy of the water. If the two blocks fall through a distance h, the decrease in potential energy of the system is $2mgh$, where m is the mass of one block; this energy causes the temperature of the water to increase. By varying the conditions of the experiment, Joule found that the decrease in mechanical energy is proportional to the product of the mass of the water and the increase in water temperature. The proportionality constant was found to be approximately 4.18 J/g · °C. Hence, 4.18 J of mechanical energy raises the temperature of 1 g of water by 1°C. More precise measurements taken later demonstrated the proportionality to be 4.186 J/g · °C when the temperature of the water was raised from 14.5°C to 15.5°C. We adopt this "15-degree calorie" value:

$$1 \text{ cal} = 4.186 \text{ J} \tag{20.1}$$

This equality is known, for purely historical reasons, as the **mechanical equivalent of heat.** A more proper name would be *equivalence between mechanical energy and internal energy,* but the historical name is well entrenched in our language, despite the incorrect use of the word *heat.*

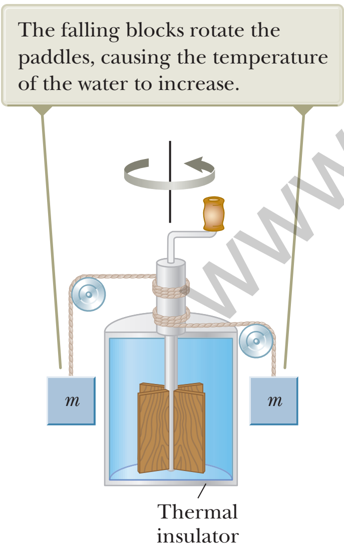


Figure 20.1 Joule's experiment for determining the mechanical equivalent of heat.

[1]Originally, the calorie was defined as the energy transfer necessary to raise the temperature of 1 g of water by 1°C. Careful measurements, however, showed that the amount of energy required to produce a 1°C change depends somewhat on the initial temperature; hence, a more precise definition evolved.

Example 20.1 **Losing Weight the Hard Way** AM

A student eats a dinner rated at 2 000 Calories. He wishes to do an equivalent amount of work in the gymnasium by lifting a 50.0-kg barbell. How many times must he raise the barbell to expend this much energy? Assume he raises the barbell 2.00 m each time he lifts it and he regains no energy when he lowers the barbell.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine the student raising the barbell. He is doing work on the system of the barbell and the Earth, so energy is leaving his body. The total amount of work that the student must do is 2 000 Calories.

Categorize We model the system of the barbell and the Earth as a *nonisolated system* for *energy*.

Analyze Reduce the conservation of energy equation, Equation 8.2, to the appropriate expression for the system of the barbell and the Earth:

$$(1) \quad \Delta U_{\text{total}} = W_{\text{total}}$$

Express the change in gravitational potential energy of the system after the barbell is raised once:

$$\Delta U = mgh$$

Express the total amount of energy that must be transferred into the system by work for lifting the barbell n times, assuming energy is not regained when the barbell is lowered:

$$(2) \quad \Delta U_{\text{total}} = nmgh$$

Substitute Equation (2) into Equation (1):

$$nmgh = W_{\text{total}}$$

Solve for n:

$$n = \frac{W_{\text{total}}}{mgh}$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$n = \frac{(2\,000 \text{ Cal})}{(50.0 \text{ kg})(9.80 \text{ m/s}^2)(2.00 \text{ m})}\left(\frac{1.00 \times 10^3 \text{ cal}}{\text{Calorie}}\right)\left(\frac{4.186 \text{ J}}{1 \text{ cal}}\right)$$

$$= 8.54 \times 10^3 \text{ times}$$

Finalize If the student is in good shape and lifts the barbell once every 5 s, it will take him about 12 h to perform this feat. Clearly, it is much easier for this student to lose weight by dieting.

In reality, the human body is not 100% efficient. Therefore, not all the energy transformed within the body from the dinner transfers out of the body by work done on the barbell. Some of this energy is used to pump blood and perform other functions within the body. Therefore, the 2 000 Calories can be worked off in less time than 12 h when these other energy processes are included.

20.2 Specific Heat and Calorimetry

When energy is added to a system and there is no change in the kinetic or potential energy of the system, the temperature of the system usually rises. (An exception to this statement is the case in which a system undergoes a change of state—also called a *phase transition*—as discussed in the next section.) If the system consists of a sample of a substance, we find that the quantity of energy required to raise the temperature of a given mass of the substance by some amount varies from one substance to another. For example, the quantity of energy required to raise the temperature of 1 kg of water by 1°C is 4 186 J, but the quantity of energy required to raise the temperature of 1 kg of copper by 1°C is only 387 J. In the discussion that follows, we shall use heat as our example of energy transfer, but keep in mind that the temperature of the system could be changed by means of any method of energy transfer.

The **heat capacity** C of a particular sample is defined as the amount of energy needed to raise the temperature of that sample by 1°C. From this definition, we see that if energy Q produces a change ΔT in the temperature of a sample, then

$$Q = C\,\Delta T \quad \textbf{(20.2)}$$

Table 20.1 Specific Heats of Some Substances at 25°C and Atmospheric Pressure

Substance	Specific Heat (J/kg · °C)	Substance	Specific Heat (J/kg · °C)
Elemental solids		*Other solids*	
Aluminum	900	Brass	380
Beryllium	1 830	Glass	837
Cadmium	230	Ice (−5°C)	2 090
Copper	387	Marble	860
Germanium	322	Wood	1 700
Gold	129	*Liquids*	
Iron	448	Alcohol (ethyl)	2 400
Lead	128	Mercury	140
Silicon	703	Water (15°C)	4 186
Silver	234	*Gas*	
		Steam (100°C)	2 010

Note: To convert values to units of cal/g · °C, divide by 4 186.

The **specific heat** c of a substance is the heat capacity per unit mass. Therefore, if energy Q transfers to a sample of a substance with mass m and the temperature of the sample changes by ΔT, the specific heat of the substance is

Specific heat ▶

$$c \equiv \frac{Q}{m\,\Delta T} \qquad (20.3)$$

Specific heat is essentially a measure of how thermally insensitive a substance is to the addition of energy. The greater a material's specific heat, the more energy must be added to a given mass of the material to cause a particular temperature change. Table 20.1 lists representative specific heats.

From this definition, we can relate the energy Q transferred between a sample of mass m of a material and its surroundings to a temperature change ΔT as

$$Q = mc\,\Delta T \qquad (20.4)$$

For example, the energy required to raise the temperature of 0.500 kg of water by 3.00°C is $Q = (0.500\text{ kg})(4\,186\text{ J/kg}\cdot{}^\circ\text{C})(3.00^\circ\text{C}) = 6.28 \times 10^3$ J. Notice that when the temperature increases, Q and ΔT are taken to be positive and energy transfers into the system. When the temperature decreases, Q and ΔT are negative and energy transfers out of the system.

We can identify $mc\,\Delta T$ as the change in internal energy of the system if we ignore any thermal expansion or contraction of the system. (Thermal expansion or contraction would result in a very small amount of work being done on the system by the surrounding air.) Then, Equation 20.4 is a reduced form of Equation 8.2: $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q$. The internal energy of the system can be changed by transferring energy into the system by any mechanism. For example, if the system is a baked potato in a microwave oven, Equation 8.2 reduces to the following analog to Equation 20.4: $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = T_{\text{ER}} = mc\,\Delta T$, where T_{ER} is the energy transferred to the potato from the microwave oven by electromagnetic radiation. If the system is the air in a bicycle pump, which becomes hot when the pump is operated, Equation 8.2 reduces to the following analog to Equation 20.4: $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = W = mc\,\Delta T$, where W is the work done on the pump by the operator. By identifying $mc\,\Delta T$ as ΔE_{int}, we have taken a step toward a better understanding of temperature: temperature is related to the energy of the molecules of a system. We will learn more details of this relationship in Chapter 21.

Specific heat varies with temperature. If, however, temperature intervals are not too great, the temperature variation can be ignored and c can be treated as a constant.[2]

Pitfall Prevention 20.3

An Unfortunate Choice of Terminology The name *specific heat* is an unfortunate holdover from the days when thermodynamics and mechanics developed separately. A better name would be *specific energy transfer,* but the existing term is too entrenched to be replaced.

Pitfall Prevention 20.4

Energy Can Be Transferred by Any Method The symbol Q represents the amount of energy transferred, but keep in mind that the energy transfer in Equation 20.4 could be by *any* of the methods introduced in Chapter 8; it does not have to be heat. For example, repeatedly bending a wire coat hanger raises the temperature at the bending point by *work.*

[2]The definition given by Equation 20.4 assumes the specific heat does not vary with temperature over the interval $\Delta T = T_f - T_i$. In general, if c varies with temperature over the interval, the correct expression for Q is $Q = m\int_{T_i}^{T_f} c\,dT$.

For example, the specific heat of water varies by only about 1% from 0°C to 100°C at atmospheric pressure. Unless stated otherwise, we shall neglect such variations.

Quick Quiz 20.1 Imagine you have 1 kg each of iron, glass, and water, and all three samples are at 10°C. **(a)** Rank the samples from highest to lowest temperature after 100 J of energy is added to each sample. **(b)** Rank the samples from greatest to least amount of energy transferred by heat if each sample increases in temperature by 20°C.

Notice from Table 20.1 that water has the highest specific heat of common materials. This high specific heat is in part responsible for the moderate climates found near large bodies of water. As the temperature of a body of water decreases during the winter, energy is transferred from the cooling water to the air by heat, increasing the internal energy of the air. Because of the high specific heat of water, a relatively large amount of energy is transferred to the air for even modest temperature changes of the water. The prevailing winds on the West Coast of the United States are toward the land (eastward). Hence, the energy liberated by the Pacific Ocean as it cools keeps coastal areas much warmer than they would otherwise be. As a result, West Coast states generally have more favorable winter weather than East Coast states, where the prevailing winds do not tend to carry the energy toward land.

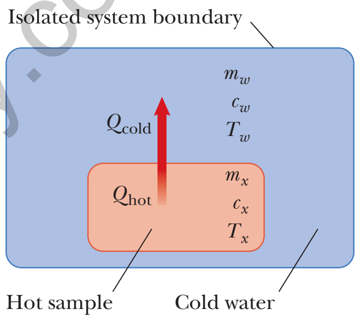


Figure 20.2 In a calorimetry experiment, a hot sample whose specific heat is unknown is placed in cold water in a container that isolates the system from the environment.

Calorimetry

One technique for measuring specific heat involves heating a sample to some known temperature T_x, placing it in a vessel containing water of known mass and temperature $T_w < T_x$, and measuring the temperature of the water after equilibrium has been reached. This technique is called **calorimetry,** and devices in which this energy transfer occurs are called **calorimeters.** Figure 20.2 shows the hot sample in the cold water and the resulting energy transfer by heat from the high-temperature part of the system to the low-temperature part. If the system of the sample and the water is isolated, the principle of conservation of energy requires that the amount of energy Q_{hot} that leaves the sample (of unknown specific heat) equal the amount of energy Q_{cold} that enters the water.[3] Conservation of energy allows us to write the mathematical representation of this energy statement as

$$Q_{cold} = -Q_{hot} \qquad \textbf{(20.5)}$$

Suppose m_x is the mass of a sample of some substance whose specific heat we wish to determine. Let's call its specific heat c_x and its initial temperature T_x as shown in Figure 20.2. Likewise, let m_w, c_w, and T_w represent corresponding values for the water. If T_f is the final temperature after the system comes to equilibrium, Equation 20.4 shows that the energy transfer for the water is $m_w c_w(T_f - T_w)$, which is positive because $T_f > T_w$, and that the energy transfer for the sample of unknown specific heat is $m_x c_x(T_f - T_x)$, which is negative. Substituting these expressions into Equation 20.5 gives

$$m_w c_w(T_f - T_w) = -m_x c_x(T_f - T_x)$$

This equation can be solved for the unknown specific heat c_x.

Pitfall Prevention 20.5

Remember the Negative Sign It is *critical* to include the negative sign in Equation 20.5. The negative sign in the equation is necessary for consistency with our sign convention for energy transfer. The energy transfer Q_{hot} has a negative value because energy is leaving the hot substance. The negative sign in the equation ensures that the right side is a positive number, consistent with the left side, which is positive because energy is entering the cold water.

Example 20.2 Cooling a Hot Ingot

A 0.050 0-kg ingot of metal is heated to 200.0°C and then dropped into a calorimeter containing 0.400 kg of water initially at 20.0°C. The final equilibrium temperature of the mixed system is 22.4°C. Find the specific heat of the metal.

continued

[3]For precise measurements, the water container should be included in our calculations because it also exchanges energy with the sample. Doing so would require that we know the container's mass and composition, however. If the mass of the water is much greater than that of the container, we can neglect the effects of the container.

20.2 continued

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine the process occurring in the isolated system of Figure 20.2. Energy leaves the hot ingot and goes into the cold water, so the ingot cools off and the water warms up. Once both are at the same temperature, the energy transfer stops.

Categorize We use an equation developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 20.4 to evaluate each side of Equation 20.5:
$$m_w c_w (T_f - T_w) = -m_x c_x (T_f - T_x)$$

Solve for c_x:
$$c_x = \frac{m_w c_w (T_f - T_w)}{m_x (T_x - T_f)}$$

Substitute numerical values:
$$c_x = \frac{(0.400 \text{ kg})(4\,186 \text{ J/kg}\cdot{}^\circ\text{C})(22.4^\circ\text{C} - 20.0^\circ\text{C})}{(0.050\,0 \text{ kg})(200.0^\circ\text{C} - 22.4^\circ\text{C})}$$
$$= 453 \text{ J/kg}\cdot{}^\circ\text{C}$$

The ingot is most likely iron as you can see by comparing this result with the data given in Table 20.1. The temperature of the ingot is initially above the steam point. Therefore, some of the water may vaporize when the ingot is dropped into the water. We assume the system is sealed and this steam cannot escape. Because the final equilibrium temperature is lower than the steam point, any steam that does result recondenses back into water.

WHAT IF? Suppose you are performing an experiment in the laboratory that uses this technique to determine the specific heat of a sample and you wish to decrease the overall uncertainty in your final result for c_x. Of the data given in this example, changing which value would be most effective in decreasing the uncertainty?

Answer The largest experimental uncertainty is associated with the small difference in temperature of 2.4°C for the water. For example, using the rules for propagation of uncertainty in Appendix Section B.8, an uncertainty of 0.1°C in each of T_f and T_w leads to an 8% uncertainty in their difference. For this temperature difference to be larger experimentally, the most effective change is to *decrease the amount of water.*

Example 20.3 Fun Time for a Cowboy AM

A cowboy fires a silver bullet with a muzzle speed of 200 m/s into the pine wall of a saloon. Assume all the internal energy generated by the impact remains with the bullet. What is the temperature change of the bullet?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine similar experiences you may have had in which mechanical energy is transformed to internal energy when a moving object is stopped. For example, as mentioned in Section 20.1, a nail becomes warm after it is hit a few times with a hammer.

Categorize The bullet is modeled as an *isolated system.* No work is done on the system because the force from the wall moves through no displacement. This example is similar to the skateboarder pushing off a wall in Section 9.7. There, no work is done on the skateboarder by the wall, and potential energy stored in the body from previous meals is transformed to kinetic energy. Here, no work is done by the wall on the bullet, and kinetic energy is transformed to internal energy.

Analyze Reduce the conservation of energy equation, Equation 8.2, to the appropriate expression for the system of the bullet:
$$(1)\quad \Delta K + \Delta E_{\text{int}} = 0$$

The change in the bullet's internal energy is related to its change in temperature:
$$(2)\quad \Delta E_{\text{int}} = mc\,\Delta T$$

Substitute Equation (2) into Equation (1):
$$(0 - \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2) + mc\,\Delta T = 0$$

20.3 continued

Solve for ΔT, using 234 J/kg · °C as the specific heat of silver (see Table 20.1):

$$(3)\quad \Delta T = \frac{\frac{1}{2}mv^2}{mc} = \frac{v^2}{2c} = \frac{(200\ \text{m/s})^2}{2(234\ \text{J/kg}\cdot{}^\circ\text{C})} = 85.5^\circ\text{C}$$

Finalize Notice that the result does not depend on the mass of the bullet.

WHAT IF? Suppose the cowboy runs out of silver bullets and fires a lead bullet at the same speed into the wall. Will the temperature change of the bullet be larger or smaller?

Answer Table 20.1 shows that the specific heat of lead is 128 J/kg · °C, which is smaller than that for silver. Therefore, a given amount of energy input or transformation raises lead to a higher temperature than silver and the final temperature of the lead bullet will be larger. In Equation (3), let's substitute the new value for the specific heat:

$$\Delta T = \frac{v^2}{2c} = \frac{(200\ \text{m/s})^2}{2(128\ \text{J/kg}\cdot{}^\circ\text{C})} = 156^\circ\text{C}$$

There is no requirement that the silver and lead bullets have the same mass to determine this change in temperature. The only requirement is that they have the same speed.

20.3 Latent Heat

As we have seen in the preceding section, a substance can undergo a change in temperature when energy is transferred between it and its surroundings. In some situations, however, the transfer of energy does not result in a change in temperature. That is the case whenever the physical characteristics of the substance change from one form to another; such a change is commonly referred to as a **phase change.** Two common phase changes are from solid to liquid (melting) and from liquid to gas (boiling); another is a change in the crystalline structure of a solid. All such phase changes involve a change in the system's internal energy but no change in its temperature. The increase in internal energy in boiling, for example, is represented by the breaking of bonds between molecules in the liquid state; this bond breaking allows the molecules to move farther apart in the gaseous state, with a corresponding increase in intermolecular potential energy.

As you might expect, different substances respond differently to the addition or removal of energy as they change phase because their internal molecular arrangements vary. Also, the amount of energy transferred during a phase change depends on the amount of substance involved. (It takes less energy to melt an ice cube than it does to thaw a frozen lake.) When discussing two phases of a material, we will use the term *higher-phase material* to mean the material existing at the higher temperature. So, for example, if we discuss water and ice, water is the higher-phase material, whereas steam is the higher-phase material in a discussion of steam and water. Consider a system containing a substance in two phases in equilibrium such as water and ice. The initial amount of the higher-phase material, water, in the system is m_i. Now imagine that energy Q enters the system. As a result, the final amount of water is m_f due to the melting of some of the ice. Therefore, the amount of ice that melted, equal to the amount of *new* water, is $\Delta m = m_f - m_i$. We define the **latent heat** for this phase change as

$$L \equiv \frac{Q}{\Delta m} \tag{20.6}$$

This parameter is called latent heat (literally, the "hidden" heat) because this added or removed energy does not result in a temperature change. The value of L for a substance depends on the nature of the phase change as well as on the properties of the substance. If the entire amount of the lower-phase material undergoes a phase change, the change in mass Δm of the higher-phase material is equal to the initial mass of the lower-phase material. For example, if an ice cube of mass m on a

Table 20.2 Latent Heats of Fusion and Vaporization

Substance	Melting Point (°C)	Latent Heat of Fusion (J/kg)	Boiling Point (°C)	Latent Heat of Vaporization (J/kg)
Helium[a]	−272.2	5.23×10^3	−268.93	2.09×10^4
Oxygen	−218.79	1.38×10^4	−182.97	2.13×10^5
Nitrogen	−209.97	2.55×10^4	−195.81	2.01×10^5
Ethyl alcohol	−114	1.04×10^5	78	8.54×10^5
Water	0.00	3.33×10^5	100.00	2.26×10^6
Sulfur	119	3.81×10^4	444.60	3.26×10^5
Lead	327.3	2.45×10^4	1 750	8.70×10^5
Aluminum	660	3.97×10^5	2 450	1.14×10^7
Silver	960.80	8.82×10^4	2 193	2.33×10^6
Gold	1 063.00	6.44×10^4	2 660	1.58×10^6
Copper	1 083	1.34×10^5	1 187	5.06×10^6

[a]Helium does not solidify at atmospheric pressure. The melting point given here corresponds to a pressure of 2.5 MPa.

plate melts completely, the change in mass of the water is $m_f - 0 = m$, which is the mass of new water and is also equal to the initial mass of the ice cube.

From the definition of latent heat, and again choosing heat as our energy transfer mechanism, the energy required to change the phase of a pure substance is

Energy transferred to a substance during a phase change

$$Q = L\,\Delta m \quad (20.7)$$

where Δm is the change in mass of the higher-phase material.

Latent heat of fusion L_f is the term used when the phase change is from solid to liquid (*to fuse* means "to combine by melting"), and **latent heat of vaporization** L_v is the term used when the phase change is from liquid to gas (the liquid "vaporizes").[4] The latent heats of various substances vary considerably as data in Table 20.2 show. When energy enters a system, causing melting or vaporization, the amount of the higher-phase material increases, so Δm is positive and Q is positive, consistent with our sign convention. When energy is extracted from a system, causing freezing or condensation, the amount of the higher-phase material decreases, so Δm is negative and Q is negative, again consistent with our sign convention. Keep in mind that Δm in Equation 20.7 always refers to the higher-phase material.

Pitfall Prevention 20.6

Signs Are Critical Sign errors occur very often when students apply calorimetry equations. For phase changes, remember that Δm in Equation 20.7 is always the change in mass of the higher-phase material. In Equation 20.4, be sure your ΔT is *always* the final temperature minus the initial temperature. In addition, you must *always* include the negative sign on the right side of Equation 20.5.

To understand the role of latent heat in phase changes, consider the energy required to convert a system consisting of a 1.00-g cube of ice at −30.0°C to steam at 120.0°C. Figure 20.3 indicates the experimental results obtained when energy is gradually added to the ice. The results are presented as a graph of temperature of the system versus energy added to the system. Let's examine each portion of the red-brown curve, which is divided into parts A through E.

Part A. On this portion of the curve, the temperature of the system changes from −30.0°C to 0.0°C. Equation 20.4 indicates that the temperature varies linearly with the energy added, so the experimental result is a straight line on the graph. Because the specific heat of ice is 2 090 J/kg · °C, we can calculate the amount of energy added by using Equation 20.4:

$$Q = m_i c_i \,\Delta T = (1.00 \times 10^{-3}\text{ kg})(2\,090\text{ J/kg}\cdot{}^\circ\text{C})(30.0^\circ\text{C}) = 62.7\text{ J}$$

Part B. When the temperature of the system reaches 0.0°C, the ice–water mixture remains at this temperature—even though energy is being added—until all the ice melts. The energy required to melt 1.00 g of ice at 0.0°C is, from Equation 20.7,

$$Q = L_f\,\Delta m_w = L_f m_i = (3.33 \times 10^5\text{ J/kg})(1.00 \times 10^{-3}\text{ kg}) = 333\text{ J}$$

[4]When a gas cools, it eventually *condenses;* that is, it returns to the liquid phase. The energy given up per unit mass is called the *latent heat of condensation* and is numerically equal to the latent heat of vaporization. Likewise, when a liquid cools, it eventually solidifies, and the *latent heat of solidification* is numerically equal to the latent heat of fusion.

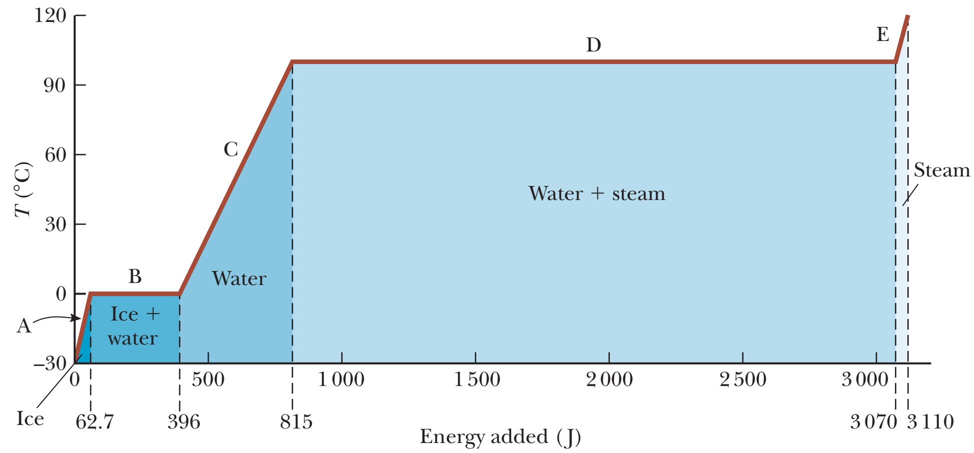


Figure 20.3 A plot of temperature versus energy added when a system initially consisting of 1.00 g of ice at −30.0°C is converted to steam at 120.0°C.

At this point, we have moved to the 396 J (= 62.7 J + 333 J) mark on the energy axis in Figure 20.3.

Part C. Between 0.0°C and 100.0°C, nothing surprising happens. No phase change occurs, and so all energy added to the system, which is now water, is used to increase its temperature. The amount of energy necessary to increase the temperature from 0.0°C to 100.0°C is

$$Q = m_w c_w \Delta T = (1.00 \times 10^{-3}\text{ kg})(4.19 \times 10^3\text{ J/kg}\cdot{}^\circ\text{C})(100.0^\circ\text{C}) = 419\text{ J}$$

where m_w is the mass of the water in the system, which is the same as the mass m_i of the original ice.

Part D. At 100.0°C, another phase change occurs as the system changes from water at 100.0°C to steam at 100.0°C. Similar to the ice–water mixture in part B, the water–steam mixture remains at 100.0°C—even though energy is being added—until all the liquid has been converted to steam. The energy required to convert 1.00 g of water to steam at 100.0°C is

$$Q = L_v \Delta m_s = L_v m_w = (2.26 \times 10^6\text{ J/kg})(1.00 \times 10^{-3}\text{ kg}) = 2.26 \times 10^3\text{ J}$$

Part E. On this portion of the curve, as in parts A and C, no phase change occurs; therefore, all energy added is used to increase the temperature of the system, which is now steam. The energy that must be added to raise the temperature of the steam from 100.0°C to 120.0°C is

$$Q = m_s c_s \Delta T = (1.00 \times 10^{-3}\text{ kg})(2.01 \times 10^3\text{ J/kg}\cdot{}^\circ\text{C})(20.0^\circ\text{C}) = 40.2\text{ J}$$

The total amount of energy that must be added to the system to change 1 g of ice at −30.0°C to steam at 120.0°C is the sum of the results from all five parts of the curve, which is 3.11×10^3 J. Conversely, to cool 1 g of steam at 120.0°C to ice at −30.0°C, we must remove 3.11×10^3 J of energy.

Notice in Figure 20.3 the relatively large amount of energy that is transferred into the water to vaporize it to steam. Imagine reversing this process, with a large amount of energy transferred out of steam to condense it into water. That is why a burn to your skin from steam at 100°C is much more damaging than exposure of your skin to water at 100°C. A very large amount of energy enters your skin from the steam, and the steam remains at 100°C for a long time while it condenses. Conversely, when your skin makes contact with water at 100°C, the water immediately begins to drop in temperature as energy transfers from the water to your skin.

If liquid water is held perfectly still in a very clean container, it is possible for the water to drop below 0°C without freezing into ice. This phenomenon, called **supercooling,** arises because the water requires a disturbance of some sort for the molecules to move apart and start forming the large, open ice structure that makes the density of ice lower than that of water as discussed in Section 19.4. If supercooled water is disturbed, it suddenly freezes. The system drops into the lower-energy configuration of bound molecules of the ice structure, and the energy released raises the temperature back to 0°C.

Commercial hand warmers consist of liquid sodium acetate in a sealed plastic pouch. The solution in the pouch is in a stable supercooled state. When a disk in the pouch is clicked by your fingers, the liquid solidifies and the temperature increases, just like the supercooled water just mentioned. In this case, however, the freezing point of the liquid is higher than body temperature, so the pouch feels warm to the touch. To reuse the hand warmer, the pouch must be boiled until the solid liquefies. Then, as it cools, it passes below its freezing point into the supercooled state.

It is also possible to create **superheating.** For example, clean water in a very clean cup placed in a microwave oven can sometimes rise in temperature beyond 100°C without boiling because the formation of a bubble of steam in the water requires scratches in the cup or some type of impurity in the water to serve as a nucleation site. When the cup is removed from the microwave oven, the superheated water can become explosive as bubbles form immediately and the hot water is forced upward out of the cup.

Quick Quiz 20.2 Suppose the same process of adding energy to the ice cube is performed as discussed above, but instead we graph the internal energy of the system as a function of energy input. What would this graph look like?

Example 20.4 Cooling the Steam AM

What mass of steam initially at 130°C is needed to warm 200 g of water in a 100-g glass container from 20.0°C to 50.0°C?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine placing water and steam together in a closed insulated container. The system eventually reaches a uniform state of water with a final temperature of 50.0°C.

Categorize Based on our conceptualization of this situation, we categorize this example as one involving calorimetry in which a phase change occurs. The calorimeter is an *isolated system* for *energy:* energy transfers between the components of the system but does not cross the boundary between the system and the environment.

Analyze Write Equation 20.5 to describe the calorimetry process:

$$(1)\quad Q_{\text{cold}} = -Q_{\text{hot}}$$

The steam undergoes three processes: first a decrease in temperature to 100°C, then condensation into liquid water, and finally a decrease in temperature of the water to 50.0°C. Find the energy transfer in the first process using the unknown mass m_s of the steam:

$$Q_1 = m_s c_s \,\Delta T_s$$

Find the energy transfer in the second process:

$$Q_2 = L_v \,\Delta m_s = L_v(0 - m_s) = -m_s L_v$$

Find the energy transfer in the third process:

$$Q_3 = m_s c_w \,\Delta T_{\text{hot water}}$$

Add the energy transfers in these three stages:

$$(2)\quad Q_{\text{hot}} = Q_1 + Q_2 + Q_3 = m_s(c_s\,\Delta T_s - L_v + c_w\,\Delta T_{\text{hot water}})$$

The 20.0°C water and the glass undergo only one process, an increase in temperature to 50.0°C. Find the energy transfer in this process:

$$(3)\quad Q_{\text{cold}} = m_w c_w \,\Delta T_{\text{cold water}} + m_g c_g \,\Delta T_{\text{glass}}$$

Substitute Equations (2) and (3) into Equation (1):

$$m_w c_w \,\Delta T_{\text{cold water}} + m_g c_g \,\Delta T_{\text{glass}} = -m_s(c_s\,\Delta T_s - L_v + c_w\,\Delta T_{\text{hot water}})$$

Solve for m_s:

$$m_s = -\frac{m_w c_w \,\Delta T_{\text{cold water}} + m_g c_g \,\Delta T_{\text{glass}}}{c_s\,\Delta T_s - L_v + c_w\,\Delta T_{\text{hot water}}}$$

▶ 20.4 continued

Substitute numerical values:

$$m_s = -\frac{(0.200\text{ kg})(4\,186\text{ J/kg}\cdot°\text{C})(50.0°\text{C} - 20.0°\text{C}) + (0.100\text{ kg})(837\text{ J/kg}\cdot°\text{C})(50.0°\text{C} - 20.0°\text{C})}{(2\,010\text{ J/kg}\cdot°\text{C})(100°\text{C} - 130°\text{C}) - (2.26 \times 10^6\text{ J/kg}) + (4\,186\text{ J/kg}\cdot°\text{C})(50.0°\text{C} - 100°\text{C})}$$

$$= 1.09 \times 10^{-2}\text{ kg} = \boxed{10.9\text{ g}}$$

WHAT IF? What if the final state of the system is water at 100°C? Would we need more steam or less steam? How would the analysis above change?

Answer More steam would be needed to raise the temperature of the water and glass to 100°C instead of 50.0°C. There would be two major changes in the analysis. First, we would not have a term Q_3 for the steam because the water that condenses from the steam does not cool below 100°C. Second, in Q_{cold}, the temperature change would be 80.0°C instead of 30.0°C. For practice, show that the result is a required mass of steam of 31.8 g.

20.4 Work and Heat in Thermodynamic Processes

In thermodynamics, we describe the *state* of a system using such variables as pressure, volume, temperature, and internal energy. As a result, these quantities belong to a category called **state variables.** For any given configuration of the system, we can identify values of the state variables. (For mechanical systems, the state variables include kinetic energy K and potential energy U.) A state of a system can be specified only if the system is in thermal equilibrium internally. In the case of a gas in a container, internal thermal equilibrium requires that every part of the gas be at the same pressure and temperature.

A second category of variables in situations involving energy is **transfer variables.** These variables are those that appear on the right side of the conservation of energy equation, Equation 8.2. Such a variable has a nonzero value if a process occurs in which energy is transferred across the system's boundary. The transfer variable is positive or negative, depending on whether energy is entering or leaving the system. Because a transfer of energy across the boundary represents a change in the system, transfer variables are not associated with a given state of the system, but rather with a *change* in the state of the system.

In the previous sections, we discussed heat as a transfer variable. In this section, we study another important transfer variable for thermodynamic systems, work. Work performed on particles was studied extensively in Chapter 7, and here we investigate the work done on a deformable system, a gas. Consider a gas contained in a cylinder fitted with a movable piston (Fig. 20.4). At equilibrium, the gas occupies a volume V and exerts a uniform pressure P on the cylinder's walls and on the piston. If the piston has a cross-sectional area A, the magnitude of the force exerted by the gas on the piston is $F = PA$. By Newton's third law, the magnitude of the force exerted by the piston on the gas is also PA. Now let's assume we push the piston inward and compress the gas **quasi-statically,** that is, slowly enough to allow the system to remain essentially in internal thermal equilibrium at all times. The point of application of the force on the gas is the bottom face of the piston. As the piston is pushed downward by an external force $\vec{\mathbf{F}} = -F\hat{\mathbf{j}}$ through a displacement of $d\vec{\mathbf{r}} = dy\,\hat{\mathbf{j}}$ (Fig. 20.4b), the work done on the gas is, according to our definition of work in Chapter 7,

$$dW = \vec{\mathbf{F}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{r}} = -F\hat{\mathbf{j}} \cdot dy\,\hat{\mathbf{j}} = -F\,dy = -PA\,dy$$

The mass of the piston is assumed to be negligible in this discussion. Because $A\,dy$ is the change in volume of the gas dV, we can express the work done on the gas as

$$dW = -P\,dV \tag{20.8}$$

If the gas is compressed, dV is negative and the work done on the gas is positive. If the gas expands, dV is positive and the work done on the gas is negative. If the

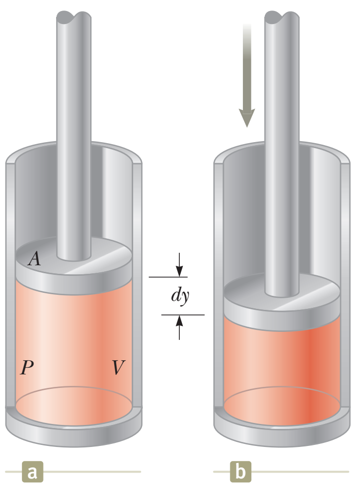


Figure 20.4 Work is done on a gas contained in a cylinder at a pressure P as the piston is pushed downward so that the gas is compressed.

volume remains constant, the work done on the gas is zero. The total work done on the gas as its volume changes from V_i to V_f is given by the integral of Equation 20.8:

Work done on a gas

$$W = -\int_{V_i}^{V_f} P\,dV \tag{20.9}$$

To evaluate this integral, you must know how the pressure varies with volume during the process.

In general, the pressure is not constant during a process followed by a gas, but depends on the volume and temperature. If the pressure and volume are known at each step of the process, the state of the gas at each step can be plotted on an important graphical representation called a ***PV* diagram** as in Figure 20.5. This type of diagram allows us to visualize a process through which a gas is progressing. The curve on a *PV* diagram is called the *path* taken between the initial and final states.

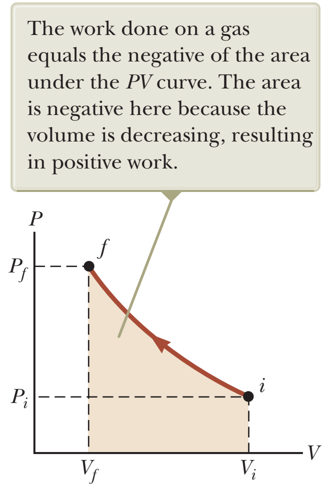


Figure 20.5 A gas is compressed quasi-statically (slowly) from state i to state f. An outside agent must do positive work on the gas to compress it.

Notice that the integral in Equation 20.9 is equal to the area under a curve on a *PV* diagram. Therefore, we can identify an important use for *PV* diagrams:

> The work done on a gas in a quasi-static process that takes the gas from an initial state to a final state is the negative of the area under the curve on a *PV* diagram, evaluated between the initial and final states.

For the process of compressing a gas in a cylinder, the work done depends on the particular path taken between the initial and final states as Figure 20.5 suggests. To illustrate this important point, consider several different paths connecting i and f (Fig. 20.6). In the process depicted in Figure 20.6a, the volume of the gas is first reduced from V_i to V_f at constant pressure P_i and the pressure of the gas then increases from P_i to P_f by heating at constant volume V_f. The work done on the gas along this path is $-P_i(V_f - V_i)$. In Figure 20.6b, the pressure of the gas is increased from P_i to P_f at constant volume V_i and then the volume of the gas is reduced from V_i to V_f at constant pressure P_f. The work done on the gas is $-P_f(V_f - V_i)$. This value is greater than that for the process described in Figure 20.6a because the piston is moved through the same displacement by a larger force. Finally, for the process described in Figure 20.6c, where both P and V change continuously, the work done on the gas has some value between the values obtained in the first two processes. To evaluate the work in this case, the function $P(V)$ must be known so that we can evaluate the integral in Equation 20.9.

The energy transfer Q into or out of a system by heat also depends on the process. Consider the situations depicted in Figure 20.7. In each case, the gas has the same initial volume, temperature, and pressure, and is assumed to be ideal. In Figure 20.7a, the gas is thermally insulated from its surroundings except at the bottom of the gas-filled region, where it is in thermal contact with an energy reservoir. An *energy reservoir* is a source of energy that is considered to be so great that a finite transfer of energy to or from the reservoir does not change its temperature. The piston is held

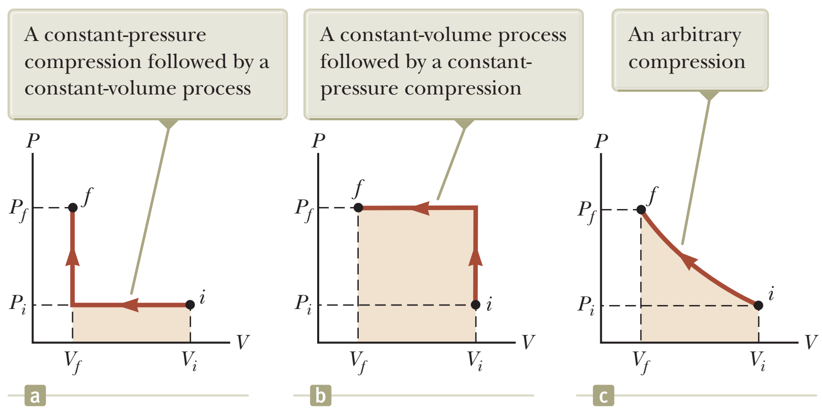


Figure 20.6 The work done on a gas as it is taken from an initial state to a final state depends on the path between these states.

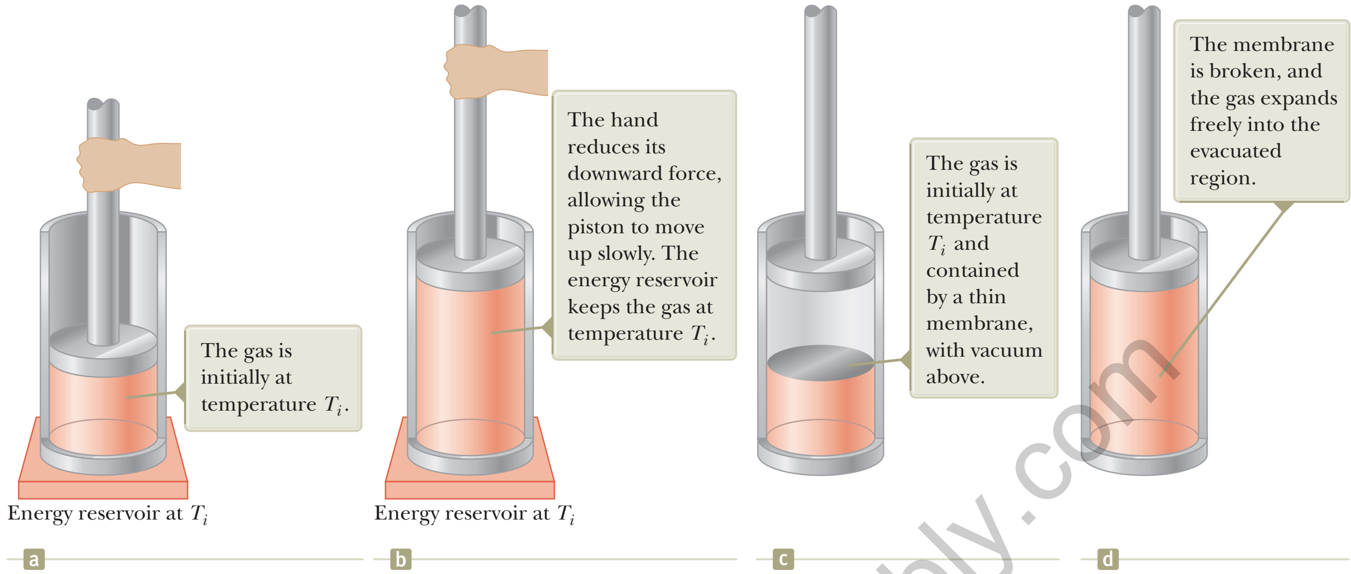


Figure 20.7 Gas in a cylinder. (a) The gas is in contact with an energy reservoir. The walls of the cylinder are perfectly insulating, but the base in contact with the reservoir is conducting. (b) The gas expands slowly to a larger volume. (c) The gas is contained by a membrane in half of a volume, with vacuum in the other half. The entire cylinder is perfectly insulating. (d) The gas expands freely into the larger volume.

at its initial position by an external agent such as a hand. When the force holding the piston is reduced slightly, the piston rises very slowly to its final position shown in Figure 20.7b. Because the piston is moving upward, the gas is doing work on the piston. During this expansion to the final volume V_f, just enough energy is transferred by heat from the reservoir to the gas to maintain a constant temperature T_i.

Now consider the completely thermally insulated system shown in Figure 20.7c. When the membrane is broken, the gas expands rapidly into the vacuum until it occupies a volume V_f and is at a pressure P_f. The final state of the gas is shown in Figure 20.7d. In this case, the gas does no work because it does not apply a force; no force is required to expand into a vacuum. Furthermore, no energy is transferred by heat through the insulating wall.

As we discuss in Section 20.5, experiments show that the temperature of the ideal gas does not change in the process indicated in Figures 20.7c and 20.7d. Therefore, the initial and final states of the ideal gas in Figures 20.7a and 20.7b are identical to the initial and final states in Figures 20.7c and 20.7d, but the paths are different. In the first case, the gas does work on the piston and energy is transferred slowly to the gas by heat. In the second case, no energy is transferred by heat and the value of the work done is zero. Therefore, energy transfer by heat, like work done, depends on the particular process occurring in the system. In other words, because heat and work both depend on the path followed on a *PV* diagram between the initial and final states, neither quantity is determined solely by the endpoints of a thermodynamic process.

20.5 The First Law of Thermodynamics

When we introduced the law of conservation of energy in Chapter 8, we stated that the change in the energy of a system is equal to the sum of all transfers of energy across the system's boundary (Eq. 8.2). The **first law of thermodynamics** is a special case of the law of conservation of energy that describes processes in which only the internal energy[5] changes and the only energy transfers are by heat and work:

$$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q + W \quad (20.10)$$

◀ **First law of thermodynamics**

[5]It is an unfortunate accident of history that the traditional symbol for internal energy is U, which is also the traditional symbol for potential energy as introduced in Chapter 7. To avoid confusion between potential energy and internal energy, we use the symbol E_{int} for internal energy in this book. If you take an advanced course in thermodynamics, however, be prepared to see U used as the symbol for internal energy in the first law.

Pitfall Prevention 20.7

Dual Sign Conventions Some physics and engineering books present the first law as $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q - W$, with a minus sign between the heat and work. The reason is that work is defined in these treatments as the work done *by* the gas rather than *on* the gas, as in our treatment. The equivalent equation to Equation 20.9 in these treatments defines work as $W = \int_{V_i}^{V_f} P\, dV$. Therefore, if positive work is done by the gas, energy is leaving the system, leading to the negative sign in the first law.

In your studies in other chemistry or engineering courses, or in your reading of other physics books, be sure to note which sign convention is being used for the first law.

Pitfall Prevention 20.8

The First Law With our approach to energy in this book, the first law of thermodynamics is a special case of Equation 8.2. Some physicists argue that the first law is the general equation for energy conservation, equivalent to Equation 8.2. In this approach, the first law is applied to a closed system (so that there is no matter transfer), heat is interpreted so as to include electromagnetic radiation, and work is interpreted so as to include electrical transmission ("electrical work") and mechanical waves ("molecular work"). Keep that in mind if you run across the first law in your reading of other physics books.

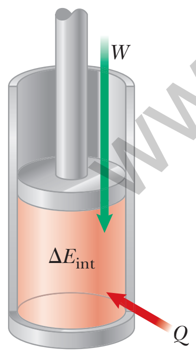


Figure 20.8 The first law of thermodynamics equates the change in internal energy E_{int} in a system to the net energy transfer to the system by heat Q and work W. In the situation shown here, the internal energy of the gas increases.

Look back at Equation 8.2 to see that the first law of thermodynamics is contained within that more general equation.

Let us investigate some special cases in which the first law can be applied. First, consider an *isolated system,* that is, one that does not interact with its surroundings, as we have seen before. In this case, no energy transfer by heat takes place and the work done on the system is zero; hence, the internal energy remains constant. That is, because $Q = W = 0$, it follows that $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = 0$; therefore, $E_{\text{int},i} = E_{\text{int},f}$. We conclude that the internal energy E_{int} of an isolated system remains constant.

Next, consider the case of a system that can exchange energy with its surroundings and is taken through a **cyclic process,** that is, a process that starts and ends at the same state. In this case, the change in the internal energy must again be zero because E_{int} is a state variable; therefore, the energy Q added to the system must equal the negative of the work W done on the system during the cycle. That is, in a cyclic process,

$$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad Q = -W \quad \text{(cyclic process)}$$

On a PV diagram for a gas, a cyclic process appears as a closed curve. (The processes described in Figure 20.6 are represented by open curves because the initial and final states differ.) It can be shown that in a cyclic process for a gas, the net work done on the system per cycle equals the area enclosed by the path representing the process on a PV diagram.

20.6 Some Applications of the First Law of Thermodynamics

In this section, we consider additional applications of the first law to processes through which a gas is taken. As a model, let's consider the sample of gas contained in the piston–cylinder apparatus in Figure 20.8. This figure shows work being done on the gas and energy transferring in by heat, so the internal energy of the gas is rising. In the following discussion of various processes, refer back to this figure and mentally alter the directions of the transfer of energy to reflect what is happening in the process.

Before we apply the first law of thermodynamics to specific systems, it is useful to first define some idealized thermodynamic processes. An **adiabatic process** is one during which no energy enters or leaves the system by heat; that is, $Q = 0$. An adiabatic process can be achieved either by thermally insulating the walls of the system or by performing the process rapidly so that there is negligible time for energy to transfer by heat. Applying the first law of thermodynamics to an adiabatic process gives

$$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = W \quad \text{(adiabatic process)} \qquad \textbf{(20.11)}$$

This result shows that if a gas is compressed adiabatically such that W is positive, then ΔE_{int} is positive and the temperature of the gas increases. Conversely, the temperature of a gas decreases when the gas expands adiabatically.

Adiabatic processes are very important in engineering practice. Some common examples are the expansion of hot gases in an internal combustion engine, the liquefaction of gases in a cooling system, and the compression stroke in a diesel engine.

The process described in Figures 20.7c and 20.7d, called an **adiabatic free expansion,** is unique. The process is adiabatic because it takes place in an insulated container. Because the gas expands into a vacuum, it does not apply a force on a piston as does the gas in Figures 20.7a and 20.7b, so no work is done on or by the gas. Therefore, in this adiabatic process, both $Q = 0$ and $W = 0$. As a result, $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = 0$ for this process as can be seen from the first law. That is, the initial and final internal energies of a gas are equal in an adiabatic free expansion. As we shall see in Chapter 21, the internal energy of an ideal gas depends only on its temperature. Therefore, we expect no change in temperature during an adiabatic free expansion. This prediction is in accord with the results of experiments performed at low pressures. (Experiments performed at high pressures for real gases show a slight change in temperature after the expansion due to intermolecular interactions, which represent a deviation from the model of an ideal gas.)

A process that occurs at constant pressure is called an **isobaric process.** In Figure 20.8, an isobaric process could be established by allowing the piston to move freely so that it is always in equilibrium between the net force from the gas pushing upward and the weight of the piston plus the force due to atmospheric pressure pushing downward. The first process in Figure 20.6a and the second process in Figure 20.6b are both isobaric.

In such a process, the values of the heat and the work are both usually nonzero. The work done on the gas in an isobaric process is simply

$$W = -P(V_f - V_i) \quad \text{(isobaric process)} \tag{20.12}$$

◀ **Isobaric process**

where P is the constant pressure of the gas during the process.

A process that takes place at constant volume is called an **isovolumetric process.** In Figure 20.8, clamping the piston at a fixed position would ensure an isovolumetric process. The second process in Figure 20.6a and the first process in Figure 20.6b are both isovolumetric.

Because the volume of the gas does not change in such a process, the work given by Equation 20.9 is zero. Hence, from the first law we see that in an isovolumetric process, because $W = 0$,

$$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q \quad \text{(isovolumetric process)} \tag{20.13}$$

◀ **Isovolumetric process**

This expression specifies that if energy is added by heat to a system kept at constant volume, all the transferred energy remains in the system as an increase in its internal energy. For example, when a can of spray paint is thrown into a fire, energy enters the system (the gas in the can) by heat through the metal walls of the can. Consequently, the temperature, and therefore the pressure, in the can increases until the can possibly explodes.

A process that occurs at constant temperature is called an **isothermal process.** This process can be established by immersing the cylinder in Figure 20.8 in an ice–water bath or by putting the cylinder in contact with some other constant-temperature reservoir. A plot of P versus V at constant temperature for an ideal gas yields a hyperbolic curve called an *isotherm*. The internal energy of an ideal gas is a function of temperature only. Hence, because the temperature does not change in an isothermal process involving an ideal gas, we must have $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = 0$. For an isothermal process, we conclude from the first law that the energy transfer Q must be equal to the negative of the work done on the gas; that is, $Q = -W$. Any energy that enters the system by heat is transferred out of the system by work; as a result, no change in the internal energy of the system occurs in an isothermal process.

◀ **Isothermal process**

Pitfall Prevention 20.9

$Q \neq 0$ in an Isothermal Process
Do not fall into the common trap of thinking there must be no transfer of energy by heat if the temperature does not change as is the case in an isothermal process. Because the cause of temperature change can be either heat *or* work, the temperature can remain constant even if energy enters the gas by heat, which can only happen if the energy entering the gas by heat leaves by work.

Quick Quiz 20.3 In the last three columns of the following table, fill in the boxes with the correct signs (−, +, or 0) for Q, W, and ΔE_{int}. For each situation, the system to be considered is identified.

Situation	System	Q	W	ΔE_{int}
(a) Rapidly pumping up a bicycle tire	Air in the pump			
(b) Pan of room-temperature water sitting on a hot stove	Water in the pan			
(c) Air quickly leaking out of a balloon	Air originally in the balloon			

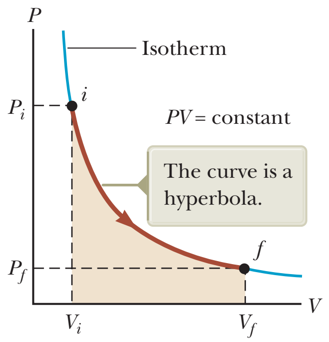


Figure 20.9 The *PV* diagram for an isothermal expansion of an ideal gas from an initial state to a final state.

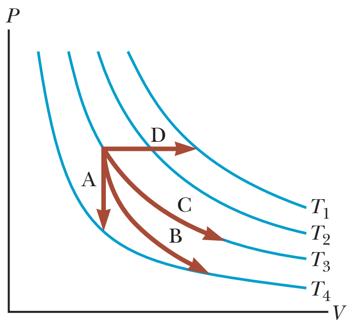


Figure 20.10 (Quick Quiz 20.4) Identify the nature of paths A, B, C, and D.

Isothermal Expansion of an Ideal Gas

Suppose an ideal gas is allowed to expand quasi-statically at constant temperature. This process is described by the *PV* diagram shown in Figure 20.9. The curve is a hyperbola (see Appendix B, Eq. B.23), and the ideal gas law (Eq. 19.8) with T constant indicates that the equation of this curve is $PV = nRT =$ constant.

Let's calculate the work done on the gas in the expansion from state i to state f. The work done on the gas is given by Equation 20.9. Because the gas is ideal and the process is quasi-static, the ideal gas law is valid for each point on the path. Therefore,

$$W = -\int_{V_i}^{V_f} P\,dV = -\int_{V_i}^{V_f} \frac{nRT}{V}\,dV$$

Because T is constant in this case, it can be removed from the integral along with n and R:

$$W = -nRT \int_{V_i}^{V_f} \frac{dV}{V} = -nRT \ln V \Big|_{V_i}^{V_f}$$

To evaluate the integral, we used $\int (dx/x) = \ln x$. (See Appendix B.) Evaluating the result at the initial and final volumes gives

$$W = nRT \ln\left(\frac{V_i}{V_f}\right) \qquad (20.14)$$

Numerically, this work W equals the negative of the shaded area under the *PV* curve shown in Figure 20.9. Because the gas expands, $V_f > V_i$ and the value for the work done on the gas is negative as we expect. If the gas is compressed, then $V_f < V_i$ and the work done on the gas is positive.

Quick Quiz 20.4 Characterize the paths in Figure 20.10 as isobaric, isovolumetric, isothermal, or adiabatic. For path B, $Q = 0$. The blue curves are isotherms.

Example 20.5 An Isothermal Expansion

A 1.0-mol sample of an ideal gas is kept at 0.0°C during an expansion from 3.0 L to 10.0 L.

(A) How much work is done on the gas during the expansion?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Run the process in your mind: the cylinder in Figure 20.8 is immersed in an ice-water bath, and the piston moves outward so that the volume of the gas increases. You can also use the graphical representation in Figure 20.9 to conceptualize the process.

Categorize We will evaluate parameters using equations developed in the preceding sections, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem. Because the temperature of the gas is fixed, the process is isothermal.

Substitute the given values into Equation 20.14:

$$W = nRT \ln\left(\frac{V_i}{V_f}\right)$$
$$= (1.0\text{ mol})(8.31\text{ J/mol}\cdot\text{K})(273\text{ K}) \ln\left(\frac{3.0\text{ L}}{10.0\text{ L}}\right)$$
$$= -2.7 \times 10^3\text{ J}$$

(B) How much energy transfer by heat occurs between the gas and its surroundings in this process?

SOLUTION

Find the heat from the first law:

$$\Delta E_{int} = Q + W$$
$$0 = Q + W$$
$$Q = -W = 2.7 \times 10^3\text{ J}$$

20.5 continued

(C) If the gas is returned to the original volume by means of an isobaric process, how much work is done on the gas?

SOLUTION

Use Equation 20.12. The pressure is not given, so incorporate the ideal gas law:

$$W = -P(V_f - V_i) = -\frac{nRT_i}{V_i}(V_f - V_i)$$

$$= -\frac{(1.0\text{ mol})(8.31\text{ J/mol}\cdot\text{K})(273\text{ K})}{10.0\times 10^{-3}\text{ m}^3}(3.0\times 10^{-3}\text{ m}^3 - 10.0\times 10^{-3}\text{ m}^3)$$

$$= \boxed{1.6\times 10^3\text{ J}}$$

We used the initial temperature and volume to calculate the work done because the final temperature was unknown. The work done on the gas is positive because the gas is being compressed.

Example 20.6 Boiling Water

Suppose 1.00 g of water vaporizes isobarically at atmospheric pressure (1.013×10^5 Pa). Its volume in the liquid state is $V_i = V_{\text{liquid}} = 1.00\text{ cm}^3$, and its volume in the vapor state is $V_f = V_{\text{vapor}} = 1\,671\text{ cm}^3$. Find the work done in the expansion and the change in internal energy of the system. Ignore any mixing of the steam and the surrounding air; imagine that the steam simply pushes the surrounding air out of the way.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Notice that the temperature of the system does not change. There is a phase change occurring as the water evaporates to steam.

Categorize Because the expansion takes place at constant pressure, we categorize the process as isobaric. We will use equations developed in the preceding sections, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 20.12 to find the work done on the system as the air is pushed out of the way:

$$W = -P(V_f - V_i)$$

$$= -(1.013\times 10^5\text{ Pa})(1\,671\times 10^{-6}\text{ m}^3 - 1.00\times 10^{-6}\text{ m}^3)$$

$$= \boxed{-169\text{ J}}$$

Use Equation 20.7 and the latent heat of vaporization for water to find the energy transferred into the system by heat:

$$Q = L_v\,\Delta m_s = m_s L_v = (1.00\times 10^{-3}\text{ kg})(2.26\times 10^6\text{ J/kg})$$

$$= 2\,260\text{ J}$$

Use the first law to find the change in internal energy of the system:

$$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q + W = 2\,260\text{ J} + (-169\text{ J}) = \boxed{2.09\text{ kJ}}$$

The positive value for ΔE_{int} indicates that the internal energy of the system increases. The largest fraction of the energy (2 090 J/ 2260 J = 93%) transferred to the liquid goes into increasing the internal energy of the system. The remaining 7% of the energy transferred leaves the system by work done by the steam on the surrounding atmosphere.

Example 20.7 Heating a Solid

A 1.0-kg bar of copper is heated at atmospheric pressure so that its temperature increases from 20°C to 50°C.

(A) What is the work done on the copper bar by the surrounding atmosphere?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize This example involves a solid, whereas the preceding two examples involved liquids and gases. For a solid, the change in volume due to thermal expansion is very small.

continued

20.7 continued

Categorize Because the expansion takes place at constant atmospheric pressure, we categorize the process as isobaric.

Analyze Find the work done on the copper bar using Equation 20.12:

$$W = -P\,\Delta V$$

Express the change in volume using Equation 19.6 and that $\beta = 3\alpha$:

$$W = -P(\beta V_i\,\Delta T) = -P(3\alpha V_i\,\Delta T) = -3\alpha P V_i\,\Delta T$$

Substitute for the volume in terms of the mass and density of the copper:

$$W = -3\alpha P\left(\frac{m}{\rho}\right)\Delta T$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$W = -3[1.7 \times 10^{-5}\,(°\text{C})^{-1}](1.013 \times 10^{5}\ \text{N/m}^2)\left(\frac{1.0\ \text{kg}}{8.92 \times 10^{3}\ \text{kg/m}^3}\right)(50°\text{C} - 20°\text{C})$$

$$= \boxed{-1.7 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{J}}$$

Because this work is negative, work is done *by* the copper bar on the atmosphere.

(B) How much energy is transferred to the copper bar by heat?

SOLUTION

Use Equation 20.4 and the specific heat of copper from Table 20.1:

$$Q = mc\,\Delta T = (1.0\ \text{kg})(387\ \text{J/kg}\cdot°\text{C})(50°\text{C} - 20°\text{C})$$

$$= \boxed{1.2 \times 10^{4}\ \text{J}}$$

(C) What is the increase in internal energy of the copper bar?

SOLUTION

Use the first law of thermodynamics:

$$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q + W = 1.2 \times 10^{4}\ \text{J} + (-1.7 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{J})$$

$$= \boxed{1.2 \times 10^{4}\ \text{J}}$$

Finalize Most of the energy transferred into the system by heat goes into increasing the internal energy of the copper bar. The fraction of energy used to do work on the surrounding atmosphere is only about 10^{-6}. Hence, when the thermal expansion of a solid or a liquid is analyzed, the small amount of work done on or by the system is usually ignored.

20.7 Energy Transfer Mechanisms in Thermal Processes

In Chapter 8, we introduced a global approach to the energy analysis of physical processes through Equation 8.1, $\Delta E_{\text{system}} = \Sigma\, T$, where T represents energy transfer, which can occur by several mechanisms. Earlier in this chapter, we discussed two of the terms on the right side of this equation, work W and heat Q. In this section, we explore more details about heat as a means of energy transfer and two other energy transfer methods often related to temperature changes: convection (a form of matter transfer T_{MT}) and electromagnetic radiation T_{ER}.

Thermal Conduction

The process of energy transfer by heat (Q in Eq. 8.2) can also be called **conduction** or **thermal conduction.** In this process, the transfer can be represented on an atomic scale as an exchange of kinetic energy between microscopic particles—molecules, atoms, and free electrons—in which less-energetic particles gain energy in collisions with more-energetic particles. For example, if you hold one end of a long metal bar and insert the other end into a flame, you will find that the temperature of the metal in your hand soon increases. The energy reaches your hand by means of conduction. Initially, before the rod is inserted into the flame, the microscopic particles in the metal are vibrating about their equilibrium positions. As the flame raises the temperature of the rod, the particles near the flame begin to vibrate with greater and greater amplitudes. These particles, in turn, collide with their neighbors and transfer some of their energy in the collisions. Slowly, the amplitudes of vibration of metal atoms and electrons farther and farther from the flame increase until eventually those in the metal near your hand are affected. This increased vibration is detected by an increase in the temperature of the metal and of your potentially burned hand.

The rate of thermal conduction depends on the properties of the substance being heated. For example, it is possible to hold a piece of asbestos in a flame indefinitely, which implies that very little energy is conducted through the asbestos. In general, metals are good thermal conductors and materials such as asbestos, cork, paper, and fiberglass are poor conductors. Gases also are poor conductors because the separation distance between the particles is so great. Metals are good thermal conductors because they contain large numbers of electrons that are relatively free to move through the metal and so can transport energy over large distances. Therefore, in a good conductor such as copper, conduction takes place by means of both the vibration of atoms and the motion of free electrons.

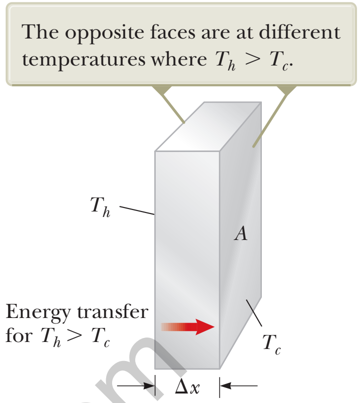


Figure 20.11 Energy transfer through a conducting slab with a cross-sectional area A and a thickness Δx.

Conduction occurs only if there is a difference in temperature between two parts of the conducting medium. Consider a slab of material of thickness Δx and cross-sectional area A. One face of the slab is at a temperature T_c, and the other face is at a temperature $T_h > T_c$ (Fig. 20.11). Experimentally, it is found that energy Q transfers in a time interval Δt from the hotter face to the colder one. The rate $P = Q/\Delta t$ at which this energy transfer occurs is found to be proportional to the cross-sectional area and the temperature difference $\Delta T = T_h - T_c$ and inversely proportional to the thickness:

$$P = \frac{Q}{\Delta t} \propto A\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta x}$$

Notice that P has units of watts when Q is in joules and Δt is in seconds. That is not surprising because P is power, the rate of energy transfer by heat. For a slab of infinitesimal thickness dx and temperature difference dT, we can write the **law of thermal conduction** as

$$P = kA\left|\frac{dT}{dx}\right| \tag{20.15}$$

where the proportionality constant k is the **thermal conductivity** of the material and $|dT/dx|$ is the **temperature gradient** (the rate at which temperature varies with position).

Substances that are good thermal conductors have large thermal conductivity values, whereas good thermal insulators have low thermal conductivity values. Table 20.3 lists thermal conductivities for various substances. Notice that metals are generally better thermal conductors than nonmetals.

Suppose a long, uniform rod of length L is thermally insulated so that energy cannot escape by heat from its surface except at the ends as shown in Figure 20.12 (page 610). One end is in thermal contact with an energy reservoir at temperature T_c, and the other end is in thermal contact with a reservoir at temperature $T_h > T_c$. When a steady state has been reached, the temperature at each point along the rod is constant in time. In this case, if we assume k is not a function of temperature, the temperature gradient is the same everywhere along the rod and is

$$\left|\frac{dT}{dx}\right| = \frac{T_h - T_c}{L}$$

Table 20.3
Thermal Conductivities

Substance	Thermal Conductivity (W/m · °C)
Metals (at 25°C)	
Aluminum	238
Copper	397
Gold	314
Iron	79.5
Lead	34.7
Silver	427
Nonmetals (approximate values)	
Asbestos	0.08
Concrete	0.8
Diamond	2 300
Glass	0.8
Ice	2
Rubber	0.2
Water	0.6
Wood	0.08
Gases (at 20°C)	
Air	0.023 4
Helium	0.138
Hydrogen	0.172
Nitrogen	0.023 4
Oxygen	0.023 8

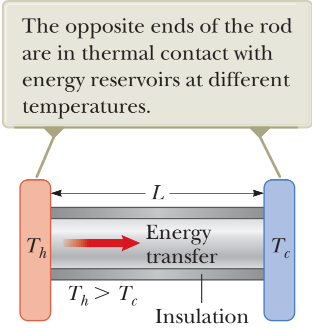


Figure 20.12 Conduction of energy through a uniform, insulated rod of length L.

Therefore, the rate of energy transfer by conduction through the rod is

$$P = kA\left(\frac{T_h - T_c}{L}\right) \quad \textbf{(20.16)}$$

For a compound slab containing several materials of thicknesses $L_1, L_2, \ldots$ and thermal conductivities $k_1, k_2, \ldots$, the rate of energy transfer through the slab at steady state is

$$P = \frac{A(T_h - T_c)}{\sum_i (L_i/k_i)} \quad \textbf{(20.17)}$$

where T_h and T_c are the temperatures of the outer surfaces (which are held constant) and the summation is over all slabs. Example 20.8 shows how Equation 20.17 results from a consideration of two thicknesses of materials.

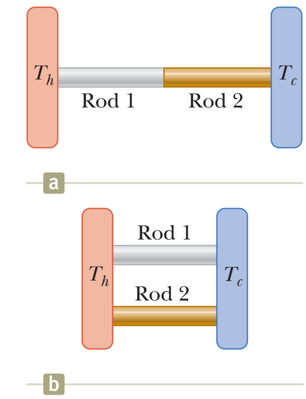


Figure 20.13 (Quick Quiz 20.5) In which case is the rate of energy transfer larger?

Quick Quiz 20.5 You have two rods of the same length and diameter, but they are formed from different materials. The rods are used to connect two regions at different temperatures so that energy transfers through the rods by heat. They can be connected in series as in Figure 20.13a or in parallel as in Figure 20.13b. In which case is the rate of energy transfer by heat larger? **(a)** The rate is larger when the rods are in series. **(b)** The rate is larger when the rods are in parallel. **(c)** The rate is the same in both cases.

Example 20.8 Energy Transfer Through Two Slabs

Two slabs of thickness L_1 and L_2 and thermal conductivities k_1 and k_2 are in thermal contact with each other as shown in Figure 20.14. The temperatures of their outer surfaces are T_c and T_h, respectively, and $T_h > T_c$. Determine the temperature at the interface and the rate of energy transfer by conduction through an area A of the slabs in the steady-state condition.

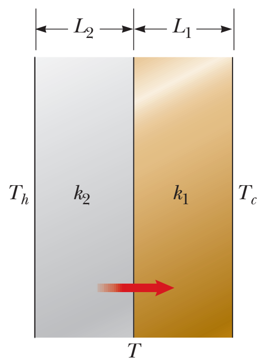


Figure 20.14 (Example 20.8) Energy transfer by conduction through two slabs in thermal contact with each other. At steady state, the rate of energy transfer through slab 1 equals the rate of energy transfer through slab 2.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Notice the phrase "in the steady-state condition." We interpret this phrase to mean that energy transfers through the compound slab at the same rate at all points. Otherwise, energy would be building up or disappearing at some point. Furthermore, the temperature varies with position in the two slabs, most likely at different rates in each part of the compound slab. When the system is in steady state, the interface is at some fixed temperature T.

Categorize We categorize this example as a thermal conduction problem and impose the condition that the power is the same in both slabs of material.

20.8 continued

Analyze Use Equation 20.16 to express the rate at which energy is transferred through an area A of slab 1:

$$(1)\quad P_1 = k_1 A\left(\frac{T - T_c}{L_1}\right)$$

Express the rate at which energy is transferred through the same area of slab 2:

$$(2)\quad P_2 = k_2 A\left(\frac{T_h - T}{L_2}\right)$$

Set these two rates equal to represent the steady-state situation:

$$k_1 A\left(\frac{T - T_c}{L_1}\right) = k_2 A\left(\frac{T_h - T}{L_2}\right)$$

Solve for T:

$$(3)\quad T = \frac{k_1 L_2 T_c + k_2 L_1 T_h}{k_1 L_2 + k_2 L_1}$$

Substitute Equation (3) into either Equation (1) or Equation (2):

$$(4)\quad P = \frac{A(T_h - T_c)}{(L_1/k_1) + (L_2/k_2)}$$

Finalize Extension of this procedure to several slabs of materials leads to Equation 20.17.

WHAT IF? Suppose you are building an insulated container with two layers of insulation and the rate of energy transfer determined by Equation (4) turns out to be too high. You have enough room to increase the thickness of one of the two layers by 20%. How would you decide which layer to choose?

Answer To decrease the power as much as possible, you must increase the denominator in Equation (4) as much as possible. Whichever thickness you choose to increase, L_1 or L_2, you increase the corresponding term L/k in the denominator by 20%. For this percentage change to represent the largest absolute change, you want to take 20% of the larger term. Therefore, you should increase the thickness of the layer that has the larger value of L/k.

Home Insulation

In engineering practice, the term L/k for a particular substance is referred to as the ***R*-value** of the material. Therefore, Equation 20.17 reduces to

$$P = \frac{A(T_h - T_c)}{\sum_i R_i} \quad \textbf{(20.18)}$$

where $R_i = L_i/k_i$. The *R*-values for a few common building materials are given in Table 20.4. In the United States, the insulating properties of materials used in buildings are usually expressed in U.S. customary units, not SI units. Therefore, in

Table 20.4 R-Values for Some Common Building Materials

Material	*R*-value ($ft^2 \cdot °F \cdot h/Btu$)
Hardwood siding (1 in. thick)	0.91
Wood shingles (lapped)	0.87
Brick (4 in. thick)	4.00
Concrete block (filled cores)	1.93
Fiberglass insulation (3.5 in. thick)	10.90
Fiberglass insulation (6 in. thick)	18.80
Fiberglass board (1 in. thick)	4.35
Cellulose fiber (1 in. thick)	3.70
Flat glass (0.125 in. thick)	0.89
Insulating glass (0.25-in. space)	1.54
Air space (3.5 in. thick)	1.01
Stagnant air layer	0.17
Drywall (0.5 in. thick)	0.45
Sheathing (0.5 in. thick)	1.32

Table 20.4, *R*-values are given as a combination of British thermal units, feet, hours, and degrees Fahrenheit.

At any vertical surface open to the air, a very thin stagnant layer of air adheres to the surface. One must consider this layer when determining the *R*-value for a wall. The thickness of this stagnant layer on an outside wall depends on the speed of the wind. Energy transfer through the walls of a house on a windy day is greater than that on a day when the air is calm. A representative *R*-value for this stagnant layer of air is given in Table 20.4.

Example 20.9 The *R*-Value of a Typical Wall

Calculate the total *R*-value for a wall constructed as shown in Figure 20.15a. Starting outside the house (toward the front in the figure) and moving inward, the wall consists of 4 in. of brick, 0.5 in. of sheathing, an air space 3.5 in. thick, and 0.5 in. of drywall.

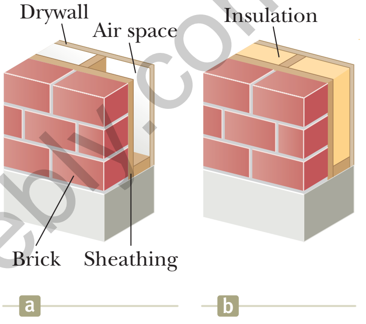


Figure 20.15 (Example 20.9) An exterior house wall containing (a) an air space and (b) insulation.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Use Figure 20.15 to help conceptualize the structure of the wall. Do not forget the stagnant air layers inside and outside the house.

Categorize We will use specific equations developed in this section on home insulation, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Table 20.4 to find the *R*-value of each layer:

$$R_1 \text{ (outside stagnant air layer)} = 0.17 \text{ ft}^2 \cdot {}^\circ\text{F} \cdot \text{h/Btu}$$
$$R_2 \text{ (brick)} = 4.00 \text{ ft}^2 \cdot {}^\circ\text{F} \cdot \text{h/Btu}$$
$$R_3 \text{ (sheathing)} = 1.32 \text{ ft}^2 \cdot {}^\circ\text{F} \cdot \text{h/Btu}$$
$$R_4 \text{ (air space)} = 1.01 \text{ ft}^2 \cdot {}^\circ\text{F} \cdot \text{h/Btu}$$
$$R_5 \text{ (drywall)} = 0.45 \text{ ft}^2 \cdot {}^\circ\text{F} \cdot \text{h/Btu}$$
$$R_6 \text{ (inside stagnant air layer)} = 0.17 \text{ ft}^2 \cdot {}^\circ\text{F} \cdot \text{h/Btu}$$

Add the *R*-values to obtain the total *R*-value for the wall:

$$R_{\text{total}} = R_1 + R_2 + R_3 + R_4 + R_5 + R_6 = 7.12 \text{ ft}^2 \cdot {}^\circ\text{F} \cdot \text{h/Btu}$$

WHAT IF? Suppose you are not happy with this total *R*-value for the wall. You cannot change the overall structure, but you can fill the air space as in Figure 20.15b. To *maximize* the total *R*-value, what material should you choose to fill the air space?

Answer Looking at Table 20.4, we see that 3.5 in. of fiberglass insulation is more than ten times as effective as 3.5 in. of air. Therefore, we should fill the air space with fiberglass insulation. The result is that we add 10.90 ft^2 · °F · h/Btu of *R*-value, and we lose 1.01 ft^2 · °F · h/Btu due to the air space we have replaced. The new total *R*-value is equal to 7.12 ft^2 · °F · h/Btu + 9.89 ft^2 · °F · h/Btu = 17.01 ft^2 · °F · h/Btu.

Convection

At one time or another, you probably have warmed your hands by holding them over an open flame. In this situation, the air directly above the flame is heated and expands. As a result, the density of this air decreases and the air rises. This hot air warms your hands as it flows by. Energy transferred by the movement of a warm substance is said to have been transferred by **convection,** which is a form of matter transfer, T_{MT} in Equation 8.2. When resulting from differences in density, as with air around a fire, the process is referred to as *natural convection.* Airflow at a beach is an example of natural convection, as is the mixing that occurs as surface water in a lake cools and sinks (see Section 19.4). When the heated substance is forced to move by a fan or pump, as in some hot-air and hot-water heating systems, the process is called *forced convection.*

If it were not for convection currents, it would be very difficult to boil water. As water is heated in a teakettle, the lower layers are warmed first. This water expands and rises to the top because its density is lowered. At the same time, the denser, cool water at the surface sinks to the bottom of the kettle and is heated.

The same process occurs when a room is heated by a radiator. The hot radiator warms the air in the lower regions of the room. The warm air expands and rises to the ceiling because of its lower density. The denser, cooler air from above sinks, and the continuous air current pattern shown in Figure 20.16 is established.

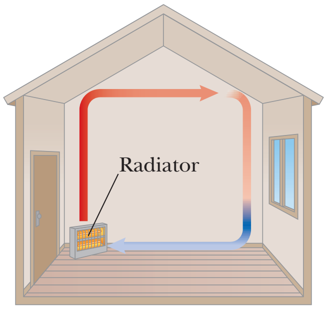


Figure 20.16 Convection currents are set up in a room warmed by a radiator.

Radiation

The third means of energy transfer we shall discuss is **thermal radiation,** T_{ER} in Equation 8.2. All objects radiate energy continuously in the form of electromagnetic waves (see Chapter 34) produced by thermal vibrations of the molecules. You are likely familiar with electromagnetic radiation in the form of the orange glow from an electric stove burner, an electric space heater, or the coils of a toaster.

The rate at which the surface of an object radiates energy is proportional to the fourth power of the absolute temperature of the surface. Known as **Stefan's law,** this behavior is expressed in equation form as

$$P = \sigma A e T^4 \tag{20.19}$$

◀ Stefan's law

where P is the power in watts of electromagnetic waves radiated from the surface of the object, σ is a constant equal to $5.669\,6 \times 10^{-8}\ \mathrm{W/m^2 \cdot K^4}$, A is the surface area of the object in square meters, e is the **emissivity,** and T is the surface temperature in kelvins. The value of e can vary between zero and unity depending on the properties of the surface of the object. The emissivity is equal to the **absorptivity,** which is the fraction of the incoming radiation that the surface absorbs. A mirror has very low absorptivity because it reflects almost all incident light. Therefore, a mirror surface also has a very low emissivity. At the other extreme, a black surface has high absorptivity and high emissivity. An **ideal absorber** is defined as an object that absorbs all the energy incident on it, and for such an object, $e = 1$. An object for which $e = 1$ is often referred to as a **black body.** We shall investigate experimental and theoretical approaches to radiation from a black body in Chapter 40.

Every second, approximately 1 370 J of electromagnetic radiation from the Sun passes perpendicularly through each 1 m^2 at the top of the Earth's atmosphere. This radiation is primarily visible and infrared light accompanied by a significant amount of ultraviolet radiation. We shall study these types of radiation in detail in Chapter 34. Enough energy arrives at the surface of the Earth each day to supply all our energy needs on this planet hundreds of times over, if only it could be captured and used efficiently. The growth in the number of solar energy–powered houses and proposals for solar energy "farms" in the United States reflects the increasing efforts being made to use this abundant energy.

What happens to the atmospheric temperature at night is another example of the effects of energy transfer by radiation. If there is a cloud cover above the Earth, the water vapor in the clouds absorbs part of the infrared radiation emitted by the Earth and re-emits it back to the surface. Consequently, temperature levels at the surface remain moderate. In the absence of this cloud cover, there is less in the way to prevent this radiation from escaping into space; therefore, the temperature decreases more on a clear night than on a cloudy one.

As an object radiates energy at a rate given by Equation 20.19, it also absorbs electromagnetic radiation from the surroundings, which consist of other objects that radiate energy. If the latter process did not occur, an object would eventually radiate all its energy and its temperature would reach absolute zero. If an object is at a temperature T and its surroundings are at an average temperature T_0, the net rate of energy gained or lost by the object as a result of radiation is

$$P_{net} = \sigma A e(T^4 - T_0^{\,4}) \quad \textbf{(20.20)}$$

When an object is in equilibrium with its surroundings, it radiates and absorbs energy at the same rate and its temperature remains constant. When an object is hotter than its surroundings, it radiates more energy than it absorbs and its temperature decreases.

The Dewar Flask

The *Dewar flask*[6] is a container designed to minimize energy transfers by conduction, convection, and radiation. Such a container is used to store cold or hot liquids for long periods of time. (An insulated bottle, such as a Thermos, is a common household equivalent of a Dewar flask.) The standard construction (Fig. 20.17) consists of a double-walled Pyrex glass vessel with silvered walls. The space between the walls is evacuated to minimize energy transfer by conduction and convection. The silvered surfaces minimize energy transfer by radiation because silver is a very good reflector and has very low emissivity. A further reduction in energy loss is obtained by reducing the size of the neck. Dewar flasks are commonly used to store liquid nitrogen (boiling point 77 K) and liquid oxygen (boiling point 90 K).

To confine liquid helium (boiling point 4.2 K), which has a very low heat of vaporization, it is often necessary to use a double Dewar system in which the Dewar flask containing the liquid is surrounded by a second Dewar flask. The space between the two flasks is filled with liquid nitrogen.

Newer designs of storage containers use "superinsulation" that consists of many layers of reflecting material separated by fiberglass. All this material is in a vacuum, and no liquid nitrogen is needed with this design.

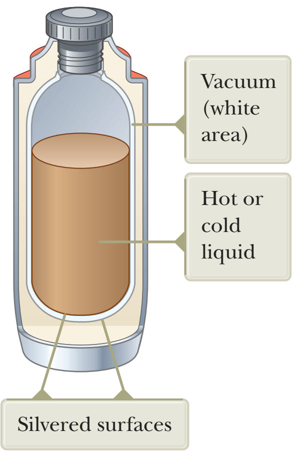


Figure 20.17 A cross-sectional view of a Dewar flask, which is used to store hot or cold substances.

[6]Invented by Sir James Dewar (1842–1923).

Summary

Definitions

Internal energy is a system's energy associated with its temperature and its physical state (solid, liquid, gas). Internal energy includes kinetic energy of random translation, rotation, and vibration of molecules; vibrational potential energy within molecules; and potential energy between molecules.

Heat is the process of energy transfer across the boundary of a system resulting from a temperature difference between the system and its surroundings. The symbol Q represents the amount of energy transferred by this process.

A **calorie** is the amount of energy necessary to raise the temperature of 1 g of water from 14.5°C to 15.5°C.

The **heat capacity** C of any sample is the amount of energy needed to raise the temperature of the sample by 1°C.

The **specific heat** c of a substance is the heat capacity per unit mass:

$$c \equiv \frac{Q}{m\,\Delta T} \quad \textbf{(20.3)}$$

The **latent heat** of a substance is defined as the ratio of the energy input to a substance to the change in mass of the higher-phase material:

$$L \equiv \frac{Q}{\Delta m} \quad \textbf{(20.6)}$$

Concepts and Principles

The energy Q required to change the temperature of a mass m of a substance by an amount ΔT is

$$Q = mc\,\Delta T \quad \textbf{(20.4)}$$

where c is the specific heat of the substance.

The energy required to change the phase of a pure substance is

$$Q = L\,\Delta m \quad \textbf{(20.7)}$$

where L is the latent heat of the substance, which depends on the nature of the phase change and the substance, and Δm is the change in mass of the higher-phase material.

The **work** done on a gas as its volume changes from some initial value V_i to some final value V_f is

$$W = -\int_{V_i}^{V_f} P\,dV \quad \textbf{(20.9)}$$

where P is the pressure of the gas, which may vary during the process. To evaluate W, the process must be fully specified; that is, P and V must be known during each step. The work done depends on the path taken between the initial and final states.

The **first law of thermodynamics** is a specific reduction of the conservation of energy equation (Eq. 8.2) and states that when a system undergoes a change from one state to another, the change in its internal energy is

$$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q + W \quad \textbf{(20.10)}$$

where Q is the energy transferred into the system by heat and W is the work done on the system. Although Q and W both depend on the path taken from the initial state to the final state, the quantity ΔE_{int} does not depend on the path.

In a **cyclic process** (one that originates and terminates at the same state), $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = 0$ and therefore $Q = -W$. That is, the energy transferred into the system by heat equals the negative of the work done on the system during the process.

In an **adiabatic process,** no energy is transferred by heat between the system and its surroundings ($Q = 0$). In this case, the first law gives $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = W$. In the **adiabatic free expansion** of a gas, $Q = 0$ and $W = 0$, so $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = 0$. That is, the internal energy of the gas does not change in such a process.

An **isobaric process** is one that occurs at constant pressure. The work done on a gas in such a process is $W = -P(V_f - V_i)$.

An **isovolumetric process** is one that occurs at constant volume. No work is done in such a process, so $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q$.

An **isothermal process** is one that occurs at constant temperature. The work done on an ideal gas during an isothermal process is

$$W = nRT\ln\left(\frac{V_i}{V_f}\right) \quad \textbf{(20.14)}$$

Conduction can be viewed as an exchange of kinetic energy between colliding molecules or electrons. The rate of energy transfer by conduction through a slab of area A is

$$P = kA\left|\frac{dT}{dx}\right| \quad \textbf{(20.15)}$$

where k is the **thermal conductivity** of the material from which the slab is made and $|dT/dx|$ is the **temperature gradient.**

In **convection,** a warm substance transfers energy from one location to another.

All objects emit **thermal radiation** in the form of electromagnetic waves at the rate

$$P = \sigma A e T^4 \quad \textbf{(20.19)}$$

Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. An ideal gas is compressed to half its initial volume by means of several possible processes. Which of the following processes results in the most work done on the gas? (a) isothermal (b) adiabatic (c) isobaric (d) The work done is independent of the process.

2. A poker is a stiff, nonflammable rod used to push burning logs around in a fireplace. For safety and comfort of use, should the poker be made from a material with (a) high specific heat and high thermal conductivity, (b) low specific heat and low thermal conductivity,

(c) low specific heat and high thermal conductivity, or (d) high specific heat and low thermal conductivity?

3. Assume you are measuring the specific heat of a sample of originally hot metal by using a calorimeter containing water. Because your calorimeter is not perfectly insulating, energy can transfer by heat between the contents of the calorimeter and the room. To obtain the most accurate result for the specific heat of the metal, you should use water with which initial temperature? (a) slightly lower than room temperature (b) the same as room temperature (c) slightly higher than room temperature (d) whatever you like because the initial temperature makes no difference

4. An amount of energy is added to ice, raising its temperature from $-10°C$ to $-5°C$. A larger amount of energy is added to the same mass of water, raising its temperature from 15°C to 20°C. From these results, what would you conclude? (a) Overcoming the latent heat of fusion of ice requires an input of energy. (b) The latent heat of fusion of ice delivers some energy to the system. (c) The specific heat of ice is less than that of water. (d) The specific heat of ice is greater than that of water. (e) More information is needed to draw any conclusion.

5. How much energy is required to raise the temperature of 5.00 kg of lead from 20.0°C to its melting point of 327°C? The specific heat of lead is 128 J/kg · °C. (a) 4.04×10^5 J (b) 1.07×10^5 J (c) 8.15×10^4 J (d) 2.13×10^4 J (e) 1.96×10^5 J

6. Ethyl alcohol has about one-half the specific heat of water. Assume equal amounts of energy are transferred by heat into equal-mass liquid samples of alcohol and water in separate insulated containers. The water rises in temperature by 25°C. How much will the alcohol rise in temperature? (a) It will rise by 12°C. (b) It will rise by 25°C. (c) It will rise by 50°C. (d) It depends on the rate of energy transfer. (e) It will not rise in temperature.

7. The specific heat of substance A is greater than that of substance B. Both A and B are at the same initial temperature when equal amounts of energy are added to them. Assuming no melting or vaporization occurs, which of the following can be concluded about the final temperature T_A of substance A and the final temperature T_B of substance B? (a) $T_A > T_B$ (b) $T_A < T_B$ (c) $T_A = T_B$ (d) More information is needed.

8. Beryllium has roughly one-half the specific heat of water (H_2O). Rank the quantities of energy input required to produce the following changes from the largest to the smallest. In your ranking, note any cases of equality. (a) raising the temperature of 1 kg of H_2O from 20°C to 26°C (b) raising the temperature of 2 kg of H_2O from 20°C to 23°C (c) raising the temperature of 2 kg of H_2O from 1°C to 4°C (d) raising the temperature of 2 kg of beryllium from $-1°C$ to 2°C (e) raising the temperature of 2 kg of H_2O from $-1°C$ to 2°C

9. A person shakes a sealed insulated bottle containing hot coffee for a few minutes. **(i)** What is the change in the temperature of the coffee? (a) a large decrease (b) a slight decrease (c) no change (d) a slight increase (e) a large increase **(ii)** What is the change in the internal energy of the coffee? Choose from the same possibilities.

10. A 100-g piece of copper, initially at 95.0°C, is dropped into 200 g of water contained in a 280-g aluminum can; the water and can are initially at 15.0°C. What is the final temperature of the system? (Specific heats of copper and aluminum are 0.092 and 0.215 cal/g · °C, respectively.) (a) 16°C (b) 18°C (c) 24°C (d) 26°C (e) none of those answers

11. Star *A* has twice the radius and twice the absolute surface temperature of star *B*. The emissivity of both stars can be assumed to be 1. What is the ratio of the power output of star *A* to that of star *B*? (a) 4 (b) 8 (c) 16 (d) 32 (e) 64

12. If a gas is compressed isothermally, which of the following statements is true? (a) Energy is transferred into the gas by heat. (b) No work is done on the gas. (c) The temperature of the gas increases. (d) The internal energy of the gas remains constant. (e) None of those statements is true.

13. When a gas undergoes an adiabatic expansion, which of the following statements is true? (a) The temperature of the gas does not change. (b) No work is done by the gas. (c) No energy is transferred to the gas by heat. (d) The internal energy of the gas does not change. (e) The pressure increases.

14. If a gas undergoes an isobaric process, which of the following statements is true? (a) The temperature of the gas doesn't change. (b) Work is done on or by the gas. (c) No energy is transferred by heat to or from the gas. (d) The volume of the gas remains the same. (e) The pressure of the gas decreases uniformly.

15. How long would it take a 1 000 W heater to melt 1.00 kg of ice at $-20.0°C$, assuming all the energy from the heater is absorbed by the ice? (a) 4.18 s (b) 41.8 s (c) 5.55 min (d) 6.25 min (e) 38.4 min

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. Rub the palm of your hand on a metal surface for about 30 seconds. Place the palm of your other hand on an unrubbed portion of the surface and then on the rubbed portion. The rubbed portion will feel warmer. Now repeat this process on a wood surface. Why does the temperature difference between the rubbed and unrubbed portions of the wood surface seem larger than for the metal surface?

2. You need to pick up a very hot cooking pot in your kitchen. You have a pair of cotton oven mitts. To pick up the pot most comfortably, should you soak them in cold water or keep them dry?

3. What is wrong with the following statement: "Given any two bodies, the one with the higher temperature contains more heat."

4. Why is a person able to remove a piece of dry aluminum foil from a hot oven with bare fingers, whereas a burn results if there is moisture on the foil?

[5.] Using the first law of thermodynamics, explain why the *total* energy of an isolated system is always constant.

6. In 1801, Humphry Davy rubbed together pieces of ice inside an icehouse. He made sure that nothing in the environment was at a higher temperature than the rubbed pieces. He observed the production of drops of liquid water. Make a table listing this and other experiments or processes to illustrate each of the following situations. (a) A system can absorb energy by heat, increase in internal energy, and increase in temperature. (b) A system can absorb energy by heat and increase in internal energy without an increase in temperature. (c) A system can absorb energy by heat without increasing in temperature or in internal energy. (d) A system can increase in internal energy and in temperature without absorbing energy by heat. (e) A system can increase in internal energy without absorbing energy by heat or increasing in temperature.

7. It is the morning of a day that will become hot. You just purchased drinks for a picnic and are loading them, with ice, into a chest in the back of your car. (a) You wrap a wool blanket around the chest. Does doing so help to keep the beverages cool, or should you expect the wool blanket to warm them up? Explain your answer. (b) Your younger sister suggests you wrap her up in another wool blanket to keep her cool on the hot day like the ice chest. Explain your response to her.

8. In usually warm climates that experience a hard freeze, fruit growers will spray the fruit trees with water, hoping that a layer of ice will form on the fruit. Why would such a layer be advantageous?

9. Suppose you pour hot coffee for your guests, and one of them wants it with cream. He wants the coffee to be as warm as possible several minutes later when he drinks it. To have the warmest coffee, should the person add the cream just after the coffee is poured or just before drinking? Explain.

10. When camping in a canyon on a still night, a camper notices that as soon as the sun strikes the surrounding peaks, a breeze begins to stir. What causes the breeze?

11. Pioneers stored fruits and vegetables in underground cellars. In winter, why did the pioneers place an open barrel of water alongside their produce?

12. Is it possible to convert internal energy to mechanical energy? Explain with examples.

Problems

ENHANCED WebAssign The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

[1.] full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 20.1 Heat and Internal Energy

[1.] A 55.0-kg woman eats a 540 Calorie (540 kcal) jelly doughnut for breakfast. (a) How many joules of energy are the equivalent of one jelly doughnut? (b) How many steps must the woman climb on a very tall stairway to change the gravitational potential energy of the woman–Earth system by a value equivalent to the food energy in one jelly doughnut? Assume the height of a single stair is 15.0 cm. (c) If the human body is only 25.0% efficient in converting chemical potential energy to mechanical energy, how many steps must the woman climb to work off her breakfast?

Section 20.2 Specific Heat and Calorimetry

2. AMT W Consider Joule's apparatus described in Figure 20.1. The mass of each of the two blocks is 1.50 kg, and the insulated tank is filled with 200 g of water. What is the increase in the water's temperature after the blocks fall through a distance of 3.00 m?

3. A combination of 0.250 kg of water at 20.0°C, 0.400 kg of aluminum at 26.0°C, and 0.100 kg of copper at 100°C is mixed in an insulated container and allowed to come to thermal equilibrium. Ignore any energy transfer to or from the container. What is the final temperature of the mixture?

[4.] The highest waterfall in the world is the Salto Angel in Venezuela. Its longest single falls has a height of 807 m. If water at the top of the falls is at 15.0°C, what is the maximum temperature of the water at the bottom of the falls? Assume all the kinetic energy of the water as it reaches the bottom goes into raising its temperature.

5. What mass of water at 25.0°C must be allowed to come to thermal equilibrium with a 1.85-kg cube of aluminum initially at 150°C to lower the temperature of the aluminum to 65.0°C? Assume any water turned to steam subsequently condenses.

[6.] M The temperature of a silver bar rises by 10.0°C when it absorbs 1.23 kJ of energy by heat. The mass of the bar is

525 g. Determine the specific heat of silver from these data.

7. In cold climates, including the northern United States, a house can be built with very large windows facing south to take advantage of solar heating. Sunlight shining in during the daytime is absorbed by the floor, interior walls, and objects in the room, raising their temperature to 38.0°C. If the house is well insulated, you may model it as losing energy by heat steadily at the rate 6 000 W on a day in April when the average exterior temperature is 4°C and when the conventional heating system is not used at all. During the period between 5:00 p.m. and 7:00 a.m., the temperature of the house drops and a sufficiently large "thermal mass" is required to keep it from dropping too far. The thermal mass can be a large quantity of stone (with specific heat 850 J/kg · °C) in the floor and the interior walls exposed to sunlight. What mass of stone is required if the temperature is not to drop below 18.0°C overnight?

8. A 50.0-g sample of copper is at 25.0°C. If 1 200 J of energy is added to it by heat, what is the final temperature of the copper?

9. An aluminum cup of mass 200 g contains 800 g of water in thermal equilibrium at 80.0°C. The combination of cup and water is cooled uniformly so that the temperature decreases by 1.50°C per minute. At what rate is energy being removed by heat? Express your answer in watts.

10. If water with a mass m_h at temperature T_h is poured into an aluminum cup of mass m_{Al} containing mass m_c of water at T_c, where $T_h > T_c$, what is the equilibrium temperature of the system?

11. M A 1.50-kg iron horseshoe initially at 600°C is dropped into a bucket containing 20.0 kg of water at 25.0°C. What is the final temperature of the water–horseshoe system? Ignore the heat capacity of the container and assume a negligible amount of water boils away.

12. An electric drill with a steel drill bit of mass m = 27.0 g and diameter 0.635 cm is used to drill into a cubical steel block of mass M = 240 g. Assume steel has the same properties as iron. The cutting process can be modeled as happening at one point on the circumference of the bit. This point moves in a helix at constant tangential speed 40.0 m/s and exerts a force of constant magnitude 3.20 N on the block. As shown in Figure P20.12, a groove in the bit carries the chips up to the top of the block, where they form a pile around the hole. The drill is turned on and drills into the block for a time interval of 15.0 s. Let's assume this time interval is long enough for conduction within the steel to bring it all to a uniform temperature. Furthermore, assume the steel objects lose a negligible amount of energy by conduction, convection, and radiation into their environment. (a) Suppose the drill bit cuts three-quarters of the way through the block during 15.0 s. Find the temperature change of the whole quantity of steel. (b) **What If?** Now suppose the drill bit is dull and cuts only one-eighth of the way through the block in 15.0 s. Identify the temperature change of the whole quantity of steel in this case. (c) What pieces of data, if any, are unnecessary for the solution? Explain.

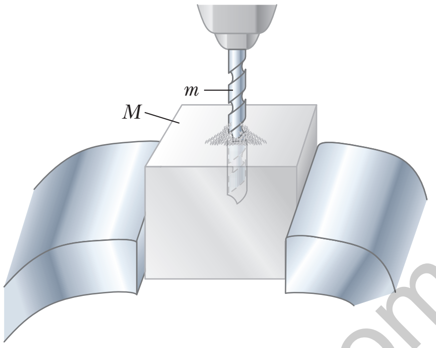


Figure P20.12

13. W An aluminum calorimeter with a mass of 100 g contains 250 g of water. The calorimeter and water are in thermal equilibrium at 10.0°C. Two metallic blocks are placed into the water. One is a 50.0-g piece of copper at 80.0°C. The other has a mass of 70.0 g and is originally at a temperature of 100°C. The entire system stabilizes at a final temperature of 20.0°C. (a) Determine the specific heat of the unknown sample. (b) Using the data in Table 20.1, can you make a positive identification of the unknown material? Can you identify a possible material? (c) Explain your answers for part (b).

14. A 3.00-g copper coin at 25.0°C drops 50.0 m to the ground. (a) Assuming 60.0% of the change in gravitational potential energy of the coin–Earth system goes into increasing the internal energy of the coin, determine the coin's final temperature. (b) **What If?** Does the result depend on the mass of the coin? Explain.

15. Two thermally insulated vessels are connected by a narrow tube fitted with a valve that is initially closed as shown in Figure P20.15. One vessel of volume 16.8 L contains oxygen at a temperature of 300 K and a pressure of 1.75 atm. The other vessel of volume 22.4 L contains oxygen at a temperature of 450 K and a pressure of 2.25 atm. When the valve is opened, the gases in the two vessels mix and the temperature and pressure become uniform throughout. (a) What is the final temperature? (b) What is the final pressure?

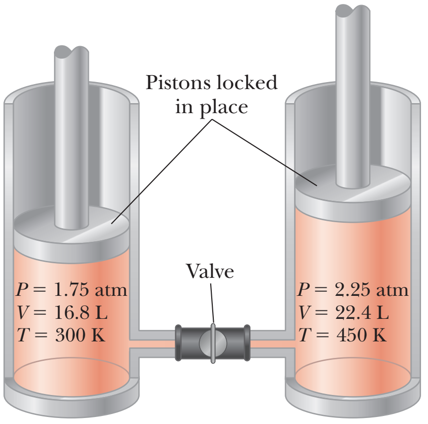


Figure P20.15

Section 20.3 Latent Heat

16. A 50.0-g copper calorimeter contains 250 g of water at 20.0°C. How much steam at 100°C must be condensed into the water if the final temperature of the system is to reach 50.0°C?

17. M A 75.0-kg cross-country skier glides over snow as in Figure P20.17. The coefficient of friction between skis and snow is 0.200. Assume all the snow beneath his skis is at 0°C and that all the internal energy generated by friction is added to snow, which sticks to his skis until it melts. How far would he have to ski to melt 1.00 kg of snow?


iStockphoto.com/technotr

Figure P20.17

18. W How much energy is required to change a 40.0-g ice cube from ice at −10.0°C to steam at 110°C?

19. A 75.0-g ice cube at 0°C is placed in 825 g of water at 25.0°C. What is the final temperature of the mixture?

20. AMT M A 3.00-g lead bullet at 30.0°C is fired at a speed of 240 m/s into a large block of ice at 0°C, in which it becomes embedded. What quantity of ice melts?

21. Steam at 100°C is added to ice at 0°C. (a) Find the amount of ice melted and the final temperature when the mass of steam is 10.0 g and the mass of ice is 50.0 g. (b) **What If?** Repeat when the mass of steam is 1.00 g and the mass of ice is 50.0 g.

22. W A 1.00-kg block of copper at 20.0°C is dropped into a large vessel of liquid nitrogen at 77.3 K. How many kilograms of nitrogen boil away by the time the copper reaches 77.3 K? (The specific heat of copper is 0.092 0 cal/g · °C, and the latent heat of vaporization of nitrogen is 48.0 cal/g.)

23. In an insulated vessel, 250 g of ice at 0°C is added to 600 g of water at 18.0°C. (a) What is the final temperature of the system? (b) How much ice remains when the system reaches equilibrium?

24. An automobile has a mass of 1 500 kg, and its aluminum brakes have an overall mass of 6.00 kg. (a) Assume all the mechanical energy that transforms into internal energy when the car stops is deposited in the brakes and no energy is transferred out of the brakes by heat. The brakes are originally at 20.0°C. How many times can the car be stopped from 25.0 m/s before the brakes start to melt? (b) Identify some effects ignored in part (a) that are important in a more realistic assessment of the warming of the brakes.

Section 20.4 Work and Heat in Thermodynamic Processes

25. An ideal gas is enclosed in a cylinder with a movable piston on top of it. The piston has a mass of 8 000 g and an area of 5.00 cm^2 and is free to slide up and down, keeping the pressure of the gas constant. How much work is done on the gas as the temperature of 0.200 mol of the gas is raised from 20.0°C to 300°C?

26. An ideal gas is enclosed in a cylinder that has a movable piston on top. The piston has a mass m and an area A and is free to slide up and down, keeping the pressure of the gas constant. How much work is done on the gas as the temperature of n mol of the gas is raised from T_1 to T_2?

27. One mole of an ideal gas is warmed slowly so that it goes from the PV state (P_i, V_i) to $(3P_i, 3V_i)$ in such a way that the pressure of the gas is directly proportional to the volume. (a) How much work is done on the gas in the process? (b) How is the temperature of the gas related to its volume during this process?

28. W (a) Determine the work done on a gas that expands from i to f as indicated in Figure P20.28. (b) **What If?** How much work is done on the gas if it is compressed from f to i along the same path?

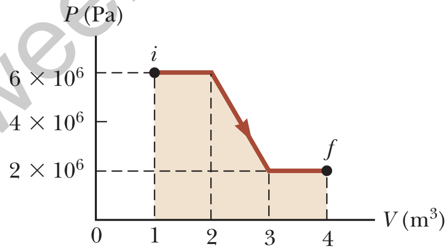


Figure P20.28

29. M An ideal gas is taken through a quasi-static process described by $P = \alpha V^2$, with $\alpha = 5.00$ atm/m^6, as shown in Figure P20.29. The gas is expanded to twice its original volume of 1.00 m^3. How much work is done on the expanding gas in this process?

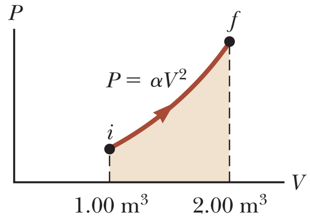


Figure P20.29

Section 20.5 The First Law of Thermodynamics

30. W A gas is taken through the cyclic process described in Figure P20.30. (a) Find the net energy transferred to the system by heat during one complete cycle. (b) **What If?** If the cycle is reversed—that is, the process follows the path $ACBA$—what is the net energy input per cycle by heat?

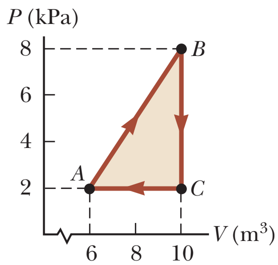


Figure P20.30
Problems 30 and 31.

31. Consider the cyclic process depicted in Figure P20.30. If Q is negative for the process BC and ΔE_{int} is negative for the process CA, what are the signs of Q, W, and ΔE_{int} that are associated with each of the three processes?

32. *Why is the following situation impossible?* An ideal gas undergoes a process with the following parameters: $Q = 10.0$ J, $W = 12.0$ J, and $\Delta T = -2.00°C$.

33. A thermodynamic system undergoes a process in which its internal energy decreases by 500 J. Over the same time interval, 220 J of work is done on the system. Find the energy transferred from it by heat.

34. W A sample of an ideal gas goes through the process shown in Figure P20.34. From A to B, the process is adiabatic; from B to C, it is isobaric with 345 kJ of energy entering the system by heat; from C to D, the process is isothermal; and from D to A, it is isobaric with 371 kJ of energy leaving the system by heat. Determine the difference in internal energy $E_{int,B} - E_{int,A}$.

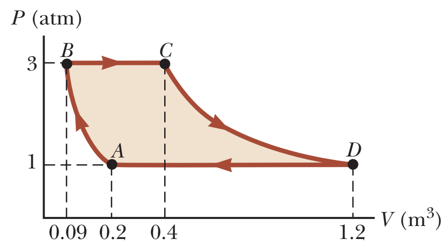


Figure P20.34

Section 20.6 Some Applications of the First Law of Thermodynamics

35. M A 2.00-mol sample of helium gas initially at 300 K, and 0.400 atm is compressed isothermally to 1.20 atm. Noting that the helium behaves as an ideal gas, find (a) the final volume of the gas, (b) the work done on the gas, and (c) the energy transferred by heat.

36. (a) How much work is done on the steam when 1.00 mol of water at 100°C boils and becomes 1.00 mol of steam at 100°C at 1.00 atm pressure? Assume the steam to behave as an ideal gas. (b) Determine the change in internal energy of the system of the water and steam as the water vaporizes.

37. M An ideal gas initially at 300 K undergoes an isobaric expansion at 2.50 kPa. If the volume increases from 1.00 m^3 to 3.00 m^3 and 12.5 kJ is transferred to the gas by heat, what are (a) the change in its internal energy and (b) its final temperature?

38. W One mole of an ideal gas does 3 000 J of work on its surroundings as it expands isothermally to a final pressure of 1.00 atm and volume of 25.0 L. Determine (a) the initial volume and (b) the temperature of the gas.

39. A 1.00-kg block of aluminum is warmed at atmospheric pressure so that its temperature increases from 22.0°C to 40.0°C. Find (a) the work done on the aluminum, (b) the energy added to it by heat, and (c) the change in its internal energy.

40. In Figure P20.40, the change in internal energy of a gas that is taken from A to C along the blue path is +800 J. The work done on the gas along the red path ABC is −500 J. (a) How much energy must be added to the system by heat as it goes from A through B to C? (b) If the pressure at point A is five times that of point C, what is the work done on the system in going from C to D? (c) What is the energy exchanged with the surroundings by heat as the gas goes from C to A along the green path? (d) If the change in internal energy in going from point D to point A is +500 J, how much energy must be added to the system by heat as it goes from point C to point D?

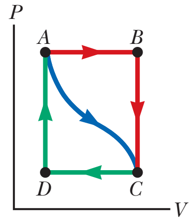


Figure P20.40

41. W An ideal gas initially at P_i, V_i, and T_i is taken through a cycle as shown in Figure P20.41. (a) Find the net work done on the gas per cycle for 1.00 mol of gas initially at 0°C. (b) What is the net energy added by heat to the gas per cycle?

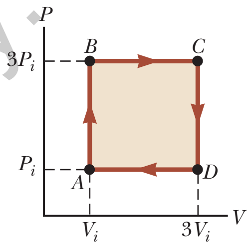


Figure P20.41
Problems 41 and 42.

42. An ideal gas initially at P_i, V_i, and T_i is taken through a cycle as shown in Figure P20.41. (a) Find the net work done on the gas per cycle. (b) What is the net energy added by heat to the system per cycle?

Section 20.7 Energy Transfer Mechanisms in Thermal Processes

43. A glass windowpane in a home is 0.620 cm thick and has dimensions of 1.00 m × 2.00 m. On a certain day, the temperature of the interior surface of the glass is 25.0°C and the exterior surface temperature is 0°C. (a) What is the rate at which energy is transferred by heat through the glass? (b) How much energy is transferred through the window in one day, assuming the temperatures on the surfaces remain constant?

44. A concrete slab is 12.0 cm thick and has an area of 5.00 m^2. Electric heating coils are installed under the slab to melt the ice on the surface in the winter months. What minimum power must be supplied to the coils to maintain a temperature difference of 20.0°C between the bottom of the slab and its surface? Assume all the energy transferred is through the slab.

45. A student is trying to decide what to wear. His bedroom is at 20.0°C. His skin temperature is 35.0°C. The area of his exposed skin is 1.50 m^2. People all over the world have skin that is dark in the infrared, with emissivity about 0.900. Find the net energy transfer from his body by radiation in 10.0 min.

46. The surface of the Sun has a temperature of about 5 800 K. The radius of the Sun is 6.96×10^8 m. Calculate the total energy radiated by the Sun each second. Assume the emissivity of the Sun is 0.986.

47. The tungsten filament of a certain 100-W lightbulb radiates 2.00 W of light. (The other 98 W is carried away by convection and conduction.) The filament has a surface area of 0.250 mm^2 and an emissivity of 0.950. Find the filament's temperature. (The melting point of tungsten is 3 683 K.)

48. At high noon, the Sun delivers 1 000 W to each square meter of a blacktop road. If the hot asphalt transfers energy only by radiation, what is its steady-state temperature?

49. Two lightbulbs have cylindrical filaments much greater in length than in diameter. The evacuated bulbs are identical except that one operates at a filament temperature of 2 100°C and the other operates at 2 000°C. (a) Find the ratio of the power emitted by the hotter lightbulb to that emitted by the cooler lightbulb. (b) With the bulbs operating at the same respective temperatures, the cooler lightbulb is to be altered by making its filament thicker so that it emits the same power as the hotter one. By what factor should the radius of this filament be increased?

50. The human body must maintain its core temperature inside a rather narrow range around 37°C. Metabolic processes, notably muscular exertion, convert chemical energy into internal energy deep in the interior. From the interior, energy must flow out to the skin or lungs to be expelled to the environment. During moderate exercise, an 80-kg man can metabolize food energy at the rate 300 kcal/h, do 60 kcal/h of mechanical work, and put out the remaining 240 kcal/h of energy by heat. Most of the energy is carried from the body interior out to the skin by forced convection (as a plumber would say), whereby blood is warmed in the interior and then cooled at the skin, which is a few degrees cooler than the body core. Without blood flow, living tissue is a good thermal insulator, with thermal conductivity about 0.210 W/m · °C. Show that blood flow is essential to cool the man's body by calculating the rate of energy conduction in kcal/h through the tissue layer under his skin. Assume that its area is 1.40 m^2, its thickness is 2.50 cm, and it is maintained at 37.0°C on one side and at 34.0°C on the other side.

51. M A copper rod and an aluminum rod of equal diameter are joined end to end in good thermal contact. The temperature of the free end of the copper rod is held constant at 100°C and that of the far end of the aluminum rod is held at 0°C. If the copper rod is 0.150 m long, what must be the length of the aluminum rod so that the temperature at the junction is 50.0°C?

52. A box with a total surface area of 1.20 m^2 and a wall thickness of 4.00 cm is made of an insulating material. A 10.0-W electric heater inside the box maintains the inside temperature at 15.0°C above the outside temperature. Find the thermal conductivity k of the insulating material.

53. (a) Calculate the R-value of a thermal window made of two single panes of glass each 0.125 in. thick and separated by a 0.250-in. air space. (b) By what factor is the transfer of energy by heat through the window reduced by using the thermal window instead of the single-pane window? Include the contributions of inside and outside stagnant air layers.

54. At our distance from the Sun, the intensity of solar radiation is 1 370 W/m^2. The temperature of the Earth is affected by the *greenhouse effect* of the atmosphere. This phenomenon describes the effect of absorption of infrared light emitted by the surface so as to make the surface temperature of the Earth higher than if it were airless. For comparison, consider a spherical object of radius r with no atmosphere at the same distance from the Sun as the Earth. Assume its emissivity is the same for all kinds of electromagnetic waves and its temperature is uniform over its surface. (a) Explain why the projected area over which it absorbs sunlight is πr^2 and the surface area over which it radiates is $4\pi r^2$. (b) Compute its steady-state temperature. Is it chilly?

55. A bar of gold (Au) is in thermal contact with a bar of silver (Ag) of the same length and area (Fig. P20.55). One end of the compound bar is maintained at 80.0°C, and the opposite end is at 30.0°C. When the energy transfer reaches steady state, what is the temperature at the junction?

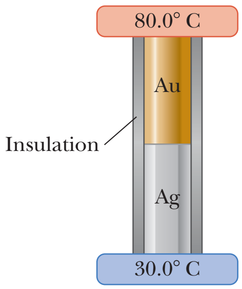


Figure P20.55

56. For bacteriological testing of water supplies and in medical clinics, samples must routinely be incubated for 24 h at 37°C. Peace Corps volunteer and MIT engineer Amy Smith invented a low-cost, low-maintenance incubator. The incubator consists of a foam-insulated box containing a waxy material that melts at 37.0°C interspersed among tubes, dishes, or bottles containing the test samples and growth medium (bacteria food). Outside the box, the waxy material is first melted by a stove or solar energy collector. Then the waxy material is put into the box to keep the test samples warm as the material solidifies. The heat of fusion of the phase-change material is 205 kJ/kg. Model the insulation as a panel with surface area 0.490 m^2, thickness 4.50 cm, and conductivity 0.012 0 W/m · °C. Assume the exterior temperature is 23.0°C for 12.0 h and 16.0°C for 12.0 h. (a) What mass of the waxy material is required to conduct the bacteriological test? (b) Explain why your calculation can be done without knowing the mass of the test samples or of the insulation.

57. A large, hot pizza floats in outer space after being jettisoned as refuse from a spacecraft. What is the order of magnitude (a) of its rate of energy loss and (b) of its rate of temperature change? List the quantities you estimate and the value you estimate for each.

Additional Problems

58. M A gas expands from I to F in Figure P20.58 (page 622). The energy added to the gas by heat is 418 J when the gas goes from I to F along the diagonal path. (a) What is the change in internal energy of the gas? (b) How much energy must be added to the gas by heat along the indirect path *IAF*?

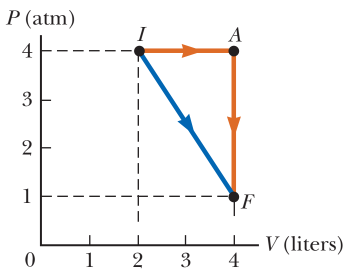


Figure P20.58

59. M Gas in a container is at a pressure of 1.50 atm and a volume of 4.00 m^3. What is the work done on the gas (a) if it expands at constant pressure to twice its initial volume, and (b) if it is compressed at constant pressure to one-quarter its initial volume?

60. Liquid nitrogen has a boiling point of 77.3 K and a latent heat of vaporization of 2.01×10^5 J/kg. A 25.0-W electric heating element is immersed in an insulated vessel containing 25.0 L of liquid nitrogen at its boiling point. How many kilograms of nitrogen are boiled away in a period of 4.00 h?

61. M An aluminum rod 0.500 m in length and with a cross-sectional area of 2.50 cm^2 is inserted into a thermally insulated vessel containing liquid helium at 4.20 K. The rod is initially at 300 K. (a) If one-half of the rod is inserted into the helium, how many liters of helium boil off by the time the inserted half cools to 4.20 K? Assume the upper half does not yet cool. (b) If the circular surface of the upper end of the rod is maintained at 300 K, what is the approximate boil-off rate of liquid helium in liters per second after the lower half has reached 4.20 K? (Aluminum has thermal conductivity of 3 100 W/m · K at 4.20 K; ignore its temperature variation. The density of liquid helium is 125 kg/m^3.)

62. AMT GP **Review.** Two speeding lead bullets, one of mass 12.0 g moving to the right at 300 m/s and one of mass 8.00 g moving to the left at 400 m/s, collide head-on, and all the material sticks together. Both bullets are originally at temperature 30.0°C. Assume the change in kinetic energy of the system appears entirely as increased internal energy. We would like to determine the temperature and phase of the bullets after the collision. (a) What two analysis models are appropriate for the system of two bullets for the time interval from before to after the collision? (b) From one of these models, what is the speed of the combined bullets after the collision? (c) How much of the initial kinetic energy has transformed to internal energy in the system after the collision? (d) Does all the lead melt due to the collision? (e) What is the temperature of the combined bullets after the collision? (f) What is the phase of the combined bullets after the collision?

63. A *flow calorimeter* is an apparatus used to measure the specific heat of a liquid. The technique of flow calorimetry involves measuring the temperature difference between the input and output points of a flowing stream of the liquid while energy is added by heat at a known rate. A liquid of density 900 kg/m^3 flows through the calorimeter with volume flow rate of 2.00 L/min. At steady state, a temperature difference 3.50°C is established between the input and output points when energy is supplied at the rate of 200 W. What is the specific heat of the liquid?

64. A *flow calorimeter* is an apparatus used to measure the specific heat of a liquid. The technique of flow calorimetry involves measuring the temperature difference between the input and output points of a flowing stream of the liquid while energy is added by heat at a known rate. A liquid of density ρ flows through the calorimeter with volume flow rate R. At steady state, a temperature difference ΔT is established between the input and output points when energy is supplied at the rate P. What is the specific heat of the liquid?

65. AMT **Review.** Following a collision between a large spacecraft and an asteroid, a copper disk of radius 28.0 m and thickness 1.20 m at a temperature of 850°C is floating in space, rotating about its symmetry axis with an angular speed of 25.0 rad/s. As the disk radiates infrared light, its temperature falls to 20.0°C. No external torque acts on the disk. (a) Find the change in kinetic energy of the disk. (b) Find the change in internal energy of the disk. (c) Find the amount of energy it radiates.

66. An ice-cube tray is filled with 75.0 g of water. After the filled tray reaches an equilibrium temperature of 20.0°C, it is placed in a freezer set at −8.00°C to make ice cubes. (a) Describe the processes that occur as energy is being removed from the water to make ice. (b) Calculate the energy that must be removed from the water to make ice cubes at −8.00°C.

67. On a cold winter day, you buy roasted chestnuts from a street vendor. Into the pocket of your down parka you put the change he gives you: coins constituting 9.00 g of copper at –12.0°C. Your pocket already contains 14.0 g of silver coins at 30.0°C. A short time later the temperature of the copper coins is 4.00°C and is increasing at a rate of 0.500°C/s. At this time, (a) what is the temperature of the silver coins and (b) at what rate is it changing?

68. The rate at which a resting person converts food energy is called one's *basal metabolic rate* (BMR). Assume that the resulting internal energy leaves a person's body by radiation and convection of dry air. When you jog, most of the food energy you burn above your BMR becomes internal energy that would raise your body temperature if it were not eliminated. Assume that evaporation of perspiration is the mechanism for eliminating this energy. Suppose a person is jogging for "maximum fat burning," converting food energy at the rate 400 kcal/h above his BMR, and putting out energy by work at the rate 60.0 W. Assume that the heat of evaporation of water at body temperature is equal to its heat of vaporization at 100°C. (a) Determine the hourly rate at which water must evaporate from his skin. (b) When you metabolize fat, the hydrogen atoms in the fat molecule are transferred to oxygen to form water. Assume that metabolism of 1.00 g of fat generates 9.00 kcal of energy and produces 1.00 g of water. What fraction of the water the jogger needs is provided by fat metabolism?

69. An iron plate is held against an iron wheel so that a kinetic friction force of 50.0 N acts between the two pieces of metal. The relative speed at which the two surfaces slide over each other is 40.0 m/s. (a) Calculate the rate at which mechanical energy is converted to internal energy. (b) The plate and the wheel each have a mass of 5.00 kg, and each receives 50.0% of the internal energy. If the system is run as described for 10.0 s and each object is then allowed to reach a uniform internal temperature, what is the resultant temperature increase?

70. A resting adult of average size converts chemical energy in food into internal energy at the rate 120 W, called her *basal metabolic rate*. To stay at constant temperature, the body must put out energy at the same rate. Several processes exhaust energy from your body. Usually, the most important is thermal conduction into the air in contact with your exposed skin. If you are not wearing a hat, a convection current of warm air rises vertically from your head like a plume from a smokestack. Your body also loses energy by electromagnetic radiation, by your exhaling warm air, and by evaporation of perspiration. In this problem, consider still another pathway for energy loss: moisture in exhaled breath. Suppose you breathe out 22.0 breaths per minute, each with a volume of 0.600 L. Assume you inhale dry air and exhale air at 37.0°C containing water vapor with a vapor pressure of 3.20 kPa. The vapor came from evaporation of liquid water in your body. Model the water vapor as an ideal gas. Assume its latent heat of evaporation at 37.0°C is the same as its heat of vaporization at 100°C. Calculate the rate at which you lose energy by exhaling humid air.

71. M A 40.0-g ice cube floats in 200 g of water in a 100-g copper cup; all are at a temperature of 0°C. A piece of lead at 98.0°C is dropped into the cup, and the final equilibrium temperature is 12.0°C. What is the mass of the lead?

72. One mole of an ideal gas is contained in a cylinder with a movable piston. The initial pressure, volume, and temperature are P_i, V_i, and T_i, respectively. Find the work done on the gas in the following processes. In operational terms, describe how to carry out each process and show each process on a *PV* diagram. (a) an isobaric compression in which the final volume is one-half the initial volume (b) an isothermal compression in which the final pressure is four times the initial pressure (c) an isovolumetric process in which the final pressure is three times the initial pressure

73. **Review.** A 670-kg meteoroid happens to be composed of aluminum. When it is far from the Earth, its temperature is −15.0°C and it moves at 14.0 km/s relative to the planet. As it crashes into the Earth, assume the internal energy transformed from the mechanical energy of the meteoroid–Earth system is shared equally between the meteoroid and the Earth and all the material of the meteoroid rises momentarily to the same final temperature. Find this temperature. Assume the specific heat of liquid and of gaseous aluminum is 1 170 J/kg · °C.

74. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A group of campers arises at 8:30 a.m. and uses a solar cooker, which consists of a curved, reflecting surface that concentrates sunlight onto the object to be warmed (Fig. P20.74). During the day, the maximum solar intensity reaching the Earth's surface at the cooker's location is $I = 600\ \text{W/m}^2$. The cooker faces the Sun and has a face diameter of $d = 0.600$ m. Assume a fraction f of 40.0% of the incident energy is transferred to 1.50 L of water in an open container, initially at 20.0°C. The water comes to a boil, and the campers enjoy hot coffee for breakfast before hiking ten miles and returning by noon for lunch.

Figure P20.74

75. During periods of high activity, the Sun has more sunspots than usual. Sunspots are cooler than the rest of the luminous layer of the Sun's atmosphere (the photosphere). Paradoxically, the total power output of the active Sun is not lower than average but is the same or slightly higher than average. Work out the details of the following crude model of this phenomenon. Consider a patch of the photosphere with an area of $5.10 \times 10^{14}\ \text{m}^2$. Its emissivity is 0.965. (a) Find the power it radiates if its temperature is uniformly 5 800 K, corresponding to the quiet Sun. (b) To represent a sunspot, assume 10.0% of the patch area is at 4 800 K and the other 90.0% is at 5 890 K. Find the power output of the patch. (c) State how the answer to part (b) compares with the answer to part (a). (d) Find the average temperature of the patch. Note that this cooler temperature results in a higher power output.

76. (a) In air at 0°C, a 1.60-kg copper block at 0°C is set sliding at 2.50 m/s over a sheet of ice at 0°C. Friction brings the block to rest. Find the mass of the ice that melts. (b) As the block slows down, identify its energy input Q, its change in internal energy ΔE_{int}, and the change in mechanical energy for the block–ice system. (c) For the ice as a system, identify its energy input Q and its change in internal energy ΔE_{int}. (d) A 1.60-kg block of ice at 0°C is set sliding at 2.50 m/s over a sheet of copper at 0°C. Friction brings the block to rest. Find the mass of the ice that melts. (e) Evaluate Q and ΔE_{int} for the block of ice as a system and ΔE_{mech} for the block–ice system. (f) Evaluate Q and ΔE_{int} for the metal sheet as a system. (g) A thin, 1.60-kg slab of copper at 20°C is set sliding at 2.50 m/s over an identical stationary slab at the same temperature. Friction quickly stops the motion. Assuming no energy is transferred to the environment by heat, find the change in temperature of both objects. (h) Evaluate Q and ΔE_{int} for the sliding slab and ΔE_{mech} for the two-slab system. (i) Evaluate Q and ΔE_{int} for the stationary slab.

77. M Water in an electric teakettle is boiling. The power absorbed by the water is 1.00 kW. Assuming the pressure of vapor in the kettle equals atmospheric pressure, determine the speed of effusion of vapor from the kettle's spout if the spout has a cross-sectional area of 2.00 cm^2. Model the steam as an ideal gas.

78. The average thermal conductivity of the walls (including the windows) and roof of the house depicted in Figure P20.78 is 0.480 W/m · °C, and their average thickness is 21.0 cm. The house is kept warm with natural gas having a heat of combustion (that is, the energy provided per cubic meter of gas burned) of 9 300 kcal/m^3. How many cubic meters of gas must be burned each day to maintain an inside temperature of 25.0°C if the outside temperature is 0.0°C? Disregard radiation and the energy transferred by heat through the ground.

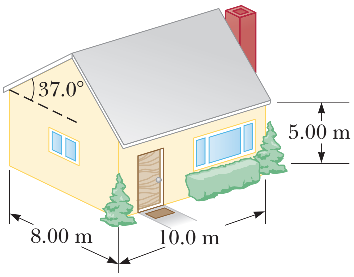


Figure P20.78

79. A cooking vessel on a slow burner contains 10.0 kg of water and an unknown mass of ice in equilibrium at 0°C at time $t = 0$. The temperature of the mixture is measured at various times, and the result is plotted in Figure P20.79. During the first 50.0 min, the mixture remains at 0°C. From 50.0 min to 60.0 min, the temperature increases to 2.00°C. Ignoring the heat capacity of the vessel, determine the initial mass of the ice.

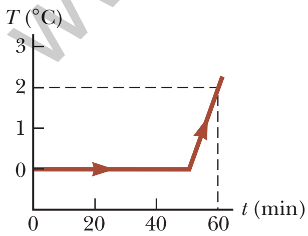


Figure P20.79

80. A student measures the following data in a calorimetry experiment designed to determine the specific heat of aluminum:

Initial temperature of water and calorimeter:	70.0°C
Mass of water:	0.400 kg
Mass of calorimeter:	0.040 kg
Specific heat of calorimeter:	0.63 kJ/kg · °C
Initial temperature of aluminum:	27.0°C
Mass of aluminum:	0.200 kg
Final temperature of mixture:	66.3°C

(a) Use these data to determine the specific heat of aluminum. (b) Explain whether your result is within 15% of the value listed in Table 20.1.

Challenge Problems

81. Consider the piston–cylinder apparatus shown in Figure P20.81. The bottom of the cylinder contains 2.00 kg of water at just under 100.0°C. The cylinder has a radius of $r = 7.50$ cm. The piston of mass $m = 3.00$ kg sits on the surface of the water. An electric heater in the cylinder base transfers energy into the water at a rate of 100 W. Assume the cylinder is much taller than shown in the figure, so we don't need to be concerned about the piston reaching the top of the cylinder. (a) Once the water begins boiling, how fast is the piston rising? Model the steam as an ideal gas. (b) After the water has completely turned to steam and the heater continues to transfer energy to the steam at the same rate, how fast is the piston rising?

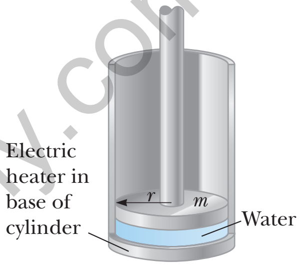


Figure P20.81

82. A spherical shell has inner radius 3.00 cm and outer radius 7.00 cm. It is made of material with thermal conductivity $k = 0.800$ W/m · °C. The interior is maintained at temperature 5°C and the exterior at 40°C. After an interval of time, the shell reaches a steady state with the temperature at each point within it remaining constant in time. (a) Explain why the rate of energy transfer P must be the same through each spherical surface, of radius r, within the shell and must satisfy

$$\frac{dT}{dr} = \frac{P}{4\pi k r^2}$$

(b) Next, prove that

$$\int_5^{40} dT = \frac{P}{4\pi k}\int_{0.03}^{0.07} r^{-2}\,dr$$

where T is in degrees Celsius and r is in meters. (c) Find the rate of energy transfer through the shell. (d) Prove that

$$\int_5^{T} dT = 1.84\int_{0.03}^{r} r^{-2}\,dr$$

where T is in degrees Celsius and r is in meters. (e) Find the temperature within the shell as a function of radius. (f) Find the temperature at $r = 5.00$ cm, halfway through the shell.

83. A pond of water at 0°C is covered with a layer of ice 4.00 cm thick. If the air temperature stays constant at −10.0°C, what time interval is required for the ice thickness to increase to 8.00 cm? *Suggestion:* Use Equation 20.16 in the form

$$\frac{dQ}{dt} = kA\frac{\Delta T}{x}$$

and note that the incremental energy dQ extracted from the water through the thickness x of ice is the amount required to freeze a thickness dx of ice. That is, $dQ = L_f \rho A\, dx$, where ρ is the density of the ice, A is the area, and L_f is the latent heat of fusion.

84. (a) The inside of a hollow cylinder is maintained at a temperature T_a, and the outside is at a lower temperature, T_b (Fig. P20.84). The wall of the cylinder has a thermal conductivity k. Ignoring end effects, show that the rate of energy conduction from the inner surface to the outer surface in the radial direction is

$$\frac{dQ}{dt} = 2\pi L k\left[\frac{T_a - T_b}{\ln(b/a)}\right]$$

Suggestions: The temperature gradient is dT/dr. A radial energy current passes through a concentric cylinder of area $2\pi rL$. (b) The passenger section of a jet airliner is in the shape of a cylindrical tube with a length of 35.0 m and an inner radius of 2.50 m. Its walls are lined with an insulating material 6.00 cm in thickness and having a thermal conductivity of 4.00×10^{-5} cal/s · cm · °C. A heater must maintain the interior temperature at 25.0°C while the outside temperature is −35.0°C. What power must be supplied to the heater?

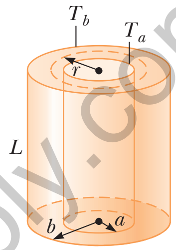


Figure P20.84

CHAPTER

21

The Kinetic Theory of Gases

A boy inflates his bicycle tire with a hand-operated pump. Kinetic theory helps to describe the details of the air in the pump. *(© Cengage Learning/ George Semple)*

In Chapter 19, we discussed the properties of an ideal gas by using such macroscopic variables as pressure, volume, and temperature. Such large-scale properties can be related to a description on a microscopic scale, where matter is treated as a collection of molecules. Applying Newton's laws of motion in a statistical manner to a collection of particles provides a reasonable description of thermodynamic processes. To keep the mathematics relatively simple, we shall consider primarily the behavior of gases because in gases the interactions between molecules are much weaker than they are in liquids or solids.

We shall begin by relating pressure and temperature directly to the details of molecular motion in a sample of gas. Based on these results, we will make predictions of molar specific heats of gases. Some of these predictions will be correct and some will not. We will extend our model to explain those values that are not predicted correctly by the simpler model. Finally, we discuss the distribution of molecular speeds in a gas.

21.1 Molecular Model of an Ideal Gas

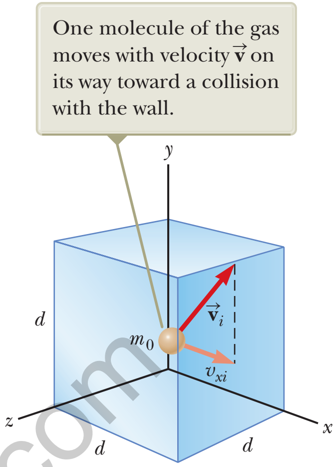


Figure 21.1 A cubical box with sides of length d containing an ideal gas.

In this chapter, we will investigate a *structural model* for an ideal gas. A **structural model** is a theoretical construct designed to represent a system that cannot be observed directly because it is too large or too small. For example, we can only observe the solar system from the inside; we cannot travel outside the solar system and look back to see how it works. This restricted vantage point has led to different historical structural models of the solar system: the *geocentric model,* with the Earth at the center, and the *heliocentric model,* with the Sun at the center. Of course, the latter has been shown to be correct. An example of a system too small to observe directly is the hydrogen atom. Various structural models of this system have been developed, including the *Bohr model* (Section 42.3) and the *quantum model* (Section 42.4). Once a structural model is developed, various predictions are made for experimental observations. For example, the geocentric model of the solar system makes predictions of how the movement of Mars should appear from the Earth. It turns out that those predictions do not match the actual observations. When that occurs with a structural model, the model must be modified or replaced with another model.

The structural model that we will develop for an ideal gas is called **kinetic theory.** This model treats an ideal gas as a collection of molecules with the following properties:

1. *Physical components:*
The gas consists of a number of identical molecules within a cubic container of side length d. The number of molecules in the gas is large, and the average separation between them is large compared with their dimensions. Therefore, the molecules occupy a negligible volume in the container. This assumption is consistent with the ideal gas model, in which we imagine the molecules to be point-like.

2. *Behavior of the components:*
(a) The molecules obey Newton's laws of motion, but as a whole their motion is isotropic: any molecule can move in any direction with any speed.
(b) The molecules interact only by short-range forces during elastic collisions. This assumption is consistent with the ideal gas model, in which the molecules exert no long-range forces on one another.
(c) The molecules make elastic collisions with the walls.

Although we often picture an ideal gas as consisting of single atoms, the behavior of molecular gases approximates that of ideal gases rather well at low pressures. Usually, molecular rotations or vibrations have no effect on the motions considered here.

For our first application of kinetic theory, let us relate the macroscope variable of pressure P to microscopic quantities. Consider a collection of N molecules of an ideal gas in a container of volume V. As indicated above, the container is a cube with edges of length d (Fig. 21.1). We shall first focus our attention on one of these molecules of mass m_0 and assume it is moving so that its component of velocity in the x direction is v_{xi} as in Figure 21.2. (The subscript i here refers to the ith molecule in the collection, not to an initial value. We will combine the effects of all the molecules shortly.) As the molecule collides elastically with any wall (property 2(c) above), its velocity component perpendicular to the wall is reversed because the mass of the wall is far greater than the mass of the molecule. The molecule is modeled as a nonisolated system for which the impulse from the wall causes a change in the molecule's momentum. Because the momentum component p_{xi} of the molecule is $m_0 v_{xi}$ before the collision and $-m_0 v_{xi}$ after the collision, the change in the x component of the momentum of the molecule is

$$\Delta p_{xi} = -m_0 v_{xi} - (m_0 v_{xi}) = -2m_0 v_{xi} \tag{21.1}$$

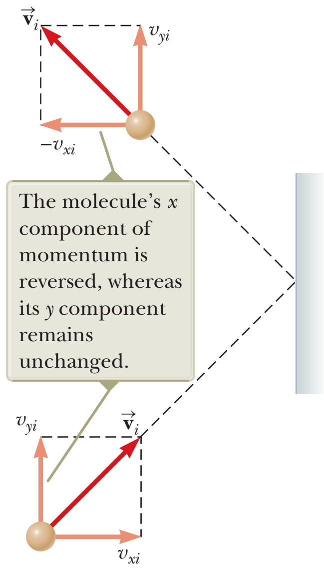


Figure 21.2 A molecule makes an elastic collision with the wall of the container. In this construction, we assume the molecule moves in the xy plane.

From the nonisolated system model for momentum, we can apply the impulse-momentum theorem (Eqs. 9.11 and 9.13) to the molecule to give

$$\overline{F}_{i,\text{on molecule}}\,\Delta t_{\text{collision}} = \Delta p_{xi} = -2m_0 v_{xi} \quad \textbf{(21.2)}$$

where $\overline{F}_{i,\text{on molecule}}$ is the x component of the average force[1] the wall exerts on the molecule during the collision and $\Delta t_{\text{collision}}$ is the duration of the collision. For the molecule to make another collision with the same wall after this first collision, it must travel a distance of $2d$ in the x direction (across the cube and back). Therefore, the time interval between two collisions with the same wall is

$$\Delta t = \frac{2d}{v_{xi}} \quad \textbf{(21.3)}$$

The force that causes the change in momentum of the molecule in the collision with the wall occurs only during the collision. We can, however, find the long-term average force for many back-and-forth trips across the cube by averaging the force in Equation 21.2 over the time interval for the molecule to move across the cube and back once, Equation 21.3. The average change in momentum per trip for the time interval for many trips is the same as that for the short duration of the collision. Therefore, we can rewrite Equation 21.2 as

$$\overline{F}_i\,\Delta t = -2m_0 v_{xi} \quad \textbf{(21.4)}$$

where $\overline{F}_i$ is the average force component over the time interval for the molecule to move across the cube and back. Because exactly one collision occurs for each such time interval, this result is also the long-term average force on the molecule over long time intervals containing any number of multiples of Δt.

Equation 21.3 and 21.4 enable us to express the x component of the long-term average force exerted by the wall on the molecule as

$$\overline{F}_i = -\frac{2m_0 v_{xi}}{\Delta t} = -\frac{2m_0 v_{xi}^{\,2}}{2d} = -\frac{m_0 v_{xi}^{\,2}}{d} \quad \textbf{(21.5)}$$

Now, by Newton's third law, the x component of the long-term average force exerted by the *molecule* on the *wall* is equal in magnitude and opposite in direction:

$$\overline{F}_{i,\text{on wall}} = -\overline{F}_i = -\left(-\frac{m_0 v_{xi}^{\,2}}{d}\right) = \frac{m_0 v_{xi}^{\,2}}{d} \quad \textbf{(21.6)}$$

The total average force $\overline{F}$ exerted by the gas on the wall is found by adding the average forces exerted by the individual molecules. Adding terms such as those in Equation 21.6 for all molecules gives

$$\overline{F} = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \frac{m_0 v_{xi}^{\,2}}{d} = \frac{m_0}{d} \sum_{i=1}^{N} v_{xi}^{\,2} \quad \textbf{(21.7)}$$

where we have factored out the length of the box and the mass m_0 because property 1 tells us that all the molecules are the same. We now impose an additional feature from property 1, that the number of molecules is large. For a small number of molecules, the actual force on the wall would vary with time. It would be nonzero during the short interval of a collision of a molecule with the wall and zero when no molecule happens to be hitting the wall. For a very large number of molecules such as Avogadro's number, however, these variations in force are smoothed out so that the average force given above is the same over *any* time interval. Therefore, the *constant* force F on the wall due to the molecular collisions is

$$F = \frac{m_0}{d} \sum_{i=1}^{N} v_{xi}^{\,2} \quad \textbf{(21.8)}$$

[1]For this discussion, we use a bar over a variable to represent the average value of the variable, such as $\overline{F}$ for the average force, rather than the subscript "avg" that we have used before. This notation is to save confusion because we already have a number of subscripts on variables.

To proceed further, let's consider how to express the average value of the square of the *x* component of the velocity for *N* molecules. The traditional average of a set of values is the sum of the values over the number of values:

$$\overline{v_x^{\,2}} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{N} v_{xi}^{\,2}}{N} \rightarrow \sum_{i=1}^{N} v_{xi}^{\,2} = N\overline{v_x^{\,2}} \qquad \textbf{(21.9)}$$

Using Equation 21.9 to substitute for the sum in Equation 21.8 gives

$$F = \frac{m_0}{d} N\overline{v_x^{\,2}} \qquad \textbf{(21.10)}$$

Now let's focus again on one molecule with velocity components v_{xi}, v_{yi}, and v_{zi}. The Pythagorean theorem relates the square of the speed of the molecule to the squares of the velocity components:

$$v_i^2 = v_{xi}^{\,2} + v_{yi}^{\,2} + v_{zi}^{\,2} \qquad \textbf{(21.11)}$$

Hence, the average value of v^2 for all the molecules in the container is related to the average values of $v_x^{\,2}$, $v_y^{\,2}$, and $v_z^{\,2}$ according to the expression

$$\overline{v^2} = \overline{v_x^{\,2}} + \overline{v_y^{\,2}} + \overline{v_z^{\,2}} \qquad \textbf{(21.12)}$$

Because the motion is isotropic (property 2(a) above), the average values $\overline{v_x^{\,2}}$, $\overline{v_y^{\,2}}$, and $\overline{v_z^{\,2}}$ are equal to one another. Using this fact and Equation 21.12, we find that

$$\overline{v^2} = 3\overline{v_x^{\,2}} \qquad \textbf{(21.13)}$$

Therefore, from Equation 21.10, the total force exerted on the wall is

$$F = \tfrac{1}{3}N\frac{m_0\overline{v^2}}{d} \qquad \textbf{(21.14)}$$

Using this expression, we can find the total pressure exerted on the wall:

$$P = \frac{F}{A} = \frac{F}{d^2} = \tfrac{1}{3}N\frac{m_0\overline{v^2}}{d^3} = \tfrac{1}{3}\left(\frac{N}{V}\right)m_0\overline{v^2}$$

$$P = \tfrac{2}{3}\left(\frac{N}{V}\right)\left(\tfrac{1}{2}m_0\overline{v^2}\right) \qquad \textbf{(21.15)}$$

◀ **Relationship between pressure and molecular kinetic energy**

where we have recognized the volume *V* of the cube as d^3.

Equation 21.15 indicates that the pressure of a gas is proportional to (1) the number of molecules per unit volume and (2) the average translational kinetic energy of the molecules, $\frac{1}{2}m_0\overline{v^2}$. In analyzing this structural model of an ideal gas, we obtain an important result that relates the macroscopic quantity of pressure to a microscopic quantity, the average value of the square of the molecular speed. Therefore, a key link between the molecular world and the large-scale world has been established.

Notice that Equation 21.15 verifies some features of pressure with which you are probably familiar. One way to increase the pressure inside a container is to increase the number of molecules per unit volume N/V in the container. That is what you do when you add air to a tire. The pressure in the tire can also be raised by increasing the average translational kinetic energy of the air molecules in the tire. That can be accomplished by increasing the temperature of that air, which is why the pressure inside a tire increases as the tire warms up during long road trips. The continuous flexing of the tire as it moves along the road surface results in work done on the rubber as parts of the tire distort, causing an increase in internal energy of the rubber. The increased temperature of the rubber results in the transfer of energy by heat into the air inside the tire. This transfer increases the air's temperature, and this increase in temperature in turn produces an increase in pressure.

Molecular Interpretation of Temperature

Let's now consider another macroscopic variable, the temperature T of the gas. We can gain some insight into the meaning of temperature by first writing Equation 21.15 in the form

$$PV = \frac{2}{3}N\left(\frac{1}{2}m_0\overline{v^2}\right) \tag{21.16}$$

Let's now compare this expression with the equation of state for an ideal gas (Eq. 19.10):

$$PV = Nk_BT \tag{21.17}$$

Equating the right sides of Equations 21.16 and 21.17 and solving for T gives

Relationship between temperature and molecular kinetic energy

$$T = \frac{2}{3k_B}\left(\frac{1}{2}m_0\overline{v^2}\right) \tag{21.18}$$

This result tells us that temperature is a direct measure of average molecular kinetic energy. By rearranging Equation 21.18, we can relate the translational molecular kinetic energy to the temperature:

Average kinetic energy per molecule

$$\frac{1}{2}m_0\overline{v^2} = \frac{3}{2}k_BT \tag{21.19}$$

That is, the average translational kinetic energy per molecule is $\frac{3}{2}k_BT$. Because $\overline{v_x^2} = \frac{1}{3}\overline{v^2}$ (Eq. 21.13), it follows that

$$\frac{1}{2}m_0\overline{v_x^2} = \frac{1}{2}k_BT \tag{21.20}$$

In a similar manner, for the y and z directions,

$$\frac{1}{2}m_0\overline{v_y^2} = \frac{1}{2}k_BT \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1}{2}m_0\overline{v_z^2} = \frac{1}{2}k_BT$$

Therefore, each translational degree of freedom contributes an equal amount of energy, $\frac{1}{2}k_BT$, to the gas. (In general, a "degree of freedom" refers to an independent means by which a molecule can possess energy.) A generalization of this result, known as the **theorem of equipartition of energy,** is as follows:

Theorem of equipartition of energy

> Each degree of freedom contributes $\frac{1}{2}k_BT$ to the energy of a system, where possible degrees of freedom are those associated with translation, rotation, and vibration of molecules.

The total translational kinetic energy of N molecules of gas is simply N times the average energy per molecule, which is given by Equation 21.19:

Total translational kinetic energy of *N* molecules

$$K_{\text{tot trans}} = N\left(\frac{1}{2}m_0\overline{v^2}\right) = \frac{3}{2}Nk_BT = \frac{3}{2}nRT \tag{21.21}$$

where we have used $k_B = R/N_A$ for Boltzmann's constant and $n = N/N_A$ for the number of moles of gas. If the gas molecules possess only translational kinetic energy, Equation 21.21 represents the internal energy of the gas. This result implies that the internal energy of an ideal gas depends *only* on the temperature. We will follow up on this point in Section 21.2.

The square root of $\overline{v^2}$ is called the **root-mean-square (rms) speed** of the molecules. From Equation 21.19, we find that the rms speed is

Root-mean-square speed

$$v_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{\overline{v^2}} = \sqrt{\frac{3k_BT}{m_0}} = \sqrt{\frac{3RT}{M}} \tag{21.22}$$

where M is the molar mass in kilograms per mole and is equal to m_0N_A. This expression shows that, at a given temperature, lighter molecules move faster, on the average, than do heavier molecules. For example, at a given temperature, hydrogen molecules, whose molar mass is 2.02×10^{-3} kg/mol, have an average speed approximately four times that of oxygen molecules, whose molar mass is 32.0×10^{-3} kg/mol. Table 21.1 lists the rms speeds for various molecules at 20°C.

Table 21.1 Some Root-Mean-Square (rms) Speeds

Gas	Molar Mass (g/mol)	v_{rms} at 20°C (m/s)	Gas	Molar Mass (g/mol)	v_{rms} at 20°C (m/s)
H_2	2.02	1902	NO	30.0	494
He	4.00	1352	O_2	32.0	478
H_2O	18.0	637	CO_2	44.0	408
Ne	20.2	602	SO_2	64.1	338
N_2 or CO	28.0	511			

Pitfall Prevention 21.1

The Square Root of the Square? Taking the square root of $\overline{v^2}$ does not "undo" the square because we have taken an average *between* squaring and taking the square root. Although the square root of $(\overline{v})^2$ is $\overline{v} = v_{avg}$ because the squaring is done after the averaging, the square root of $\overline{v^2}$ is *not* v_{avg}, but rather v_{rms}.

Quick Quiz 21.1 Two containers hold an ideal gas at the same temperature and pressure. Both containers hold the same type of gas, but container B has twice the volume of container A. **(i)** What is the average translational kinetic energy per molecule in container B? (a) twice that of container A (b) the same as that of container A (c) half that of container A (d) impossible to determine **(ii)** From the same choices, describe the internal energy of the gas in container B.

Example 21.1 A Tank of Helium

A tank used for filling helium balloons has a volume of 0.300 m^3 and contains 2.00 mol of helium gas at 20.0°C. Assume the helium behaves like an ideal gas.

(A) What is the total translational kinetic energy of the gas molecules?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine a microscopic model of a gas in which you can watch the molecules move about the container more rapidly as the temperature increases. Because the gas is monatomic, the total translational kinetic energy of the molecules is the internal energy of the gas.

Categorize We evaluate parameters with equations developed in the preceding discussion, so this example is a substitution problem.

Use Equation 21.21 with $n = 2.00$ mol and $T = 293$ K:

$$E_{int} = \tfrac{3}{2}nRT = \tfrac{3}{2}(2.00 \text{ mol})(8.31 \text{ J/mol}\cdot\text{K})(293 \text{ K})$$
$$= 7.30 \times 10^3 \text{ J}$$

(B) What is the average kinetic energy per molecule?

SOLUTION

Use Equation 21.19:

$$\tfrac{1}{2}m_0\overline{v^2} = \tfrac{3}{2}k_BT = \tfrac{3}{2}(1.38 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J/K})(293 \text{ K})$$
$$= 6.07 \times 10^{-21} \text{ J}$$

WHAT IF? What if the temperature is raised from 20.0°C to 40.0°C? Because 40.0 is twice as large as 20.0, is the total translational energy of the molecules of the gas twice as large at the higher temperature?

Answer The expression for the total translational energy depends on the temperature, and the value for the temperature must be expressed in kelvins, not in degrees Celsius. Therefore, the ratio of 40.0 to 20.0 is *not* the appropriate ratio. Converting the Celsius temperatures to kelvins, 20.0°C is 293 K and 40.0°C is 313 K. Therefore, the total translational energy increases by a factor of only 313 K/293 K = 1.07.

21.2 Molar Specific Heat of an Ideal Gas

Consider an ideal gas undergoing several processes such that the change in temperature is $\Delta T = T_f - T_i$ for all processes. The temperature change can be achieved

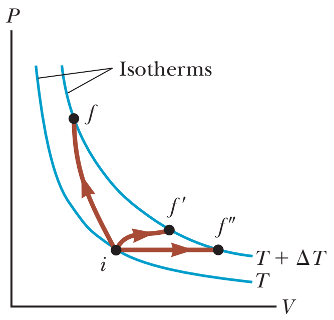


Figure 21.3 An ideal gas is taken from one isotherm at temperature T to another at temperature $T + \Delta T$ along three different paths.

by taking a variety of paths from one isotherm to another as shown in Figure 21.3. Because ΔT is the same for all paths, the change in internal energy ΔE_{int} is the same for all paths. The work W done on the gas (the negative of the area under the curves), however, is different for each path. Therefore, from the first law of thermodynamics, we can argue that the heat $Q = \Delta E_{\text{int}} - W$ associated with a given change in temperature does *not* have a unique value as discussed in Section 20.4.

We can address this difficulty by defining specific heats for two special processes that we have studied: isovolumetric and isobaric. Because the number of moles n is a convenient measure of the amount of gas, we define the **molar specific heats** associated with these processes as follows:

$$Q = nC_V \Delta T \quad \text{(constant volume)} \tag{21.23}$$

$$Q = nC_P \Delta T \quad \text{(constant pressure)} \tag{21.24}$$

where C_V is the **molar specific heat at constant volume** and C_P is the **molar specific heat at constant pressure.** When energy is added to a gas by heat at constant pressure, not only does the internal energy of the gas increase, but (negative) work is done on the gas because of the change in volume required to keep the pressure constant. Therefore, the heat Q in Equation 21.24 must account for both the increase in internal energy and the transfer of energy out of the system by work. For this reason, Q is greater in Equation 21.24 than in Equation 21.23 for given values of n and ΔT. Therefore, C_P is greater than C_V.

In the previous section, we found that the temperature of a gas is a measure of the average translational kinetic energy of the gas molecules. This kinetic energy is associated with the motion of the center of mass of each molecule. It does not include the energy associated with the internal motion of the molecule, namely, vibrations and rotations about the center of mass. That should not be surprising because the simple kinetic theory model assumes a structureless molecule.

So, let's first consider the simplest case of an ideal monatomic gas, that is, a gas containing one atom per molecule such as helium, neon, or argon. When energy is added to a monatomic gas in a container of fixed volume, all the added energy goes into increasing the translational kinetic energy of the atoms. There is no other way to store the energy in a monatomic gas. Therefore, from Equation 21.21, we see that the internal energy E_{int} of N molecules (or n mol) of an ideal monatomic gas is

Internal energy of an ideal monatomic gas ▶

$$E_{\text{int}} = K_{\text{tot trans}} = \tfrac{3}{2}Nk_BT = \tfrac{3}{2}nRT \tag{21.25}$$

For a monatomic ideal gas, E_{int} is a function of T only and the functional relationship is given by Equation 21.25. In general, the internal energy of any ideal gas is a function of T only and the exact relationship depends on the type of gas.

If energy is transferred by heat to a system at constant volume, no work is done on the system. That is, $W = -\int P\,dV = 0$ for a constant-volume process. Hence, from the first law of thermodynamics,

$$Q = \Delta E_{\text{int}} \tag{21.26}$$

In other words, all the energy transferred by heat goes into increasing the internal energy of the system. A constant-volume process from i to f for an ideal gas is described in Figure 21.4, where ΔT is the temperature difference between the two isotherms. Substituting the expression for Q given by Equation 21.23 into Equation 21.26, we obtain

$$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = nC_V\,\Delta T \tag{21.27}$$

This equation applies to all ideal gases, those gases having more than one atom per molecule as well as monatomic ideal gases.

In the limit of infinitesimal changes, we can use Equation 21.27 to express the molar specific heat at constant volume as

$$C_V = \frac{1}{n}\frac{dE_{\text{int}}}{dT} \tag{21.28}$$

Let's now apply the results of this discussion to a monatomic gas. Substituting the internal energy from Equation 21.25 into Equation 21.28 gives

$$C_V = \tfrac{3}{2}R = 12.5 \text{ J/mol} \cdot \text{K} \tag{21.29}$$

This expression predicts a value of $C_V = \frac{3}{2}R$ for *all* monatomic gases. This prediction is in excellent agreement with measured values of molar specific heats for such gases as helium, neon, argon, and xenon over a wide range of temperatures (Table 21.2). Small variations in Table 21.2 from the predicted values are because real gases are not ideal gases. In real gases, weak intermolecular interactions occur, which are not addressed in our ideal gas model.

Now suppose the gas is taken along the constant-pressure path $i \to f'$ shown in Figure 21.4. Along this path, the temperature again increases by ΔT. The energy that must be transferred by heat to the gas in this process is $Q = nC_P\,\Delta T$. Because the volume changes in this process, the work done on the gas is $W = -P\,\Delta V$, where P is the constant pressure at which the process occurs. Applying the first law of thermodynamics to this process, we have

$$\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q + W = nC_P\,\Delta T + (-P\,\Delta V) \tag{21.30}$$

In this case, the energy added to the gas by heat is channeled as follows. Part of it leaves the system by work (that is, the gas moves a piston through a displacement), and the remainder appears as an increase in the internal energy of the gas. The change in internal energy for the process $i \to f'$, however, is equal to that for the process $i \to f$ because E_{int} depends only on temperature for an ideal gas and ΔT is the same for both processes. In addition, because $PV = nRT$, note that for a constant-pressure process, $P\,\Delta V = nR\,\Delta T$. Substituting this value for $P\,\Delta V$ into Equation 21.30 with $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = nC_V\,\Delta T$ (Eq. 21.27) gives

$$nC_V\,\Delta T = nC_P\,\Delta T - nR\,\Delta T$$

$$C_P - C_V = R \tag{21.31}$$

This expression applies to *any* ideal gas. It predicts that the molar specific heat of an ideal gas at constant pressure is greater than the molar specific heat at constant volume by an amount R, the universal gas constant (which has the value 8.31 J/mol · K). This expression is applicable to real gases as the data in Table 21.2 show.

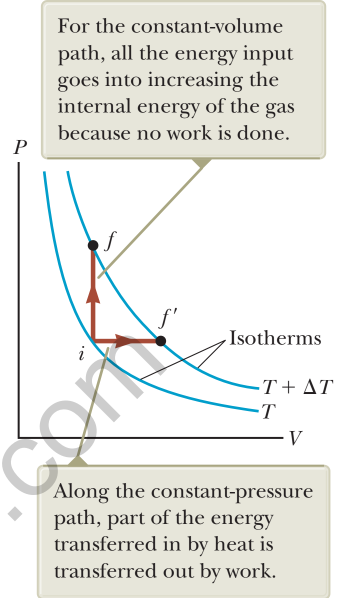


Figure 21.4 Energy is transferred by heat to an ideal gas in two ways.

Table 21.2 Molar Specific Heats of Various Gases

	Molar Specific Heat (J/mol · K)[a]			
Gas	C_P	C_V	$C_P - C_V$	$\gamma = C_P/C_V$
Monatomic gases				
He	20.8	12.5	8.33	1.67
Ar	20.8	12.5	8.33	1.67
Ne	20.8	12.7	8.12	1.64
Kr	20.8	12.3	8.49	1.69
Diatomic gases				
H_2	28.8	20.4	8.33	1.41
N_2	29.1	20.8	8.33	1.40
O_2	29.4	21.1	8.33	1.40
CO	29.3	21.0	8.33	1.40
Cl_2	34.7	25.7	8.96	1.35
Polyatomic gases				
CO_2	37.0	28.5	8.50	1.30
SO_2	40.4	31.4	9.00	1.29
H_2O	35.4	27.0	8.37	1.30
CH_4	35.5	27.1	8.41	1.31

[a] All values except that for water were obtained at 300 K.

Because $C_V = \frac{3}{2}R$ for a monatomic ideal gas, Equation 21.31 predicts a value $C_P = \frac{5}{2}R = 20.8 \text{ J/mol} \cdot \text{K}$ for the molar specific heat of a monatomic gas at constant pressure. The ratio of these molar specific heats is a dimensionless quantity γ (Greek letter gamma):

Ratio of molar specific heats for a monatomic ideal gas

$$\gamma = \frac{C_P}{C_V} = \frac{5R/2}{3R/2} = \frac{5}{3} = 1.67 \quad \textbf{(21.32)}$$

Theoretical values of C_V, C_P, and γ are in excellent agreement with experimental values obtained for monatomic gases, but they are in serious disagreement with the values for the more complex gases (see Table 21.2). That is not surprising; the value $C_V = \frac{3}{2}R$ was derived for a monatomic ideal gas, and we expect some additional contribution to the molar specific heat from the internal structure of the more complex molecules. In Section 21.3, we describe the effect of molecular structure on the molar specific heat of a gas. The internal energy—and hence the molar specific heat—of a complex gas must include contributions from the rotational and the vibrational motions of the molecule.

In the case of solids and liquids heated at constant pressure, very little work is done during such a process because the thermal expansion is small. Consequently, C_P and C_V are approximately equal for solids and liquids.

Quick Quiz 21.2 **(i)** How does the internal energy of an ideal gas change as it follows path $i \rightarrow f$ in Figure 21.4? (a) E_{int} increases. (b) E_{int} decreases. (c) E_{int} stays the same. (d) There is not enough information to determine how E_{int} changes. **(ii)** From the same choices, how does the internal energy of an ideal gas change as it follows path $f \rightarrow f'$ along the isotherm labeled $T + \Delta T$ in Figure 21.4?

Example 21.2 Heating a Cylinder of Helium

A cylinder contains 3.00 mol of helium gas at a temperature of 300 K.

(A) If the gas is heated at constant volume, how much energy must be transferred by heat to the gas for its temperature to increase to 500 K?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Run the process in your mind with the help of the piston–cylinder arrangement in Figure 19.12. Imagine that the piston is clamped in position to maintain the constant volume of the gas.

Categorize We evaluate parameters with equations developed in the preceding discussion, so this example is a substitution problem.

Use Equation 21.23 to find the energy transfer: $Q_1 = nC_V \, \Delta T$

Substitute the given values:
$$Q_1 = (3.00 \text{ mol})(12.5 \text{ J/mol} \cdot \text{K})(500 \text{ K} - 300 \text{ K}) = 7.50 \times 10^3 \text{ J}$$

(B) How much energy must be transferred by heat to the gas at constant pressure to raise the temperature to 500 K?

SOLUTION

Use Equation 21.24 to find the energy transfer: $Q_2 = nC_P \, \Delta T$

Substitute the given values:
$$Q_2 = (3.00 \text{ mol})(20.8 \text{ J/mol} \cdot \text{K})(500 \text{ K} - 300 \text{ K}) = 12.5 \times 10^3 \text{ J}$$

This value is larger than Q_1 because of the transfer of energy out of the gas by work to raise the piston in the constant pressure process.

21.3 The Equipartition of Energy

Predictions based on our model for molar specific heat agree quite well with the behavior of monatomic gases, but not with the behavior of complex gases (see Table 21.2). The value predicted by the model for the quantity $C_P - C_V = R$, however, is the same for all gases. This similarity is not surprising because this difference is the result of the work done on the gas, which is independent of its molecular structure.

To clarify the variations in C_V and C_P in gases more complex than monatomic gases, let's explore further the origin of molar specific heat. So far, we have assumed the sole contribution to the internal energy of a gas is the translational kinetic energy of the molecules. The internal energy of a gas, however, includes contributions from the translational, vibrational, and rotational motion of the molecules. The rotational and vibrational motions of molecules can be activated by collisions and therefore are "coupled" to the translational motion of the molecules. The branch of physics known as *statistical mechanics* has shown that, for a large number of particles obeying the laws of Newtonian mechanics, the available energy is, on average, shared equally by each independent degree of freedom. Recall from Section 21.1 that the equipartition theorem states that, at equilibrium, each degree of freedom contributes $\frac{1}{2}k_BT$ of energy per molecule.

Let's consider a diatomic gas whose molecules have the shape of a dumbbell (Fig. 21.5). In this model, the center of mass of the molecule can translate in the x, y, and z directions (Fig. 21.5a). In addition, the molecule can rotate about three mutually perpendicular axes (Fig. 21.5b). The rotation about the y axis can be neglected because the molecule's moment of inertia I_y and its rotational energy $\frac{1}{2}I_y\omega^2$ about this axis are negligible compared with those associated with the x and z axes. (If the two atoms are modeled as particles, then I_y is identically zero.) Therefore, there are five degrees of freedom for translation and rotation: three associated with the translational motion and two associated with the rotational motion. Because each degree of freedom contributes, on average, $\frac{1}{2}k_BT$ of energy per molecule, the internal energy for a system of N molecules, ignoring vibration for now, is

$$E_{\text{int}} = 3N(\tfrac{1}{2}k_BT) + 2N(\tfrac{1}{2}k_BT) = \tfrac{5}{2}Nk_BT = \tfrac{5}{2}nRT$$

We can use this result and Equation 21.28 to find the molar specific heat at constant volume:

$$C_V = \frac{1}{n}\frac{dE_{\text{int}}}{dT} = \frac{1}{n}\frac{d}{dT}(\tfrac{5}{2}nRT) = \tfrac{5}{2}R = 20.8\text{ J/mol}\cdot\text{K} \qquad \textbf{(21.33)}$$

From Equations 21.31 and 21.32, we find that

$$C_P = C_V + R = \tfrac{7}{2}R = 29.1\text{ J/mol}\cdot\text{K}$$

$$\gamma = \frac{C_P}{C_V} = \frac{\frac{7}{2}R}{\frac{5}{2}R} = \frac{7}{5} = 1.40$$

These results agree quite well with most of the data for diatomic molecules given in Table 21.2. That is rather surprising because we have not yet accounted for the possible vibrations of the molecule.

In the model for vibration, the two atoms are joined by an imaginary spring (see Fig. 21.5c). The vibrational motion adds two more degrees of freedom, which correspond to the kinetic energy and the potential energy associated with vibrations along the length of the molecule. Hence, a model that includes all three types of motion predicts a total internal energy of

$$E_{\text{int}} = 3N(\tfrac{1}{2}k_BT) + 2N(\tfrac{1}{2}k_BT) + 2N(\tfrac{1}{2}k_BT) = \tfrac{7}{2}Nk_BT = \tfrac{7}{2}nRT$$

and a molar specific heat at constant volume of

$$C_V = \frac{1}{n}\frac{dE_{\text{int}}}{dT} = \frac{1}{n}\frac{d}{dT}(\tfrac{7}{2}nRT) = \tfrac{7}{2}R = 29.1\text{ J/mol}\cdot\text{K} \qquad \textbf{(21.34)}$$

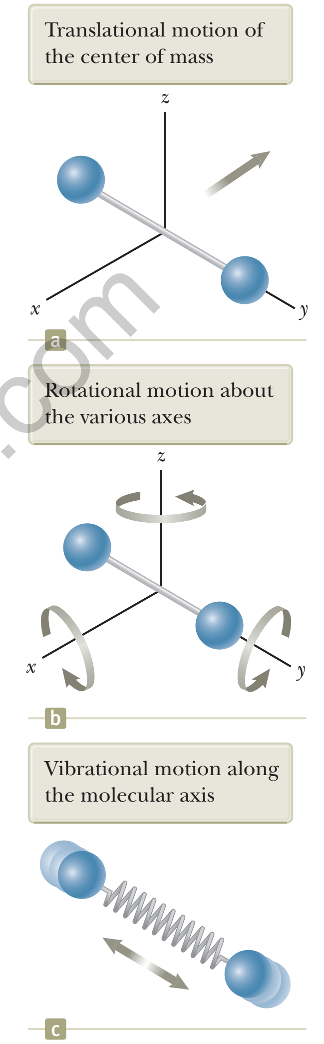


Figure 21.5 Possible motions of a diatomic molecule.

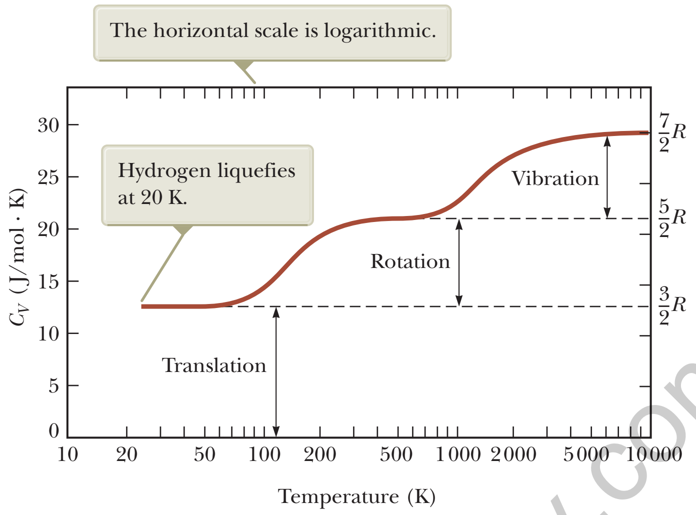


Figure 21.6 The molar specific heat of hydrogen as a function of temperature.

This value is inconsistent with experimental data for molecules such as H_2 and N_2 (see Table 21.2) and suggests a breakdown of our model based on classical physics.

It might seem that our model is a failure for predicting molar specific heats for diatomic gases. We can claim some success for our model, however, if measurements of molar specific heat are made over a wide temperature range rather than at the single temperature that gives us the values in Table 21.2. Figure 21.6 shows the molar specific heat of hydrogen as a function of temperature. The remarkable feature about the three plateaus in the graph's curve is that they are at the values of the molar specific heat predicted by Equations 21.29, 21.33, and 21.34! For low temperatures, the diatomic hydrogen gas behaves like a monatomic gas. As the temperature rises to room temperature, its molar specific heat rises to a value for a diatomic gas, consistent with the inclusion of rotation but not vibration. For high temperatures, the molar specific heat is consistent with a model including all types of motion.

Before addressing the reason for this mysterious behavior, let's make some brief remarks about polyatomic gases. For molecules with more than two atoms, three axes of rotation are available. The vibrations are more complex than for diatomic molecules. Therefore, the number of degrees of freedom is even larger. The result is an even higher predicted molar specific heat, which is in qualitative agreement with experiment. The molar specific heats for the polyatomic gases in Table 21.2 are higher than those for diatomic gases. The more degrees of freedom available to a molecule, the more "ways" there are to store energy, resulting in a higher molar specific heat.

A Hint of Energy Quantization

Our model for molar specific heats has been based so far on purely classical notions. It predicts a value of the specific heat for a diatomic gas that, according to Figure 21.6, only agrees with experimental measurements made at high temperatures. To explain why this value is only true at high temperatures and why the plateaus in Figure 21.6 exist, we must go beyond classical physics and introduce some quantum physics into the model. In Chapter 18, we discussed quantization of frequency for vibrating strings and air columns; only certain frequencies of standing waves can exist. That is a natural result whenever waves are subject to boundary conditions.

Quantum physics (Chapters 40 through 43) shows that atoms and molecules can be described by the waves under boundary conditions analysis model. Consequently, these waves have quantized frequencies. Furthermore, in quantum physics, the energy of a system is proportional to the frequency of the wave representing the system. Hence, **the energies of atoms and molecules are quantized.**

For a molecule, quantum physics tells us that the rotational and vibrational energies are quantized. Figure 21.7 shows an **energy-level diagram** for the rotational and vibrational quantum states of a diatomic molecule. The lowest allowed state is called the **ground state.** The black lines show the energies allowed for the molecule. Notice that allowed vibrational states are separated by larger energy gaps than are rotational states.

At low temperatures, the energy a molecule gains in collisions with its neighbors is generally not large enough to raise it to the first excited state of either rotation or vibration. Therefore, even though rotation and vibration are allowed according to classical physics, they do not occur in reality at low temperatures. All molecules are in the ground state for rotation and vibration. The only contribution to the molecules' average energy is from translation, and the specific heat is that predicted by Equation 21.29.

As the temperature is raised, the average energy of the molecules increases. In some collisions, a molecule may have enough energy transferred to it from another molecule to excite the first rotational state. As the temperature is raised further, more molecules can be excited to this state. The result is that rotation begins to contribute to the internal energy, and the molar specific heat rises. At about room temperature in Figure 21.6, the second plateau has been reached and rotation contributes fully to the molar specific heat. The molar specific heat is now equal to the value predicted by Equation 21.33.

There is no contribution at room temperature from vibration because the molecules are still in the ground vibrational state. The temperature must be raised even further to excite the first vibrational state, which happens in Figure 21.6 between 1 000 K and 10 000 K. At 10 000 K on the right side of the figure, vibration is contributing fully to the internal energy and the molar specific heat has the value predicted by Equation 21.34.

The predictions of this model are supportive of the theorem of equipartition of energy. In addition, the inclusion in the model of energy quantization from quantum physics allows a full understanding of Figure 21.6.

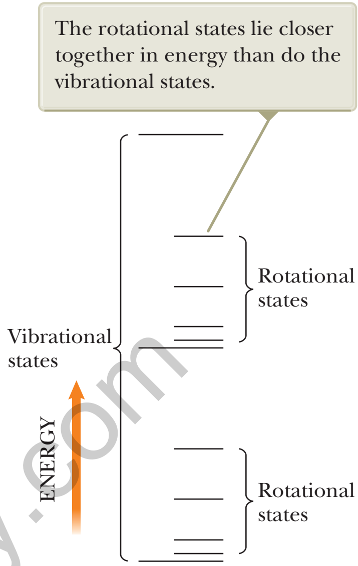


Figure 21.7 An energy-level diagram for vibrational and rotational states of a diatomic molecule.

Quick Quiz 21.3 The molar specific heat of a diatomic gas is measured at constant volume and found to be 29.1 J/mol · K. What are the types of energy that are contributing to the molar specific heat? **(a)** translation only **(b)** translation and rotation only **(c)** translation and vibration only **(d)** translation, rotation, and vibration

Quick Quiz 21.4 The molar specific heat of a gas is measured at constant volume and found to be $11R/2$. Is the gas most likely to be **(a)** monatomic, **(b)** diatomic, or **(c)** polyatomic?

21.4 Adiabatic Processes for an Ideal Gas

As noted in Section 20.6, an **adiabatic process** is one in which no energy is transferred by heat between a system and its surroundings. For example, if a gas is compressed (or expanded) rapidly, very little energy is transferred out of (or into) the system by heat, so the process is nearly adiabatic. Such processes occur in the cycle of a gasoline engine, which is discussed in detail in Chapter 22. Another example of an adiabatic process is the slow expansion of a gas that is thermally insulated from its surroundings. All three variables in the ideal gas law—P, V, and T—change during an adiabatic process.

Let's imagine an adiabatic gas process involving an infinitesimal change in volume dV and an accompanying infinitesimal change in temperature dT. The work done on the gas is $-P\,dV$. Because the internal energy of an ideal gas depends only on temperature, the change in the internal energy in an adiabatic process is the same as that for an isovolumetric process between the same temperatures, $dE_{\text{int}} = nC_V\,dT$ (Eq. 21.27). Hence, the first law of thermodynamics, $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q + W$, with $Q = 0$, becomes the infinitesimal form

$$dE_{\text{int}} = nC_V\,dT = -P\,dV \qquad \textbf{(21.35)}$$

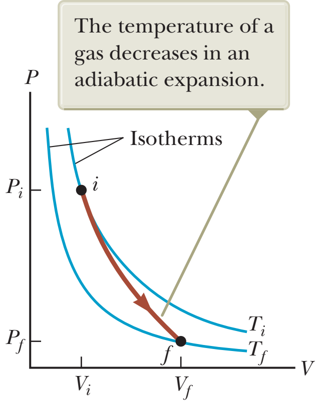


Figure 21.8 The *PV* diagram for an adiabatic expansion of an ideal gas.

Taking the total differential of the equation of state of an ideal gas, $PV = nRT$, gives

$$P\,dV + V\,dP = nR\,dT \tag{21.36}$$

Eliminating dT from Equations 21.35 and 21.36, we find that

$$P\,dV + V\,dP = -\frac{R}{C_V}P\,dV$$

Substituting $R = C_P - C_V$ and dividing by PV gives

$$\frac{dV}{V} + \frac{dP}{P} = -\left(\frac{C_P - C_V}{C_V}\right)\frac{dV}{V} = (1-\gamma)\frac{dV}{V}$$

$$\frac{dP}{P} + \gamma\frac{dV}{V} = 0$$

Integrating this expression, we have

$$\ln P + \gamma \ln V = \text{constant}$$

which is equivalent to

Relationship between *P* and *V* for an adiabatic process involving an ideal gas

$$PV^{\gamma} = \text{constant} \tag{21.37}$$

The *PV* diagram for an adiabatic expansion is shown in Figure 21.8. Because $\gamma > 1$, the *PV* curve is steeper than it would be for an isothermal expansion, for which $PV =$ constant. By the definition of an adiabatic process, no energy is transferred by heat into or out of the system. Hence, from the first law, we see that ΔE_{int} is negative (work is done *by* the gas, so its internal energy decreases) and so ΔT also is negative. Therefore, the temperature of the gas decreases ($T_f < T_i$) during an adiabatic expansion.[2] Conversely, the temperature increases if the gas is compressed adiabatically. Applying Equation 21.37 to the initial and final states, we see that

$$P_iV_i^{\gamma} = P_fV_f^{\gamma} \tag{21.38}$$

Using the ideal gas law, we can express Equation 21.37 as

Relationship between *T* and *V* for an adiabatic process involving an ideal gas

$$TV^{\gamma-1} = \text{constant} \tag{21.39}$$

Example 21.3 A Diesel Engine Cylinder

Air at 20.0°C in the cylinder of a diesel engine is compressed from an initial pressure of 1.00 atm and volume of 800.0 cm^3 to a volume of 60.0 cm^3. Assume air behaves as an ideal gas with $\gamma = 1.40$ and the compression is adiabatic. Find the final pressure and temperature of the air.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine what happens if a gas is compressed into a smaller volume. Our discussion above and Figure 21.8 tell us that the pressure and temperature both increase.

Categorize We categorize this example as a problem involving an adiabatic process.

Analyze Use Equation 21.38 to find the final pressure:

$$P_f = P_i\left(\frac{V_i}{V_f}\right)^{\gamma} = (1.00\text{ atm})\left(\frac{800.0\text{ cm}^3}{60.0\text{ cm}^3}\right)^{1.40}$$

$$= 37.6\text{ atm}$$

[2] In the adiabatic free expansion discussed in Section 20.6, the temperature remains constant. In this unique process, no work is done because the gas expands into a vacuum. In general, the temperature decreases in an adiabatic expansion in which work is done.

21.3 continued

Use the ideal gas law to find the final temperature:

$$\frac{P_iV_i}{T_i} = \frac{P_fV_f}{T_f}$$

$$T_f = \frac{P_f V_f}{P_iV_i} T_i = \frac{(37.6 \text{ atm})(60.0 \text{ cm}^3)}{(1.00 \text{ atm})(800.0 \text{ cm}^3)}(293 \text{ K})$$

$$= 826 \text{ K} = 553°\text{C}$$

Finalize The temperature of the gas increases by a factor of 826 K/293 K = 2.82. The high compression in a diesel engine raises the temperature of the gas enough to cause the combustion of fuel without the use of spark plugs.

21.5 Distribution of Molecular Speeds

Thus far, we have considered only average values of the energies of all the molecules in a gas and have not addressed the distribution of energies among individual molecules. The motion of the molecules is extremely chaotic. Any individual molecule collides with others at an enormous rate, typically a billion times per second. Each collision results in a change in the speed and direction of motion of each of the participant molecules. Equation 21.22 shows that rms molecular speeds increase with increasing temperature. At a given time, what is the relative number of molecules that possess some characteristic such as energy within a certain range?

We shall address this question by considering the **number density** $n_V(E)$. This quantity, called a *distribution function,* is defined so that $n_V(E)\, dE$ is the number of molecules per unit volume with energy between E and $E + dE$. (The ratio of the number of molecules that have the desired characteristic to the total number of molecules is the probability that a particular molecule has that characteristic.) In general, the number density is found from statistical mechanics to be

Pitfall Prevention 21.2

The Distribution Function

The distribution function $n_V(E)$ is defined in terms of the number of molecules with energy in the range E to $E + dE$ rather than in terms of the number of molecules with energy E. Because the number of molecules is finite and the number of possible values of the energy is infinite, the number of molecules with an *exact* energy E may be zero.

$$n_V(E) = n_0 e^{-E/k_BT} \tag{21.40}$$

◀ **Boltzmann distribution law**

where n_0 is defined such that $n_0\, dE$ is the number of molecules per unit volume having energy between $E = 0$ and $E = dE$. This equation, known as the **Boltzmann distribution law,** is important in describing the statistical mechanics of a large number of molecules. It states that the probability of finding the molecules in a particular energy state varies exponentially as the negative of the energy divided by k_BT. All the molecules would fall into the lowest energy level if the thermal agitation at a temperature T did not excite the molecules to higher energy levels.

Example 21.4 Thermal Excitation of Atomic Energy Levels

As discussed in Section 21.4, atoms can occupy only certain discrete energy levels. Consider a gas at a temperature of 2 500 K whose atoms can occupy only two energy levels separated by 1.50 eV, where 1 eV (electron volt) is an energy unit equal to 1.60×10^{-19} J (Fig. 21.9). Determine the ratio of the number of atoms in the higher energy level to the number in the lower energy level.

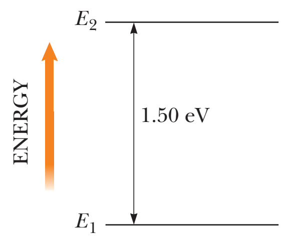


Figure 21.9 (Example 21.4) Energy-level diagram for a gas whose atoms can occupy two energy states.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize In your mental representation of this example, remember that only two possible states are allowed for the system of the atom. Figure 21.9 helps you visualize the two states on an energy-level diagram. In this case, the atom has two possible energies, E_1 and E_2, where $E_1 < E_2$.

continued

21.4 continued

Categorize We categorize this example as one in which we focus on particles in a two-state quantized system. We will apply the Boltzmann distribution law to this system.

Analyze Set up the ratio of the number of atoms in the higher energy level to the number in the lower energy level and use Equation 21.40 to express each number:

$$(1) \quad \frac{n_V(E_2)}{n_V(E_1)} = \frac{n_0 e^{-E_2/k_BT}}{n_0 e^{-E_1/k_BT}} = e^{-(E_2-E_1)/k_BT}$$

Evaluate k_BT in the exponent:

$$k_BT = (1.38 \times 10^{-23}\text{ J/K})(2\,500\text{ K})\left(\frac{1\text{ eV}}{1.60 \times 10^{-19}\text{ J}}\right) = 0.216\text{ eV}$$

Substitute this value into Equation (1):

$$\frac{n_V(E_2)}{n_V(E_1)} = e^{-1.50\text{ eV}/0.216\text{ eV}} = e^{-6.96} = 9.52 \times 10^{-4}$$

Finalize This result indicates that at $T = 2\,500$ K, only a small fraction of the atoms are in the higher energy level. In fact, for every atom in the higher energy level, there are about 1 000 atoms in the lower level. The number of atoms in the higher level increases at even higher temperatures, but the distribution law specifies that at equilibrium there are always more atoms in the lower level than in the higher level.

WHAT IF? What if the energy levels in Figure 21.9 were closer together in energy? Would that increase or decrease the fraction of the atoms in the upper energy level?

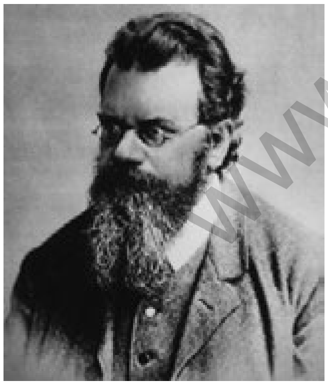
Answer If the excited level is lower in energy than that in Figure 21.9, it would be easier for thermal agitation to excite atoms to this level and the fraction of atoms in this energy level would be larger, which we can see mathematically by expressing Equation (1) as

$$r_2 = e^{-(E_2-E_1)/k_BT}$$

where r_2 is the ratio of atoms having energy E_2 to those with energy E_1. Differentiating with respect to E_2, we find

$$\frac{dr_2}{dE_2} = \frac{d}{dE_2}\left[e^{-(E_2-E_1)/k_BT}\right] = -\frac{1}{k_BT}e^{-(E_2-E_1)/k_BT} < 0$$

Because the derivative has a negative value, as E_2 decreases, r_2 increases.



Ludwig Boltzmann
Austrian physicist (1844–1906)
Boltzmann made many important contributions to the development of the kinetic theory of gases, electromagnetism, and thermodynamics. His pioneering work in the field of kinetic theory led to the branch of physics known as statistical mechanics.

Now that we have discussed the distribution of energies among molecules in a gas, let's think about the distribution of molecular speeds. In 1860, James Clerk Maxwell (1831–1879) derived an expression that describes the distribution of molecular speeds in a very definite manner. His work and subsequent developments by other scientists were highly controversial because direct detection of molecules could not be achieved experimentally at that time. About 60 years later, however, experiments were devised that confirmed Maxwell's predictions.

Let's consider a container of gas whose molecules have some distribution of speeds. Suppose we want to determine how many gas molecules have a speed in the range from, for example, 400 to 401 m/s. Intuitively, we expect the speed distribution to depend on temperature. Furthermore, we expect the distribution to peak in the vicinity of v_{rms}. That is, few molecules are expected to have speeds much less than or much greater than v_{rms} because these extreme speeds result only from an unlikely chain of collisions.

The observed speed distribution of gas molecules in thermal equilibrium is shown in Figure 21.10. The quantity N_v, called the **Maxwell–Boltzmann speed distribution function,** is defined as follows. If N is the total number of molecules, the number of molecules with speeds between v and $v + dv$ is $dN = N_v\,dv$. This number is also equal to the area of the shaded rectangle in Figure 21.10. Furthermore, the fraction of molecules with speeds between v and $v + dv$ is $(N_v\,dv)/N$. This fraction is also equal to the probability that a molecule has a speed in the range v to $v + dv$.

The fundamental expression that describes the distribution of speeds of N gas molecules is

$$N_v = 4\pi N\left(\frac{m_0}{2\pi k_B T}\right)^{3/2} v^2 e^{-m_0 v^2/2k_B T} \tag{21.41}$$

where m_0 is the mass of a gas molecule, k_B is Boltzmann's constant, and T is the absolute temperature.[3] Observe the appearance of the Boltzmann factor $e^{-E/k_B T}$ with $E = \frac{1}{2}m_0 v^2$.

As indicated in Figure 21.10, the average speed is somewhat lower than the rms speed. The *most probable speed* v_{mp} is the speed at which the distribution curve reaches a peak. Using Equation 21.41, we find that

$$v_{rms} = \sqrt{\overline{v^2}} = \sqrt{\frac{3k_B T}{m_0}} = 1.73\sqrt{\frac{k_B T}{m_0}} \tag{21.42}$$

$$v_{avg} = \sqrt{\frac{8k_B T}{\pi m_0}} = 1.60\sqrt{\frac{k_B T}{m_0}} \tag{21.43}$$

$$v_{mp} = \sqrt{\frac{2k_B T}{m_0}} = 1.41\sqrt{\frac{k_B T}{m_0}} \tag{21.44}$$

Equation 21.42 has previously appeared as Equation 21.22. The details of the derivations of these equations from Equation 21.41 are left for the end-of-chapter problems (see Problems 42 and 69). From these equations, we see that

$$v_{rms} > v_{avg} > v_{mp}$$

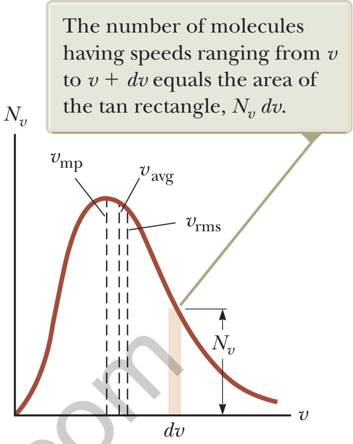


Figure 21.10 The speed distribution of gas molecules at some temperature. The function N_v approaches zero as v approaches infinity.

Figure 21.11 represents speed distribution curves for nitrogen, N_2. The curves were obtained by using Equation 21.41 to evaluate the distribution function at various speeds and at two temperatures. Notice that the peak in each curve shifts to the right as T increases, indicating that the average speed increases with increasing temperature, as expected. Because the lowest speed possible is zero and the upper classical limit of the speed is infinity, the curves are asymmetrical. (In Chapter 39, we show that the actual upper limit is the speed of light.)

Equation 21.41 shows that the distribution of molecular speeds in a gas depends both on mass and on temperature. At a given temperature, the fraction of molecules with speeds exceeding a fixed value increases as the mass decreases. Hence,

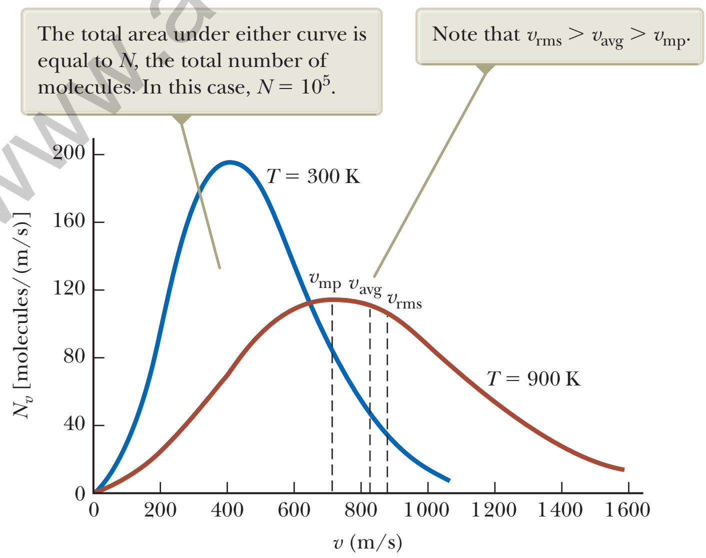


Figure 21.11 The speed distribution function for 10^5 nitrogen molecules at 300 K and 900 K.

[3] For the derivation of this expression, see an advanced textbook on thermodynamics.

lighter molecules such as H_2 and He escape into space more readily from the Earth's atmosphere than do heavier molecules such as N_2 and O_2. (See the discussion of escape speed in Chapter 13. Gas molecules escape even more readily from the Moon's surface than from the Earth's because the escape speed on the Moon is lower than that on the Earth.)

The speed distribution curves for molecules in a liquid are similar to those shown in Figure 21.11. We can understand the phenomenon of evaporation of a liquid from this distribution in speeds, given that some molecules in the liquid are more energetic than others. Some of the faster-moving molecules in the liquid penetrate the surface and even leave the liquid at temperatures well below the boiling point. The molecules that escape the liquid by evaporation are those that have sufficient energy to overcome the attractive forces of the molecules in the liquid phase. Consequently, the molecules left behind in the liquid phase have a lower average kinetic energy; as a result, the temperature of the liquid decreases. Hence, evaporation is a cooling process. For example, an alcohol-soaked cloth can be placed on a feverish head to cool and comfort a patient.

Example 21.5 A System of Nine Particles

Nine particles have speeds of 5.00, 8.00, 12.0, 12.0, 12.0, 14.0, 14.0, 17.0, and 20.0 m/s.

(A) Find the particles' average speed.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine a small number of particles moving in random directions with the few speeds listed. This situation is not representative of the large number of molecules in a gas, so we should not expect the results to be consistent with those from statistical mechanics.

Categorize Because we are dealing with a small number of particles, we can calculate the average speed directly.

Analyze Find the average speed of the particles by dividing the sum of the speeds by the total number of particles:

$$v_{avg} = \frac{(5.00 + 8.00 + 12.0 + 12.0 + 12.0 + 14.0 + 14.0 + 17.0 + 20.0)\ \text{m/s}}{9}$$

$$= \boxed{12.7\ \text{m/s}}$$

(B) What is the rms speed of the particles?

SOLUTION

Find the average speed squared of the particles by dividing the sum of the speeds squared by the total number of particles:

$$\overline{v^2} = \frac{(5.00^2 + 8.00^2 + 12.0^2 + 12.0^2 + 12.0^2 + 14.0^2 + 14.0^2 + 17.0^2 + 20.0^2)\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2}{9}$$

$$= 178\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2$$

Find the rms speed of the particles by taking the square root:

$$v_{rms} = \sqrt{\overline{v^2}} = \sqrt{178\ \text{m}^2/\text{s}^2} = \boxed{13.3\ \text{m/s}}$$

(C) What is the most probable speed of the particles?

SOLUTION

Three of the particles have a speed of 12.0 m/s, two have a speed of 14.0 m/s, and the remaining four have different speeds. Hence, the most probable speed v_{mp} is 12.0 m/s.

Finalize Compare this example, in which the number of particles is small and we know the individual particle speeds, with the next example.

Example 21.6 Molecular Speeds in a Hydrogen Gas

A 0.500-mol sample of hydrogen gas is at 300 K.

(A) Find the average speed, the rms speed, and the most probable speed of the hydrogen molecules.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine a huge number of particles in a real gas, all moving in random directions with different speeds.

Categorize We cannot calculate the averages as was done in Example 21.5 because the individual speeds of the particles are not known. We are dealing with a very large number of particles, however, so we can use the Maxwell-Boltzmann speed distribution function.

Analyze Use Equation 21.43 to find the average speed:

$$v_{avg} = 1.60\sqrt{\frac{k_B T}{m_0}} = 1.60\sqrt{\frac{(1.38 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{J/K})(300\ \text{K})}{2(1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg})}}$$

$$= \boxed{1.78 \times 10^3\ \text{m/s}}$$

Use Equation 21.42 to find the rms speed:

$$v_{rms} = 1.73\sqrt{\frac{k_B T}{m_0}} = 1.73\sqrt{\frac{(1.38 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{J/K})(300\ \text{K})}{2(1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg})}}$$

$$= \boxed{1.93 \times 10^3\ \text{m/s}}$$

Use Equation 21.44 to find the most probable speed:

$$v_{mp} = 1.41\sqrt{\frac{k_B T}{m_0}} = 1.41\sqrt{\frac{(1.38 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{J/K})(300\ \text{K})}{2(1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg})}}$$

$$= \boxed{1.57 \times 10^3\ \text{m/s}}$$

(B) Find the number of molecules with speeds between 400 m/s and 401 m/s.

SOLUTION

Use Equation 21.41 to evaluate the number of molecules in a narrow speed range between v and $v + dv$:

$$(1)\quad N_v\,dv = 4\pi N\left(\frac{m_0}{2\pi k_B T}\right)^{3/2} v^2 e^{-m_0 v^2/2k_B T}\,dv$$

Evaluate the constant in front of v^2:

$$4\pi N\left(\frac{m_0}{2\pi k_B T}\right)^{3/2} = 4\pi n N_A\left(\frac{m_0}{2\pi k_B T}\right)^{3/2}$$

$$= 4\pi(0.500\ \text{mol})(6.02 \times 10^{23}\ \text{mol}^{-1})\left[\frac{2(1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg})}{2\pi(1.38 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{J/K})(300\ \text{K})}\right]^{3/2}$$

$$= 1.74 \times 10^{14}\ \text{s}^3/\text{m}^3$$

Evaluate the exponent of e that appears in Equation (1):

$$-\frac{m_0 v^2}{2k_B T} = -\frac{2(1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg})(400\ \text{m/s})^2}{2(1.38 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{J/K})(300\ \text{K})} = -0.064\,5$$

Evaluate $N_v\,dv$ using these values in Equation (1):

$$N_v\,dv = (1.74 \times 10^{14}\ \text{s}^3/\text{m}^3)(400\ \text{m/s})^2 e^{-0.064\,5}(1\ \text{m/s})$$

$$= \boxed{2.61 \times 10^{19}\ \text{molecules}}$$

Finalize In this evaluation, we could calculate the result without integration because $dv = 1$ m/s is much smaller than $v = 400$ m/s. Had we sought the number of particles between, say, 400 m/s and 500 m/s, we would need to integrate Equation (1) between these speed limits.

Summary

Concepts and Principles

The pressure of N molecules of an ideal gas contained in a volume V is

$$P = \frac{2}{3}\left(\frac{N}{V}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}m_0\overline{v^2}\right) \quad (21.15)$$

The average translational kinetic energy per molecule of a gas, $\frac{1}{2}m_0\overline{v^2}$, is related to the temperature T of the gas through the expression

$$\frac{1}{2}m_0\overline{v^2} = \frac{3}{2}k_BT \quad (21.19)$$

where k_B is Boltzmann's constant. Each translational degree of freedom (x, y, or z) has $\frac{1}{2}k_BT$ of energy associated with it.

The internal energy of N molecules (or n mol) of an ideal monatomic gas is

$$E_{int} = \frac{3}{2}Nk_BT = \frac{3}{2}nRT \quad (21.25)$$

The change in internal energy for n mol of any ideal gas that undergoes a change in temperature ΔT is

$$\Delta E_{int} = nC_V\Delta T \quad (21.27)$$

where C_V is the **molar specific heat at constant volume.**

The molar specific heat of an ideal monatomic gas at constant volume is $C_V = \frac{3}{2}R$; the molar specific heat at constant pressure is $C_P = \frac{5}{2}R$. The ratio of specific heats is given by $\gamma = C_P/C_V = \frac{5}{3}$.

If an ideal gas undergoes an adiabatic expansion or compression, the first law of thermodynamics, together with the equation of state, shows that

$$PV^\gamma = \text{constant} \quad (21.37)$$

The **Boltzmann distribution law** describes the distribution of particles among available energy states. The relative number of particles having energy between E and $E + dE$ is $n_V(E)\,dE$, where

$$n_V(E) = n_0e^{-E/k_BT} \quad (21.40)$$

The **Maxwell–Boltzmann speed distribution function** describes the distribution of speeds of molecules in a gas:

$$N_v = 4\pi N\left(\frac{m_0}{2\pi k_BT}\right)^{3/2} v^2e^{-m_0v^2/2k_BT} \quad (21.41)$$

Equation 21.41 enables us to calculate the **root-mean-square speed,** the **average speed,** and the **most probable speed** of molecules in a gas:

$$v_{rms} = \sqrt{\overline{v^2}} = \sqrt{\frac{3k_BT}{m_0}} = 1.73\sqrt{\frac{k_BT}{m_0}} \quad (21.42)$$

$$v_{avg} = \sqrt{\frac{8k_BT}{\pi m_0}} = 1.60\sqrt{\frac{k_BT}{m_0}} \quad (21.43)$$

$$v_{mp} = \sqrt{\frac{2k_BT}{m_0}} = 1.41\sqrt{\frac{k_BT}{m_0}} \quad (21.44)$$

Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. Cylinder A contains oxygen (O_2) gas, and cylinder B contains nitrogen (N_2) gas. If the molecules in the two cylinders have the same rms speeds, which of the following statements is *false*? (a) The two gases have different temperatures. (b) The temperature of cylinder B is less than the temperature of cylinder A. (c) The temperature of cylinder B is greater than the temperature of cylinder A. (d) The average kinetic energy of the nitrogen molecules is less than the average kinetic energy of the oxygen molecules.

2. An ideal gas is maintained at constant pressure. If the temperature of the gas is increased from 200 K to 600 K, what happens to the rms speed of the molecules? (a) It increases by a factor of 3. (b) It remains the same. (c) It is one-third the original speed. (d) It is $\sqrt{3}$ times the original speed. (e) It increases by a factor of 6.

3. Two samples of the same ideal gas have the same pressure and density. Sample B has twice the volume of sample A. What is the rms speed of the molecules in sample B? (a) twice that in sample A (b) equal to that in sample A (c) half that in sample A (d) impossible to determine

4. A helium-filled latex balloon initially at room temperature is placed in a freezer. The latex remains flexible. **(i)** Does the balloon's volume (a) increase, (b) decrease, or (c) remain the same? **(ii)** Does the pressure of the helium gas (a) increase significantly, (b) decrease significantly, or (c) remain approximately the same?

5. A gas is at 200 K. If we wish to double the rms speed of the molecules of the gas, to what value must we raise its temperature? (a) 283 K (b) 400 K (c) 566 K (d) 800 K (e) 1130 K

6. Rank the following from largest to smallest, noting any cases of equality. (a) the average speed of molecules in a particular sample of ideal gas (b) the most probable speed (c) the root-mean-square speed (d) the average vector velocity of the molecules

7. A sample of gas with a thermometer immersed in the gas is held over a hot plate. A student is asked to give a step-by-step account of what makes our observation of the temperature of the gas increase. His response includes the following steps. (a) The molecules speed up. (b) Then the molecules collide with one another more often. (c) Internal friction makes the collisions inelastic. (d) Heat is produced in the collisions. (e) The molecules of the gas transfer more energy to the thermometer when they strike it, so we observe that the temperature has gone up. (f) The same process can take place without the use of a hot plate if you quickly push in the piston in an insulated cylinder containing the gas. **(i)** Which of the parts (a) through (f) of this account are correct statements necessary for a clear and complete explanation? **(ii)** Which are correct statements that are not necessary to account for the higher thermometer reading? **(iii)** Which are incorrect statements?

8. An ideal gas is contained in a vessel at 300 K. The temperature of the gas is then increased to 900 K. **(i)** By what factor does the average kinetic energy of the molecules change, (a) a factor of 9, (b) a factor of 3, (c) a factor of $\sqrt{3}$, (d) a factor of 1, or (e) a factor of $\frac{1}{3}$? Using the same choices as in part (i), by what factor does each of the following change: **(ii)** the rms molecular speed of the molecules, **(iii)** the average momentum change that one molecule undergoes in a collision with one particular wall, **(iv)** the rate of collisions of molecules with walls, and **(v)** the pressure of the gas.

9. Which of the assumptions below is *not* made in the kinetic theory of gases? (a) The number of molecules is very large. (b) The molecules obey Newton's laws of motion. (c) The forces between molecules are long range. (d) The gas is a pure substance. (e) The average separation between molecules is large compared to their dimensions.

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. Hot air rises, so why does it generally become cooler as you climb a mountain? *Note:* Air has low thermal conductivity.

2. Why does a diatomic gas have a greater energy content per mole than a monatomic gas at the same temperature?

3. When alcohol is rubbed on your body, it lowers your skin temperature. Explain this effect.

4. What happens to a helium-filled latex balloon released into the air? Does it expand or contract? Does it stop rising at some height?

5. Which is denser, dry air or air saturated with water vapor? Explain.

6. One container is filled with helium gas and another with argon gas. Both containers are at the same temperature. Which molecules have the higher rms speed? Explain.

7. Dalton's law of partial pressures states that the total pressure of a mixture of gases is equal to the sum of the pressures that each gas in the mixture would exert if it were alone in the container. Give a convincing argument for this law based on the kinetic theory of gases.

Problems

ENHANCED WebAssign The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 21.1 Molecular Model of an Ideal Gas

Problem 30 in Chapter 19 can be assigned with this section.

1. M (a) How many atoms of helium gas fill a spherical balloon of diameter 30.0 cm at 20.0°C and 1.00 atm? (b) What is the average kinetic energy of the helium atoms? (c) What is the rms speed of the helium atoms?

2. M A cylinder contains a mixture of helium and argon gas in equilibrium at 150°C. (a) What is the average kinetic energy for each type of gas molecule? (b) What is the rms speed of each type of molecule?

3. In a 30.0-s interval, 500 hailstones strike a glass window of area 0.600 m^2 at an angle of 45.0° to the window surface. Each hailstone has a mass of 5.00 g and a speed of 8.00 m/s. Assuming the collisions are elastic, find (a) the average force and (b) the average pressure on the window during this interval.

4. In an ultrahigh vacuum system (with typical pressures lower than 10^{-7} pascal), the pressure is measured to be 1.00×10^{-10} torr (where 1 torr = 133 Pa). Assuming the temperature is 300 K, find the number of molecules in a volume of 1.00 m^3.

5. A spherical balloon of volume 4.00×10^3 cm^3 contains helium at a pressure of 1.20×10^5 Pa. How many moles of helium are in the balloon if the average kinetic energy of the helium atoms is 3.60×10^{-22} J?

6. A spherical balloon of volume V contains helium at a pressure P. How many moles of helium are in the balloon if the average kinetic energy of the helium atoms is $\overline{K}$?

7. A 2.00-mol sample of oxygen gas is confined to a 5.00-L vessel at a pressure of 8.00 atm. Find the average translational kinetic energy of the oxygen molecules under these conditions.

8. Oxygen, modeled as an ideal gas, is in a container and has a temperature of 77.0°C. What is the rms-average magnitude of the momentum of the gas molecules in the container?

9. Calculate the mass of an atom of (a) helium, (b) iron, and (c) lead. Give your answers in kilograms. The atomic masses of these atoms are 4.00 u, 55.9 u, and 207 u, respectively.

10. The rms speed of an oxygen molecule (O_2) in a container of oxygen gas is 625 m/s. What is the temperature of the gas?

11. A 5.00-L vessel contains nitrogen gas at 27.0°C and 3.00 atm. Find (a) the total translational kinetic energy of the gas molecules and (b) the average kinetic energy per molecule.

12. A 7.00-L vessel contains 3.50 moles of gas at a pressure of 1.60×10^6 Pa. Find (a) the temperature of the gas and (b) the average kinetic energy of the gas molecules in the vessel. (c) What additional information would you need if you were asked to find the average speed of the gas molecules?

13. In a period of 1.00 s, 5.00×10^{23} nitrogen molecules strike a wall with an area of 8.00 cm^2. Assume the molecules move with a speed of 300 m/s and strike the wall head-on in elastic collisions. What is the pressure exerted on the wall? *Note:* The mass of one N_2 molecule is 4.65×10^{-26} kg.

Section 21.2 Molar Specific Heat of an Ideal Gas

Note: You may use data in Table 21.2 about particular gases. Here we define a "monatomic ideal gas" to have molar specific heats $C_V = \frac{3}{2}R$ and $C_P = \frac{5}{2}R$, and a "diatomic ideal gas" to have $C_V = \frac{5}{2}R$ and $C_P = \frac{7}{2}R$.

14. In a constant-volume process, 209 J of energy is transferred by heat to 1.00 mol of an ideal monatomic gas initially at 300 K. Find (a) the work done on the gas, (b) the increase in internal energy of the gas, and (c) its final temperature.

15. A sample of a diatomic ideal gas has pressure P and volume V. When the gas is warmed, its pressure triples and its volume doubles. This warming process includes two steps, the first at constant pressure and the second at constant volume. Determine the amount of energy transferred to the gas by heat.

16. **Review.** A house has well-insulated walls. It contains a volume of 100 m^3 of air at 300 K. (a) Calculate the energy required to increase the temperature of this diatomic ideal gas by 1.00°C. (b) **What If?** If all this energy could be used to lift an object of mass m through a height of 2.00 m, what is the value of m?

17. A 1.00-mol sample of hydrogen gas is heated at constant pressure from 300 K to 420 K. Calculate (a) the energy transferred to the gas by heat, (b) the increase in its internal energy, and (c) the work done on the gas.

18. A vertical cylinder with a heavy piston contains air at 300 K. The initial pressure is 2.00×10^5 Pa, and the initial volume is 0.350 m^3. Take the molar mass of air as 28.9 g/mol and assume $C_V = \frac{5}{2}R$. (a) Find the specific heat of air at constant volume in units of J/kg · °C. (b) Calculate the mass of the air in the cylinder. (c) Suppose the piston is held fixed. Find the energy input required to raise the temperature of the air to 700 K. (d) **What If?** Assume again the conditions of the initial state and assume the heavy piston is free to move. Find the energy input required to raise the temperature to 700 K.

19. Calculate the change in internal energy of 3.00 mol of helium gas when its temperature is increased by 2.00 K.

20. A 1.00-L insulated bottle is full of tea at 90.0°C. You pour out one cup of tea and immediately screw the stopper back on the bottle. Make an order-of-magnitude estimate of the change in temperature of the tea remaining in the bottle that results from the admission of air at room temperature. State the quantities you take as data and the values you measure or estimate for them.

21. **Review.** This problem is a continuation of Problem 39 in Chapter 19. A hot-air balloon consists of an envelope of constant volume 400 m^3. Not including the air inside, the balloon and cargo have mass 200 kg. The air outside and originally inside is a diatomic ideal gas at 10.0°C and 101 kPa, with density 1.25 kg/m^3. A propane burner at the center of the spherical envelope injects energy into the air inside. The air inside stays at constant pressure. Hot air, at just the temperature required to make the balloon lift off, starts to fill the envelope at its closed top, rapidly enough so that negligible energy flows by heat to the cool air below it or out through the wall of the balloon. Air at 10°C leaves through an opening at the bottom of the envelope until the whole balloon is filled with hot air at uniform temperature. Then the burner is shut off and the balloon rises from the ground. (a) Evaluate the quantity of energy the burner must transfer to the air in the balloon. (b) The "heat value" of propane—the internal energy released by burning each kilogram—is 50.3 MJ/kg. What mass of propane must be burned?

Section 21.3 The Equipartition of Energy

22. A certain molecule has f degrees of freedom. Show that an ideal gas consisting of such molecules has the following properties: (a) its total internal energy is $fnRT/2$, (b) its molar specific heat at constant volume is $fR/2$, (c) its molar specific heat at constant pressure is $(f + 2)R/2$, and (d) its specific heat ratio is $\gamma = C_P/C_V = (f + 2)/f$.

23. In a crude model (Fig. P21.23) of a rotating diatomic chlorine molecule (Cl_2), the two Cl atoms are 2.00×10^{-10} m apart and rotate about their center of mass with angular speed $\omega = 2.00 \times 10^{12}$ rad/s. What is the rotational kinetic energy of one molecule of Cl_2, which has a molar mass of 70.0 g/mol?

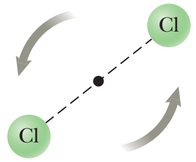


Figure P21.23

24. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A team of researchers discovers a new gas, which has a value of $\gamma = C_P/C_V$ of 1.75.

25. M The relationship between the heat capacity of a sample and the specific heat of the sample material is discussed in Section 20.2. Consider a sample containing 2.00 mol of an ideal diatomic gas. Assuming the molecules rotate but do not vibrate, find (a) the total heat capacity of the sample at constant volume and (b) the total heat capacity at constant pressure. (c) **What If?** Repeat parts (a) and (b), assuming the molecules both rotate and vibrate.

Section 21.4 Adiabatic Processes for an Ideal Gas

26. M A 2.00-mol sample of a diatomic ideal gas expands slowly and adiabatically from a pressure of 5.00 atm and a volume of 12.0 L to a final volume of 30.0 L. (a) What is the final pressure of the gas? (b) What are the initial and final temperatures? Find (c) Q, (d) ΔE_{int}, and (e) W for the gas during this process.

27. W During the compression stroke of a certain gasoline engine, the pressure increases from 1.00 atm to 20.0 atm. If the process is adiabatic and the air–fuel mixture behaves as a diatomic ideal gas, (a) by what factor does the volume change and (b) by what factor does the temperature change? Assuming the compression starts with 0.016 0 mol of gas at 27.0°C, find the values of (c) Q, (d) ΔE_{int}, and (e) W that characterize the process.

28. W How much work is required to compress 5.00 mol of air at 20.0°C and 1.00 atm to one-tenth of the original volume (a) by an isothermal process? (b) **What If?** How much work is required to produce the same compression in an adiabatic process? (c) What is the final pressure in part (a)? (d) What is the final pressure in part (b)?

29. M Air in a thundercloud expands as it rises. If its initial temperature is 300 K and no energy is lost by thermal conduction on expansion, what is its temperature when the initial volume has doubled?

30. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A new diesel engine that increases fuel economy over previous models is designed. Automobiles fitted with this design become incredible best sellers. Two design features are responsible for the increased fuel economy: (1) the engine is made entirely of aluminum to reduce the weight of the automobile, and (2) the exhaust of the engine is used to prewarm the air to 50°C before it enters the cylinder to increase the final temperature of the compressed gas. The engine has a *compression ratio*—that is, the ratio of the initial volume of the air to its final volume after compression—of 14.5. The compression process is adiabatic, and the air behaves as a diatomic ideal gas with $\gamma = 1.40$.

31. During the power stroke in a four-stroke automobile engine, the piston is forced down as the mixture of combustion products and air undergoes an adiabatic expansion. Assume (1) the engine is running at 2 500 cycles/min; (2) the gauge pressure immediately before the expansion is 20.0 atm; (3) the volumes of the mixture immediately before and after the expansion are 50.0 cm³ and 400 cm³, respectively (Fig. P21.31); (4) the time interval for the expansion is one-fourth that of the total cycle; and (5) the mixture behaves like an ideal gas with specific heat ratio 1.40. Find the average power generated during the power stroke.

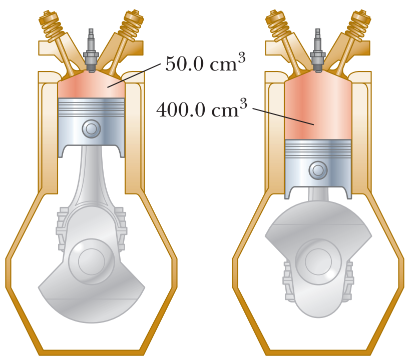


Figure P21.31

32. GP Air (a diatomic ideal gas) at 27.0°C and atmospheric pressure is drawn into a bicycle pump (see the chapter-opening photo on page 626) that has a cylinder with an inner diameter of 2.50 cm and length 50.0 cm. The downstroke adiabatically compresses the air, which reaches a gauge pressure of 8.00×10^5 Pa before entering the tire. We wish to investigate the temperature increase of the pump. (a) What is the initial volume of the air in the pump? (b) What is the number of moles of air in the pump? (c) What is the absolute pressure of the compressed air? (d) What is the volume of the compressed air? (e) What is the temperature of the compressed air? (f) What is the increase in internal energy of the gas during the compression? **What If?** The pump is made of steel that is 2.00 mm thick. Assume 4.00 cm of the cylinder's length is allowed to come to thermal equilibrium with the air. (g) What is the volume of steel in this 4.00-cm length? (h) What is the mass of steel in this 4.00-cm length? (i) Assume the pump is compressed once. After the adiabatic expansion, conduction results in the energy increase in part (f) being shared between the gas and the 4.00-cm length of steel. What will be the increase in temperature of the steel after one compression?

33. A 4.00-L sample of a diatomic ideal gas with specific heat ratio 1.40, confined to a cylinder, is carried through a closed cycle. The gas is initially at 1.00 atm and 300 K. First, its pressure is tripled under constant volume. Then, it expands adiabatically to its original pressure. Finally, the gas is compressed isobarically to its original volume. (a) Draw a *PV* diagram of this cycle. (b) Determine the volume of the gas at the end of the adiabatic expansion. (c) Find the temperature of the gas at the start of the adiabatic expansion. (d) Find the temperature at the end of the cycle. (e) What was the net work done on the gas for this cycle?

34. An ideal gas with specific heat ratio γ confined to a cylinder is put through a closed cycle. Initially, the gas is at P_i, V_i, and T_i. First, its pressure is tripled under constant volume. It then expands adiabatically to its original pressure and finally is compressed isobarically to its original volume. (a) Draw a *PV* diagram of this cycle. (b) Determine the volume at the end of the adiabatic expansion. Find (c) the temperature of the gas at the start of the adiabatic expansion and (d) the temperature at the end of the cycle. (e) What was the net work done on the gas for this cycle?

Section 21.5 Distribution of Molecular Speeds

35. Helium gas is in thermal equilibrium with liquid helium at 4.20 K. Even though it is on the point of condensation, model the gas as ideal and determine the most probable speed of a helium atom (mass = 6.64×10^{-27} kg) in it.

36. M Fifteen identical particles have various speeds: one has a speed of 2.00 m/s, two have speeds of 3.00 m/s, three have speeds of 5.00 m/s, four have speeds of 7.00 m/s, three have speeds of 9.00 m/s, and two have speeds of 12.0 m/s. Find (a) the average speed, (b) the rms speed, and (c) the most probable speed of these particles.

37. W One cubic meter of atomic hydrogen at 0°C at atmospheric pressure contains approximately 2.70×10^{25} atoms. The first excited state of the hydrogen atom has an energy of 10.2 eV above that of the lowest state, called the ground state. Use the Boltzmann factor to find the number of atoms in the first excited state (a) at 0°C and at (b) (1.00×10^4)°C.

38. Two gases in a mixture diffuse through a filter at rates proportional to their rms speeds. (a) Find the ratio of speeds for the two isotopes of chlorine, ^{35}Cl and ^{37}Cl, as they diffuse through the air. (b) Which isotope moves faster?

39. **Review.** At what temperature would the average speed of helium atoms equal (a) the escape speed from the Earth, 1.12×10^4 m/s, and (b) the escape speed from the Moon, 2.37×10^3 m/s? *Note:* The mass of a helium atom is 6.64×10^{-27} kg.

40. Consider a container of nitrogen gas molecules at 900 K. Calculate (a) the most probable speed, (b) the average speed, and (c) the rms speed for the molecules. (d) State how your results compare with the values displayed in Figure 21.11.

41. Assume the Earth's atmosphere has a uniform temperature of 20.0°C and uniform composition, with an effective molar mass of 28.9 g/mol. (a) Show that the number density of molecules depends on height y above sea level according to

$$n_V(y) = n_0 e^{-m_0 g y / k_B T}$$

where n_0 is the number density at sea level (where $y = 0$). This result is called the *law of atmospheres.* (b) Commercial jetliners typically cruise at an altitude of 11.0 km. Find the ratio of the atmospheric density there to the density at sea level.

42. From the Maxwell–Boltzmann speed distribution, show that the most probable speed of a gas molecule is given by Equation 21.44. *Note:* The most probable speed corresponds to the point at which the slope of the speed distribution curve dN_v/dv is zero.

43. The law of atmospheres states that the number density of molecules in the atmosphere depends on height y above sea level according to

$$n_V(y) = n_0 e^{-m_0 g y / k_B T}$$

where n_0 is the number density at sea level (where $y = 0$). The average height of a molecule in the Earth's atmosphere is given by

$$y_{avg} = \frac{\int_0^\infty y\, n_V(y)\, dy}{\int_0^\infty n_V(y)\, dy} = \frac{\int_0^\infty y e^{-m_0 g y / k_B T}\, dy}{\int_0^\infty e^{-m_0 g y / k_B T}\, dy}$$

(a) Prove that this average height is equal to $k_B T / m_0 g$. (b) Evaluate the average height, assuming the temperature is 10.0°C and the molecular mass is 28.9 u, both uniform throughout the atmosphere.

Additional Problems

44. Eight molecules have speeds of 3.00 km/s, 4.00 km/s, 5.80 km/s, 2.50 km/s, 3.60 km/s, 1.90 km/s, 3.80 km/s, and 6.60 km/s. Find (a) the average speed of the molecules and (b) the rms speed of the molecules.

45. A small oxygen tank at a gauge pressure of 125 atm has a volume of 6.88 L at 21.0°C. (a) If an athlete breathes oxygen from this tank at the rate of 8.50 L/min when measured at atmospheric pressure and the temperature remains at 21.0°C, how long will the tank last before it is empty? (b) At a particular moment during this process, what is the ratio of the rms speed of the molecules remaining in the tank to the rms speed of those being released at atmospheric pressure?

46. The dimensions of a classroom are 4.20 m × 3.00 m × 2.50 m. (a) Find the number of molecules of air in the classroom at atmospheric pressure and 20.0°C. (b) Find the mass of this air, assuming the air consists of diatomic molecules with molar mass 28.9 g/mol. (c) Find the average kinetic energy of the molecules. (d) Find the rms molecular speed. (e) **What If?** Assume the molar specific heat of the air is independent of temperature. Find the change in internal energy of the air in the room as the temperature is raised to 25.0°C. (f) Explain how you could convince a fellow student that your answer to part (e) is correct, even though it sounds surprising.

47. The Earth's atmosphere consists primarily of oxygen (21%) and nitrogen (78%). The rms speed of oxygen molecules (O_2) in the atmosphere at a certain location is 535 m/s. (a) What is the temperature of the atmosphere at this location? (b) Would the rms speed of nitrogen molecules (N_2) at this location be higher, equal to, or lower than 535 m/s? Explain. (c) Determine the rms speed of N_2 at his location.

48. AMT The *mean free path* ℓ of a molecule is the average distance that a molecule travels before colliding with another molecule. It is given by

$$\ell = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}\pi d^2 N_V}$$

where d is the diameter of the molecule and N_V is the number of molecules per unit volume. The number of collisions that a molecule makes with other molecules per unit time, or *collision frequency f*, is given by

$$f = \frac{v_{\text{avg}}}{\ell}$$

(a) If the diameter of an oxygen molecule is 2.00×10^{-10} m, find the mean free path of the molecules in a scuba tank that has a volume of 12.0 L and is filled with oxygen at a gauge pressure of 100 atm at a temperature of 25.0°C. (b) What is the average time interval between molecular collisions for a molecule of this gas?

49. AMT An air rifle shoots a lead pellet by allowing high-pressure air to expand, propelling the pellet down the rifle barrel. Because this process happens very quickly, no appreciable thermal conduction occurs and the expansion is essentially adiabatic. Suppose the rifle starts with 12.0 cm^3 of compressed air, which behaves as an ideal gas with $\gamma = 1.40$. The expanding air pushes a 1.10-g pellet as a piston with cross-sectional area 0.030 0 cm^2 along the 50.0-cm-long gun barrel. What initial pressure is required to eject the pellet with a muzzle speed of 120 m/s? Ignore the effects of the air in front of the bullet and friction with the inside walls of the barrel.

50. In a sample of a solid metal, each atom is free to vibrate about some equilibrium position. The atom's energy consists of kinetic energy for motion in the x, y, and z directions plus elastic potential energy associated with the Hooke's law forces exerted by neighboring atoms on it in the x, y, and z directions. According to the theorem of equipartition of energy, assume the average energy of each atom is $\frac{1}{2}k_BT$ for each degree of freedom. (a) Prove that the molar specific heat of the solid is $3R$. The *Dulong–Petit law* states that this result generally describes pure solids at sufficiently high temperatures. (You may ignore the difference between the specific heat at constant pressure and the specific heat at constant volume.) (b) Evaluate the specific heat c of iron. Explain how it compares with the value listed in Table 20.1. (c) Repeat the evaluation and comparison for gold.

51. A certain ideal gas has a molar specific heat of $C_V = \frac{7}{2}R$. A 2.00-mol sample of the gas always starts at pressure 1.00×10^5 Pa and temperature 300 K. For each of the following processes, determine (a) the final pressure, (b) the final volume, (c) the final temperature, (d) the change in internal energy of the gas, (e) the energy added to the gas by heat, and (f) the work done on the gas. **(i)** The gas is heated at constant pressure to 400 K. **(ii)** The gas is heated at constant volume to 400 K. **(iii)** The gas is compressed at constant temperature to 1.20×10^5 Pa. **(iv)** The gas is compressed adiabatically to 1.20×10^5 Pa.

52. The compressibility κ of a substance is defined as the fractional change in volume of that substance for a given change in pressure:

$$\kappa = -\frac{1}{V}\frac{dV}{dP}$$

(a) Explain why the negative sign in this expression ensures κ is always positive. (b) Show that if an ideal gas is compressed isothermally, its compressibility is given by $\kappa_1 = 1/P$. (c) **What If?** Show that if an ideal gas is compressed adiabatically, its compressibility is given by $\kappa_2 = 1/(\gamma P)$. Determine values for (d) κ_1 and (e) κ_2 for a monatomic ideal gas at a pressure of 2.00 atm.

53. **Review.** Oxygen at pressures much greater than 1 atm is toxic to lung cells. Assume a deep-sea diver breathes a mixture of oxygen (O_2) and helium (He). By weight, what ratio of helium to oxygen must be used if the diver is at an ocean depth of 50.0 m?

54. Examine the data for polyatomic gases in Table 21.2 and give a reason why sulfur dioxide has a higher specific heat at constant volume than the other polyatomic gases at 300 K.

55. Model air as a diatomic ideal gas with $M = 28.9$ g/mol. A cylinder with a piston contains 1.20 kg of air at 25.0°C and 2.00×10^5 Pa. Energy is transferred by heat into the system as it is permitted to expand, with the pressure rising to 4.00×10^5 Pa. Throughout the expansion, the relationship between pressure and volume is given by

$$P = CV^{1/2}$$

where C is a constant. Find (a) the initial volume, (b) the final volume, (c) the final temperature, (d) the work done on the air, and (e) the energy transferred by heat.

56. **Review.** As a sound wave passes through a gas, the compressions are either so rapid or so far apart that thermal conduction is prevented by a negligible time interval or by effective thickness of insulation. The compressions and rarefactions are adiabatic. (a) Show that the speed of sound in an ideal gas is

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma RT}{M}}$$

where M is the molar mass. The speed of sound in a gas is given by Equation 17.8; use that equation and the definition of the bulk modulus from Section 12.4. (b) Compute the theoretical speed of sound in air at 20.0°C and state how it compares with the value in Table 17.1. Take M = 28.9 g/mol. (c) Show that the speed of sound in an ideal gas is

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma k_B T}{m_0}}$$

where m_0 is the mass of one molecule. (d) State how the result in part (c) compares with the most probable, average, and rms molecular speeds.

57. Twenty particles, each of mass m_0 and confined to a volume V, have various speeds: two have speed v, three have speed $2v$, five have speed $3v$, four have speed $4v$, three have speed $5v$, two have speed $6v$, and one has speed $7v$. Find (a) the average speed, (b) the rms speed, (c) the most probable speed, (d) the average pressure the particles exert on the walls of the vessel, and (e) the average kinetic energy per particle.

58. In a cylinder, a sample of an ideal gas with number of moles n undergoes an adiabatic process. (a) Starting with the expression $W = -\int P\,dV$ and using the condition PV^γ = constant, show that the work done on the gas is

$$W = \left(\frac{1}{\gamma - 1}\right)(P_f V_f - P_i V_i)$$

(b) Starting with the first law of thermodynamics, show that the work done on the gas is equal to $nC_V(T_f - T_i)$. (c) Are these two results consistent with each other? Explain.

59. As a 1.00-mol sample of a monatomic ideal gas expands adiabatically, the work done on it is -2.50×10^3 J. The initial temperature and pressure of the gas are 500 K and 3.60 atm. Calculate (a) the final temperature and (b) the final pressure.

60. A sample consists of an amount n in moles of a monatomic ideal gas. The gas expands adiabatically, with work W done on it. (Work W is a negative number.) The initial temperature and pressure of the gas are T_i and P_i. Calculate (a) the final temperature and (b) the final pressure.

61. When a small particle is suspended in a fluid, bombardment by molecules makes the particle jitter about at random. Robert Brown discovered this motion in 1827 while studying plant fertilization, and the motion has become known as *Brownian motion*. The particle's average kinetic energy can be taken as $\frac{3}{2}k_B T$, the same as that of a molecule in an ideal gas. Consider a spherical particle of density 1.00×10^3 kg/m^3 in water at 20.0°C. (a) For a particle of diameter d, evaluate the rms speed. (b) The particle's actual motion is a random walk, but imagine that it moves with constant velocity equal in magnitude to its rms speed. In what time interval would it move by a distance equal to its own diameter? (c) Evaluate the rms speed and the time interval for a particle of diameter 3.00 μm. (d) Evaluate the rms speed and the time interval for a sphere of mass 70.0 kg, modeling your own body.

62. A vessel contains 1.00×10^4 oxygen molecules at 500 K. (a) Make an accurate graph of the Maxwell speed distribution function versus speed with points at speed intervals of 100 m/s. (b) Determine the most probable speed from this graph. (c) Calculate the average and rms speeds for the molecules and label these points on your graph. (d) From the graph, estimate the fraction of molecules with speeds in the range 300 m/s to 600 m/s.

63. AMT A pitcher throws a 0.142-kg baseball at 47.2 m/s. As it travels 16.8 m to home plate, the ball slows down to 42.5 m/s because of air resistance. Find the change in temperature of the air through which it passes. To find the greatest possible temperature change, you may make the following assumptions. Air has a molar specific heat of $C_P = \frac{7}{2}R$ and an equivalent molar mass of 28.9 g/mol. The process is so rapid that the cover of the baseball acts as thermal insulation and the temperature of the ball itself does not change. A change in temperature happens initially only for the air in a cylinder 16.8 m in length and 3.70 cm in radius. This air is initially at 20.0°C.

64. The latent heat of vaporization for water at room temperature is 2 430 J/g. Consider one particular molecule at the surface of a glass of liquid water, moving upward with sufficiently high speed that it will be the next molecule to join the vapor. (a) Find its translational kinetic energy. (b) Find its speed. Now consider a thin gas made only of molecules like that one. (c) What is its temperature? (d) Why are you not burned by water evaporating from a vessel at room temperature?

65. A sample of a monatomic ideal gas occupies 5.00 L at atmospheric pressure and 300 K (point A in Fig. P21.65). It is warmed at constant volume to 3.00 atm (point B). Then it is allowed to expand isothermally to 1.00 atm (point C) and at last compressed isobarically to its original state. (a) Find the number of moles in the sample.

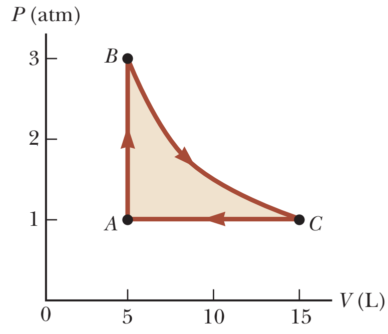


Figure P21.65

Find (b) the temperature at point B, (c) the temperature at point C, and (d) the volume at point C. (e) Now consider the processes $A \rightarrow B$, $B \rightarrow C$, and $C \rightarrow A$. Describe how to carry out each process experimentally. (f) Find Q, W, and ΔE_{int} for each of the processes. (g) For the whole cycle $A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow A$, find Q, W, and ΔE_{int}.

66. Consider the particles in a gas centrifuge, a device used to separate particles of different mass by whirling them in a circular path of radius r at angular speed ω. The force acting on a gas molecule toward the center of the centrifuge is $m_0\omega^2 r$. (a) Discuss how a gas centrifuge can be used to separate particles of different mass. (b) Suppose the centrifuge contains a gas of particles of identical mass. Show that the density of the particles as a function of r is

$$n(r) = n_0 e^{m_0 r^2 \omega^2 / 2k_B T}$$

67. For a Maxwellian gas, use a computer or programmable calculator to find the numerical value of the ratio $N_v(v)/N_v(v_{mp})$ for the following values of v: (a) $v = (v_{mp}/50.0)$, (b) $(v_{mp}/10.0)$, (c) $(v_{mp}/2.00)$, (d) v_{mp}, (e) $2.00v_{mp}$, (f) $10.0v_{mp}$, and (g) $50.0v_{mp}$. Give your results to three significant figures.

68. A triatomic molecule can have a linear configuration, as does CO_2 (Fig. P21.68a), or it can be nonlinear, like H_2O (Fig. P21.68b). Suppose the temperature of a gas of triatomic molecules is sufficiently low that vibrational motion is negligible. What is the molar specific heat at constant volume, expressed as a multiple of the universal gas constant, (a) if the molecules are linear and (b) if the molecules are nonlinear? At high temperatures, a triatomic molecule has two modes of vibration, and each contributes $\frac{1}{2}R$ to the molar specific heat for its kinetic energy and another $\frac{1}{2}R$ for its potential energy. Identify the high-temperature molar specific heat at constant volume for a triatomic ideal gas of (c) linear molecules and (d) nonlinear molecules. (e) Explain how specific heat data can be used to determine whether a triatomic molecule is linear or nonlinear. Are the data in Table 21.2 sufficient to make this determination?

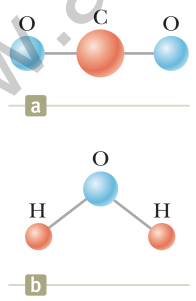


Figure P21.68

69. Using the Maxwell–Boltzmann speed distribution function, verify Equations 21.42 and 21.43 for (a) the rms speed and (b) the average speed of the molecules of a gas at a temperature T. The average value of v^n is

$$\overline{v^n} = \frac{1}{N}\int_0^\infty v^n N_v \, dv$$

Use the table of integrals B.6 in Appendix B.

70. On the PV diagram for an ideal gas, one isothermal curve and one adiabatic curve pass through each point as shown in Figure P21.70. Prove that the slope of the adiabatic curve is steeper than the slope of the isotherm at that point by the factor γ.

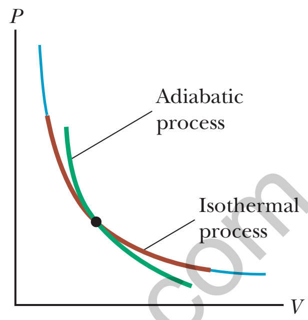


Figure P21.70

71. In Beijing, a restaurant keeps a pot of chicken broth simmering continuously. Every morning, it is topped up to contain 10.0 L of water along with a fresh chicken, vegetables, and spices. The molar mass of water is 18.0 g/mol. (a) Find the number of molecules of water in the pot. (b) During a certain month, 90.0% of the broth was served each day to people who then emigrated immediately. Of the water molecules in the pot on the first day of the month, when was the last one likely to have been ladled out of the pot? (c) The broth has been simmering for centuries, through wars, earthquakes, and stove repairs. Suppose the water that was in the pot long ago has thoroughly mixed into the Earth's hydrosphere, of mass 1.32×10^{21} kg. How many of the water molecules originally in the pot are likely to be present in it again today?

72. **Review.** (a) If it has enough kinetic energy, a molecule at the surface of the Earth can "escape the Earth's gravitation" in the sense that it can continue to move away from the Earth forever as discussed in Section 13.6. Using the principle of conservation of energy, show that the minimum kinetic energy needed for "escape" is $m_0 g R_E$, where m_0 is the mass of the molecule, g is the free-fall acceleration at the surface, and R_E is the radius of the Earth. (b) Calculate the temperature for which the minimum escape kinetic energy is ten times the average kinetic energy of an oxygen molecule.

73. Using multiple laser beams, physicists have been able to cool and trap sodium atoms in a small region. In one experiment, the temperature of the atoms was reduced to 0.240 mK. (a) Determine the rms speed of the sodium atoms at this temperature. The atoms can be trapped for about 1.00 s. The trap has a linear dimension of roughly 1.00 cm. (b) Over what approximate time interval would an atom wander out of the trap region if there were no trapping action?

Challenge Problems

74. Equations 21.42 and 21.43 show that $v_{rms} > v_{avg}$ for a collection of gas particles, which turns out to be true whenever the particles have a distribution of speeds. Let us explore this inequality for a two-particle gas.

Let the speed of one particle be $v_1 = av_{avg}$ and the other particle have speed $v_2 = (2 - a)v_{avg}$. (a) Show that the average of these two speeds is v_{avg}. (b) Show that

$$v_{rms}^2 = v_{avg}^2 (2 - 2a + a^2)$$

(c) Argue that the equation in part (b) proves that, in general, $v_{rms} > v_{avg}$. (d) Under what special condition will $v_{rms} = v_{avg}$ for the two-particle gas?

75. AMT A cylinder is closed at both ends and has insulating walls. It is divided into two compartments by an insulating piston that is perpendicular to the axis of the cylinder as shown in Figure P21.75a. Each compartment contains 1.00 mol of oxygen that behaves as an ideal gas with $\gamma = 1.40$. Initially, the two compartments have equal volumes and their temperatures are 550 K and 250 K. The piston is then allowed to move slowly parallel to the axis of the cylinder until it comes to rest at an equilibrium position (Fig. P21.75b). Find the final temperatures in the two compartments.

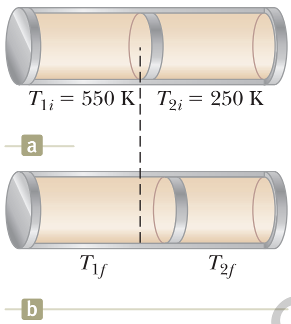


Figure P21.75

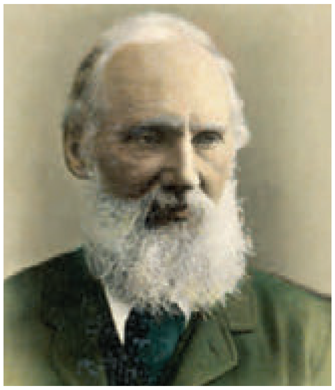
CHAPTER

22

Heat Engines, Entropy, and the Second Law of Thermodynamics

A Stirling engine from the early nineteenth century. Air is heated in the lower cylinder using an external source. As this happens, the air expands and pushes against a piston, causing it to move. The air is then cooled, allowing the cycle to begin again. This is one example of a heat engine, which we study in this chapter. *(©SSPL/The Image Works)*

The first law of thermodynamics, which we studied in Chapter 20, is a statement of conservation of energy and is a special-case reduction of Equation 8.2. This law states that a change in internal energy in a system can occur as a result of energy transfer by heat, by work, or by both. Although the first law of thermodynamics is very important, it makes no distinction between processes that occur spontaneously and those that do not. Only certain types of energy transformation and energy transfer processes actually take place in nature, however. The *second law of thermodynamics,* the major topic in this chapter, establishes which processes do and do not occur. The following are examples



Lord Kelvin
British physicist and mathematician (1824–1907)
Born William Thomson in Belfast, Kelvin was the first to propose the use of an absolute scale of temperature. The Kelvin temperature scale is named in his honor. Kelvin's work in thermodynamics led to the idea that energy cannot pass spontaneously from a colder object to a hotter object.

of processes that do not violate the first law of thermodynamics if they proceed in either direction, but are observed in reality to proceed in only one direction:

- When two objects at different temperatures are placed in thermal contact with each other, the net transfer of energy by heat is always from the warmer object to the cooler object, never from the cooler to the warmer.
- A rubber ball dropped to the ground bounces several times and eventually comes to rest, but a ball lying on the ground never gathers internal energy from the ground and begins bouncing on its own.
- An oscillating pendulum eventually comes to rest because of collisions with air molecules and friction at the point of suspension. The mechanical energy of the system is converted to internal energy in the air, the pendulum, and the suspension; the reverse conversion of energy never occurs.

All these processes are *irreversible;* that is, they are processes that occur naturally in one direction only. No irreversible process has ever been observed to run backward. If it were to do so, it would violate the second law of thermodynamics.[1]

22.1 Heat Engines and the Second Law of Thermodynamics

A **heat engine** is a device that takes in energy by heat[2] and, operating in a cyclic process, expels a fraction of that energy by means of work. For instance, in a typical process by which a power plant produces electricity, a fuel such as coal is burned and the high-temperature gases produced are used to convert liquid water to steam. This steam is directed at the blades of a turbine, setting it into rotation. The mechanical energy associated with this rotation is used to drive an electric generator. Another device that can be modeled as a heat engine is the internal combustion engine in an automobile. This device uses energy from a burning fuel to perform work on pistons that results in the motion of the automobile.

Let us consider the operation of a heat engine in more detail. A heat engine carries some working substance through a cyclic process during which (1) the working substance absorbs energy by heat from a high-temperature energy reservoir, (2) work is done by the engine, and (3) energy is expelled by heat to a lower-temperature reservoir. As an example, consider the operation of a steam engine (Fig. 22.1), which uses water as the working substance. The water in a boiler absorbs energy from burning fuel and evaporates to steam, which then does work by expanding against a piston. After the steam cools and condenses, the liquid water produced returns to the boiler and the cycle repeats.

Figure 22.1 A steam-driven locomotive obtains its energy by burning wood or coal. The generated energy vaporizes water into steam, which powers the locomotive. Modern locomotives use diesel fuel instead of wood or coal. Whether old-fashioned or modern, such locomotives can be modeled as heat engines, which extract energy from a burning fuel and convert a fraction of it to mechanical energy.

It is useful to represent a heat engine schematically as in Figure 22.2. The engine absorbs a quantity of energy $|Q_h|$ from the hot reservoir. For the mathematical discussion of heat engines, we use absolute values to make all energy transfers by heat positive, and the direction of transfer is indicated with an explicit positive or negative sign. The engine does work W_{eng} (so that *negative* work $W = -W_{eng}$ is done *on* the engine) and then gives up a quantity of energy $|Q_c|$ to the cold reservoir.

[1]Although a process occurring in the time-reversed sense has never been *observed,* it is *possible* for it to occur. As we shall see later in this chapter, however, the probability of such a process occurring is infinitesimally small. From this viewpoint, processes occur with a vastly greater probability in one direction than in the opposite direction.

[2]We use heat as our model for energy transfer into a heat engine. Other methods of energy transfer are possible in the model of a heat engine, however. For example, the Earth's atmosphere can be modeled as a heat engine in which the input energy transfer is by means of electromagnetic radiation from the Sun. The output of the atmospheric heat engine causes the wind structure in the atmosphere.

Because the working substance goes through a cycle, its initial and final internal energies are equal: $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = 0$. Hence, from the first law of thermodynamics, $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q + W = Q - W_{\text{eng}} = 0$, and the net work W_{eng} done by a heat engine is equal to the net energy Q_{net} transferred to it. As you can see from Figure 22.2, $Q_{\text{net}} = |Q_h| - |Q_c|$; therefore,

$$W_{\text{eng}} = |Q_h| - |Q_c| \tag{22.1}$$

The **thermal efficiency** e of a heat engine is defined as the ratio of the net work done by the engine during one cycle to the energy input at the higher temperature during the cycle:

$$e \equiv \frac{W_{\text{eng}}}{|Q_h|} = \frac{|Q_h| - |Q_c|}{|Q_h|} = 1 - \frac{|Q_c|}{|Q_h|} \tag{22.2}$$

◀ **Thermal efficiency of a heat engine**

You can think of the efficiency as the ratio of what you gain (work) to what you give (energy transfer at the higher temperature). In practice, all heat engines expel only a fraction of the input energy Q_h by mechanical work; consequently, their efficiency is always less than 100%. For example, a good automobile engine has an efficiency of about 20%, and diesel engines have efficiencies ranging from 35% to 40%.

Equation 22.2 shows that a heat engine has 100% efficiency ($e = 1$) only if $|Q_c| = 0$, that is, if no energy is expelled to the cold reservoir. In other words, a heat engine with perfect efficiency would have to expel all the input energy by work. Because efficiencies of real engines are well below 100%, the **Kelvin–Planck form of the second law of thermodynamics** states the following:

> It is impossible to construct a heat engine that, operating in a cycle, produces no effect other than the input of energy by heat from a reservoir and the performance of an equal amount of work.

This statement of the second law means that during the operation of a heat engine, W_{eng} can never be equal to $|Q_h|$ or, alternatively, that some energy $|Q_c|$ *must* be rejected to the environment. Figure 22.3 is a schematic diagram of the impossible "perfect" heat engine.

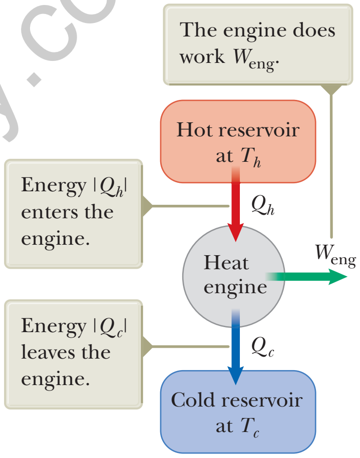


Figure 22.2 Schematic representation of a heat engine.

Quick Quiz 22.1 The energy input to an engine is 4.00 times greater than the work it performs. **(i)** What is its thermal efficiency? (a) 4.00 (b) 1.00 (c) 0.250 (d) impossible to determine **(ii)** What fraction of the energy input is expelled to the cold reservoir? (a) 0.250 (b) 0.750 (c) 1.00 (d) impossible to determine

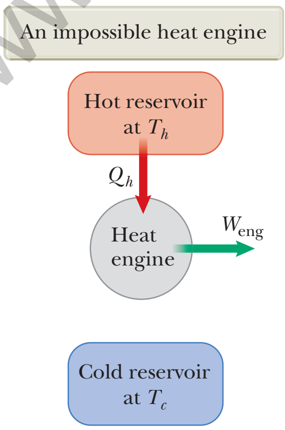


Figure 22.3 Schematic diagram of a heat engine that takes in energy from a hot reservoir and does an equivalent amount of work. It is impossible to construct such a perfect engine.

Pitfall Prevention 22.1

The First and Second Laws Notice the distinction between the first and second laws of thermodynamics. If a gas undergoes a *one-time isothermal process*, then $\Delta E_{\text{int}} = Q + W = 0$ and $W = -Q$. Therefore, the first law allows *all* energy input by heat to be expelled by work. In a heat engine, however, in which a substance undergoes a *cyclic* process, only a *portion* of the energy input by heat can be expelled by work according to the second law.

Example 22.1 The Efficiency of an Engine

An engine transfers 2.00×10^3 J of energy from a hot reservoir during a cycle and transfers 1.50×10^3 J as exhaust to a cold reservoir.

(A) Find the efficiency of the engine.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Review Figure 22.2; think about energy going into the engine from the hot reservoir and splitting, with part coming out by work and part by heat into the cold reservoir.

Categorize This example involves evaluation of quantities from the equations introduced in this section, so we categorize it as a substitution problem.

Find the efficiency of the engine from Equation 22.2:

$$e = 1 - \frac{|Q_c|}{|Q_h|} = 1 - \frac{1.50 \times 10^3 \text{ J}}{2.00 \times 10^3 \text{ J}} = 0.250, \text{ or } 25.0\%$$

(B) How much work does this engine do in one cycle?

SOLUTION

Find the work done by the engine by taking the difference between the input and output energies:

$$W_{\text{eng}} = |Q_h| - |Q_c| = 2.00 \times 10^3 \text{ J} - 1.50 \times 10^3 \text{ J}$$
$$= 5.0 \times 10^2 \text{ J}$$

WHAT IF? Suppose you were asked for the power output of this engine. Do you have sufficient information to answer this question?

Answer No, you do not have enough information. The power of an engine is the *rate* at which work is done by the engine. You know how much work is done per cycle, but you have no information about the time interval associated with one cycle. If you were told that the engine operates at 2 000 rpm (revolutions per minute), however, you could relate this rate to the period of rotation T of the mechanism of the engine. Assuming there is one thermodynamic cycle per revolution, the power is

$$P = \frac{W_{\text{eng}}}{T} = \frac{5.0 \times 10^2 \text{ J}}{\left(\frac{1}{2\,000} \text{ min}\right)}\left(\frac{1 \text{ min}}{60 \text{ s}}\right) = 1.7 \times 10^4 \text{ W}$$

22.2 Heat Pumps and Refrigerators

In a heat engine, the direction of energy transfer is from the hot reservoir to the cold reservoir, which is the natural direction. The role of the heat engine is to process the energy from the hot reservoir so as to do useful work. What if we wanted to transfer energy from the cold reservoir to the hot reservoir? Because that is not the natural direction of energy transfer, we must put some energy into a device to be successful. Devices that perform this task are called **heat pumps** and **refrigerators.** For example, homes in summer are cooled using heat pumps called *air conditioners.* The air conditioner transfers energy from the cool room in the home to the warm air outside.

In a refrigerator or a heat pump, the engine takes in energy $|Q_c|$ from a cold reservoir and expels energy $|Q_h|$ to a hot reservoir (Fig. 22.4), which can be accomplished only if work is done *on* the engine. From the first law, we know that the energy given up to the hot reservoir must equal the sum of the work done and the energy taken in from the cold reservoir. Therefore, the refrigerator or heat pump transfers energy from a colder body (for example, the contents of a kitchen refrigerator or the winter air outside a building) to a hotter body (the air in the kitchen or a room in the building). In practice, it is desirable to carry out this process with

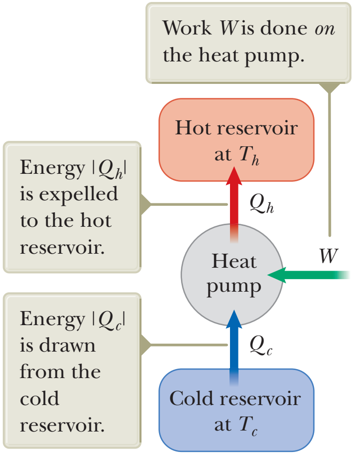


Figure 22.4 Schematic representation of a heat pump.

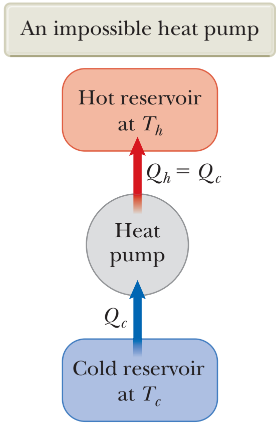


Figure 22.5 Schematic diagram of an impossible heat pump or refrigerator, that is, one that takes in energy from a cold reservoir and expels an equivalent amount of energy to a hot reservoir without the input of energy by work.

a minimum of work. If the process could be accomplished without doing any work, the refrigerator or heat pump would be "perfect" (Fig. 22.5). Again, the existence of such a device would be in violation of the second law of thermodynamics, which in the form of the **Clausius statement**[3] states:

> It is impossible to construct a cyclical machine whose sole effect is to transfer energy continuously by heat from one object to another object at a higher temperature without the input of energy by work.

In simpler terms, energy does not transfer spontaneously by heat from a cold object to a hot object. Work input is required to run a refrigerator.

The Clausius and Kelvin–Planck statements of the second law of thermodynamics appear at first sight to be unrelated, but in fact they are equivalent in all respects. Although we do not prove so here, if either statement is false, so is the other.[4]

In practice, a heat pump includes a circulating fluid that passes through two sets of metal coils that can exchange energy with the surroundings. The fluid is cold and at low pressure when it is in the coils located in a cool environment, where it absorbs energy by heat. The resulting warm fluid is then compressed and enters the other coils as a hot, high-pressure fluid. There it releases its stored energy to the warm surroundings. In an air conditioner, energy is absorbed into the fluid in coils located in a building's interior; after the fluid is compressed, energy leaves the fluid through coils located outdoors. In a refrigerator, the external coils are behind the unit (Fig. 22.6) or underneath the unit. The internal coils are in the walls of the refrigerator and absorb energy from the food.

The effectiveness of a heat pump is described in terms of a number called the **coefficient of performance** (COP). The COP is similar to the thermal efficiency for a heat engine in that it is a ratio of what you gain (energy transferred to or from a reservoir) to what you give (work input). For a heat pump operating in the cooling mode, "what you gain" is energy removed from the cold reservoir. The most effective refrigerator or air conditioner is one that removes the greatest amount of energy

Figure 22.6 The back of a household refrigerator. The air surrounding the coils is the hot reservoir.

[3]First expressed by Rudolf Clausius (1822–1888).

[4]See an advanced textbook on thermodynamics for this proof.